

METHOD
OF
PHISICK
BARROUGH

1596







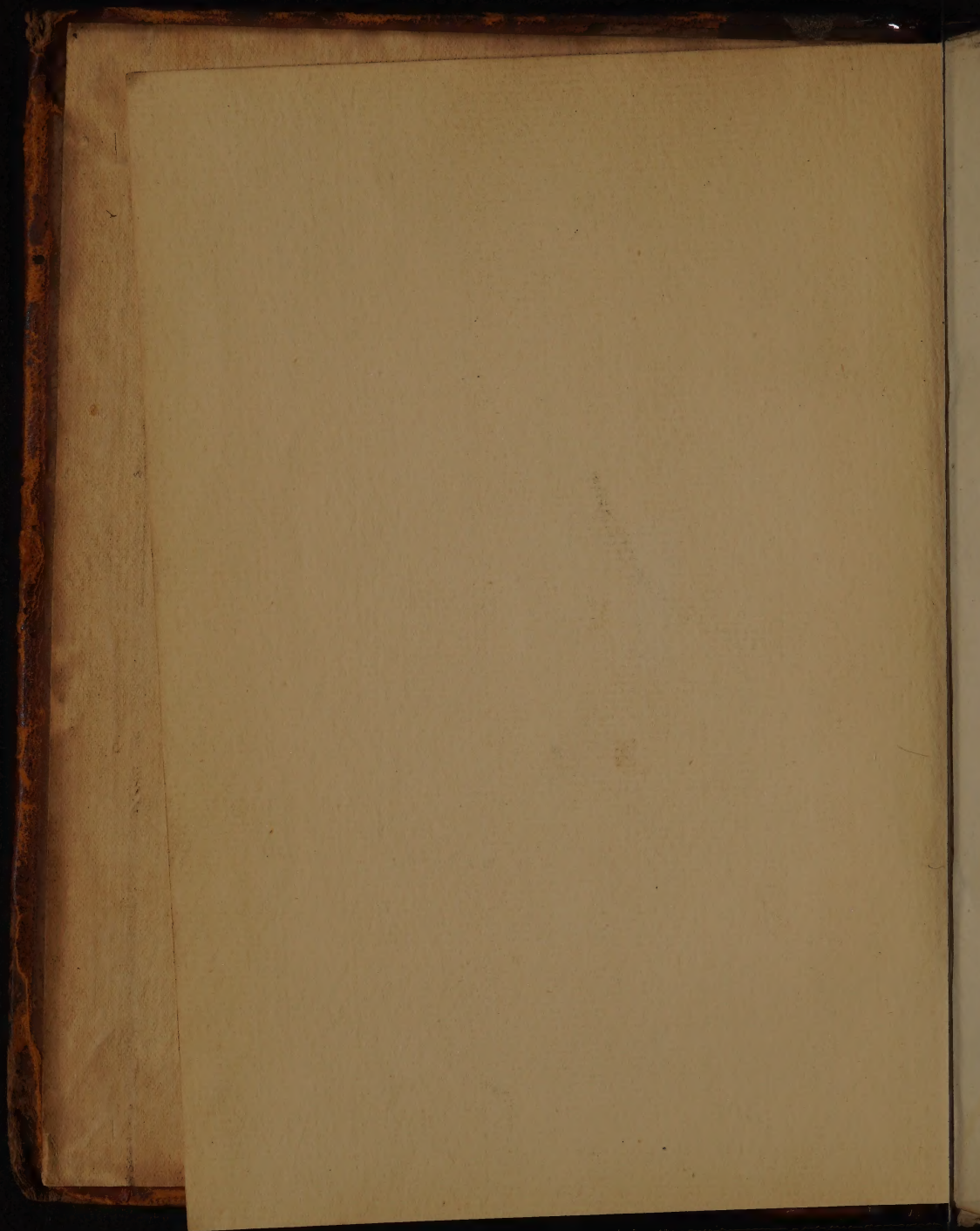
A. xxix. Bar

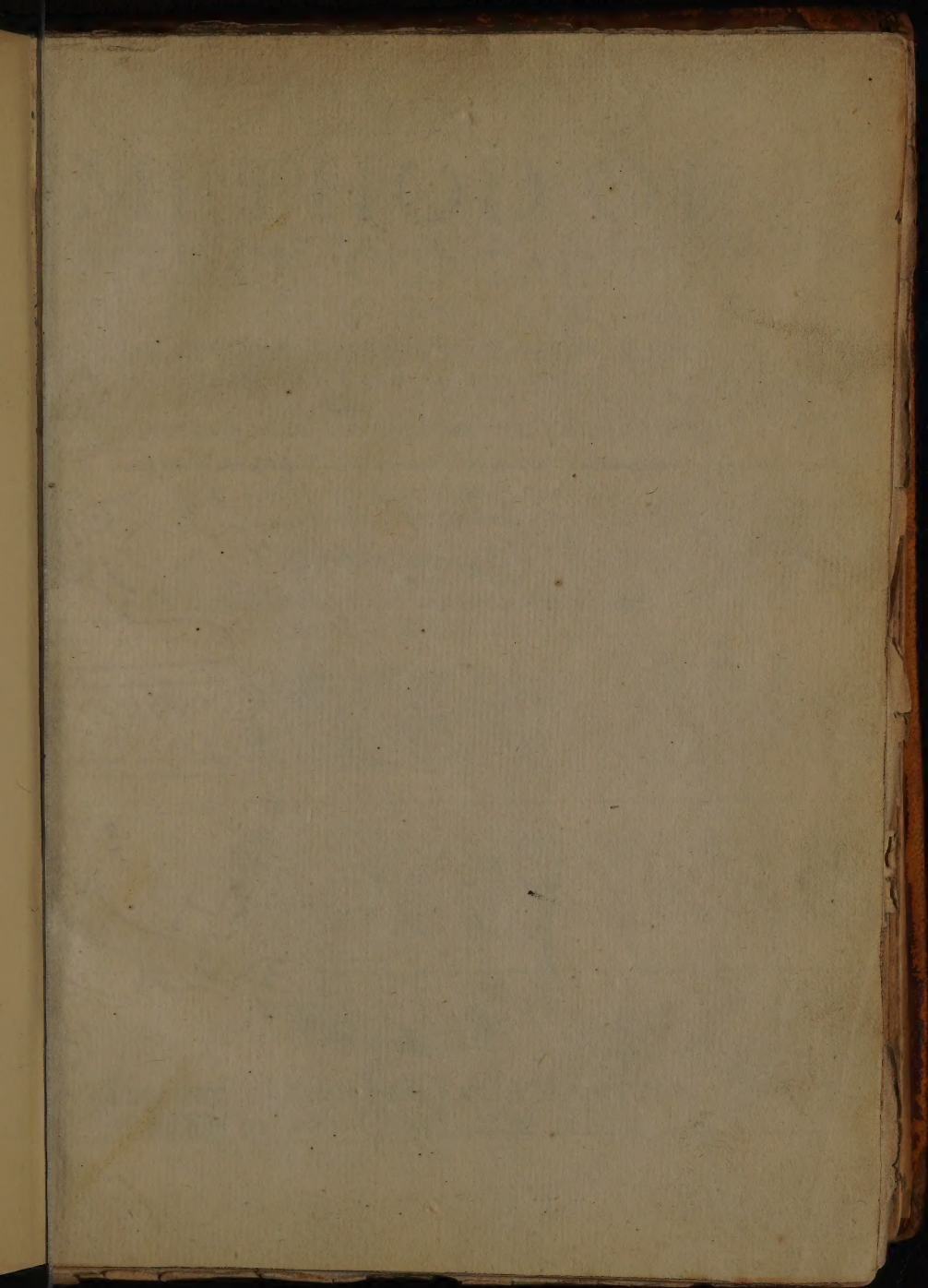
683

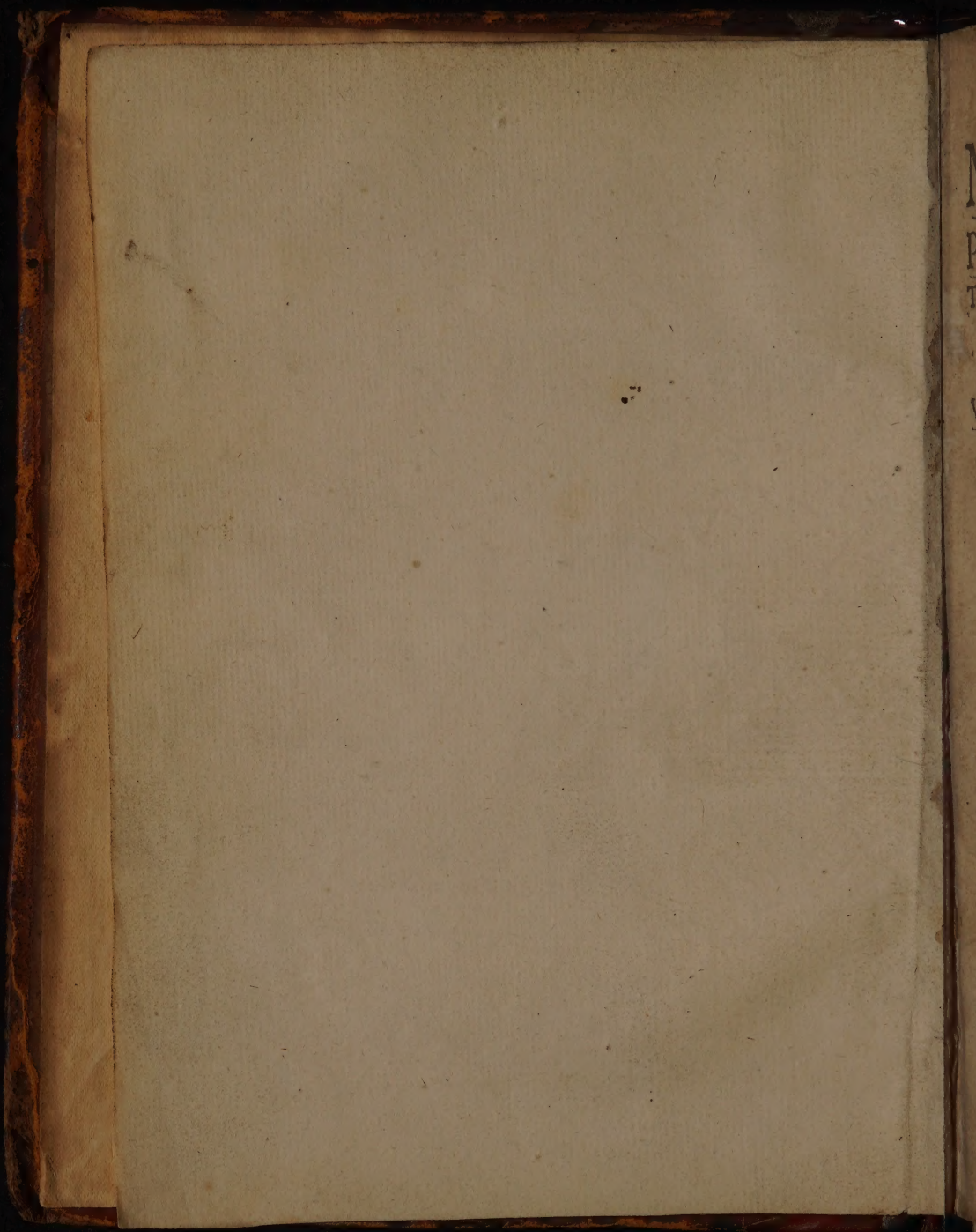
S.T.C. 1510

Sig B i. wanting

20 C 4558







George Barrow's Book of Diseases
**THE
METHOD OF
PHISICK, CONTAINING
THE CAUSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES
OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY
FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.**

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies and medicines, which our Physitions commonly vse at this day, with the proportion, quantitie, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The third Edition corrected and augmented, with two other bookes newly added by the Author.



Imprinted at London by Richard Field, and are to be sold in Paules Church yard at the signe of the brasen Serpent. 1596.

George Cayley, M.D

Ripon. 1800

Given to him by
Mr Edward Coates



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR
GOOD LORD AND MASTER THE LORD

Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most
Noble order of the Garter, and one of the *Queenes* Maicsties
most honorable priuie counsell. P. B. wisheth all
health, with long life and encrease of honor.



THE chiefest thing (Right Honorable
and my singular good Lord) that embold-
neth men to dedicate their labours vnto
any personage, is the assinitie betwene the
matter of the worke vvhich they offer,
and the mind of him to vvhom it is pre-
sented. And as the ancient comickall Poets
vvere vvent to pen such Enterludes, as
they thought would be plausibly heard of
their auditorie: so our common vvriters

doe fashion and shape the subiect of vvhich they entreat, according
to the affection of him, vvwhose patronage they require in countenancing
their writings: this (I say) though it be practised of all vvriters now
a dayes, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue fol-
lowed: yet haue I swarned and digressed from so generall a custome,
in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the mat-
ter so farre dissenting from your Honors dispositions) so that as it may
perhaps not vvithout some colour be obiected, that I might haue pro-
vided farre better (had I beene any way sufficient) both for the accep-
tation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors af-
fection, if I had treated of the politike gouernment of our countrie,

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE

and of the weilding of a common wealth: to the necessitie of which calling, not Fortune the Queene of the olde Philosophers, but God himselfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that every good Magistrate taketh upon him his office unwillingly. But that objection will soone be taken away, if we consider how foolish a thing it were to instruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (besides a great light of nature) most happie experience hath made a perfect and absolute gouernour. Plato that most graue and wise deemer of the state tyrannicall, was so many times conuicted of follie, how often he aduentured in the presence of kings to discourse of the regiment of a common wealth. Dionysius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme crueltie, or good by his prouident wisdom, which both he left a like to his successors to imitate) called that notable Philosopher (whom I euen now named) into Scicilia of purpose to heare him, & with great patience listened to him, as he disputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled those morall vertues, which Socrates his master was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the kings attention) when he had stolne into the discourse of policie, Dionysius felt himselfe so moued, that he had exercised his tyrannie against him also, if Dion and Aristomanes had not recovered him out of his iawes, and so ridde him out of the land, by selling him to Polis the Lacedemonian Marchant. And this was the verdict, that the wise king (when his furie was somewhat calmed) gaue of that most learned Philosopher for his holesome counsell (as he thought) namely, that his discourses seemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: so much experience disdaimeth to be controlled by arte, and so impatient is he of institution, whose knowledge is acquired Vsu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wisdom.) What a great argument of follie therefore shall he giue, that shall go about to lay a plot for your Honor, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, who haue so many yeares in so troublefome a common wealth, and to the most wise and vertuous Princeesse in the world, beene retained as a most honourable and graue counsellor? I will not say, as Zopyrus vnto Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Cresus vnto his Cyrus, the one of which by policie aduised his king to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to
his

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE

his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne unfortunate experience directed him how to conuey any dangerous enterprife. All which serued their Princes to none other use, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glorie by bloudie oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Zenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, which thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them by forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amitie, the strongest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse that these comparisons doe faile in representing so much as I doe conceiue, for that I may not feare the suspection of flatterie in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life so gorgeously and stately set forth by the Historians of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage two such notable actors, namely, so redoubted, so peerelesse, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the scepter, so graue, so wise, and so prouident a counsellor sustaining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saned with your Honor) persue your praises yet farther, but I know very well, that you (who with an unwearied affection doe not cease continually to commit such vertuous deedes as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certaintie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giner of all good things, before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blame worthie, then shamelesly to assume vnto our selues, what soeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by our flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie, which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellencie of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer: I purposed (as I thought) more politikelie to assay your humanitie, which (indeede) graceth all the rest of your vertues, which (I thought) I might soone abuse in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge, and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the common wealth, in which you are alwayes busied,

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE

together with the inconuenient vne easinesse of the studie hath kept your Honor from being acquainted with. Which bold attempt of mine, your wisdom shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemencie encouraged me to enterprise it: for I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this Booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnabilitie, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue (farre more eloquent then this of ours) discern and know the secrets of Physicke which I haue now in part reuealed: If the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, than that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuertheless, when I consider with my selfe; that it was not the affection of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countriemen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke, and also (if I may without the suspect of vaine glorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commoditie vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Amperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceived in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnes which I haue alwaies had (though of late it hath beene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: (I say) these causes meeting thus together did especially adduce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite, your Honours most fauourable Protection, that this booke of mine (vnable of it selfe) may runne under your Patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venomous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord Goa, (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the advancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen & protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare up that burthen which her Maiestie hath laid vpon your shoulders, & with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,

PHILIP BARROUGH.

The



The Preface to the Reader.



Hen God had perfected the wonderful work of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had ascribed to euerie parte thereof his speciall dutie: namely to the water to harbour fishes, to the aire to vphold all feathered foules, to the earth to foster beastes, and to produce and bring forth good and wholesome herbes and trees: and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man his last and noblest creature: he demanded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered, nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secretes of his labours, to talke and commune of them, with the which also, he, as workeman of all, might be extolled and magnified, who partly moued with this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduance his glorie, as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries: so now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the sundrie conceptions of the heart, whatsoeuer it imagined. This fable proceeding (I know not from what braine) is remembered of *Philo* the Iewe in his treatise of the world, which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath, as it were kept to himselfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacitie of man: so there is no meanes by which a man can approach nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secretes of nature, or any way, whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life-time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industrie atchieued, and to haue a care also, that it may be faithfully commended to his posteritie. And doubtlesse this was the consideration, that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistering shewes which his riches and kingdome profered him, applyed his mind to the studie of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birds and beasts, but of all herbes & trees, euen from the cedar of Libanon, to hysope that groweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many kings and noble personages, vowing to themselves without anie light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudie darkenesse of nature. And although they sometime stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscuritie and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first, that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginning of an art, by setting downe certaine

THE PREFACE

precepts of the same, and after him *Osiris* the King of *Ægypt*, and *Zesestri* also King of the same countrie (though rudely) layed the foundation of *Astronomy* by demonstration of the course of the heauens, and of phisicke, by opening the nature of many herbes, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grievous maladie in *Ægypt*, and being not able by his own experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preferred by the Priestes of that countrie, who taught him the vertue of their water, wheras after, in remembrance of this benefite, he wrote this verse rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuersa preluit hominum mala*: the sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought vs newes out of *Ægypt*, either of their policie and government of their countrie, or of the rare and exquisite knowledge in *Astronomie*, if he had not tasted of the benefite which the phisicke of that time afforded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasie to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the seagulfe of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of *Pontus* shall be the first, who at one time vnderooke two mightie battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror, and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glorie of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Tinie* remembreth) was a like profitable to the common wealth, and to mans life: for in his manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies of many infirmities of the same. *Euax* also the king of *Arabia* wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no king, either of *Æthiopia*, *Ægypt*, or *Arabia*, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of phisicke, or else by his liberalitie encouraged others to employ their time in the same? which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Arte, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselves, and haue thought themselves honoured by the profession of the same. And as many arguments do induce me to beleue besides the witnessse of the Historians, that phisicke is the Arte, wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tyed to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to *Elis*, *Diana* to *Ephesus*, *Apollo* to *Delos*, & so forth. *Æsculapius* the son of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegia* made a god for his cunning in phisicke, hath his temple & altars euery where, in *Corinth*, in *Lacedæmon*, in *Athenes*, in *Thebes*, in *Epidaure*, in *Arcadia*, *Messenia*, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth) all which honors which were done to him (no doubt) were instituted by the Kings and rulers of those countries, who especially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reason, that he who inuented an art so generally auailable for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

TO THE READER.

much inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his lyne, saying that the one was placed amongst the Gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrie, onely by the accessse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderful skil in Physicke? what familiaritie had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? and to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarry vpon the recital of the famous Physitians, who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages, as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta* and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of physicke was in times past, if you consider the infolencie and pride of ancient Physitians, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldned onely by the credit of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudencie, that they would haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Ciprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Tibullus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Arte he could breath life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially raigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedonie, vseth these wordes: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke, it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure, to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man, and it was so fedde with the applause and approbation of his citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the citie with a traine of goddesses after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the midst resembling *Iupiter*, woare a purple robe, and a crowne of golde vpon his head, and helde in his hand a mightie scepter. The opinion of this science did so possesse the mindes of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commoditie of the whole countrey, and for the preseruati-
on of mankind: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be, whereof grew this excessive pride, which hath arrested as it were the mindes of many Physitians. I wou'd not wish that the Physitians of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required, for seeing that the life of the most miserable vassall is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowned Monarch, shall not the Physicion looke to haue a shrewd checke at Goddes hande, if he either hath

THE PREFACE

proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place, though (to speake the truth) the arrogancie of many of our Physitions might giue me sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolencie of *Menebrates* and the rest, and to tract rather in the steppes of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shroud themselves vnder the simplest rooffe in their countrie, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselves said (besides the glorie that they purchased by their courteous benignitie) they added alwaies to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Arte and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite varietie of diseases, & the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning, there haue bene reckoned so few good Physitions: for (exempt only *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Anicen*, *Agineta*, *Actius* & *Soranus*, though the number of comon Physitions hath bene great) you shal not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that, which might challenge the fift or sixt place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie and confused vastnesse of this Arte especially: yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath nor bene nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeouours, as the defect of experience. And truly I can not more fitly compare our *Empiriques* and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and trauelier, who though he studiously strueth to attaine to the perfection of his Art, though he carefully busieth him selfe about the cosmographicall mappes, though he industriously peruseth the books of Nauigation, nay (that which is more) though he diligently conferreth with verie expert saylers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet hauen, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ship, when he shal behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster, he will then confesse that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas, that his bookes were lame scholémaisters, that the tales of his companions were a great deale lesse then the things themselves: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction, when he shall looke downe and tremble at the rising of euerie waue, when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeke to eschue those rockes, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea, and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugenessse of the Ocean sea, and the smallnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our comon Physitions, who while they containe themselves within the compasse of their litle studie, where they do as it were, *ē tabula pictos ediscere mundos*, where they

TO THE READER

they perceiue their science redacted into a method, where they see *Galen* reaching his hand to them to lead them throughout the whole bodie of physicke, by whom they are taught the constitution of the bodie, the diuersitie of temperature, the varietie of diseases: the causes, signes, and symptomes of the same, they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becommeth an *Amerique*. But after that, when they shall go into the common wealth to practise, when they shall meet with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the maruellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his mind) when they shal perceiue, that in respect of the strange temperature of the bodie, & the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rocks: besides their great paines & watchfull industrie: will it not (thinke we) amaze them? will they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true & sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Arte is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum usu*: let the Physition (if he doth not preferre lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him (I say) that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, there is nothing derogateth so much from the excelling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to lie amongst them, he stretch still and admirerth himselfe: thinking then, that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrie, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitions by that ignorant and vnadvised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiection of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that I before discoursed of the glorie of this science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past. the dignitie whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitions, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse) yet if we will vprightly wey with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it selfe. For truly, what can be more noble then to perseue the bodie of a man in a good estate, which of the Philosophers is termed, a litle world, in respect of the varietie of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (that which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning Pylot, to gouerne and rule it as a litle vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect (I do not know) to how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of Gods more acceptable then the health of the bodie, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes, by which it is continued and restored if it be lost? *Pirrhus* the king of Epi. c did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto health,

THE PREFACE

to whom he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum sanitatis*. He contemned, or at the least neglected all oracles which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euent and successes of the battailes which they attempted, or any other the like enterprife. He craued nothing at the handes of the Gods, but onely the fruition of his health, thinking that industrie & diligēce, meeting with the health of the body, were able to archiue any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opiniō (as the Historiā very grauely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they cōplaine of nature, for limiting the age of mā within the cōpasse of so few yeares, as three or four score: whē as truely, if the matter were well expended, we would confesse, *Industria potius quā tempus deest*: (as he saith) and that there is no arte or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darknesse (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature) or if the course thereof were interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastened on our partes by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The young man flourishing as it were in the April of his age, cockereth in himselfe a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, and reputeth it as a discredit to him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident government of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reyne vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to anie inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with an immoderate exercise, or (that which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, sursetting bankers, and the viciate executing of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeede that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescencie, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholesome method of life: yea many of them are of this minde, that the time of their youth is infamously ouerslipped, whē they do not rinde in their voluptuous & inordinat demeanour at what time the lusty prime of their age do somewhat enable & support them: & if at any time they be ouertakē with any infirmities (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of phisick, they leaue it to be worn away by the strength of their body, which indeed I confesse hideth many diseases, and for the time taketh away the sence of them, but it neuer viterly extinguisheth any: for although in the infancie of the infirmities, in respect of the weakenesse of it, it be easily depressed and ouermaistred by the valure of the body (which in youth is something puissant and forcible) yet when age comming on with his stealing steps, or else recklesse life doth detract from the force of the one, and maketh way for the other to spread & gather power, the disease being as it were the furiuour posseseth the whole body, and at the last procureth his viter subuersion. And many times it happeneth that a disease breaketh out in olde age, the cause whereof perchappes was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs, as it doeth with them which are bitten with that little Serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly, that he neuer feelth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the aduncient Physitions had of the effect of snow water is offerce to perswade

TO THE READER.

perswade this, who haue written, that if snow refelued into water be drunken of a young childe, it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto extreme old age. I do not altogether beleue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may lead me to thinke, that it is of a mightie operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men reposing too much trust in the strength of their bodies, & so being carelesse in gain-standing & resisting the beginnings of maladies (which their dissolute order of life hath begotten and engendred) haue bene yoked by olde age before the course of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it so to passe, that their bodies haue bene nothing else, but storehouses & mansions of diseases. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being settled in a faire dwelling house by his land-Lord, suffereth it to ruinate, and in the end, to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: so they, when God hath bestowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or mansion houses, wherein the minde may dwell with pleasure and delight, do first by this euill demeanour shake, and discrase them, and then being altogether carelesse of repairing them, do suffer them to run to destruction, or else while they go about too late to vnderprop the declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin feareth, lest with euery puffe of wind it should be ouerturned) so they quake at the least alteration of their body, & at euery little paine, do expect a final dissolution: then they will confesse vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduisedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they else but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception & presecution of diseases is verie auailable, which carieth a man throughout his race with pleasure and delight, (so that nothing commeth more nere vnto the goodnesse thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any disease) carefully to prouide that the beginning thereof may be impeached: the which that thou mayest the better do, I haue (good Reader) for thy benefit, collected out of sundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of physick, & together with those deductions, I haue interlaced experiments of mine own, which by long vse & practise I haue obserued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curions in prescribing the sundrie curations & waies to helpe the diseases, then in explaining the nature of them: my reason was, because if my books should come to the hands of the vnlearned a litle would suffice (the former being more necessaric.) Againe I knew, that the learned would not be contented or satisfied with it, though it had bene neuer so great: and yet I haue not omitted any necessaric signe, that the disease may appeare easily to any capable braine. I shall seeme boldly to haue aduentured the edition of this labour, seeing that I shall runne into the babble of our countrey Physitions, who thinke their Arte to be discredited, when it is published in a base tongue, and againe, are loth to haue the secrets of their science reuealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder some colour they may obiekt somewhat, but yet they may vnderstand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Physitions both of our Englishmen and other countrymen also, who published their practises in their mother tong, & in other countries.

THE PREFACE

especially it is so rife and common, that in Italie and France you shall not find any learned Physitian, that hath not written as much, (nay rather more) in his owne countrie language, then in Latine: yea we haue many bookes in phisicke, that haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commoditie of other nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countrymen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne cuntry, being willing that all men (as indeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see, how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) that then all Artes should be truly happie, when the professors of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this mind, that it behoueth euerie man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to knowe so much as may serue to forestall the comming of many ordinarie diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath already caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euerie man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declininges and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physitian being not alwaies at their elbowe) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a litle knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted onely of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, young children together with other Artes did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the bodie, and learned also preseruaties against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinarie diseases, which (in deed) were but fewe (the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoole maister to *Hercules* when he had instructed him in the Art of wrestling, (which then was honoured especially) and in musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it, that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable: but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all his wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machao* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Aesculapius*, in that they could cure themselves when they were at any time hurt of the enemy? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romaine he that vanquished *Pirrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius* and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnescessarie, when there is no man which so farre swaruerh from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needfull for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the proouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue already offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vnder-

take

TO THE READER.

take a long journey, stumbled euen in the verie threshold of his dore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rethorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended of the readers for being too sparing in vterring the reasons whereby I was first adduced to publish this my labour. For I knowe not how it cometh to passe, yet we see it daily, that ridiculous toies and absurd pamphlets being put forth without any colour, be neuerthelesse plaussibly and pleasingly accepted: whereas a man mouued with an honest care to profite his countrie, being willing to leaue a testimonie of the same behind him, when he offereth any work, if it hath not a delectable subiect, it behoueth him to shew many graue and substantiall reasons of his doings, or else they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely construed and perused with humanitie, so that if a man couet to haue his books fauorably accepted and read, he must behaue himselfe so in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* saith) did not fashion them according to the true line of equity, but set down such as he thought the people wold willingly obserue: euen so the iniquity of the time hath brought to passe, that those books which are generally perused and read throughout, must not serue the time, but must satisfie the opinion of men. A man may easily discourse of this, but the fantasies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in dissuading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not sought nor hunted after any vaine glorie by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeouored by this meanes (being vnable any way else) to do some good to my countrie men: which desire of mine shall sufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the handes of the learned, that if by chance my books come vnder their censure, they will either giue them their good word, or else suffer themselues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily sung;

*Cum tua non edas, carpis mea carmina Leli,
Carpere vel noli nostra, vel ede tua,*

though indeede this supplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who think they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchase their owne credit, when they can vnder some colour maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their estimations, or the errors of other men the subiect of their praises. Those kinds of serpents (I say) which do nothing else but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduise them either to speake themselues, or (if their ignorance will not let the) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their haruест of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whilst they themselues rest vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of these my labours, which expectation of mine (if it be not deluded) I shall be further encoraged to consecrate the residue of my studies to thy commoditie.

Philip Barroughs.



OF VWEIGHTES.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all those kindes of weightes, which are generally vsed and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

Forasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantitie of weightes, which are at this present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vse of them: for seeing that the weightes of some medicines be so iustly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantitie thereof, he doth much hurt to the bodie, and many times putteth the life in ieopardy: you must therefore diligently endenour, and applie your minds to studie and consider of the medicines, that so you may haue the more full and perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of weightes, be these, as followeth,

1. Grana.	} haue this note.	G.
2. Scrupuli.		℥.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciz.		ʒ.
5. Quar.		ʒ.
6. Libræ.		℔.
7. Semis.		℔.
8. Manipuli.		℔.
9. Pugilli.		℔.
10. Ana.		ana.

A Graine is a barley corne taken in the midst of the eare.

A Scruple is twentie barley cornes.

Three Scruples containe a Drachme.

Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.

Quart, signifieth a quart of any thing.

Libra is a Pound.

Semis, is the halfe of euerie weight.

Manipulus, is a great handfull.

Pugillus, is a small handfull.

And, signifieth of euerie one a like much.

THE

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Also it is
 sometime caused of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long
 nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furioufnes, or last of all through
 hote diseases, or hote fauours of outward things. The signes which declare *Signes.*
 headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you
 shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then
 it was wont to be, their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the
 sprinkling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great ease by them. As
 for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure *Diet.*
 of this kind of headach, you must first prouide, that the ayre and the chamber *Ayre.*
 wherein the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by
 your diligence, as by strowing in the house, flowers, & branches of cold things
 (as roses, violets, water lillie flowers, and vine leaues, bryer boughes, willow,
 and such like.) Also it will coole the ayre well to sprinkle cold water in the
 house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had *Sleepe.*
 to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do, he must al-
 together eschue long watching, and keepe him selfe quiet: he must not re-
 taine his excrements, but auoyd them by and by after sleepe if he can, or let
 nature be helped to expell them by a lenitiue clister, for their retencion increaseth
 paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes.
 Let him eschue all perturbations of the mind, especially anger and furie. Let
 him haue but litle meate, of good digestion: and let it be cold in operation, as *Meate.*
 is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of pisan, lettuce, endiue, purselaine, flesh
 of chickens, hennes, or pigeons, with veriuycce made of grapes. Fishes are good
 that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also almond milke, pom-
 granates, raisins, and ripe peares may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from
 milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For
 his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it, if not, *Drinke.*
 seeth a litle cynamon in it, or coriander seed preparete, or mixe with the wa-
 ter, iuyce of sower pomegranates, or syrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus acetosus sim-*
plex or *oxy saccharum*: or if they can not abide that, you may giue them small
 wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured *Cure.*
 with such things as do, coole without manifest restriction, especially if they
 be of thinne & piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is bet-
 ter then to powre vpon the head good oyle of roses, made of vnripe oyle, and
 if a litle vinegar be added *to it*, it will pierce the faster & the deeper. The places *Oyle of roses.*
 that you must powre or annoint it on, is the fore part of the head, where the
 seame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, and the seames
 haue pores in them: also you must vse it on the toppe of the forehead, where
 the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples, where the haire
 groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of roses, is oyle of cam-
 mill to be vsed in like wise, especially in those bodies, that we would not
 coole too much, as womens, eunuthes, children and other that haue soft flesh,
 and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling, you may adde to
 the oyle of roses iuyce of houselike, or purselaine, or knotgrasse, or of vnripe
 grapes, or nightshade, or sorrell, or psillium, or such like. Vse not iuyce of pop-

pye, or of mandrage in this cause, for they doe hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort. *Rx.* oyle of roses. \mathfrak{z} .ij. rose water. \mathfrak{z} .j. strong vinegar. \mathfrak{z} . β . or iuyce of houselike, or purselaine, or lettuse, \mathfrak{z} .j. and so commixe them. Or thus, *Rx.* distilled water of houselike, lettuse, and nightshade. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. water of cammomill. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . vinegar. \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrowe of the backe bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours, and vapours, that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of quinces, violets, water lillies, and gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a liniment made in this sort. *Rx.* Of the mucilage of the seeds of quinces, and great mallows, or of psilium, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. iuyce of purselaine \mathfrak{z} .j. β . iuyce of nightshade. \mathfrak{z} . β . oyle of roses \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them, and make a liniment: or by putting too waxe and other medicines make an ointment in this sort. *Rx.* *Vnguenti populeon.* \mathfrak{z} .j. oyles of violets and roses, of ech \mathfrak{z} .ij. drie flowers of white water lillies, and of red roses. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse embrocations (that is decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by litle and litle, or to let it drop downe) they may be made of roses, violets, floures of water lillies, willow leaues, vine leaues, purselaine, barley & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the grieve, because they coole not without hurt, and therefore opium, iuyce of popie, and mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very litle of it at once, as we doe vse in the liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest striction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweete pomgranates, quinces, and medlers, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sower pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more.

Note. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this grieve. Afterward you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an embrocation after this sort, *Rx.* flours of roses and violets. ana. \mathcal{M} . β . leaues of willow, cammomill, and melilot, ana. \mathcal{M} .j. seeds of mallows. \mathfrak{z} .ij. barley husked \mathfrak{z} .j. seeth these in two pound of water, til the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or thus, *Rx.* mallow leaues, violets, roses, ana. pug. β . the flours of water lillies. \mathfrak{z} .ij. vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, purselaine, or houslike, of each, \mathcal{M} .j. cammomill, melilot, and fenugreeke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seeth them as is aboue said, and make an embrocha, adding to a litle vinegar, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussiue medicines, withdrawing the aforesayd repelling things, such be, Althæa, dill, sothernwood, butter, cammomill, barley meale, fenugreeke, linefeed, lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyatments as you list. For inward medicines (especially

*A Liniment.**Vnguentum.**Embroche.**Stupefacientia**Embrocha.**Alia.*

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep *Inward medi.*
 of violets or roses, or their conserues, or manus Christi, or giue the sickie ij. or *cines.*
 iij. houres before meate in the morning. ℞. j. and ℞. of syrupe of infusion of ro-
 ses, or of syrupe of water lillies with ℞. ij. or iij. of water of borage or cychorie. *Odours.*
 It is good for the sickie to smell rose water, mixed with a litle vineger: also it is
 good to snuffe it vp in the nose.

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

By cold is meant in this Chapter, a cold distempure simply without the fluxe *Cause.*
 of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as
 when the ayre is very cold, especially when anie bodie tarieth in it long time
 bare headed, as also it may be caused by the sodaine applying of any cold thing *Signa.*
 to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes
 that are caused of hote distempure. For in this, though the paine be vehemēt,
 yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, nor the face and eyes do not looke
 redde, nor their face is not drie and shrunked, but contrariwise full & pale, and
 their eyes are swollen and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do
 feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kind of head- *Procuratio.*
 ach, they must eschue cold ayer, and abide altogether in hote ayer. They must
 sleepe moderately, but not longer then they were wont. They must vse mo-
 uing of the whole body, especially walking and riding. Let their bodies be solu-
 ble, rather then costiuē, so that they may ech day haue a siege either by nature
 or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadnesse, and deepe
 cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eschue
 all meates and drinckes that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such like.
 Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of hennies, chicken, partrich, and selants,
 and such like. For their drinke, let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for
 that doth moderately extenuate & heate. For the same cause also hote bathes
 are to be vsed; and generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be *Cura.*
 hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligen-
 tly consider the natural temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing, as can-
 not suffer medicines vehement hote, nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as Ga-
 len affirmeth) if oyle of rewe be powred hote vpon the fore part of the head, it
 healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may
 put pepper, or euphorbium into the oyle, or you may mixe some oyle of pep-
 per, or oyle of euphorbium with the oyle of rew, or in the steed of oyle of rewe,
 you may vse oyles of laurell, yreos, dill, or cammomill, of spiknarde, serpillum,
 marioram, and such like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, & the
 nostrils, & the holes of the eares. Of the aforesaid medicines you may make
 an ointment after this sort. ℞. Oyles of yreos, & rew. ana. ℞. ℞. marioram, be- *Vnguentum.*
 conie, pepper, ana. ℞. j. of Euphorbium, gra. v. waxe as much as is sufficient, and
 make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nostrils, or
 make an ointment thus. ℞. of oyle of rewe, cammomill, and nardinum. ana. *Alind.*
 ℞. j. hylope, lauender, and floures of stachas, ana. ℞. ℞. masticke and franken-
 sence, of ech. ℞. j. waxe a litle, & make an ointment. You may sometime adde *Embroche.*
 to it, if you will, Castoreum. ℞. j. Also embrocations profit much, if they be made

offlowers, of melilot, and cammomill, marioram, origan, betonie, sage, laurell leaues, stachas, and such like, sodden in water. It is good for the sicke to draw vp the vapours of such decoctions by his nostrils. Also a quilt made in this sort profiteth much. *Rx.* leaues of laurell, serpillum, and marioram. ana. M. β . floures of rosemarie. M. j. rew. M. β . cloues and stachas ana. \mathcal{Z} . j. peniroyall and calamint ana. \mathcal{Z} . j. β . beate these to powder, & sew them in silke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which must be layd to the head warme, & first sprinkled with vinegar. It is good also to vse a pomander made in this sort; *Rx.* of storax calamitæ \mathcal{Z} . ij. cloues, maces, wood of aloes, ana. \mathcal{Z} . β . lauender \mathcal{Z} . ij. gallia moschata \mathcal{Z} . j. β . of muske and amber, ana. gra. iiii. powder them & serce them, and with water of marioram, and storax liquida as much as shall suffice, make pomanders.

Sacculus.

*Pomum odori-
ferum.*

CHAP. IIII.

Of headach caused by drinesse or moisture.

By drinesse is meant in this place a drie distempure of the qualitie alone, & by moisture, a moist distempure of the bare qualitie. Neither of these qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cause any headach at all (as Galen teacheth in the 5. Chap. of his first booke *de symptomatum causis*.) Therefore we do not make mention here of these distempures, as though headach might be caused of the alone, but that the studious in phisicke might haue store of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drinesse, or moisture with heat, or whē cold mixed with drines, or moisture causeth headach. Headach through drynes is caused through drynes of the aire, or by dry medicines, by hunger, exercise, lecherie, and perturbations of the mind. And headach of moisture is caused by moistnesse of the aire, or by moistening medicines, by bathes, hote waters, & other things that moisten ouermuch. Drinesse is known by these signes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the nose, if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before. These be signes of headach of drinesse: also in it the skinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and some drie diet hath bene vsed. Also in this kind drie medicines do not ease the paine, but rather increase it. Moistnesse is knowen by these signes, much filth cometh out at the nose, the eyes be puffed vp and swolne, & the patient sleepeth much: but of this distempure alone there doeth no headach ensue. Those that haue headach caused of drinesse, let them remaine in a moist ayer, and let them eate meates that do moisten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, cocks stones, and the brothes of them, pheasants, partrich, and such like things, that do nourish much and moisten. Let them drinke thinne wine alayed with water. Let them sleepe largely. Let them eschue motion of the body and exercise, and vse quietnesse and rest. Let them eschue carnall copulation, hunger, thirst, and all things that do drye. Let them vse bathes of sweet waters that are warme. Let them be merrie, and eschue all other perturbations of the mind. If headach be caused of moisture, you must vse the contrary diet to this, that is before prescribed (that is, all such things as do drie, which you may easily know by that which hath bene sayd before.) For paine of the head caused of drinesse, you must annoint the former

Cause.

Signs.

Relief.

Curatio.

se ame.

seame of the head with oyle of sweete almonds, or with oyle of gourds, or with oyles of violets, and cammomill mixed together. It is also good to drop some of these oyles into the nostrils. You may also mixe verie well with the sayd oyles goose grease, hennes grease, calues grease, or fresh butter after this sort; R. oyles of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥.iii. calues suit, hennes grease, & fresh butter, ana. ℥.ii. commixe them, and make a liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore embrocations profit not a litle, if they be made of violets, mallows, & other herbes that haue vertue to moisten. Against headach caused of moisture, you must vse medicines cleane contrarie to the aforenamed, which must differ according to the heate or cold which is ioyned to the moisture. You may finde sufficient store of such remedies out of the former Chapters.

Linimentum.

CHAP. V.

Of Headach caused of bloud.

Hitherto we haue spoken of the cure of headach, which commeth through alteration and distempure of the bare qualitie, but now we will speake of that which is caused of fulnesse, and abundance of bloud: we call plenitude in this place that which the Greeks call in their tongue *plethora*, it chanceth whe all the foure humours be increased in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is caused of all such things as do ingender great abundance of humours in the bodie, as meates and drinks of great nourishment being plentifully taken, as also the neglecting & omitting of exercises, bathes, sweatings, & other natural & artificiall vacuations be causes of the said plenitude. The signes be these. The face and the eyes be ruddie, the vaines are swolne, so that the least & smallest may easily be scene, the pulse is great & vehement, the vrine reddish & thick, the vaines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauinesse. Concerning diet, let the sicke be in a cold & dry aire: let him eschue flesh, reare egges, and such things as nourish plentifully: let him vse ptisan made of barley, or alica made of barley: let him vse cold herbes, as endiue, scarioll, purcelaine, lettuce, and such like: let him eschue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle cinamon or barley hath bene sodden: let him vse meane exercise: let him be rubbed: let him also vse bathing often, but so that his bodie be first emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his sleepe be meane: let him be merie and ioyfull: and let him abstaine from all other perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with bloudletting as soone as can be. You must open the vttermost veine, which in the arme is called *humeralis*, or *Cephalica*, it must be on the arme which is of that side, that the grieve is most vehement. For this veine is so annexed to the head, that not onely by it you shal pull backe bloud into a contrarie part, but also you shall empty out that bloud by it, as Hippocrates, & after him Galen, and Rhases do teach. But if age or weakenesse do prohibit bloudletting, you must vse boxing, not to the head it selfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the shoulders and breast, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. These being done, you must apply to the head, medicines that be cold and astringent, whereof we haue made mention before sufficiently in the second chapter, so that they need not here to be repeated.

*what is meant
by plenitude.*

πλεθρα.

Cause.

Signa.

Plenitudo.

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Cucurbita.

Ventose.

Localia.

*Decoction pur-
gans.*

Furthermore the Phisitio must haue special regard in this case, that the patiēt be kept soluble. Therefore if the patient be any thing costiue, you may minister this decoction or some such like R. floures of buglosse, borage, roses, & violets, ana. M.ß the foure great cold seeds husked, ana. ʒ. ij. sebestē, damask proines, of each in number xij. great raisins, tamarindes, ana. ʒ. j. barks of mirabolanes, citrinorum, indorum, chebulatorum, emblicorum, belliricorum, ana. ʒ. iij. liquo- rice. ʒ. j. fumitorie, maidenhaire, ana. M. j. tamariscus, harts tongue, ana. ʒ. iij. sene, and polipodie, of each, ʒ. ʒ. agaricke chosen. ʒ. ij. ʒ. ginger, ʒ. ʒ. Seeth all these in a sufficient quantitie of water, vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it and presse it hard. Adde to that decoction suger sufficient to make it sweet, pu- rifie it with the white of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient shall drinke each morning, ʒ. iij. fasting. And if so be that the patients costiuenesse require a stronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the afore- said decoction, ʒ. j. ʒ. of fine reubarbe beaten to powder, and spicknard. ʒ. ʒ. or you may dissolue it in *casia fissula*. ʒ. j. ʒ. newly drawn, or ʒ. j. of manna, or of diaphenicon. ʒ. iij. For the same purpose also it is good to minister vnto the pa- tient syrupe of violets, and *Acetosus simplex*. After this you must apply such me- dicines to the head, as be able to disperse the remnant of the paine & disease; as is, seedes of mallowes, fenugreke, cammomill, and mældot floures. Also oyles of cammomil, dill, and such like, whereof the Phisitio may at his choise make liniments, ointments, or emplasters in maner aforesaid. Note here fur- ther, that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may also strike the vaine in the forehead: as also for that purpose it is good to vse clysters sometime very strong, and you may vse frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer gargarising & snee- sing may be vsed in time conuenient. & boxing in the hinder part of the head, with scarificatiō, at the discretio of the Phisitio, as occasiō & time shal serue.

Dysenteria.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach caused of choler.

Causa.

Signa.

Pistnatio.

Headach comming of cholericke humors is caused of all such things as do heat and dry the whole body, and especially the head vnnaturally, that is, such things as do ingender choler: (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exercise, watching, abstinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as gar- like, onions, and such like. The signes be these: the paine is like theirs that haue headach caused of burning heat of the sunne, but they haue a more sharp and pricking paine, their head is moderately hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterness of the mouth, driness of the eyes, nose, and tong. Moreouer this euill chanceth most of all to flourishing yeares, a hore complexion, and to them that take ouer much businesse in hand, and such like. Let the patient abide in a cold & moist aire, which may be the rather procured by arte, as is taught before in the second chap. by sprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by strewing about of floures and branches that are cold & moist in operatiō. Let his whole diet be moist, let him eat moist meates that be of good iuyce, giue him lettuce, & purslaine, and small fishes of fresh waters. Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a litle cynamon hath

hath bin sodden. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him be quiet, and vse long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him, let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with purging of the cholericke humour straight way, because choler is thinne & moueable, & therfore will easily purge out. But if it chance, that the cholericke humor doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgatio, you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heat and burning of choler, that is such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease. Therfore such medicines must be ministred each morning fasting before you do purge, vntil good cōcoction appeare in the vrine: For by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed & made milde, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will soone without any griefe be drawn of the purging medicine to conuenient places, that it should auoid by. You shall therfore for a preparatiue vse this or such like medicines. R. Syrupe of violets, ℥. j. syrupe of water Lillies, ℥. β. distilled waters of Endiue, succorie and roses. ana. ℥. j. commixe them, & let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister Iulep of Roses and violets, or *Syrupus acetosus*, or the decoction of seeds of cucumbers, gourds, purcelaine, endiue, rootes also of endiue and succorie, roses, violets, water lillies, lettuce, damaske proynes, Sebesten, Iuiubes, and such like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infusion of wormewood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* ministred alone, or a little scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not doe amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former chapter. ℥. iij. and to dissolue therein ℥. iij. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of reubarbe made after this sort. R. fine Reubarbe. ℥. ij. Spikenard. ℥. j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of endiue, doddie, and buglosse, ana. ℥. j. pure ale. ℥. β. the space of 12. houres, then straine it hard, and put thereto of *Electuaries de succo Rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana. ℥. j. β. commixe them and make a purging potion. Also you may vse *Pilule auree*, and *Alephangine*, or pilles of reubarbe, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutiu*. For them that are delicate, you may vse this bole, R. of *Diagridium* ℥. β. of Maces, cynamon, and Masticke, ana. gr. 2. conserue of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥. j. suger as much as sufficeth, and make a bole. Further it profiteth now and then to vse clisters made in this or like sort; R. Mallowes, Althea, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M. β. whole barley, ℥. i. the fower common small colde seedes (that is) Lettuce, purcelaine, endiue, and scarioll, ana. ℥. iij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction ℥. β. j. of the pulpe of *Cassia fistula* ℥. j. of *Hierapicra* ℥. β. of oyle of violets ℥. ij. oyle of roses. ℥. j. of *mel rosarum* ℥. j. of salt ℥. i. β. commixe all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholericke humour, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strenthen the head, wherof you shal find store in the secōd chapter. If the sick can not sleepe, annoint the fore part of the head with oyle of water

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabbari.

Bolis purgans.

Clyster.

Localia.

Sleepe.

lillies, and oyle of poppie: to them you may for a need adde a litle opium, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legges may be well vsed in times conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

*Of headach caused of fleume.**Causa.*

Headach coming of fleume, is caused of all such things as ingender fleume in the head; as a cold and moyst aire, meates that be cold and moist, as

Signa.

fishes, milke, rawe herbes, fruitre, idlenesse, and sleeping vpon a full stomake & such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse & heauinesse of the head, whitenesse, and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall a sleepe, he

Vicissitudo.

is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the 3. Chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in an aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the ayre be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with cynamon, frankensence, cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be roasted, and let him eat spices with it. For his drinke let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane; to be short, let him vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must

Curatio.

be begun with extenuation & digestion of the flegmaticke humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut, and deuide humours; such be mel rosarum, oximel simplex and compositum, and scilliticum, syrupe of starchades, distilled waters of hysope, betonie, marioram, sage, and such like, minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this

Zusupium.

sort. *Rx.* Of oximel scilliticum ʒ. j. of syrupe of starchades ʒ. ss. of distilled waters of hysope, percelly and marioram ana ʒ. j. commixe them and make a potion.

Decollum extenuam pituitam.

Or if the vsing of syrups & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this or such like decoction. *Rx.* of the rootes of fenell, percelly & asparagus. ana. ʒ. j. rootes of pionic ʒ. ij. seedes of annise, fenell, siler montanum ana. ʒ. iij. starchados, origan, serpillum, marioram, calamint, betonie, sage. ana. M. ss. fine cinnamon, maces, ana. ʒ. j. ss. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde suger sufficient to make it sweete,

Purgatio.

clarife it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of hysope, & oximel simplex ana. ʒ. iij. commixe them all together and make a potion. When the humours are extenuate, & made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleume, for the which cause

Pilule.

let the sicke haue these pilles ministred vnto him *Rx.* pilularum coctuarum ʒ. j. ss. pilularum hiera composita ʒ. j. pil. alexphanginarum ʒ. ss. agaricke made into trochists ʒ. ij. Mirabolanorum, chebulorum. ʒ. j. fine turbith ʒ. ss. starchados and ginger. ana. gr. v. masticke gr. vij. seedes of pionic in number iij. Castorei g. iij. with lavender

Clyster.

water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged not once onely, but twise or thrise, because the grosse and clammy humours will not straight follow a suddaine purgation, but they must be drawne out by litle and litle with often purging. Also clysters are good, not only because they empie out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull backe such humours and vapours as ascend to the head. For clysters ther-

fore

fore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take thereof \mathfrak{z} . iij. and dissolve therein *benedicte laxative* \mathfrak{z} . β . *Electuarij indi maioris* \mathfrak{z} . iij. *diaphanicon* \mathfrak{z} . ij. *mel rosarum* \mathfrak{z} . j. oyles of laurell and rewe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . sal gemme. \mathfrak{z} . j. conmixe them together and make a clister. After the whole bodie is purged, you must minister such medicines as can purge the head, as be gargarises made in this sort: *Rx*. long pepper and nutmegs, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . seed of stauilacre and pellitorie; ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. mustard seed, origan, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with masticke or honie make trochiskes like lupines, and let the sicke chewe one of them almost halfe an houre. Also the head may be purged by iuyce of marioram, blitum, colewortes, and such like. You may also for this purpose minister gargarises made of the distilled waters of hylope, betony, origan, with *hierapicra* and *oximel compositum*, or in this sort: *Rx*. pellitorie, long pepper, of each, \mathfrak{z} . j. β . seed of stauilacre, \mathfrak{z} . β . marioram, *pe-*
niroyall, hylope, origan, betonie, ana. \mathfrak{M} . β . seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, straine it, and adde to the licour *mel rosarum*. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *oximel scilliticum*. \mathfrak{z} . β . commixe all and make a gargarise. Also medicins to prouoke sneesing are good in this case. You may make them after this sort: *Rx*. marioram \mathfrak{z} . j. nigella, \mathfrak{z} . β . cloues, white pepper, cubebs, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. nutmegs, graines, castoreum, heleborus albus, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke sneesing therewith. For them which are rich you may adde muske and amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth also to hold hote and sweet odors to the nose of the patient, or a pomander artificially made, such a one as we prescribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further you may take *nasalia* (as they call them) things to put into the nose, sharpe at one end and great at the other like a steeple, after this sort: *Rx*. stauilacre, pellitory and white pepper, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . nigella, nutmegs, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. heleborus albus, \mathfrak{z} . β . powder them, and with rosin & waxe make nasales. After the purging of the head, you may vse ointments, embrocations, drie quilts, and such like other medicines to disperse the remnant of the humour remaining in the head, whereof there be examples sufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiously minister inwardly, cubebs condire, or diambra, diamoscha, aromaticum rosaceum, diacuminum, dianthos, theriaca, mithridatum, diacorum, conferue of marioram, rosemary, betonie, with syrupe of stichados. Or minister these lozenges which are specially good. *Rx*. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis dianthos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. cubebs, maces, of each, \mathfrak{z} . β . woods of Aloes, cloues, and fenell seed; ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . fine cinamon, \mathfrak{z} . ij. stichados, \mathfrak{z} . β . with suger molten in the distilled waters of pionic floures and lauender make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach caused of flegmaticke humours. But if so be that headach be caused of a melancholicke humour, then you must prescribe such diet, and vse such cure as shalbe declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madnesse. And therefore it should be superfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for cure of headach comming of melancholicke vnto the :8 chapter in this booke following.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach caused of windinesse.

If headach be caused of windinesse, the diet vsed before was such as did ingender wind besides the nature of the body, & other circumstances were such as

Gargarise.

Gargarismus.

Sternutamentum.

Nasalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach comming of melancholy.

Cause.

Signa.

Virtuatio.

Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

were apt to ingender wind. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & beating, & if there be a sound and noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windines in the head. The diet of the patient must altogether be such as doth not ingender windines. For the cure, if the windinesse be not only bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines, as do repell and driue backe, such be vineger, pomgranate rindes and floures, wormewood, melilot, mints, plantaine, walwort, burfa pastoris, nutmegges, purcelaine, houslike, lawrell leaues, and such like. Which being moderatly vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be fenugreece, linsseed, cammomill, yolkes of egges, saffron, hennes grease, goose grease, &c. Last of all ad discussiue medicines, oyles of dill, & rew, barley meale, lupines, lillie rootes, nigella, &c. It is good therefore first of all to empty the belly with a strong clyster, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water anise seeds, & caraway seeds, fenel seed, comin, dry figges, branne, and such like: herein you must dissolue *beneficta laxatiua* ℥. iiii. or *Electuarii nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphenicon* ℥. iiii. or *Diacatholicon*, or *hierapiera* ℥. vii. Such kind of clysters do not onely purge the intestines, & the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthen the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the spleen, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heat abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oile of roses, which is both repulsue, digestiue, & discussiue, & adde to it vineger which is both repulsue & discussiue also, & doth extenuat besides. Also rose water or iuice of purcelaine, knotgrasse or nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger. If there be cold in the head with the windines, the vse oiles of cammomil or dill, mixed with a litle vineger: or if the grief increase, apply the iuyce of rew with vineger & oile mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the root of floure de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of laurel berries & rew mixed with vineger is good to be applied. Likewise bitter almonds beaten with vineger & oile, & applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the grief doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse drie quilts, you may make them at the first of milium, roses, willow leaues, knotgrasse, nightshade, & purcelaine, & so apply the to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to th' aforesaid marioram, serpillū, hysope, rewe, tender leaues of lawrell, ciperus & such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as castoreū, musk, amber, & such like. To prouoke sneesing, & to minister inwardly to the sicke is good, either *Diacuminum*, or *Dianisum* ℥. j. or as much triacle, or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillitie of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not neede to vse repulsue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicins, such as are before declared. As for inward medicins they auail or profit litle in this case.

CHAP. IX.

Of Headach caused of the stomacke.

Hitherto we haue declared the causes, signes, and cures of headach caused principally in it self, now it remaineth that we intreat of paine in the head, which

which commeth by consent. And first of that headach which cometh through euill affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from whence corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be knownen by the gnawing and byting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the desire to vomit that the patient hath. Especially if the mouth of the stomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach, if the sicke fast, and suffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieved, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke, which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speede purge the noysome humours that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patient can easily vomit: if not, he must thrust his finger or a fether into his throte, and so prouoke the stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow, or pale choler, because of his naturall lightnesse, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomack. But the humours that be flegmaticke, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the middest of the stomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humours are in the bottome of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoid the stomacke & passe into the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours do cleaue so fast to the filmes & tunicles of the stomacke, and doth so furre them, that they can scarcely be scoured out. Therefore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the stomacke, minister *Hierapiera*, which is a soueraigne medecine therfore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates easie of digestion, and whollome for the stomacke. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknes of the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome humours in the stomacke, it must be provided that good digestion be procured, and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines, as be astringent, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall find plenty hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise if headach be caused of the disease of the liuer or spleene, or any other member: for the affects of those members being cured, ceaseth the headach.

*Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**Hierapiera.**Note.*

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THE causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident inough, chiefly hote wines, & strong drinks are causes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that so much the more (as Galen sayd) if the braine be hote by nature: sometime also hote humours ascending to the head, do cause drunkennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is in euacuation and refrigeratio. Therefore if the wine be yet vndigested, & do flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse medicines, that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

*Cause.**Curatio.*

*Warme water,
and a litle syr.
acetose com-
mixed, causeth
vomit.*

Preseruat.

Vitis ratio.

Dates.

Irium.
Nardinum.

head. As is oyle of roses alone, or mixed with vinegar, or with iuyce of iuyce, or coleworts. Also the leaues of coleworts steeped in warme water, and bound about the head do naturally resist drunkennesse. Moreouer the broth of coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpose. To preserue one frō drunkennesse (as *Aetius* saith) let him eat v. or vij. bitter almonds fasting, or let him drinke wormwood wine first of all. But to take away drunkennesse that is present, giue the decoction of centory the lesse to drinke, or harts horne, or the seed of veruaine boyled in water. You must haue a speciall regard, and procure that the patient do sleepe and rest, which being done all day, at night bath him in a bath of sweet water, & when thou hast washed him, let him eate meats of good iuyce, but not ouer hote. Let therefore his food be ptisan broth, souppings made of *alica*, bread dipped in water, reare egges, and such like. For pot herbes lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke let him vse water only, if he hath bene accustomed therto, and can well beare it, otherwise giue him small drinke, or a litle small white wine. After his meate, giue vnto him of a pomgranate, or a peare, or a quince, or raisins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleasant to the stomack, and that driue away vapours. Let him abstaine from dates, for their property is to cause headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours ascending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and stuffed in the thinn pores, and so do cause headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of roses, & vse first in steed of it, oyle of cammomill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heat more, commixing with the oyle of ireos, oyle of nard, or *oleum costium*, or other oyles and ointments of that sort.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach caused by feauers.

Cause.

Cura.

IF headach do molest those that haue a feuer, you must diligently examine and consider, whether the same began at the first beginning of the feuer, or whether it sprong the feuer increasing, for if the headach began not with the first fit of the feuer, but afterward while the feuer increased, and came nigh to the Crisib: then seeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth & foretellet that vomit, or a decretorie fluxe of blood at the nose will follow shortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of predictions, and *Galen* in his third booke de Crisibus, and in his first booke ad *Glaucōnem* Cap. vltimo: if the headach began at the first with the feuer, it commeth of vapours or humours disperfed abroad through the greatnes of the feuer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate vp to the head, & partly also through weakenesse of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you must let him blood after the first or second fit (if nothing prohibit it) especially in lustie bodies, & in such as abound with blood. Also you must draw the humours a contrarie way, and pull them backe by sharpe clysters, such as shall be prescribed in the Chap. of *Apoplexia*, & by often binding and much friction in the neather parts. Moreover you may set cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You must apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell & driue backe

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discussive medicines: last of all, such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vse oyle of Roses, and other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chapter. Vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a little vineger; but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouermuch watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigations made of Poppie heads, Housleeke, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleep, in this sort: R^r. flowers of Violets Waterlillies, and Roses, ana M. j. hulled barley, ʒ. j. heads of Poppie, ʒ. ʒ. Housleeke, M. ʒ. seeth all these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of Henbane or Poppie, with oyle of Roses, a little vineger and crummes of bread; commize the, & apply them to the forepart of the head, and to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiently cooled, then apply those things which can heate the head againe, and to auoyd and disperse the humours that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of Cammomill, Dill, or Ireos, or decoctions of Cammomill, or Althæa, or such like. And if the humours be grosse and tough, you may boyle with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, Peniroyall, Calamint, Mints, or such like. Last of all the head must be strengthened by oyle of Roses, and such like, that is, Betony, Cammomill, Melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feuers.

Embrocha.

Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of innueterate headach.

Cephalæa both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long and hard to cease, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fits, so that the patient can neither abide noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor saours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but desireth for the greatnesse of the paine to sit or lie quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were stroken with a hammer. Also some of them do feele those things that are about their head, as though they were brused or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwaies, sometime it hath fits and intermissions, either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fits, as in the falling sicknesse, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vex women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained: but in some, onely the filme that couereth the scull is grieved. It is caused of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnesse of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weaknesse of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sicke with gravity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours; if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humours or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and boluing in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

Signa.

Cause.

Signa.

Note.

Visturatio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Remissio.

Localia.

Note.

Verbenac-
recta.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflammation in the filmes of the head: and if there be heavinesse with the distension, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt superficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the skull is grieved. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that those that haue paine within the skull, they feele griete at the rootes of their eyes, because that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning, of the filmes of the braine. And if so be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned with the headach. They also are vexed with a feuer, which haue headach caused by inflammation. As for diet to be vsed in this griefe, you may easily prescribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersitie of the causes thereof: and therefore I omit it here willingly, lest I should vse a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuersity of the cause. For if you finde abundance of humours or vapours to be the cause, if it be ingendred of plenitude of the whole body, you must begin with euacuation of the whole body. And therefore you must let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the same side, if his strength will suffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receive the humours and vapours that do ascend, for that it is weake, then you must pull backe the matter vnto the whole body, and so remedie the part affected. Therefore you must vse very sharpe clisters, and bandings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts: and sometime also in this case you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do seeme still to abound, you may open a veine in the nostrills, and draw bloud from thence, as much as shall be requisite. Shortly after you must purge the body with *Hierapicra*, or other things that are prescribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole body, you may safely come to purging of the head, and in the end vse medicines to strengthen it. The head is to be purged with *Gargarismes*, and with medicines put into the nose, as iuyce of Leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or such like, which be rehearsed before in the seuenth Chapter. To the head it selfe you must first apply things that do repell and driue backe: such be, oyle made of vnripe Oliues, and oyle of Roses alone, or applyed with vineger, also oyle made of Poppy heads and of Iuie berries, and of Greene Mints, and such like, whereof we haue spoken before. But note, if the humours that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme; but if the humours abounding be hote and cholericke, then apply those medicines cold. Afterward you must apply those medicines that do discusse and disperse humours, as be oyles of Cammomill and Dill, and such like before rehearsed; but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle *Serpillum*, or *Pepiroyall*, or *Calamint*, or *Mints* in oyle, and thou shalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Besides, these things do strengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vsed vntill the cure be finished. Aboue all other things *Veruaine* doth disperse humours, and mightily corroborate the head, especially being Greene. Also being drie, and boyled in Ale, rootes and all together, with *Serpillum*, it doth the like; if the head be anointed therewith. Moreover if you boile *Veruaine* alone in oyle, & do sprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it

were caused of cold, or of grosse and viscous humors, as *Galen* witnesseth. Lib. 2. de comp. medicam. secundum Locos. Also for the same it profiteth much to vse oile, wherein sowes, called in Latine *Millipeda* be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalaea* comming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof comming of other causes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

Hemicrania is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right half or on the left, and is distinguished by the seame that runneth along in the skull, from the midde forehead to the hinder part of the head, this grieife in English is called the Migrime. This paine commeth often by fits, and in some the grieife is felt without the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other nigh to the temples in the muscles there. This paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the vaines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they only proceed from the partes contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thrust out their excrements and superfluities from them, and sometime from the partes of the body beneath the head, which send vp corrupt vapours & humors from them selues to the braine. The signes whereby you should know whether vapours or humors doe abound, and whether they be hot, or cold, are to be gathered out of the former chapters. As also to know in what part of the head the grieife is, whether within the skull or without, read the former chapter of *Cephalaea*. Only this I adde here, that if in this disease, the filme that couereth the skull be affected, then is their paine so vehement, that they cannot suffer to be touched with ones hand, so that it seemeth the skinneth selfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they should vse, and what they should eschue, may readily be gathered and prescribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of causes, but specially let the patient refrain from such things as doe send abundance of sharpe vapours vp to the head, as be garlick, onions, mustard, radish rootes and such like. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. And therefore when you wil cure the migrime, consider diligently first whether the patient needeth bloodletting or purging. For if the grieife come through plenitude and abundance of blood and humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the same side that the grief is: but if the Migrime be caused of abundance of one humor, then purge that humor by conuenient medicins, which are prescribed in the former chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to local & outward medicins, & first cause the patient either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is griued, and specially about the muscles of his temples, vntill it be red and hote, and this must be done before the fit of paine commeth. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his second book *De compositione medicamentorum secundum locos*) you must apply medicins which of the old Phisitians were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vsed for the migrime: noting this alwaies, that if with the paine there were much heat felt, then you ought to apply such things as would somewhat coole. But

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

*Pnguentum.**Oleum.**Note.**Pilule.*

if there were no euident heat felt, then vse those things that are very hot. But you must commixe with either of these, somewhat that is restrictive, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. *Rx.* of oiles of dill and Ireos. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of white pepper, and serpillum. ana. \mathfrak{d} . j. β . of *Cassoreum*. \mathfrak{d} . j. of *Euphorbium*. \mathfrak{d} . β . of waxe. q. β . and make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. *Rx.* Sweete oyle oliue. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Euphorbium*. \mathfrak{d} . j. commixe them and droppe one droppe into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lette according as the body is quicke or dull in sense; but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the migraine engendred of hote vapours or humours. *Aetius* saith that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid proprietie helpe the migraine. The same author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applied to the grieue, as also the flesh of snails bruised and applied doth profite much. The kernels of peaches bruised and applied vpon the grieue (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith that the dung of a goat stamped and commixed with vineger squillitricke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the migraine for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be sodaine paine of the migraine, take frankenscence, mirrhe, and an egge, beat them together and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the migraine be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which we prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or of cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine pilles, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the migraine. First if choller abound. *Rx.* powder of *Hiera simplex Galeni*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *pilularum arabicarum*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. trochiskes of *mirabolanes citrins*. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . reubarbe. \mathfrak{z} . j. spicknard. \mathfrak{d} . j. commixe them with sirupe of violets, and referue the composition. When neede requireth minister. \mathfrak{z} . j. or. \mathfrak{d} . iij. siue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten daies, or once in fiftene daies at all times (sommer excepted.) But if sleume aboundeth, make your pilles thus. *Rx.* of *Agaricke trochiscato*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *pilule arabice*, and *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . floures of *stachados*, and trochiskes of *mirabolanes chebulorum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. with sirupe of *stachados* and oximel, commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister \mathfrak{z} . j. or. \mathfrak{d} . iij. at each time in forme abouesaied. But if melancholy be cause of the migraine. *Rx.* of the aforesaid *Pilule arabice*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of powder of fene and *Epithimum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . of *Hiera simplex Gal.* \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of trochiskes of *Mirabolanes indorum*. \mathfrak{d} . iij. with sirupe of fumitory and balme water make pilles, and when neede requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latines call Vertigo, is a disease, wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latin is called, *Tenebriosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth think that all that he seeth turneth about, and sodainly with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist and darknes. It is commonly of the Phisicians called *Scotoma*. *Fuschius* doth think that they erre greatly, that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors Hippocrates, Galen and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and spirites, contained in certaine partes of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempred and euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The braine it selfe is affected euill, when a grosse and tough humor is contained in it, from whence a vaporious and windy spirit being resolued by weake heat, is moued inordinatly about in the braine. The mouth of the stomacke doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are caried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darknes and mist appeareth before the eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chaunceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, & therefore the patient many times fells downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele, or any such thing turne about, also if he see whirle pooles in the water turne about: for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like thing, doth also turne about in like sort, and so the mouing of the humour and the spirits are troubled vnequall and inordinate. When this disease doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine in the head, and heauines therin. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by some other meanes, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomack, then they feeble before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the hart burne, & a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sicknesse, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor it causeth nor the crampe and writhing of members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as Galen saith) is nigh to the falling sicknesse and the *Apoplexie*, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernicious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sicknesse and the *Apoplexie*. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudie and red-dish, he is apt to fall into madnes, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sicknes. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becometh most vehement in winter, or in the beginning of the spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sicknesse will follow. And many do vse to call it a little Epilepsie. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an ayer, that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare, and let him eschue grosse & cloudy ayer. Let him eschue winds, especially South winds: let him also auoyd the beames of the Sunne & the Moore; as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Vicius ratio.

as running waters, or things that turne about, as wheelles, and such like, or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of easy digestion, and such as engender no windines, as partrich, capon, pheasant, chicken, veale, scaly fishes, and such like, that be easie of digestion. And let him vse to eate but moderatly of them, for satiety, as also long fasting is not good for him. He must eschue all things that cause vapours to ascend into the head, as oynions, garlick, leekes and such like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old, smal white wine may be permitted him. After meat it is good for him to eate some restrictiue thing to stop the vapours that they ascend nor to the head, & that specially if the stomack be cause of this disease. Let his exercise be moderate, let him eschue sleepe of the day, neither let him sleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he sleepeth, nor let him not keepe his head too hote. In his exercises, let him not stir his head much. And therefore it is good for him to vse frictiōs oftē, specially in the morning before he riseth, begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He must refraine from perturbations and affections of the minde, specially from anger, feare, and sadnes, as also from loud crying, and singing. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a stoole once in a day, you must helpe nature either by clister or suppositary. For the cure if the fit be present, you must reuiue the patient againe with sweete and odoriferous smels, & with frictions and such like. At which time also if neede be, you may vse a suppositary or a clister. Afterward if the party be strong, and no other impedimēt present, let him bloud on the *Cephalea* vaine, whether it be the beginning of the disease or otherwise. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occasion. Therefore you must draw away the bloud at sundry times vntil you haue sufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloud letting, first you must purge him with a sharp clister, whereof you shall haue example afterward in the chap. of *Apoplexy*. Afterward minister a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not first to vse a preparatiue, when the whole body is sufficiently purged, you must vse locall things to the head, and first apply cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. Afterward vse to minister gargisimes, and sternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the nose iuyce of chickweed, beets or cyclaminus. Also nitrum beaten with nigella and mixed with old oyle, purgeth well by the nostrils. Also odours made of the decoction of marioram, hisope, & houres of stachados, a litle *Castoreum*, muske, and vineger being added is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, specially a naturall bath that is of alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you must coole it often with oile of roses and vineger applied in clothes to it, specially on the fore part of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the disease doe cease by these remedies, then vse no other. But if it continue still, you must cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, specially if the disease come of hote vapours ascending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but also of *Aetius* and *Paulus Aegineta*. How the arteries should be cut you shall learne of the saide *Aegineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Localia.

some

some haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hore and vaporous spirits doe sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy spirit may be engendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therefore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehersed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries. And therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cauterie behind the eares. *Rx. of Cantarium.* of cantarides, their heads, wings and legs being cast away. \mathfrak{z} j. sharp leauen. \mathfrak{z} ss. with vineger and *aqua vite*, commixe them and apply them. If the vertigo be caused by the consent of the stomak (that is) if humors cōtained in the mouth of the stomacke, doe send vp vapours to the braine, and so cause the vertigo: it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. *Rx. of dill a handfull, seed of radish and rapes. ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. roots of radish. \mathfrak{z} ss. boile them in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & put thereto oximell scillicet \mathfrak{z} j. ss. commixe them and make a porion, and minister it blood warme after meat immediatly: & if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapiera Galeni*: or with pilles that be good for the stomacke, called *stomachicae* for that cause, or with decoction of mirabolanes citrine or chebuli, or with manna, or syrup of roses solutiue, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vse commonly after meat to eat some restrictiue thing that will close the mouth of the stomacke, & hinder the ascending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon sine speciebus*, & quinces or restrictiue peares, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke beetes annointed vpon the temples helpeth the vertigo. Also if forhernwood be boyled in wine, or in oximell, and drunke warme, it is a most effectuell remedie to cure it perfectly.*

Cure of the Vertigo that commeth of the stomacke. Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the frenesie.

PHRENETIS in Greeke and in Latine is a disease, wherein the minde is hurt, and doth differ onely from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the frenesie, and therefore the frenesie may be called a continuall madnes and fury ioyned with a sharp feuer. Galen saith that the frensie is an inflammation of the braine or of the filmes therof. *Aetius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, causing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of frenesies (as Galen doth witnesse in his fourth book *de locis affectu. cap. 40.*) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is imagination, cogitation and memorie, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be freneticke, which can iudge rightly of those things that they see as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being freneticke are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but only in imagination they erre. There be other some freneticke which do erre both in sense and cogitation (that is) both in imagination and reason, and doe therewith also loose their memorie. The frenesie is caused either of abundance of blood, or of choler, occupying the brain or the

Three kinds of frenesies.

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Vitalis ratio.

filmes therof. And if the choller wherof the disease engendreth be burnt, the frenesie is most vehement & more pernicious then any other. Those that be freneticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the most part they can nor sleepe. Sometime they haue troublesome sleepes, so that they rise vp, and leap, and cry out furiously, they babble words without order or sense, being asked a question, they answer not directly, or at the least rashly, and that with loud voice, especially if you speak gently to them. Their eyes be bloodshot and bleared, they rub them often, sometime they are dry and sometime full of sharp teares. Their tong is rough, and blood will often drop out at their nose. Moreouer they pull motes & flocks from the bedding & clothes about them. Their pulses be small & weake, and somewhat hard & sinowy, they fetch their breath but seldome. Note that they which haue the frenesie caused of blood, they laugh in their madnes. But those that be fretick through choler, do rage furiously, so that they cannot be ruled without bands, & such do vse to forget all things that they doe or saye, so that some of them, when they require the chamber pot, doe forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to restore the vessell again. As touching the prognostication of this disease, Galen and all other learned Physicians do confesse that it is most sharp & most perilous, and is indeed vncurable & deadly for the most part. Hippocrates saith in his 72. aphorisme of his fourth booke, that vrine white & cleare in those that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the sicke be vsed in this sort. If it be winter, let him lie in a warme place, if it be somer, let his lodging be in a coole place, let the aier & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerse pictures in the place. And for that some be troubled with the light, and some with darknes, it is best to trie them in both, and to lay him in the light, which is afraid of darknes, and contrary he that is offended at the light let him be in a dark place. But if the sicke person do find no difference in the places, then, if he be strong, let him haue light, if weake, keep him in a darke place. Let his dearest frends come to him, & let the sometime speake gently & softly vnto him, & sometime rebuke him sharply. Let his meate at the first be pusan broth, or husked barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulsa* (that is) water and hony sodden together, or in hony of roses. Boile in his brothes endiue, succory, lettuse, mallowes, and such like, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. When the disease decreaseth, you may giue him scaly fishes, such as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him pomegranats and cherries. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle Cinamon or barley hath bene boyled; you may commixe with it sirupe of violetttes, or of roses or of water lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but seldome, and litle at once. When signes of concoction appeare in the vrine, & the vehemency of the feuer is slaked, if then the sicke do lacke strength, you may giue him small ale. Moreouer let the sicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is possible; if he be rich let seruants hold him, if poore, bind him, for inordinate mouing diminisheth strength. Also a bath of sweet water is good for him, if the body be dry and rimped, but he must vse it blood warme. For so it cooleth & moisteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drines & ouermuch watching, but

but take heed you vse not bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer perturbations of the mind do hurt frenetick persons exceedingly, & therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choller in the. For the cure, if the strength of the patiēt will suffer, let him bleed forthwith, for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vtermoſt veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much blood as strength will suffer. But take heed you let him not bleed vntill he sound, as many rashly doe, for it is better to take lesse then you should doe, the body being much weakened by vehement motion. You must take good heed, least the sicke doe priuily take away the band off his arme, or loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength doe forbid blood letting, then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the back bone, which be profitable, for that they draw back the humors that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed made in this sort. *Rx.* Mallow leaues, violet leaues, endiue, & lettuce. ana. *M. j.* of barley decorticate. *℥. j.* sebesten. num. *ii.* seeds of gourdes, melons & cucumbers. ana. *℥. iij.* seeth all these in sufficiēt quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & take of the decoction. *℥. xij.* of *castia fistula* newly drawn. *℥. j.* of mell *rosarum*. *℥. j.* of oile of violets. *℥. iij.* of salt. *℥. j.* con. mixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly, put to it of *Hierapiera*, or of *Electuariū de succo rosariū*. *℥. j.* Binding of the extreme parts of the body profit much to diuert the humors frō the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cōmend *Subiū* with the conserues of roses, & I my self haue proued it in this order to be most excellēt as followeth *Rx. g. 12.* made in very fine powder, & put it into claret wine. *℥. iij.* & let it stand hours. *30.* & euery 6 or 7 houre shake it; and at the 30 hours end, poure it from the powder, & let him drink it with a lile sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors frō the head, as also to rub the feet with salt & vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the hed with oile of roses, or vineger of roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed, cannot safely abide actuall cold, nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of nightshade, & of plantain, or the distilled waters of the, or such like herbs. If the euill be very vehement, moistē his face continually with oile of water, wherein the tops of poppy haue bin soddē. You may also vse odors to his nose of roses, violets, water lillies, & such like. Also annoint his nostrils within and his forehead w the iuyce of the foresaid hearbs. For you must endeuer to astonie & dull the brain, which burneth extremely by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as do prouoke sleep, as this ointment following or such like. *Rx. Pnguenti populeo.* *℥. ij.* oile of violets. *℥. iij.* seed of henbane, & bark of mandrak roots. ana. *℥. j.* of opium *g. ij.* of saffrō. *g. iij.* vineger a lile, white wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed blud warme to the head, *Rx.* flours of violets, red roses, & water lillies. ana. *M. j.* barley decorticate. *℥. j.* seeds of white popy. *℥. ij.* seeds of lettuce. *℥. iij.* seeth the in sufficient quantity of water vnto the third part, & make an embrocatiō. You shall make the decoctiō of more force, if you ad to it leaues of henbane, nightshade, poppy heads,

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clister.

A purging position.

Localia.

Pnguentum.

Embrocha.

mandrak apples, or roots, & a litle vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, poppy heades, or mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drink water wherein poppy or henbane seed hath bene sodden, or some somnoriferous compound, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *philonium*, or such like, in ministering whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining therof. Besides note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines aswell inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease, by ouermuch cooling you may turne the frenesie into a lethargie, wherby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more. Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to proooke sleepe, for in such as be weake (as *Trallianus* saith) somnoriferous potions doe no small hurte, and sometime they kill. At the last when the disease is awaged, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chaunceth the third day: you may apply discussiue medicins which haue vertue to disperse the remanant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, marsh mallowes and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining,) doe apply to the head, hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the louns of a weether hore. But take good heede that no such thing be applied in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemencie therof, for so you should increase the inflammation and the feuer, and make the sick in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long, you may boile in the embrocation *serpillum* that is, wild tyme or sauery. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of subtil substance, and will worke his force through the scul. When the frenetick person is recovered, let him eschue drunkenness, idleness, variety and corruption of meates, and especially the burning heat of the sunne. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the frenesie, but also a remedie against immoderate watching, and rauing in any sorte engendred by feuers, when the patient is so vexed by them, (although they come by consent, and be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessaric to remedie them least the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

Lethargus in Greeke and in Latin also, is a disease contrary to the frenesie for it causeth sluggishnes & an inexpugnable desire of sleeping, some call this disease in Latin *Veternus*. They that be takē with this disease, do forget all things, whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulness, and *Arges* is slothfull or dull, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dull obliuion, and therefore may be called in Latine *Obluius iners*. It is caused of fleume, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moistneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleep. The fleume doth putrify in the brain, & therby causeth a feuer which is alwaies annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke de *Methodo medendi*). Also they haue alwayes a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, and striketh seldome, and is watery (that is) it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome & weakly, they are continually sluggish & sleepey, and can scarcely by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime

open

Discontentia.

Mō.
apō.
Causa.

Signa.

open their eyes, if you cry loud to them, and shut them again forthwith, they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Ofte times being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessell, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquide: but contrariwise many are costieue. Their vrine is like beastes vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweat all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth lie be light and warm. Let his meates be such as doe extenuate, cut, and dry, and let them be seasoned with *apium*, anyse, commin, pepper, cinamon cloues, and such like. Let the sick eat birdes that liue vpon mountaines, and chickens, partrich, thrush and such like. For pot herbs let him vse *Asparagus*, fennell, percelly, and such like. Also giue him broth made with barley or oatmeale, or *alica*, with oximell or peniroyall. Let his drinke be hidromel (that is) water and hony sodden together, mead or waterie, thin white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme partes for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else doe let) it is good forthwith to let blood. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much blood as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let blud, the must the bowels be scoured with sharp clisters, wherof you shal find examples in the chapter of Apoplexia. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of Hysop in hony & water, or with time, peneroyall, *mel rosarum*, or oximell commixed with syrupe of borage, or infusion of roses, and waters of hysope, betony, marioram, & borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell fleume, wherof you shall find examples in the next Chap. following. In the meane season apply to the head *oxyrhodum* (that is) vineger of roses, and that in the beginning, for the humour is to be repelled, & driuen back from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with pellitory, pepper, salt & vineger & bindings of the extreme partes. Moreouer apply to his nostrils odours which will awake him, as be these, *Castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, tarre, galbanum, sulphur, harts horne, sothernwood, or goates horne burnt a litle, and holden to the nostrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boile tyme, peniroyall, and organ in vineger, and hold that decoction to the nose of the sick, that the fume ascending to the braine may cut, & deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the pallat of the mouth with strong and sharp medicins, as with mustard and hony, *mithridatum*, theriaca, powder of pellitory. And you must endeouour to plucke out the fleume that sticketh there with your finger. Sometime also you may prouoke sneeving with *Castoreum*, or pepper, or *Eleborum*, and if they can vse it, let them gargarise. And if by this meanes the disease be not disolued, then shaue the head, and apply to it bags of salt or, milium, or such like. Or make this decoction following, & let it runne on high vpon the fore part of the head. R. wilde tyme, hysope & sauery with a litle *Castoreum*, and boile them in oile & vineger, and vse it. Moreouer it profiteth to apply a sinapismus, made of figges and mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part of the head cup-

Villusatio.

Curatio.

Localia.

Castoreum.

ping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioint of the neck, partly easily and partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with castoreum. (And as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunke with oximel an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life and health. You may minister. \mathfrak{z} j. therof with. \mathfrak{z} j. of oximel, or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua mulsa*. Besides you must often prouoke nature to expell excrementes with clisters and such things that prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oile of frew, wherin a litle *Castoreum* is mixed, you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuat and cut grosse and clammy humors, as be the decoctions of *Apium*, fennell, maidenhaire and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow down such potions often, and therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the lethargy it continueth long; if strength do permit you may minister *Hiera ex colocynthide*, and prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforesaid. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time, but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heat of the bath: at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bathe with sharpe sope, as with wine lies burnt, with mustard seed, pellitory, pepper, laurell berries, quicke lime, adding double as much nitrum.

CHAP. XVII.

*Of Memory lost.**Causa.*

Memory *deperdita*, the losse of memory chaunceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused in the lethargy and other soporiferous diseases. It commeth to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulness. Which when it chaunceth, then a colde distempere is the cause that the memory is perished or grievously hurt. This coldnes hath sometimes moistnes ioyned with it, and sometime drines: sometime any one of the former distempers may cause this disease alone. Therefore the Physitian must diligently discern the causes. The causes of this disease be either external or internal; if they be internal, either abundance of fleume, or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humors abounding, then must it needes come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into obliuion, or if medicins were ministred inwardly, or applied outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour with study & watching or such like. If the memory be but a litle hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but litle cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *Stultitia*, (that is) foolishnes or doltishnes, & both these do come of one disposition, but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if only a dry distemper occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euil, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sick. If only a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heauy and enclined to sleepe, and their sleeps be long and troublesome. If

Signa.

cold

cold beioyned with moisture, it ingendreth the lethargy and *Carus*, wherof we will entreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue lost their memory you must obserue their sleeps, whether they be ouersleepy, or in a mean, or sleepe nor at all, for so shall you finde what distempere doth most abound. Besides you must marke whether they auoid any thing at the nose, or whether any thing distill from the head by their mouth, or whether those parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewise coniecture the distempere abounding. And if sleume be cause of the euil, you shal perceiue it not only by immoderate sleepe, and abundance of excrements descending from the braine (as is aforesaid) but also by the disposition of the sicke, by his age, & his complexion, by the time of the yere, the region, the state of the aire, & the diet that he vsed before. For all those or the most part of them encline to cold & moisture. Likewise if melancholy abounding be cause of the disease, you shal know it for that the sicke is not sleepey at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: besides the state of his body and all other circumstances about rehearsed encline to colde & drinesse. His diet must be diuerse according to the diuersity of the causes. But whatsoeuer the cause be, let the aire that the sicke remaineth in, be inclining to heat, and let his lodging be light, let not his windowes be north nor south, for the one cooleth and the other filleth the head. Let him eschue much sleepe, specially in the day time, & vpon a full stomack. But note, if the disease be caused of a cold & moist distempere, then the whole order of his diet must be hote and dry. But if the cause be cold and dry, then must the diet be altogether such as wil heat and moisten. As touching the cure if losse of memory be caused by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by sounding often, & so ouermuch drines do hurt the memory, then minister no medicines, but onely restore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborat, and strength renewed, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requisit for such a diet, you shall finde it in the Chapter of the feuer heetike. If the memory be lost by extreme age, then phisick wil nothing auail. But only they must content theselues with diet conuenient; but if the memory faile sodainly, the other members of the body being safe, then the falling sicknes is to be feared, or the palsey, or the *Apoplexy*. And therefore in such a case you must prouide diligently by al meanes, that no such thing chace as is to be feared. You may preuent those diseases by the same remedies that you would vse in the cure of them being present. And if the memory faile by means of other diseases, as through the lethargy or pestilence, the medicins for cure therof are to be vsed. The whole scope of curing the disease, if it come only of a cold distemper of the braine consisteth in heating. You must therefore minister medicines that haue vertue to heat aswel inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you must annoint the head with warme oile, & that in sommer. In winter annoint it with oil of Ireos comixed with sharp vinegar, & sometime boile wild time, & calamint, & such like in the oile, & so vse it. Some do ad to it pepper, & laurel berries. Also *Castoreum* is profitable being comixed with oile, & annointed vpo the hinder part of the head. Also this ointment is very good. *Rx.* of oile made of tile stones, called *Oleū de Lateribus*, & oile of *Castoreū*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . roots of accorus, & valerian. ana. \mathfrak{d} . j. pellitory & rew of ech. \mathfrak{d} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . with waxe suffi-

*Viscus ratio.**Curatio.**Unguentum.*

Sacculus.

cient make an ointment, and annoint the hinder part of the head therewith being shauen, and apply this quilt vpon it. *R.* floures of rosemary, balme, and lauender, ana. *M.* floures of Elder, *M. j.* stæchas. *℥. iij.* nutmegges, wood of aloes, and maces, ana. *℥. j.* powder them, and stich them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make many such like medicines by examples in other Chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the floures of betony, rosemary, lauender, spicknard & balme, adding to them pepper, Cloves, Cinamon, & such like odoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together, minister *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noisome. Afterwardes let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a sinapismus may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of fleume abounding, then you must first prepare, and concoct that humor, with *mel rosarum*, oximel, sirupe of infusion of roses, with decoctions of betony, marioram, hisope, time, and such like: after the administration wherof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of mirabolanes chebulorum, and agaricke trochiscat, to the which you may adde of the sirupe of infusion of roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphenicon*. And if the matter through his grossenes, will not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pills, *arabice, auree*, or *aggregatiue*, commixing some of them with agarick trochiscat and so make pilles with hony of roses, or sirupe of stæchados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutiōs. After purging it is good to minister vnto them *Castoreum* or shauing of iuory. *℥. j.* with *aqua mulsæ*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *diambra*, *diamoscha dulce*, or *mithridatū*, or *theriaca* with *aqua mulsæ* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, and poure them downe from on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is loofest or thinnest. You may make your embrocation thus. *R.* of hisope, serpillum, and time, ana.

Embroche.

M. betony, marioram, & floures of cammomill, ana pug. *℥.* floures of stæchados. *℥. iij.* make a decoction, and adde thereto of *Castoreum*. *℥. j.* of vineger. *℥. j.* & make an embrocation. It is good also to annoint the first and second spondil in the necke, and the hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oiles of nutmegges, of *Castoreum*, of pepper, or *Oleum costium*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this sort. *R.* hisope, marioram, and floures of stæchados, ana. *℥. j.* *Castoreum*, nutmegs, spicknard, maces, ana. *℥. j.* the barks of frækinfence, masticke, and wood of aloes, ana. *℥. j.* redde roses dried the waight of al, beat them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill cease not by this meanes, then last of all, vse a sinapismus. If memory be lost by abundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of borage, and fumitory mixed together, and adding sirupe of infusion of roses, and waters of betony, hops and baulme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. *R.* *Mirabolanorum indorum*. *℥. iij.* sene, and epithimum, ana. *℥. ij.* floures of hoppes, fumitory, & borage, ana. *℥. ij.* *℥.* make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolve therein of fine manna. *℥. ij.* of *Diacatholicon*. *℥. vij.* or *Diasene*. *℥. ℥.* & make a potion. As touching outward medicins, let them rather encline to moisture the drines. As by adding to the ointments before prescribed, oiles

*Sacculus.**Decoffio.*

of cammomill, dill, & sweete almondes. Likewise in making embrocations and quiltes, you may withdraw such medicines as dry, & adde moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Phisitian may not onely haue a reasonable Method, to cure ech kind of obliuion, but also to remedy any dulnes or weakenes of the memory. For that it commeth of the same causes that memory lost doth come, although they be not so vehement, where the memory is weakened.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

Carus in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin is a disease, in which both sense & mo- Carus. 06
 uing is altogether takē away, and yet their breathing remaineth safe. The
Arabians call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the lethargie, for Subeth.
 that they will answere to a question demanded, that haue the lethargy, and do
 not lie altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe
 sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say
 nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus Aegineta* noteth, a vehem-
 ent feuer doth vse to go before *Carus*, and in the lethargy it followeth rather.
 Also *Carus* vseth to succeed other syntomats & accidents. For it commeth of-
 ten in the fits of feuers, and in the falling sicknes, and in pressing of the braine,
 as wel when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that couer
 the foremost ventricule of the braine, be thrust downe. But the lethargy hath a
 certaine peculiar consistence of himselfe. Also *Carus* doth differ from the Apo-
 plexy, for that in it the breathing is very straight, so that the sicke can with
 much a doe scarce breath at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in
 his fourth booke *de Locis affectis*) hath his breath at liberty. *Carus* is caused of Cause.
 a cold, grosse, and viscous flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may ea- Signa.
 sily know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this di-
 sease they are altogether in a dead sleep, and their eies alwaies shut. As for the Vitiis.
 diet, & the cure of those that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs, that Cura.
 haue the lethargy: whereof we spake before (in the 16. Chapt.) sauing that in
 this disease you must vse things that be of greater force to extenuate, cut, and
 deuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply emplasters, and other medi-
 cines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, for be-
 cause it is stuffed with fleume which doth coole it and moisten it. Wherof you
 shall finde examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or taking.

Catoche or *Catalepsis* in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio*, *Detentio*,
 & *deprehensio*. The new writers in phisicke doe call it *Congelatio*, in English Congelatio.
 it may be called Congelation or taking. It is a sodaine detention and taking
 both of mind and body, both sense and mouing being lost, the sicke remaining
 in the same figure of body wherein he was taken, whether he sit or lie, or stand;
 or whether his eies be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the le-
 thargy and the frensy, for it commeth of a melancholy humour for the most
 part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it a-
 greeth with the lethargy, and in respect of drinesse with the frensy. Here-

Cause.

Signa.

Pili.

Curatio.

upon it commeth that they which haue this disease, are neither like the freneticke altogether, nor like them that haue the lethargy. This disease is caused sometime of abondance of blood flowing to the head and replenishing it. But for the most part (as *Aetius* witnesseth) it is caused of a cold and dry melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder parts of the head and braine. This disease inuadeth a man sodainly, and taketh away speach and sense from him, he heareth nothing, hee aunswereth nothing, his breath is scarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulse is small and weake and very thicke. His egestion and vrine are detained, or else they come forth in small quantity, and that is not in respect of drines, for the sicke sometime doth abound with much moisture, but for lacke of sense. Their face is sometime red, and that is when the euil is engendred of blood, and sometime it is swart, and that is when melancholy causeth the disease. Moreouer the eies in this disease remaine immouable, as though they were frozen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* saith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer shut, but in this disease they sometime remaine open. The diet in this euill must be diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. Let his food bee prisan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be *aqua mulsa* well boiled, or barley water or small ale, for seeing they fume not into the head, they doe much good. It is hurtful for them to drinke water, for it causeth windines, swelleth the splene, and quencheth not thirst. As concerning the cure, if the face of the sicke be ruddy, and blood seeme to abound, if strength permitte and yeares, let him forthwith bleede on the outward most vaine of the arme, and let him bleede according to his strength. Afterward if the head be hore, apply those things that coole. For that purpose you may boile the shelles of poppy heads in oile, and annoint the head therewith. But in other, that haue their face swart, and so haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you must first cleanse the guts with clisters, made of floures of borage, buglosse, fumitory, time, epithimum, rootes of polipody, leaues of sene, adding to it oiles of cammomill, and dill, and *casia*, *diacatholicon*, *diasena*, or *confectio hamech* in conuenient quantity. Whereof you shall finde examples afterward in the Chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not soluble by this meanes, then it is not amisse to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Eleborus niger*. The head must be annointed with oile, wherein wilde time is sodden, or with oile of lillies or dill, or such like, and that you must doe chiefly when the head seemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare grosse and thicke, you must giue him to drinke the decoction of dill, apium, calamint, and such like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth also to annoint all their whole body with oile of dill specially in winter. Also they that haue trembling with this disease may haue ʒ i. of *Castoreum* comixed with *aqua mulsa*, and poured into their mouth. The rest that concerne the cure of this disease may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the frenesie and lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of melancholy following.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead sleepe.

Coma in Greeke, *sopor*, or *gravis et profundus somnus* in Latin. It may be called in English dead sleepe. It is a disease wherein the sicke cannot awake, nor

keepe

keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, and is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hercof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *coma* or *sopor*, or else *coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eies, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference between these two kinds. The sleeping *coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by over-
Causa. much moistening of the braine, as it chaunceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers only hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour partes, and moistening the braine doe cause this euill. Moreover sometime only cold, occupying the fore part of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnes ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *coma* (that is) the watching drowlines, it is caused of fleume mixed with choller, & for the most part it commeth for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open there eyeliddes. The party that is vexed with the *soporiferous* and sleepy *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neither iaw open, and
Signa. as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching *Coma*, they speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the frenesie, and partly such as in the lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according to the diuersity of the euils. For in the *soporiferous* and sleepy *Coma*, you
Curatio. must vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, and the lethargy, & to speake briefly after the whole body be purged, if the euil be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine made with sharpe vineger and roses, and cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosegthrills. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of dill, and cammomil warmed, and if the cold be great, you may sometime boile in oile, peniroyall and dill and vse it. But if the euil be caused of cold and moisture ioined together: then must it be cured, as the lethargy. If it come of weakenes and lacke of strength, then you must vse restoratiues to recover it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines partly as the frenesie, and partly as the lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if scum abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the lethargy: but if contrariwise choller doe most abound then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the frenesie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

Apoplexia in Greeke and Latin is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth suddenly loose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriving both of sense and

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Curatio.

moving throughout the whole body comming sodainly with let and hurt of all voluntarie functions. If this stopping of the braine come in one halfe of the bodie onely, then it is called *Paralyfis* in Greeke, in English the Palsey, wherof we will speake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is caused of a flegmaticke humour, that is cold, grosse and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities, and chiefly drunkenesse doth engender. Also it is caused by a fall or a blow which shaketh and bruiseth the braine, and causeth humours to flow thither. Also very cold aire which doth thicke and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth sometime cause this disease: it may also be caused of a grosse melancholy humor. Concerning signes, there goeth before this disease a full and sharpe paine of the head, and a swelling of the vaines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eyes, also cold of the extreme parts without cause, panting of the whole body, slownesse to moue, and gnashing of the teeth while they sleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, black, like rust and canker in mettall, and hath a residence like meale. They that fall into this disease, do lacke sense altogether, they lye as they were a sleepe with their eyes shut, and doe snort. The vehemency and greatnesse of this disease may be discerned by the impediment that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth vehemency of the disease, and that it is a great and strong Apoplexy. But when there is a litle impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but litle hurt in the braine, and so you may accompt it a small and weake Apoplexie. The worst and strongest Apoplexie is, wherein the breathing is so diminished that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almost as cuill, wherein the breath stoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This disease for the most part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmatick complexion, and which do vse such a diet as encreaseth fleume. But if so be it inuade any yong person, and that in sommer season, it is most perillous. This disease is vncurable, or at the least is seldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Apho. of his second booke. It is impossible (saith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexie, and not easie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth speedy death. Besides if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the most part it departeth leaving the palsey behind it, either in the whole body, or in some part thereof. Often also it corrupteth the memory, wherupō we may cōclude that remedies are not to be vsed against a strong Apoplexie, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the signes aforesaid, although there be small hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* testifieth) conuenient remedies being ministred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in some. Those therfore whose cure is not altogether desperate if there be signs of plenitude & fulnes, & strength permit also, must be let blood on both the *Cephalica* veins. But you must foretell the perill, for bloodletting doth either kill the or deliuer the: so that if after bloodletting (as *Aetius* saith) both mouing & sēse come not vnto him again, there is no more hope. You must not draw away much blood at once, but rather at sundry times, and you must haue regard to his pulse, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Besides you must prouoke him to the stoole with

with sharpe clisters in this sort. R^x. sage, origan, betony, and rew. ana. M. j. calamint, hysope and penitroyall. ana. M. ss. seeds of fenell, fcelis, and ammi. ana. ʒ. iij. centory the lesse. M. j. roots of polipody. ʒ. vj. fine agaricke. ʒ. iij. pulpe of *co-
loquintida*. ʒ. ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consu-
med: then take of that decoction. ʒ. xv. of *Hierapiera*, and *Benedicta laxativa*. ana.
ʒ. ʒ. of *Electuarium nidum*. ʒ. iij. of *Diaphanicon*. ʒ. ij. of *melrosarum* clarified. ʒ. j. ʒ.
of oiles of laurell, rew, and *Castoreum*. ana. ʒ. j. of sal gemme. ʒ. j. ʒ. commix them
all and make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries in this disease is very com-
mendable, made of *Coloquintida*, agaricke, blacke hellebore, and such like, after
this sort. R^x. of hony boyled to a height ʒ. ij. of *Coloquintida*, agaricke and helle-
bore. ana. ʒ. ij. of sal gemme. ʒ. j. beat them into powder, commixe them with
the hony and make suppositaries vj. fingers long, & hang a thrid in them, that
you may draw them out when you list. You may also put into the suppositaries
Hierapiera or pills *Cochie*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quan-
tity of warme oile, wherein wilde time, calamint, dill, and such like haue first
bene boyled. Also the extreme parts must be bound strongly, and vehemently
chafed with the decoction of the root of floure de luce, many cupping glassses
must be fastned to the shoulders. The head must be shauen, & annointed with
oiles of cammomill, dill and rew, or with oile wherein the aforesamed hearbs
haue bene boyled. You must apply to the nosethrils such things as by their o-
dour can stir and raise vp the sicke, as be opoponax, *castoreum*, *sagapenum*, *gal-
banum*. Also you may vse medicines to prouoke sneezing made of white helle-
bore, *castoreum*, and such others rehearsed in the former Chapters. Or it pro-
fiteth much to vse embrocations, made of cammomill, melilote, sage, penitroy-
all, marioram, origan, calamint, sauery, and hysope boyled in equall portions of
wine and water. But yet it is better to vse dry medicins to the head, as be *sina-
pismi*, made after this sort. R^x. *Olei costini*. ʒ. j. oiles of *Castoreum* and *Euphorbium*. ana.
ʒ. iij. mustard seed ʒ. ij. *Castoreum*. ʒ. j. *sagapenum*. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Euphorbium*. ʒ. j. vineger.
ʒ. ij. with sufficient quantity of wax, make an emplaister. Also you must open
their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of I-
reos to prouoke vomit, and to cause the grosse humors that be in the mouth to
be cast out. Also their fundament must be annointed with such medicines as
dissolue windines, as be rew, commin, nitrum & hony. When the euill is asswa-
ged, you must giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with
hony. If his speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must
fasten cupping glassses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in
like sort vnder the thort ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a
wagon or horflitter. Let his drink be mulla, or oximell. Let him drink no wine.
After 21. daies be past the sick may enter a bath, but as touching medicins re-
quisit for the rest of the cure, you shal find them abundantly in the Chap. follo-
wing. And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

66

Sinapismus.

Vomitus

Fictus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

P Aralyssin Greeke, Resolutio in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease
wherin the one halfe of the body either the right side or the left doth loose

both sense and mouing. Also sometime the palsey chaunceth in one member onely, (as for example) in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the palsey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke *Παραπληγία*. And therfore the word *Paralysis* is a more generall name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the palsey, sometime sense onely is lost, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both sense and mouing: it is specially called resolution of the sinewes or palsey, when mouing is lost. Why sometime feeling is lost only, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together, Galen declareth at large in his first booke *de symptomatum causis*, cap. 4. & therfore it need not be here reherfed: notwithstanding it shal not be amisse to answer briefly to that question. First note that aswell the faculty of mouing as of sense floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the sinewes to the instruments of motion and sense, & therefore it must needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or stopped by any cause, that it cannot discend to the instruments of mouing or of sense: that they should lose mouing or sense according as the sinewes be affected. And therefore in those members that participate two kinds of sinewes, as the eyes and the tong doe, the former question is easy to be soluted, for that they haue one kind of sinewes for motiō and another kind for sense, & so the one may be hurt, & the other safe, or they may be both hurt, and so both sense and motion perish. But in members that haue but one kind of sinewe, the question is more obscure to answer. In such members therefore, if (the skin being taken away) the muscle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the sinewes be much stopped, then hath it lost both sense and mouing, for it is vnpossible that the sense of a muscle should be lost, & the motion remaine still. The reason is, for that lesse of the animal faculty is requisite for feeling, then for mouing, so that there may come sufficient quantity of that faculty to a muscle to cause feeling in it, and yet not enough to cause it to moue also, and therefore a naked muscle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kind of sinewe, can not moue and lacke sense. But either it hath sense and lacketh mouing, & then his hurt is but litle, or it hath lost both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the sinewe is altogether stopped. But where there is a member that hath sinews placed in the muscles to cause mouing, and other sinewes spread in the skinne to cause feeling (for the sinewes that are dispersed in the muscles doe not send out branches to the skinne as some suppose (I say it may come to passe in that member, that sometime it may loose feeling alone, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muscle may loose his sense of feeling, the sinewe being affected which is dispersed in it, and yet the sinewe that runneth in the muscle may be safe, and therefore the muscle may moue. But if the sinewe which is spred in the muscle be affected, and the sinewe that commeth to the skinne remaine safe, that member cannot moue, & yet it hath sense and feeling left, & that commeth to passe because the sinewe of the one is hurt, and the other hath his sinewe safe: although they spring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the sinewes be affected, as well that that commeth to the muscle, as

why in the palsey sometime sense alone, sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together perish.

that

that which cometh to the skinnē, then both sense of feeling & moving also perish and are lost, & that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discern that, whē you know exactly the cōmon original & spring of euery sinew, in cōsidering diligētly whether the brain it self be affected, or the backe bone at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be known by the Anatomie of sinewes, and therefore it behoueth to be well exercised therein, for in the palsey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected (I meane not the whole braine: for then is the Apoplexy engendred) but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shall know it, for that the palsey or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the bodie. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be deprived of sense and moving, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the back bone, but the one halfe only of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the side taken with the palsey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be resolued and paralyticke, then is the back bone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning & vpper end of it, but then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chauce one onely part to be resolued and taken with the palsey, you must search from whence the sinewes comē that be contained in it, which you may easily find, if you be well exercised in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect and hurt be great, all the inferiour partes beneath those spondils affected, be resolued & taken with the palsey, but if the hurt be but litle, & the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour partes of the one side be resolued. Therefore you must first learne by Anatomie to finde the place affected hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backbone the members resolued haue their sinewes. The palsey and resolution of members is ingendred of abundance of grosse & clammy humors, which stop the sinewes & hinder the animal faculty y it cannot come frō the fountain to the mēbers. It may also be caused of immoderat cold in snow or vehemēt frost. Also it may be caused by an inflāmatio, or a *Sirrhus* (which is a hard swelling, without sense) chācing in the backbone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinowy parts, wherby the sinewes are crushed & pressed, & so stopped that the animal faculty cannot passe. As also the sinewes may be crushed together by some externall cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like meanes & so cause resolution, also whē there is luxation or fracture in any of the spondils of the back, or in other iointes or bones, there may follow resolution by meanes of compression and crushing together of sinewes. Also resolution or palsey may be caused by means of a wound, or an ylcere, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular sinewes. There neede not many signes to know this disease by: for any may iudge easily, that part or member to haue the palsey which is destitute of moving: to know of what cause it proceeded, you may partly learn by the relation of the sicke, and partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7. Chapter fol. 10. where headach caused of scume is intreated of. The palsey is no acute & sharp disease, but of long cōtinuance, & for the most part curable.

To know if the
braine be affected.

To know if the
marrow of the
backe cause the
palsey.

Of mēbers particularly taken
with the palsey

cause.

Prognostica.

It chaunceth for the most part in old folke, and in the winter time. The palsey that commeth by a sinewe seperate and cut a sunder is, (as *Aegineta* saith) vncurable, and so is that which commeth by ouerthwart incisions of the back, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paraliticke do wax lesse, or chaunge his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not curable. For it declareth those parts not onely to be destitute of the animal faculty, but also of the naturall, and after a sort of the vitall also. Their diet must be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the sicke therefore remaine in an aier, that is hote and drie, and in the first three dayes he may vse altogether abstinence, or let him content himselfe with *aqua mulsa*, or a litle ptisan broth. Afterward giue him meats of good iuice, light of digestion, & let the be roasted, let him eate chiefly birdes of the mountaines, and partrich, reate egges, almondes and pyne nuttes. For pot hearbes let him vse fenell, parceely, hyssop, marioram, sage and sauorie. Let him eschew fish, fruite, and all things that be colde and moist. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to sustaine as much thirst, as he can possibly. Let him drinke *mulsa*, wherein sage or Cinnamon hath bene boyled, or let him vse to drinke, that which the barbarous Phisitions at this day call Hippocras: made after this sorte. *Rx.* of chosen Cynamon. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of ginger. \mathfrak{z} . β . of long pepper, graines, and galingale. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of Cardamomes \mathfrak{z} .j. β . of nutmegges, and cloues and mace. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. boyle them all in three quartes of running water, vntill a pinte and a halfe be consumed, then straine it hard, and with halfe a pound of sugar make it pleasant to drinke, he may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept so long tyme from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the disease, and let it be thinne and alayed. Mouing and exercise if he can vse them, are very good for him. Let him eschue sleepe on the day. Let his night sleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flye perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, state of the body, tyme of the yeare, and such like permit, it is good to beginne with blood letting, speciallie if there besignes of plenitude. But you must drawe awaie blood moderatelie, least the bodie be cooled ouermuch, and you must let blood on the whole and sound side. Then a fewe daies after bloodletting, you may clesne the intestines with clisters made thus. *Rx.* of mallowes, holyhockes, mercury, cammomill, sage, and betony. ana. *M.* j. of *stachas* \mathfrak{z} . β . of rewe, and calamint. ana. *M.* β . of seedes of fennell, and ammeos. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. boile these in sufficient water vntill the third part be consumed, then take of that decoction. \mathfrak{ss} .j. of *Benedicta laxativa*. \mathfrak{z} . β . of *Electuarium nidum*. \mathfrak{z} .iij. of hony roses. \mathfrak{z} . β . of oyles of laurell, Ireos, and rewe. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of salt gemme. \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them together and make a clister. Afterward minister vnto him decoctions and sirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors, and make them apt to be purged, whereof you shall finde examples before in the 7 Chapter. The humours being thus prepared minister medicines which doe purge sleume, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by litle and litle to stronger. Besides those purgations which are rehearsed in the seuenth Chapter, aforesaid you may vse *pilule azairer arabice fetide*, with the which you must alwaies commixe agaricke. Neither doth it suffice to purge the patient once, but you must do it so oft, letting 4. or 5. daies passe between ech purging.

The

Pictus ratio.

Ippocras.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clyster

The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to giue vnto him *theriac*, or *mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, gargarismes, odoraments, & such other like, as are reherſed in the 7. chap. And that ſpecially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you muſt rather miniſter ſuch medicins as may corroborate & ſtrengthen it in this ſort. R^x. of *diambra*, *plicis*, *archoticon*, & *diamoschu dulce*. ana. ℥. j. of powder of ſwallowes preparat. ʒ. ſſ. of coriander ſeeds preparate. ʒ. j. of ſugar roſet. ʒ. iij. with ſugar diſſolued in roſe water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth alſo in this diſeaſe to take ʒ. j. of *Caſtoreum*, or of *opopanax*, or *ſagapenum*, in *aqua mulſa*. Alſo *diatrion pipereen* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you muſt annoint the head with hot medecins, as with *Caſtoreum*, mints, laurell berries, oile of Ireos boiled with a litle vineger, & ſuch like. Therefore if coldnes of the wether do not let it, you may ſhaue the hed, & annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the back be affected at the vpper end, where he beginneth, then after the former purgation you muſt in the nape of the necke where the marrow of the backe ſpringeth forth of the braine, vse oiles & ointments which haue vertue to diſſolue & diſcuſſe, but you muſt begin with the weakeſt, as with oiles of camomil, dill, ſpike, lillies, Ireos, nard, nutmeg, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherwith you muſt annoint the nape of the neck, & the reſolued ſide, ſpecially the halfe of the ridge bone: & you muſt wrap the paraliticke members in warme linnen clothes, or in a fox ſkin, to keepe them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of ſage, marioram, cammomill, S. Iohns wort, ſtæchas and roſemary. Afterward you may proceed to ſtronger medicins, as be oiles *coſtium*, *vulpinum*, oiles of rew, & bayes, oiles of *Caſtoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile ſtones, called *Oleum lateribus*, or *Oleum Philoſophorum*. To theſe you may ad theſe ointments, *unguentum aregon*, *unguentum agrippa*, and *unguentum martiaton*, and horte ſimples may be added alſo if you will, as be betonie, ſage, roſemary, galingale, cowſlips, rewe, calamint, pellitory, pepper, *caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. Of theſe you may make an ointment after this ſorte. R^x. of *ung. aregon*, and *martiaton*. ana. ʒ. j. of *unguentum agrippa*. ʒ. ſſ. of oiles *coſtium* and *vulpinum*. ana. ʒ. ſſ. of oile of earth wormes. ʒ. ſſ. of oyle of *caſtor*. ʒ. j. ſſ. of powders of betony, pepper, ſage. ana. ʒ. j. of *Caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. ana. ʒ. ſſ. of galingale, or roots of accorus. ʒ. ij. with wax as much as ſufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus. R^x. of *oleum coſtium*. ʒ. ij. of oile of pepper. ʒ. j. ſſ. oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. ij. of *aqua vita*. ʒ. ij. ſſ. of iuyce of ſage, and cowſlips. ana. ʒ. j. ſſ. of galingale. ʒ. iij. of ſtæchas and roſemary. ana. ʒ. j. of pellitory and pepper. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. ſſ. brufe them and boile them, vntill the *aqua vita* & ipices be conſumed, then ſtraine out the oiles & put to the waxe and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote alſo after this manner. R^x. of bay berries, pellitory & pepper. ana. ʒ. ij. of galingale. ʒ. j. of ſtæchas, betony, and elder. ana. ʒ. j. ſſ. of muſtard ſeed and nigella. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium* and *Caſtoreum*. ana. ʒ. j. of *oleum coſtium*. ʒ. j. ſſ. of oile of pepper. ʒ. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. iij. with waxe & roſin ſufficient make a cerote. Alſo you may make a quilt thus. R^x. biſope, marioram, S. Iohns wort, ſage, rew, and bay leaues. ana. ʒ. ij. ſpike, maſtike, *Caſtoreum* and ſtæchas. ana. ʒ. ij. cloues, maces, and nutmegges. ana. ʒ. ſſ. red roſe leaues dried. M. ſſ. beat

Capitis purgatio

Lozenges.

Unguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus

Fomentum.

them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Also a fomentation may conveniently be made thus. R^x Sage, rosemary, S. Johns wort, cowslips, hyssop, marjoram, betony, penitoyall & calamint, of ech. *M.ß.* boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *Castoreum*. *℥.ij.* of floures of starchas, & lauender. ana. *℥.j.ß.* wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vse the afore said ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heat, & spirits: & if the members themselues cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applied to them, apply the at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the afore said ointments & cerors, so that the members affected be first rubbed & chafed: and if the disease relent not by all these meanes (as *Aetius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or cauterizatiõ by fire where the originall of the affect is. Last of all a hot house or drie bath will profit much, or if they may conveniently come to the, natural baths which spring from brimstone, alome, & salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badenia*, *Ferina*, *Cellences*, & ours in England at Bath. But it is good for them to vse before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horflitter. And this may suffice for the cure of the palsey, occupying one whole side. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but only some other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you must search out that part of the back that is affected. And apply such remedies to it, as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, and there apply the former medecines or their like. Yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected, if the palsey be caused of extreame cold without humors abounding in the bodie, then the place affected being found out and the medicines before rehearsed being applied vpon it, you shall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the brain, nor the member that is paraliticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloodletting, purging, and all other euacuations may be omitted, only vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrhus* of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bond being removed, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the ridge or other bones being out of ioynt or broken do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular sinew: it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Cure of palsey
comming of
other causes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palsey in one member.

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet least those that haue lesse skill, should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greeke *Spasmus Cinius*, and in Latine *Comulso canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease you must let the patient bloud in the veines vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, and giue him *Masticatoris* made after this forme. *Rx.* seeds of *frausacre*, masticke, the roote of pellitorie. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. hysope, organ ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. ss. of mustard seed. \mathfrak{z} .ij. powder them and commixe them with turpentine & wax, and make trochisks to chewe. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the grieve of the patient (that is) to the sinewes that be sprong you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. *Rx.* *Olibanum*, masticke. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *ligr* aloes. \mathfrak{z} .j. cloues, galingale, cinamon, zodoarie, nutmegges, cububes. ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. mirrhe, aloes, *labdanum*, *sarcocol*, *Castoreum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ss. bay berries, pync nuttes. ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. Ireos, *Aristolochie rotunda* *distamus consolidate maioris*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. gumme elemni, *opoponacis*, beniuomen. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. the iuyce of *camepitius*, and the iuyce of cowslips. ana. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. turpentine \mathfrak{z} .j. powder all that is to be powdered, and put all in a limbeck of glasse, and distill it with a soft fire. And that which commeth first will be like water which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keepe also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drink of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine, this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place that the cheeke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoris*, and collusions of mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and linements. Also the Phisition may apply cerots and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient, his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, oyle of rewe, nard, spike, or oyle in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, rewe, comin, or dill, or such like. All are very good: and you may well commixe with them butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things into the bladder by the yard with a serenge. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine, by a fine pipe made of siluer for that purpose called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and poure them into the bladder with a Serenge, this will do maruellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therfore. The palsy of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of vrine, & sperme, and carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuailly you must apply to the loins and the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat, & ye must vse those medecins that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the
tongue.Palsey of the
bladder.Palsey of the
yard.

And *Cassorei* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other palseyes, the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinks that be coole. By these examples you may easily find how to cure other members, that be paraliwicke.

CHAP. XXIIII.
Of the falling sicknesse.
DE EPILEPSIA.

Morbus comi-
tialis.

I
Cause.

2
3

Signa.

Pillu ratio.

Cure of in-
fants.

Epilepsia in Greeke (as Galen saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the whole parts of the bodie, not continually, but that which chaunceth at sundry times, with hurt of the minde and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, & also of the minde. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus comitialis*. There be three differences in this sicknesse or disease. The first is caused, when this sicknesse commeth onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammye fleume, or sharp choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cometh of a grosse humour, then the disease commeth sodainly, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, (that is) when the braine labourth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sicknes is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold ayer, coming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chaunceth verie seldom. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the bodie and mind, sadnesse, forgetfulnesse, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulnesse in it, specially in anger, palenesse of the face, inordinate mouing of the tong, & many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, and they are plucked vp together, they snort, & sometime they cry out, many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is foming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. Galen saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it til he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *Lapis lazuli*, or of goats horne, will declare & shew them that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he goat eaten, or the sauer of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the ayer wherein the sicke remaineth be hot and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleume. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoide all kinde of pulses, fish and wine, especially if it be olde and thicke. Let his drinke be mulsa, or thinne ale: the eating of capers doth maruellously profit. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lecherie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from garlick, onions, mustard, and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderat diet oftentimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therfore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meat, let her eschue carnall copulation, and let

her

her vse for her diet things that be hot and drie, that therby the milke may be hotter and thinner. Anoint the head of the infant continually with oile of dill and Ireos, putting to them the powders of Cipresse, Ireos, maidenhaire, marioram and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hot or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to licke. Also this *Eidigma* is praised of many. R^x fine white sugar. ʒij. oile of sweet almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, & giue it to the childe to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and vnicornes horne. Also hang about the childs necke the root of piony being greene, for it helpeth maruelously. Moreover they that fall into this disease after they be past child's age, you must anoint & make straight those members, which are writhed, & plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must open the mouth, putting a wedge betwene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomit to bring out fleume. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odouraments. Also *pencedanum*, or dog fennell, rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *silphium*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Cassoreum*, or *laserpitium* with oximell. Also when they are raised, you must cast in a sharp clister. They that begin to recover (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine; & this is the cure of a newe and sharpe epilence, therefore now we will treat, how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or verie small ale, & that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let blood in the veine of the hamme, or the ring, finger, and then three or foure daies after you must comfort the body, & it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of wormewood, of hysope, of *stacados*, oximell *scilliticum*, decoction of hysope, rootes of piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations (that is) with *pilule cochie*, *pilule de agarico* and such as purge fleume. Also I iudge *stibium* to be of great force, in this kind being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chap. fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowen this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *oleum de lateribus*: with it anoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, & bast vpon it cotten wool, and let the patient weare it day and night, vj. daies. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth colde, then take the other and do likewise, do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his bodie as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many daies together, and euerie morning and euening let him take these things. The first daye of the powder of the skull of a man burned, one dramme at once, & the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in powder. ʒj. & the third day the powder of piony roots. ʒj. and after those iij. daies, take these powders ech day, till the patient be healed which will be in fortie daies. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicins to purge it in the Chap. of *Melancholia*: howebeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke hellebore, and beat it into fine powder, and to minister one dram at once with *mulsa*, and a litle pepper to it, also you may make pilles therof, and giue them.

Eidigma.

o 6

*Cure of young folkes.**Cure of Epilence in old folkes.**A purging position of stibium.*

o 6

Hiera Galeni

And when the sick is purged enough, bring him to a bath, the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many dayes after comfort the bodie, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *mulsa*, adding to it bitter almonds braided, or *serpillum*, or calamints, or mints, or rewe, and do that three daies. Then shauē the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *pencedanum* infused in vineger, in which *serpillum*, or *Ireos* hath bene sodden. Then againe the bodie being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*, after those things be done, minister sternutaments, *masficatories*, and such things as do purge by the nose, then afterwarde if you thinke good minister a clister. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and emplasters, which haue vertue to discusse and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerse places.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

DE CONVULSIONE.

Spasmos.

1

2

3

*Cause.**Vltima ratio.**Cura of fulnes.**Bloodletting.**Clister.*

Spasmos in Greeke, in Latine *Convulsio*, in English the crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawn and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds or differences. The first is called in Greeke *παραπλοή*, in Latine *Dysentia*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immouable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawn downe to the breast. The third is called in Latin *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawn downe backward to the back & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease you must note that Hippocrates appointeth but only two (that is) fulnes & emptines of the sinewes in the body, & sometime it commeth with biting or stinging of some venomous beast. If the crampe doth take one that is haild, or by & by as soone as the disease commeth or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnes, but when the convulsio commeth after many sweats, vomits, watchings, or drines, then is it caused of emptines. The diet of them that haue convulsion, which commeth of fulnes must be hot and drie. But in them which haue the convulsion caused of emptines, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppings and fat brothes, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all partes of the bodie, vnlesse a feuer be present: for then iuyce of prisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleep. Let them eschue exercises & all things that may empty the body: to be short let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Ethick. The cure of the cramp caused of fulnes, must straight begin with letting of blud, if nothing do prohibit it. It is meet to take away much blood, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by litle & litle you must let blood on the middle veine on the arme. If after bloodletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clister. That part which is drawn must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, and the place must be chafed with oyles of rewe, or *Ireos*, or some other such like, or they must

must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulsion commeth of fleume, then the fleume must first be extenuate, and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleume. Also apply cupping glasses with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the crampe apply it to the haunches, and to the latter knittings of the ioyntes. If the hands be drawen, apply it to the backe and to the ioyntes of the shoulders. Moreouer the head must be purged with Masticatories, gargarises, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twise or thrice let him descend into water of brimstone or alome, or salt water, but let him not tarry in them, least strength faile him: or if there can not be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vie a hot house, or drie bath, or water in which are sodden laurell leaues, sothernwood, peniroyall, wormewood, rewe, sage, S. Iohnswort, marioram & betony, and the places that are drawn ought to be couered with skins of wolues or foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the palsey of the vsing of cold things, but minister often hote medicins, such as be *Theriaca* and *milhridatios*, and such as be hote. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Cassoreum* ministred the quantitie of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it but also the anointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulsion which commeth of emptines & drines is such an euill diseale, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawen, you must nourish with hot oile or *hidraeleum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile is good, and all their whole cure must alwayes be like the cure of E-thicks. If the conuulsion chaunceth by the stroke of some venemous beast in the beginning of the cure: you must labour to draw out the poyson, which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scarifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasses: also you may annoint it with leeke seed, braied with salt, or garlike, or oynions, and after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much haste, you shall open the sore againe with ashes of vrine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with hoarchound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of roses, and layed to the wound is good, because it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome. Therefore they erre much, which say that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applied, doth driue the poyson inwards.

*The crampe
comming of
fleume.*

*Capitis purga-
tio.*

Balneum.

*The crampe
comming of
emptines and
drines.*

Cura veneni

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

DE INCUBONE

E*Phialtes* in Greeke, in latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a diseale, whereas one thinketh himself in the night to be oppressed with a great waight, & beleeueth that something commeth vpon him, & the patient thinketh himself strangled in this diseale. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of excessse of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the stomack, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties

Causa.

Signa.

of the braine to be disperfed by the finewes. They that haue this difeafe can fcarfe moue, being aftonied, and feeling in fleepe imagination of strangling, and as it were the holding of fome thing, that doth violently inuade them. In this the voice is fuppreffed, fome haue fuch vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth opprefle them. At the laft with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the paffage of the fpirits being opened, the ficke is by & by raifed. It is good to remedie this euill at the firft: for if it continue, it induceth and fheweth before fome grieuous difeafe, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling ficknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, and fuch as will not engender windineffe. Let him vfe no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him efchue fleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meat, and to be fhort, let his whole diet be fuch as is described and fet downe for the falling ficknes. For the cure if the whole bodie be full, you muft beginne with blood letting, and you muft cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if illiuyce be gathered in the bodie, for lacke of perfect digeffion, then purge the bodie by purgations: and if fleume abound, you muft firft minifter preparatiues to extenuate the fleume, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you muft apply outward medecins, wherof you may find examples before. Black feeds of piony doth chiefly helpe them, you may giue them fifteene feeds braied with water. And nourifh the head with oile of dill made hot, and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Minifter within the body thofe things which ftrengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rofarum*, *Diamofchu dulcis*, *Diamber*, *Diambon*, *Phrifarcotian*, and fuch other like.

*Vitluratio.**Curatio.**Vene fection.*

CHAP. XXVII.

Of madneffe.

DE INSANIA ET FVRORE.

*Caufa.**Signa.**Vitluratio.*

M*ania* in Greeke is a difeafe which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is madnes and furiousnes. They that haue this difeafe be wood & vnruely like wilde beafts. It differeth from the frenfie, becaufe in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* commeth without a feuer. It is caufed of much blood, flowing vp to the braine: fomtime the blood is temperate, & fomtime only the abundance of it doth hurt: fomtime of fharpe and hot cholericke humors, or of a hot diftemper of the braine. There goeth before madnes debilitie of the head, tinkling of the eares, and fhinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and ftrange things approach the mind, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raifed in them a rauinous appetite, & a readines to bodily luft, the eyes wax hollow, and they neither wincke nor becken. But madnes caufed of blood only, there followeth continuall laughing, there commeth before the fight (as the ficke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choller is mixed with the blood, then the pricking & feruent mouing of the brain maketh them irefull, mouing, angry and bold. But if the choller wax groffe & doth pricke and pull the braine & his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde, and furious, & therfore they are the worft to cure. Let their diet be thin foupings liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & fuch things as do engender no blood, & you muft forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where

thijs

this disease is caused of abundance of blood, you must begin the cure with letting of blood, it is good to cut the vtermost vaine of the arme, or if that doe not appeare, then cut the middle vaine. In women cut the vaine on the ankles, for that prouoketh menstruis, you must draw out so much blood as strength will suffer. Therefore in letting of blood you must continually feele the pulses. Moreouer after the letting of blood, nourish the head with oiles of roses & vineger, or iuice of *Poligonum*, or *cleum melinum*, or *unguentum infrigidans Galeni*. Then apply moist wooll, wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After blood letting at night prouoke sleepe, for if after blood letting, watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outrageous. Therefore minister boldly with iuice of ptisan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water, for so sleep is plentifully entised. And two daies after that minister *Trochiscies de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of violets with womā's milke is good. Likewise an Embraceation made of dry violets, water lillies, willow leaues, and roses, leaues of lettuce, seede of poppy and such like, and other medicines rehearsed in the next chapter. Furthermore, the belly must be made soluble with conuenient food with clisters. These things being done, if ther be need, you must draw blood out of the midst of the forehead set horse leaches round about the head, and specially the forepart of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnes caused of choller mixed with blood, you must minister purgations of *Hierapiera*, & other medicins that wil purge choller. The iuice of *Eleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this grieue, so that you minister but ten or 12. graines at once. But if they dote and refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then that you may the easier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meats, or with fat figs, or dates. Also the only root of wilde fennell helpeth them, and the seed drunk with water. The sickenes declining, bring the sicke into a bath, and apply discussiuue medicins to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke the chapter following *De Melancholia*.

Cure if it come
of blood onely.
Blood letting.

Externe medicine.

Embraceation.

Cure of it coming
of choller
mixed with
blood.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholie.

DE MELANCHOLIA.

Melancholie is an alienation of the mind troubling reason, & waxing foolish, so that one is almost beside himself. It commeth without a feuer, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of waies: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy, blood being in all the veins of the whole body, which also hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the blood which is in the braine is altered, & the blood in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two waies: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vpp thither, or els it is engendred in the braine it selfe. Also sometime it is engendred through inflammation, & euil affect about the stomacke and sides: & therefore there be three diuersities of melancholiousnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearefulness, sadnes, hatred, & also they that be melancholious, haue strange imaginations, for some thinke themselves brute beasts, & do counterfait their voice & noise, some thinke themselves

Cause.

1

2

3

Signa.

vessels of earth, or earthen pots, and therefore they withdraw themselves from them that they meete, least they should knocke together. Moreouer they desire death, and do very often beight and determine to kill themselves, and some feare that they should be killed. Many of them do alwaies laugh, and many do weepe, some thinke themselves inspired with the holy Ghost, & do prophecy vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signs of them that haue melancholioufnes caused through consent of the whole body: for in them the state of the body is slender, black, rough and altogether melancholious caused naturally or through certaine thoughtes, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides, they haue rawnes, and much windines, sharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuoufnes of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, especially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenes of the wombe, little sleepe, troublous and naughty dreames, swimming of the head, and found in the eares. Let his diet be such, as doth not engender melancholy. Therefore let them tary in an aire hot and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuice, that be moist and temperate, and let their bread be well baked and wrought, let their flesh be capons, hennes, partriches, selsants, stony fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke, let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and greene, or vse sailing on water. Also a bath of sweete water with a moist diet, let the sicke vse often as one of his remedies, sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare muscal instruments and singing. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholike bloud, it is best to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you must cut the liuer vaine on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth onely the braine, the sicke needeth no bloud letting, vnlesse there be very much bloud, and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, & moist diet of good iuice, which is without windines, and let them vse delectations of the mind, and let them be cured by these without any stronger remedies, but if the disease hath indured long, it requireth sundry medicins that be strong. Therefore whether the melancholioufnes be caused through vice of the whole body (as is said, the bloud being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicins that wil purge downward. And a few daies after purging and bloud letting, let the sicke drinke daily in the morning this decoction. R. floures of Borage, Buglosse, violets, ana. *M. j.* great Raisons the stones picked out. *℥. j.* harts tongue. *M. j.* Fumitory. *M. ℥.* Barke of the root of Capers, *Tamariscum*, ana. *℥. iij.* roots of fennell, percelly, licorice, ana. *℥. j.* Time, *Epithimum*, ana. *℥. ℥.* leech all these in three poundes of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuice of that decoction sweete with suger, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto sirupe of fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. *℥. ij.* and make a potion. After that sort at these daies they minister sirupe of violets, and Buglosse, putting to them the water of harts tongue, hops, endiue, and Borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomack cannot beare very

Plus ratio.

Balneum.

Vene sectio.

*Cure it ic come
of melancholy
bloud.*

Purgatio.

*Decoctum
preparans.*

much

much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid heartbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort. *Rx.* Sirupe of Borage, \mathfrak{z} .j. sirupe of *Epithimum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . decoction of harts tongue, fumitory, & endiue \mathfrak{z} .iij. commixe them all and make a potion. After this purge the body with *consilio hamech & diasene*, *pitule inde*, *pitule à lapide armenio*, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction. *Rx.* floures of Borage, violets, roses, ana. *M.* j. Raizons the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Mirabolanes citrine*, *nidos*, *emblicos*, *belliricos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . leaues of sene, polipody, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. prunes damascene, numero.x. seeth them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it & make the iuice of that decoction sweet with suger, then minister \mathfrak{z} .iij. thereof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of *diasene*. Also the infusion of *Epithimum* is maruellously good, being made thus. *Rx.* *Epithimum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . infuse it 24. houres in \mathfrak{z} .iij. of whay made of goates milke, then straine it & wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of sene is good, which may be thus made. *Rx.* leaues of sene, \mathfrak{z} .ij. prunes damascene in numero. xij. bray them and infuse them in whay of goates milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this powder. *Rx.* *Epithimum*, \mathfrak{z} . β . *lapis armenius*, agarick, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. scamony prepare. \mathfrak{z} .j. cloues in numero 20. beat them al into pouder, & minister euery weeke. \mathfrak{z} .j. or \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separate from the milke by some decoction, and let them vse it, vntill the belly begin to be soluble, you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few daies after the purgation to vse clisters, and let them be such as this is. *Rx.* fumitory, hoppes, time, ana. *M.* j. *Epithimum*, *M.* β . sene, polipody, ana. \mathfrak{z} .vj. cartami \mathfrak{z} . β . seeds of annise, fennell, ammeos, comin, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seeth all in water yntill the third part. Take of the iuice of that decoction \mathfrak{ss} .j. *Cassia fistularis* newly drawn \mathfrak{z} .j. *diasene*, \mathfrak{z} . β . oiles of violets and cammomill, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . common salt. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . commixe them all & make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroides* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which wil driue away the heauines of the minde, restore strength, & engender gladnesse, as is conserues of Borage, endiue, violets, roses, anthos, *latificans Galeni Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweete water. Also you must apply strong *Embroche* to moisten the head, as this, *Rx.* mallowes, *althe*, violets, ana. *M.* j. β . cammomill, *stachados*, ana. *M.* j. floures of water lillies. *M.* β . seedes of lettuce. \mathfrak{z} .j. seedes of scarioll. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . boile them all in iust quantiry of water, and sprinkle the head being shauen with the iuice of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles, of violets, water lillies, and such like. Last of all the sicke must labor that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the grieue bee caused through disease in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of peniroy all, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of centory. Afterward also minister continually decoction of wormewood, for it is profitable to the stomacke, and it letteth ingendring of winde in the belly, nor it doth not aswage the bely extremly, but prouoketh vrine, & causeth good

Poto.

Decoction pur-
gans Melan-
cholicam.Dilutum Epi-
thini.Puluis pur-
gatorius.

Clyster.

Embroche.

Cure if it come
of disease in
the sides.
Abstynstij de-
coctionum.

*Diaitica.**Fomenta.**Cataplasmata.**Concurbieule.**Vomitus.*

digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedie. Also you must minister these things that prouoke vrine, as anise, *dancum*, *asarum*, *smirinum*, the seed and roote of wilde fennell, and germaunder, let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it is good that the Phisitian looke to the cure of the sides. Therefore nourish them with decoction of rew, dill, wormewood, peniroyall, seed of *Agruscastrus*, laurell berries, sauerie, mugwort and such like. These do ease paine and driue away inflammation, especially if they be sodden in oile and applied to the grieve like a plaister. Against windines in the stomacke with pricking, nourish the stomacke with comin, peniroyall and vineger sodden together, and make emplaisters of annise seeds, *apium*, comin, *smirinum*, and such like, sodden in oile, and suffer the plaister to lie still a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaister is taken away, couer the sides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being first annointed with *oleum nardinum*. Also you must apply cupping glasses lightly without scarification. To those with whom this disease hath taried long, purging by vomits is a present remedie. But you may not vse strong vomites, for they be malicious to the stomacke, and cause grieue in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hot water, commixed with *oximell*. But if the sicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a feather or their finger into the mouth. Also the onely vomit made with *Eleborus albus* is good for them being made after this sort. *R. Eleborus albus*. \mathfrak{z} .j. cut in small peeces, and put them in a great radish roote, and after three daies take out the *Eleborus*, and then stamp and wring out the iuice of the radish, take of that iuice \mathfrak{z} .vi. hot water \mathfrak{z} .iiij. *oximell* \mathfrak{z} .j. commixe them and minister it all at once to the sicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good. *R. stibium*. x. or xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure spoonfull of muscadell, or malmesey, and let it stand two daies, and let it be shaken three times on the day, and when you will minister it, poure it out softly, leauing the powder still in the bottom of the glasse, and giue but the very wine, which is an excellent thing for this grieue: there be diuers other which I will omit till time more meete and conuenient.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and shaking.

DE TREMORE.

*Cause.**Signa.*

Tremor in Latin, in English trembling or shaking, it is a disease which is accomplished with two sundry mouings. One is while the member is constrained through heauines and grief to creepe downward. The other, is while the member is caried vpward from his naturall course and faculty. This euill is caused altogether through weakenes of the sinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it commeth of other causes, (that is) of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or season, specially in feuers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold grosse & clammy humor, and much vsing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are causes thereof. There neede no signes to know neither the euill nor the causes of it, because it may be known partly by sight, and partly by the patients words, and the state of

of the body. Let the diet be so ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the causes of the disease, and let his meate be such as will easily be distributed, first brothes, then birds that flie, & tender fishes. Against abundance of grosse and clammy humours, it is good to vse those things which haue power to deuide, extenuate, and cut, but he must wholly eschue all things, which do hurt the sinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He must drinke wine alayed with water, or *hidromel*, or ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke in the meane while *hidromel* with the decoction of sage and betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humours, then minister the cure which is ascribed for the palsey, & the crampe comming of fulnesse: (letting of blood onely excepted.) You must anoint the outward parts of the body with oyles that will heate, & couer it with soft wooll. Then fasten cupping glasses without scarificatiō from the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the skin, and so thereby humours may the easier be discussed and driuen away. Also it is good for the sicke to drinke dayly five graines of pepper with $\frac{3}{4}$ j. lb. of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicines, which being taken doe helpe trembling (that is) *Castoreum*, roote of *Althea*, decoction of Egrimony, & the braine of an hare. But what need many words? for the medicines and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the pally are to be vsed as remedies against this disease.

*Viclus ratio.**Curatio.**Concurtibula**Simplices medicine.*

CHAP. XXX.

IT thought it good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subiect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experience I haue found incident vnto it: And the multiplicite of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it as tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessitie of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath as it were packed and bestowed an infinite varietie of manuels in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed & distributed into his parts, and according to the dignitie of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceine aright of it, and an excellent Orator might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to prye into all other things, and to finde out the nature and order of them, hath bene unable to vnfold his own wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when

they haue layed hold of it. For mine owne part I will not promise any absolute worke, but as learned Physicians haue thought of it, and (as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so I will frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole and hard, as the Ball of a fore, or as the scoured new Bassa full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantastick Cell by a sinew, that is called Nerus opticus, with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without, and very fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the Well of the head, for the abundance of watery humours and teares, which often do issue out thereof, sometime of sorow and heavinesse of the hart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of watery humours caused of frigiditie and coldnesse: and thus haue the Physicians described the eye. It shall not be vnnecessary also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as Iohannicus saith) the eye hath seuen coates, which they call Tunicæ, foure colours, & three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by sundry Anatomists haue bene eniected, making but onely sixe: yea and some there be, that (swaruing from the most receiued opinion) haue made room for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reason, excluding all those ouer-curious diuisions, (namely, Iris, Cornea, Aranea, and Vnea, and the residue) and imagin but only two coates, the one whereof they tearme Saluatrix, because it sauereth and keepeth the humors, and the second they tearme discolorata, that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the christalline humour, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lye deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this christalline humour begetteth the varietie of colours in sundry eyes, which gaue our Anatomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (in deede) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in so intricate a cause, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersity of the colours, though our blind Anatomistes do impugne in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this little Præcludium will not seeme altogether vnnecessary.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles, & set before the sight of the eye and the Christalline humour. Of these manner of Cataracts be seuen diuers spices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable. The first kind of the curable cataract, is light, right, bright, like white chalke, or as alabastrer well polished, & it is caused by a stroke in the eye, either with a stick or a stone, or any other outward violence. The second kind is somewhat white, and much like vnto a celestiall colour, and this proceedeth from the stomake, & is commonly caused of vnwholsome meats, and vnkind nourishment, whence of a grosse fumosity resolueeth, & ascendeth vp into the braine, & from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is also whitish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migreime, or such like diseases, and it is caused sometime of great sorrow and great heauines, whereof commeth immoderate weeping, and sometime of much cold, and much watching, & such other like. The fourth spice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigest, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholike. These are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be grown and confirmed, & the signe or token of their full perfectiō is, when the patient seeth right nought, vnlesse it be the brightnes of the Sun by day light, or the light of the Moon by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these manner of Cataracts, haue assaied to cure them with purgations, powders, and plaisters, but they haue bene decciued: for neither inward medicines, nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioine to them *artem acuariam*, the art of the needle: which because it is vnknown to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this treatise. Neuertheles, before you vse the needle, it is requisit that the brain should be purged with *pilule Ierosolymitane*, which you shall make thus. *Rx.* Turbith \mathfrak{z} .j. aloes, hepaticke \mathfrak{z} .ss. mace, quibibes, mastick, & saffron. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. & beat them to powder altogether, & confect them with the iuice of roses, and make pilles therof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clock, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, & plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him; and bid him holde his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient, for the tractabilitie of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side farthest off from the nose: and subtilly thirle the tunicle saluarice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the cataract) with the point of the needle; and then beginne by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, & there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minutes of an houre, and then remoue your needle.

*Foure sortes of
Cataractes curable.*

I

2

3

4

easily from it. And if it happen that it riseth vp againe, bring it back the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the cataract, you do not writh it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it hath gathered the water about it, and then pull it out, (this done) Cause him to shut his eye, and apply thereto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night without any other stirring of it. Provided, that he lye in a very darke place, and let his diet be thinne, as reere eggs, and white bread. And if he be young and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his bodie be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small ale. For truly much nourishment would preiudice our cure by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is verie hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. (The ninth day being passed) let him rise & wash his eye well with faire cold water, & he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen at he did before, although some one of the cataractes be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second kinde and the fourth kind: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his clearenesse of sight againe, because it is greatly bruised and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his olde perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good dyet, as also by this electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus consecreted *Rx*, cloues. *℥*.ij. nutmegs of India, and saffron, ana. *℥*.j. ss. and of good *Cassoreum*. *℥*.j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and consecret that powder with clarified hony, and let the patient receiue of this electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantity of a chestnut, or walnut, & at euening to bedward as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meats, which ingender good blood, but let him beware of beife and goates flesh, and celes, and raw onyons, for they are often times vsed to ripen the cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hot wines, in the which let him infuse Sage and rewe. Let him also abstaine from the companie of women, neither let him frequent common bathes, for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforesaid electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drye teares. It auaieth also against all manner of paine of the migrame which proceedeth of fleume. After this sort are all the curable cataractes healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish Latten: for Iron or Steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the cataract should proue hard in darwing down, the point may easily break, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnes of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataractes vncurable.

THIS first of Cataracts vncurable, the Physicians call *Gutta Serena*, and the signe of the knowing therof is this, when the pupill of the eye is black and
cleare,

clear, as though it had no spot, and the eyes are alwaies mouing, and the eyelids do tremble as they were full of quicksilver. This kind of cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therefore they that haue them, are for the most part borne blind, and therefore they bestow their labor in vaine, that assay to cure them, for the Nerves opticke be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicines can preuaile, although many that haue this kind, do see the light of the Sunne, and the stature of a man euen to their liues end: we call it *Gutta serena*, because it is engendred of a water that falleth from the braine, of the which truly one litle droppe corrupteth and dissolueth all the humors of the eyes, and stoppeth the hollow nerves and sinewes, so that the visible spirits may no more passe through them. The second cataract incurable is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water standing in waterie places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, and with great buffeting and bearing about the head, with great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eye is dilated and spread so farre, that no circles may be seene within the tunicles of the eyes, and the eye seemeth all blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable distinguished and knownen: which will forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by blond, choller, fleume, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOW after the description of Cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing, and knowledge of the curable and the causes of the vncurable, I wil speake of other maladies of the eyes caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleume, choller, and melancholy. But first I will treat of bloud, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednes in the eye, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this disease maketh the haire of the eyelids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire, & if this malady be not cured within one year, it will make the eyelids to turne vp, & make the patient blear-eyed. But before it commeth to that extremity, it may be cured by this colliry, which they call *Collirium Ierosolymitanum*, which is made in this wise. *Rx.* Tutty of *Alexander*. \mathfrak{z} .j. and beate it into small powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine, (that is) a quart, and put thereto. \mathfrak{z} .j. of dry roses, and boile it with a foking fire, til the wine be half wasted, & then clense it through a linnen cloth, and keepe it in a violl glasse, and morning and euening put some of it into the eye, and if it be taken betimes, the patient shalbe cured within a weeke or two at the most. Neuerthelesse before you apply this colliry, it shalbe good, if the patient be yong, to let him bloud on the vein, that is on the midst of the forehead; or, if he be aged, to purge his braine with these pills. *Rx.* of the best aloes, red Sanders, *Esula*, and reubarbe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Turbith, *Cataputia minor* and agarick ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. confect them with the iuice of mugworre, and minister to the patient according to his strength. And truly these pilles are not onely good for the

itch of the eyes, but also for all manner of itch or scabbe, of what humour soeuer it be caused. There be other diseases also of the eye engendred of blood, as the ophthalmie and pannicles; And these kindes of infirmities are tyed to the season of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of August, and so forth to the end of September, and the rather then, because they proceed of the eating of the varietie of frutes. The Ophthalmie is thus described: *66* An Ophthalmie is a corrupt blood ingendred of hot humours, and commonly it standeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknes of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate sorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which causeth the eyes to swell & make them so bolae, that from that time forth, the patient may take no rest nor sleepe, for euer it seemeth to him, that his eyes are full of grauel, or of thornes, or of smoke. In this kind of infirmities it is good to vse this powder, which many, (in respect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Pulus benedictus*, which is thus made. *66* *Rx* white sarcocoll, and beat it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eie with it, and let him lie with it wide open til the powder be consumed, and in the meane time make a plaister of flaxen herds, and wash it well in cold water, (which when you haue drained out with your hand) lay it on the patient his eye, which he shall still keepe open, and it will procure him to take his rest verie well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeouored to cure this infirmities with many impertinent medicines, haue added sorrow to sorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and so made it vncurable, which by the aforesaid powder might easily haue bene healed. And note that there be some which by the occasion of the Ophthalmie are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumes & mistie, which proceedeth of euill keeping, or because they eate contrarie meates. Now if such happen, the braine must be purged with these pilles. *Rx* polipody, *Esula*, *Mirabolans citrini*, and rewbarbe, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. masticke, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *nux India*, Cinamon, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. confect them with milke or iuyce of Quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation giue him morning and euening of the electuarie of *Diabolianum solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Pulus Nabeti*, the making whereof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done onely in the morning and euening, put in his eye the powder called *Pulus Alexandrinus* as before, and this do till the patient hath recovered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meates.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Cause.

There be foure
kindes of pan-
nicles.I
2

TH \mathfrak{z} pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmie hath, (that is to say) superfluitie of blood. Sometime they are engendred of euill keeping, and sometime by great paines in the head, as the migrim, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples and so into the browes, maketh the veins to beat, by which painfull beating the eyes are troubled. There be foure kindes of pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a litle pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in latine *millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the likenes of a spot or freckle

of

of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, & then no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appereth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues, nor pouders, nor colliries, nor electuaries, nor yet with cauteries, for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this pretious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit. *Rx.* fortie tender crops of the bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of rew, powder of Alabaſter. ℞. j. powder of fennell seed ℞. j. oil of Roses ℞. j. all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white wine, and to all these put ℞. iij. of drie flours of cammell, and of waxe. ℞. j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire, till the wine be consumed, so far forth that it seemeth to frie in, & then put thereto the whites of fixe egges, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth: with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, & the forehead downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which, I will expresse, though it be impertinēt to this discourse. It is very good against a green wound for it both purgeth and clenſeth it. It is good against the tooth ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be eaten like an electuarie. It is good for them also who are molested in excesſe, if their stomacke be annointed, & their feet together with their hands. It auaieth against the migriue, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the very beginning, for if it be incarnate & hardened vpō the tunicle, it may not by any subtilty be remoued (the tunicle ſaued) & therefore it is not safe to aduenture to cure it, whē by continuance of time, it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shall cure it thus: first make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery, (as shalbe shewed afterward whē I speake of cauteries): for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the powder called *Pulus Nabetus* (which I will teach afterward) & while he lyeth with this powder in his eye, take four crabs & roſt them vnder the embers very well, & then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, & lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, & bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as blood begeth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise many maladies are engendred of fleume, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer-eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haire, which prick the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haire though many bold Chirurgeons haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haire being hardened with plucking out).

E iij

Maladies cō-
ming of fleume
1

do gail them farre worse then before, and so in the end the patient being destitute of any other aide, leese his sight, (the haire fretting and consuming the substance of his eye.) But in deed the best way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that malady is this. Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and binde them wel together at both the ends, the with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelidde, and with these needles take off the lether where these haire grow, that the patient may shut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the lether which was betweene them: which done you shall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it selfe: But if any pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reason of the vehemency of the paine, it shall be cured by *Pulus Nabetus* put into the eye twice a day, till such time, as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which pouder is very auailable against many sicknesses of the cie. The second infirmity which happeneth to the cie by fleume, is when the cie appeare troubled and full of veines, so closed with a pannicle that the patient cannot well see, nor discern any thing, and this sicknes is called *pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: first cause his head to be shauen, & the cauterise him with a round cautery in the soft of the head, & with a long cautery in his temples, (which so done,) put into his eyes the powder of Candy once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full sight, and twice in the moneth purge him with the pills called *Pillule Ierosolymitane*, and at his going to bed, let him receiue of the electuary called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum* till he be whole. The third infirmity caused by fleume is, when the cie appeareth carnosous or fleshy, the which carnosity (if it be waxen hard by the space of a yere or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning cauteries (in that manner that I prescribed them before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnosity with a sharpe rasor, without offending the tunicle *Saluatrice*, which whe you haue done, fill the cie full of powder of Candy, & then cause the patient to shut his cie, and then lay to it a plaister of flaxe of the white of an egge, & change the plaister twice on the day xv. daies, & after xv. daies, make this plaister. R. a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, & stampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an egge, & so make a plaister with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twice on the day, and after three daies leaue all plaisters, & let the patient lie with his eye open, & euery day in the morning put into his eye the pouder called *Pulus benedictus*, & at euening the pouder of Candy till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine from celes, onions, beef, and all such meats. The fourth malady caused of fleume is, when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwaies sheadeth reares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauines of the eye lids, for there is a farnes on the ouer eye lid, which troubleth the eye very much, and this disease is called the scab of the cie, & it proceedeth from superabundance of salt fleume, the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack and braine of the patient with this receipt. R. Turbith of the best Aloes and rewbarbe. ana. \mathfrak{z} j. then take of the iuice of the roote of walwort. \mathfrak{ss} j. and the aforesaid things being beaten and resolved in the said iuice, let it stand al night, and in the morning cleanse it, & let the patient

patient take thereof a good quantity, and the next day subtilly with your Rasure pare away the aforesaid farnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other, (which done) lay on a plaister of herdes and the white of an egge 9. daies after (euery day changing the plaister twise,) and then let the patient lie with his eie open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnes with sugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuary, very auailable against these teares which is thus made. *Rx. Olibanum Casoreum*, nutmegges, *Nux India*, cloues, quibibes. ana. \mathfrak{z} j. leanes of laurell, spicknard, Saffron, and *Cardamomum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seedes of dill, smalladge, basilicon, Alliander, anise, fennell, foure seedes of henbane, white poppy, muske, and champher. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. all these must be beaten together to powder sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified bony till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large wodden platter together with the poudre before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still, & when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroieth the teares, together with the sleume, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the migraine, it openeth the eies, releueth the eieliddes, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the goute and the palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speech.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.

Two kind of griefs are incident to the eyes by choler: the first whereof is that which is caused by aboundance of choler in the stomack, from whence ariseth a corrupt fumosity into the braine, which annoyeth the braine & troubleth the visible spirits, so that the party thus affected, shall imagine an object planted betweene him and the light in manner of a darke shadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this malady: for it hath no euident marke either in the eie, or without the eye, but the cause of it abideth in the stomacke, which must be taken away by an electuary mitigatiue, and apparatiue which will assuage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and sinewes, whereby the visible spiritus may haue free passage: you shall make it thus. *Rx. rewbarbe, Esula minoris*, red faunders, *mirabolani citrini*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. the roots of fennell, spinach, bansei, percelly, *Apij Sicacelle*, simory, and maiden haire. ana. \mathfrak{M} .j. polipody of the Oke \mathfrak{z} .ij. boile all these rootes in faire water till halfe the water be wasted, and then clense it, and take the aforesaid spices well beaten, & put them into the aforesaid licour with two pounds of good sugar, and make thereof a sirupe laxatiue. But you shall boile it but litle the second time, for the spices will soone loose their vertue, and then clense it again the second time, and let the patient take of this twise in the weeke. The second infirmity arising of choler is, when there appeareth before the tunicle as it were a thinne cloude in a cleare aire, & this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth but to those that be cholericke. For the cure you shall take a saphire, and breake it in a mortar, and keepe the powder in a vessel of gold, and once in the day put this powder in the patients eye,

and he shalbe whole in short time. The same effect hath the gall of a hare dried and beaten into powder, and so put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmitie of the Eye caused of melancholie.

OF the humor of Melancholie beingendred in sundrie folks many and diuers sicknesses by reason of the opilation of the spirits visible, which cometh by the distemperature of the braine, which is disquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In these diseases therefore it seemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aier, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or four faces, when he beholdeth but one: but these infirmities happen most commonly to aged persons, which are melancholic, superfluite of melancholic dimming their eye sight. There must not therefore any medicine be put into the eye of the patient, but make this electuarie mitigatiue & apparatiue which wil open the opilations of the nerues, which did before forclose the way to the visible spirits. The electuary is thus confected. *Rx.* the iuyce of liquorice, ciebright, *sileris montani*, ana. \mathfrak{ss} . the seeds of rew basilicon, nettels that cometh fro beyond the sea, or Cecilia, or fenel, of alisander, of apium, & caraway seed, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. masticke, cloues, nutmegs, cinamon, Quibibes, gummi, almonds, *Cerache pomii gummorum*, *Araguntan*, and saffron, ana. \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . kernels of quince apples \mathfrak{z} j. all these must be beaten together into small powder well seared, and then you must confect them with good sugar, & make an electuarie of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening, till he be healed. It auaileth also against that dimnes of the eyes which cometh by thought and of much heauines & maketh them to see more cleerly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *clarificatum oculorum*. There is also another infirmitie which cometh of melancholic, and that is, when the paine suddenly ascendeth into the eyes, & grieveth so extremely, that it seemeth to the patient that his eyes would start out: they appeare also most commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of maladie, do loose their sight altogether, and many (though there be some which do see) notwithstanding but very feebly. But the seasonable applying of remedies preuenteth either discommoditie. After this sort then, you shall encounter with this euill. You shall first purge the stomacke & the braine with these pilles. *Rx.* Aloes *mirabolani citrini*, turbith, saunders citrine, and rewbarbe ana. \mathfrak{z} \mathfrak{ss} . scammony, mirrhe, saffron, balsamum, masticke, *lignum aloes*, *olibanum*, white agaricke, *max Indiae*, iuyce of liquorice, seed of apium, lettuce, succorie, basilicon, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. Beat all these to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of roses, and make pilles of them, and giue the patient after his power. The stomacke & the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaister; *Rx.* foure apples or crabbes, and rost them vnder the embers till they be soft, then core them and pare them, and bruse them wel in a morter, and to foure of them put halfe the white of an egge, and so bray them together till they be well incorporate, and so lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you shall find that it will do much good: for it both ailwageth the swelling, lesseneth the paine, refresheth the sight, and with all these fixeth also the eye in his place. There is another infirmitie also which proceedeth

by

by the abundance of melancholy and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the nail of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the outward, & so spreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betimes: sometime also it happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, and if they meete, it maketh the cure more vncertaine, yet by heedfull skill and discretion it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of siluer, & therewith lift up subtilly the vngle frō the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimal where it grew, & there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten daies together, remouing it twice on the day, and at the end of ten daies wash his eye with hot water, & put into it *Pulus Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meates as do feed melancholy. It hapeneth also sometime, that the superfluous abundance of melancholy, seated in the braine, begetteth a drines in the eye lids, which afterward turneth to itching & burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient blood on the middle veine in the forehead, & after with vsing this colliry. *Rx* forty tender croppes of the bramble, and stamp them small, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white wine, and so boile them till the halfe be consumed, and then cleane it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, and twice in the day put some of it into your patient his eye, till it be whole. Of the like superfluitie of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humour without the eye vpon the lidde, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreame paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye lids hard and red, and keepeth the eie so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shal take fine floure of old wheate, & yolks of eggs. ana. ʒ. j. of saffron. ʒ. j. & stamp them well together with womans milke, till it be as an ointment, then make a plaister of it, and apply it, so that none enter into the eye. You may also vse this. *Rx* a lillie roote and crabs, and rost them in the embers till they be soft, then taking away the core & the pilles of the crabs, stampe them both of like quantitie with the whites of egges, and so vse it: On the steppe of the wound, where the fore was, lay this oyntment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare. *Rx* *Aloes*, hennes grease, oyle of bitter almonds, and white waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment and apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes, to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine and helpeth the other medecines in their operation. It happeneth manie times in this infirmitie that the patient his eye liddes for want of prouident skill doe reuerse, which is a great bleamish. In this case you must subtilly with the Rasour deuide the eye lid from the wound, and part them with a litle roule made of fine linnen cloth dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid & the fore xv. daies together, changing it daily & then make the ointment of hennes grease & white waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, and it will consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no Cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse, when the reuersement of the eye liddes is caused of superfluitie of blood. Of the melancholike humour there is also engendered in many men a sicknes, which groweth betweene the nose & the eye, and it ap-

Signa.
Curatio.

66
 peareth like a peece of lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwayes filth. This sore is called *vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shall only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a rasour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with a hote iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *unguentum subtilis*, that is, hennes greafe and white waxe, & annoint the place with it, till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the eye by outward causes, as by blowes, with stickes, stanes, or stones.

THE onely thing generally, that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an egge and flaxen herds, to the which God hath given three especiall properties. The first is to assuage the paine. The second to purifie and cleare the sight. The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours which otherwise would fall into the cie. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. dayes together, annointing in the mean time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuant and aid to all medicins. Now after the xv. daies be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, & put them in a mortar, labouring them with a pestill, till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, & twise in the day & once in the night put a litle of it into the eye, & it will knit together, & make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this manner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncureable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there will grow a cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of waxe and commin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and wormewood, but both those and all such like hore ointments are passing euill, because they consume & wast the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of watery cies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisitians call *fistules*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluente of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellows, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter, which indeede they haue done, but they haue destroied the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with Pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a rasour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelidde and the nose so directly that the lidde be not touched: and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, & into the

same

same put in the graine of a fish binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and so let it lye till the next day: then remouing the fiche, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a litle of some powder Corrasieue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen heardes, and the white of an egge (the patient alwaies shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised, and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge as much as the fiche, in the hole which the powder made, and it will purge the drines of the wound and when you shall perceiue it thoroughly dried, leaue the sponge, and binde nothing to it else but faire drie lint of linnen till the patient be whole. Nowe concerning the teares, they issue out of the eyeliddes both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eye lidde, come from the hart, by reason of sorrow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the ouer eyelid, proceed from the braine by reason of corruption and abundance of humours, and their course ceaseth not, vnlesse the matter be purged with electuaries and cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or
chippes by chaunce into the eyes.*

THESE diseases happen especially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights and smiths: for if any chiue, chip or dust skippe into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle saluatrice, & then can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the said chiue, which you shall do with your needle, deuiding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happeneth that there be any pit in the place, where it lay, by reason that it abode long time therein: then put into the eyes the streines of eggs, ordered as I declared before, twise in the day and once in the night, and vpon the eye lay a plaister of flaxe, and the white of an egge, & within three dayes it will heale the party diseased. And after this sort you shall also remoue the hawe in the eye. But you shall in drawing out the hawe, bind two needles fast together at the toppe, and so take the hawe betweene the two points, & so casily rowling the needles bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is stung with a Bee or waspe, or some other venemous thing, or blasted with an infected ayre: and if any of these happen, the eye is much disquieted and grieved, so that the patient may take no rest, and it bolneth vp that he may not see. The onely cure for such and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, and stampe it small, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therewith make a plaister laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it shall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and so consequently vse it till your patient be thoroughly whole. These qualities this herbe hath: it asswageth swelling, and easeth the paine, destroicth the venime, & putteth away blood from the eyes. This is also a present remedy for the eies that are bloudshed, when they burne as though there

were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases, which do most commonly bend to that litle member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

DE AVRIVM DOLORE.

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Of water

Of heat.

Paine in the eares is caused of some through cold taken in iorneying by cold windes. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable waters. Also it chanceth to many through hot distempure. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out the partes that be inflamed, engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammy, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be biting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of colde, is soone knowen by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauines, or distention, or burning. The paine which is caused of hot distempure is knowen, in that there is felt paine and heat without heauines or bolning. But if heauines, distention, and beating hear and paine be felt in the head then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distention without heauines declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauines in the head & the hearing: the paine is caused of grosse & clammy humours. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hot remedies, that is, with oile of rew, laurell, nard, dill, lillies, of *Euphorbium*, & spike. Also if you seeth rew, & common oile or pepper, or *Custoreum*, it is a good remedy. Also oile in which garlick is sodden: or an onyon, dropped into the eares is maruellously good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great onion, then they fill it with oile, and they heate it meanelly in hot embers, and poure it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle *Euphorbium* commixed with much old oile, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually poure in oyle that is very thinn, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, and againe poure in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or a hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of hot distempure, then oyle of roses is maruellously good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oile of roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of nightshade, or this; R. oyle of roses. $\mathfrak{z} \text{ i}$. Iuyce of nightshade. $\mathfrak{z} \text{ ij}$. vineger of roses. $\mathfrak{z} \text{ j}$. commix them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscous humours, you must vse medicins which doe deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without Erosion, as is *grissillica*, all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter almonds, the roote of *nissalba*, centory the lesse, *polium* & cinnamon. Also oile of almonds and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vnstoppe the passages without griefe. Therefore of those you may make medicins,

and

and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica Venosectio*. veinethat is on the same side: and with clisters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *oxyris linum* warme, or goose greafe, or hennes greafe, with oyle of roses. But if the inflammation be vehement: then to cease paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good; *Rx.* iuyce of senegreene. *℥.ij.* oyle of roses. *℥.℥.* vinegar. *℥.j.℥.* commixe them all, and drop it into the fore eare. Apply those things outwardly which cease paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be verie vehement, it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily, and it is no small dinger, lest that the sinewe by which the vertue of hearing is disperfed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Cassoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Cassoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicins ought to be tempered, being first finely beaten, must be *Sapa*: for it dorth cease paine much more then sweet wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be somme that commixe *Opium* with oyle of roses, or violets after this sort; *Rx.* of *Opium*. *℥.j.* oyle of roses and viol-ts. ana. *℥.j.℥.* Also the Antidote *Phitimum* dissolved in womans milke, & dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But whē the paine waxeth old, & turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of linseed onely with oile of roses or cammonill mixed with it.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound or noyse in the eares.

DE SONITY AVRIVM.

Noyse and tинckling in the eare, for the most part is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammy humours. Also manic times it is caused through an exquisite tardines of the sense of hearing. It is also caused through weaknesse of the members: when it chaunceth in the recovering of a disease, some humour is taken into the sinewes of the eares: also it is caused of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chaunce through outward causes, it is soone knowae by the patients wordes. Nowe because the noyse commeth by litle and litle, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also conuenient to knowe the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest for a certaine space, it is euident that a windie vapour is shut in, and cannot get out, and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sick hath eaten windy meats. But if such sound in the eares do not come suddenly, but by litle and litle, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and waight: then it declareth the euill to be caused of grosse and viscous humours. For the cure, if the sound in the eares be caused of grosse and viscous humours, or of vapours: in

*Cause.**Signa.**Of windie vapours.**Of grosse humours.*

Cure if it come
of grosse hu-
mours or vapors

Sacculi.

If it come of
sharpnes of
hearing.

the beginning purge the head with *Pilula Cochiae* & such like. But first minister before them potions and medicins which haue vertue to extenuate & deuide. Then you must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the eares oyle of bitter almonds, or oyle in which *Cassoreum* is brayed. Also let the eare be inclined to the vapour of the water, in the which *Stachas*, wormwood, marioram, mints and origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of rewe, sodden in the rind of a pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *Sacculi* made of betony, *Stachados*, cammomill, marioram, & other things a litle before rehearsed are very good, if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through sharpnes of the sense of hearing, which is knowen, if when the patient is hungrie it increaseth, & when he is full the noise is lesse. Then you must vse those things which do astonie the senses, but you must take good heed thereof, and therefore begin with the easiest, & if need be, proceed afterward to stronger. Oile of roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this case praiseth iuice of *Mandragora* and poppy. But if noise in the eares chaunce in feuers, there neede no remedie for it, for commonly it goeth away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you must nourish the eares with decoction of wormwood, pouring in vineger and oyle of roses, or iuyce of raddish with oyle of roses, or the best aloes tempered with *mulsu*: and if this helpe it not, vse blacke hellebore brayed with vineger.

CHAP. XL.

Of deafnesse and slow hearing

SYRDITAS ET GRAVIS AUDITVS:

Causa.

Signa.

If of cholericke
humours.
If of grosse
humours.

THE eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing: but also deafnesse, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth at ones birth, and somtime it chanceth after we be borne, which doth chance, either through cholericke humours flying vpward, or through crude and grosse humours stopping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours specially after feuers, then is it wont with sodaine incursions to run to the braine. Also the face and all the state of the bodie will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humours, there is heauines of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humors. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet, if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholericke humors flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendred of crude and grosse humours, this dull hearing is cured by bloodletting, or onely by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilula cochie*, and other such like. But minister before *Oxymel*, and other medicins that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole bodie being purged, you must draw fleume out of the head by Masticatories, sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it self, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicins that deuide and cut grosse and viscous humours, whereof there be many declared in the chapter against sound

sound of the eares. But priuately iuyce of reu with hony, or *Castoreum* with oile of dill is good. Also you must vse fomentes, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reede, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot worm-wood, mints, marioram, origan, stachas, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that commeth from thence, may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good; R. oile of *Castoreum*. ʒ. ss. comin seed. ʒ. ij. powder of *Castoreum*, ʒ. j. a great onion the core taken out, put in the powders of comin and *Castoreum*, and put in the oyle, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is roasted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapour of vineger taken with a reede, as is taught before is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether
Vicius ratio.

CHAR. XLII.

Of impostumes breeding in the eares.

DE PAROTIDIBVS.

Parotides in Greeke be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hot blood which is either mixed with choler, or fleume, or melancholic. And sometime it is caused of humours compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the bodie by sickness, and specially by feuers. *Parotides* which are caused through fulnesse and plentie of hote blood, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholericke blood, they seeme much like *Erysipela*, and they vex the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy blood they be not redde, nor they vex not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be ingendered of flegmaticke blood, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting off blood: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore we vse not in *Parotides* as we do in other inflammations, to apply in the beginning things that repress, but contrariwise things that do draw. And if they be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually fomentes. To mitigate the paine you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and easing paine, meete to ripe and digest; as is, decoctions made of wheate or barley, or the meale of linseed with *mulsu* or fenugreece, or althea, or cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also swines grease with butter melted, with a litle waxe put to it, that it may be a soft cerot, may be wel applied. But in them that be meek, (that is) in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not such plentie of humours that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with fomentes of brine, and plasters and medicines altogether discusse, as is *Diastrilon*. If the *Parotides* can not be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripe, and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheate meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Also the medicin that is made of meale and floure & leuen. When the *Parotides* be ripped, either
Cause.
Signa.
Vicius ratio.
Curatio.
Cure of them that be mecke.

cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with garlick, and such like, or to proue howe to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twice dayly, and nourishing it vntill the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is calues suet, goats suet, the marrow of a hart, *bdellium*, *storax*, *ammoniacum*, and such other like.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

DE OZAENIS.

Cause.

Ozene in Greeke be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharpe & rotten humours which flow to the nostrils, filthinesse is ingendered, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nostrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine & bind, as is oyle of roses, alum, vnripe galls, willow leaues, vineger, & such like: this must be continually layd and annointed on the head ix. dayes. When with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nostrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsive and discusse. Therefore those things that repell and driue backe be things sharpe, & sower, which also are reckened with restrictive things. Discusse things must be hot and drie of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozene* you must drop in the iuyce of calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nostrils. A while after minister sternutaments to bring them to scurfes,

Sternutamentum.

which wil fall off in three or foure dayes. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease and butter, and oyle of roses. The vlcers in the nostrils may be annointed with iuyce of a pomgranate boyled in a brasen vessell vnto the half, or a whole pomgranate sodden in sweete wine brayed & dropped in. Also this is good: *R* drie alum. *℥*. j. *℥*. mirrhe. *℥*. j. the rind of a pomgranate, sumach, salt gemme, saffron, frankensence, ana. *℥*. ss. beate them, & blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers there remaine paine, vse this ointment: *R* oyle of roses, mirtels ana. *℥*. j. burnt lead, litarge ana. *℥*. ij. Ceruse, bole armonie, *balaustrum* ana. *℥*. j. white waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint the place.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the nose.

DE SANGVINIS EX NARIBVS PROFLVIO.

Cause.

Externa.

Fluxe of bloud at the nose is caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly. Outward causes be falling fro a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and tarying

varying in the sunne. Inward causes is plenty of blood or thinnesse of the same. You may know if it come through plenty of blood by heauy paine in the head, much blood in the face, and rednesse of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and such that it may coole and make thick the blood. Therefore let the aire be cold, and the meat of good iuyce, and easy to digest. If the blood be verie hot, let the sicke eat lettuce, endiue, peares, quinces, chickens roasted or boiled with ver-iuice. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of cinamon, by which throughout my book, I meane water, in which a litle cinamon is foddens, lest water through his coldnes might hurt a weak stomacke. Let the patient speak litle, and let him eschue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Also it is good to haue the lower parts of the head highest. For the cure you must take heed, that in bleeding at the nose the lower parts ly highest, and the head downward. The cure must be begun with those remedies which turne the blood to other parts of the bodie. First therefore if the bodie be full, and age will suffer it, and if the sicke be not resolued, you must cut the veine in the arme right against the flowing of blood at the nose. When you haue drawn out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out some againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patientes strength will suffer it. Moreouer friction and rubbing of the inferior partes, as the armes, handes, thighes, shars, & feet is verie profitable: and it is maruellously good to put the feet into warme water euer rubbing them vp and downe. Also strong bindings of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Also great cupping glasses fastened to the sides doe retaine blood breaking out at the nose. If the blood flowe from the right nosethrill, fasten the cupping glasse vpon the liuer: if at the left nosethrill, vpon the spleen. If the blood come from both the nosethrilles, fasten cupping glasses to both places. Also fasten them to the shoulers with scarification. Those being done, minister both within the bodie and without, things which coole and restraîne. Outwardlie apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of plantaine, lettuce, sorrell, shepherds purse, knot-grasse, or make it with the waters of them distilled. A linnen cloath wet in colde vineger is marvellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Also nourish the forehead with sponges of cold water. Also it is good to vse this *Epithema*, applyed to the forehead & the liuer. *Rx.* water of roses, nightshade, sorrell, ana. \mathfrak{z} iij. powders of *Diatrion santalon*, *Diatrhodon abbatis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. bole armenie, yuorie burnt, *lapis hematites* ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. commixe them all, & make an *Epithema*. Also you must put into the nose, medicines to stop blood, for the which this is very good: *Rx.* frankencense. \mathfrak{z} ij. aloes \mathfrak{z} j. powder them, & mixe therewith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thicke as honny, then commixe the soft haïres of an hare with it, and apply it to the nose. Also you may with a linnen cloth (dipped therein), in the nostrills. Also mints brayed, and put into the nosethrilles is thought to be exceeding good. Also a sponge wette in strong and sharpe vineger, may be put into the nose that bleedeth. Also this medicine is good. *Rx.* egge shelles, \mathfrak{z} ij. vnripe galls, \mathfrak{z} j. being braied put them into a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, and put it into the nosethrills. Also it is good to stoppe the eares strongly with linnen & wax, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Also iuyce of the leaues

*Interna.**Signa.**Vitius ratio.**Potus.**Curatio.**Vena sectio.**Concurbitule.**Epithema**Aliud Epithema.**An excellent medicine to stop blood.*

of nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose, also iuyce of horse taile, or the leaues braied and applied are good. The flesh of snail's brayed with vineger or with their shelles burnt and braied are good being applied to the forehead, and nose with vineger. But about all, the blood which commeth out at the patientes nose is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot and then beaten, take of it. $\text{℥} \text{ iij}$ bole armoniacke. $\text{℥} \text{ j}$. champhore. $\text{℥} \text{ j}$. with the white of an egge and a litle vineger, make it thicke like honny, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the nose. Necessitie requiring it is lawfull to put to ij . graines or ij . of *opium*. Asses dounge dried and made into powder is wonderfully good, and also hogges dounge hath the like propertie. Within the bodie minister those things which do coole and restraine, as be sirrups of roses, sorrell and *nymphaea*, trochiskes of *terra lemmia*, or their iuyces, and such like medicins. Moreouer if in the meane season any blood flowe into the belly or other places of the bodie, if it be much and plenteous, you must auoid it by medicines which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddie matter.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, reume, and hoarcesnesse
DE DISTILLATIONE, GRAVEDINE,
ET RAUCITATE.

Distillatio.
Gravedo.
Raucedo.
Causa.

Cold.
Heat.

Repletion of
the head.

Signa.

Calor.

Fitium ratio

Catarrhos in Greeke, is called *Distillatio* in Latin, and in English Reume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Gravedo* is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo* is when the humour chaunceth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of flowing of the humour is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold tempere, which chaunceth specially to them, which go suddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the coldnes of humours which be in the braine, wringing hard like as a sponge dipped in water is wrong with ones hand. It causeth the flowing of humours to the lower partes. So often times heate going about in the head dissoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreouer all things that replete the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the inferior parts. Also wine immoderately drunke, and hote bathes, rawe meate remaining in the stomacke, and vaporos things in the head. The signes if the fluxe of humours come of heate are these; the head is hote, and a sharpe and thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose, as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is redde, and for the most part there followeth a feuer. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voyce cannot passe downward by the nose-thrills. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is verie hote or verie cold, especially from a bath, and from South, and North windes, and all things that can bind or dissolue humours in the braine. Let him vse meates of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be onions, garlicke, mustard seed, radish & very hot odoraments. Moreouer they which

which haue the distillation must care lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *aquamulsu*, or decoction of Cinamon or barley: let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure when the head is vexed with a hote distempure, you must vse those remedies, which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedy of the head is to sprinckle and poure vpon the head plenty of hote water: that is able to driue out the hote vapours ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme bathes of sweete water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them, in sommer to be annointed with oile of roses. If a cold distempure vex the head, it must be annointed with hote and thinne oiles, as oiles of Ireos, rewe, and such like. Oile of Ireos is not onely vsed, as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humour distill from the head together with a feuer, and if there be fulnes of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine. But if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may drawe the humours that doe abound in the head, downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *pilule auree alephangine*, *azarum* and such like. Also you must turne the humors from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastning of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heat of choler, as is sirupe of violets, *nymphaea*, of *poppy* and there conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chap. of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *terra lemnia* or bole armoniacke, and iuyce of plantaine, made and laid vpon the head being shauen is good. If it be a cold humor which distilleth, you shall empty with those things which purge sleume. For which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with *Masticatories*, gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus. *R.* flours of camomill, melilot, betony, organ. ana. *M.* *β.* cinamon, cloues. ana. *℥.* *j.* maces. *℥.* *j.* *β.* nutmegges. *℥.* *ij.* *galle moschata*. *℥.* *j.* powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a *Sacculus*, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is verie good also to annoint the head with hote oyles, as are the oyles of Ireos, dill, and rewe. All things doe stop distillation, which haue vertue to drie, especially *nigella* parched, and comin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and knit, is a present remedy, if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffumens, as is this: *R.* frankensence, masticke. ana. *℥.* *j.* wood of Aloes. *℥.* *j.* *β.* Cinamon, cloues. ana. *℥.* *ij.* *Galle moschata*. *℥.* *j.* *β.* laurell leaues, yellow saunders, ana. *℥.* *j.* muske, amber, ana. *g.* *j.* being brayed, commix them with *storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochiskes: whereof put one vpon coles. *R.* sage, marioram, rosemary, ana. *℥.* *j.* maces, cloues, cinamon. ana. *℥.* *ij.* wood of aloes. *℥.* *j.* frankensence, *℥.* *j.* *β.* beate them all, and commix them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coles. As for hoarcensse, it is cured almost with the same medicins, that the cough is.

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Humor frigida 6

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

Trochiskes of perfume.

LIBER I.
CHAP. XLVI.
Of paine in the teeth

DE DENTIVM DOLORE

Cause.

Signe.

Proctus ratio.

Curatio.

If it come of heat.

If of flowing of humours.

If it come of cold.

Toothach (as Galen saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruell and grieuous of them all. It is caused sometime of hot or colde distemper. Also many times through flowing of humours out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they engender like grieffe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshie parts. Paine in the teeth is sometime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted. If the paine come through distemper of the bare quality, it will not be grieuous. Hot distemper is knowen by the temper of the whole bodie, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, & the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is knowen by the contrarie iudgements. If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. A hot humour engendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe, sower, and viscous things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labor diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuice, and easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oiles, of cammomill, rewe, ireos, and such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vineger, origan, calamint, hyssop, peniroyall, sauory, the root of veruaine and such like. If the teeth do ake through heat, you must seeth in vineger, purslaine, pellitorie, singreene the lesse, and licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of lettuce, endiue, and poppy sodden in vineger. Without you must annoint against the grieffe with cold oiles, as of roses, water lillies, & such like. Moreover if the paine be caused through flowing of humours, if age, time of the yere, and other things will suffer it, and if the bodie also be full of blood, it is good to cut the *Cephalyca* veine or *media* on the same side that the grieffe is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one onely corrupt humor doth abound, then vse conuenient medicines to purge that humour. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole bodie being emptied, you must minister those medicines that do repress and stop, as iuice of plantaine, roses, purslaine, both the endiues: either take the decoction of the aforesaid things, or their waters distilled and mixed with a litle vineger. It is onely good to wash the aking with hot sharp vineger, with vnripe gals: or this, *Rx*. the root of henbane. *℞*. j. pellitorie. *℞*. *℞*. stauesacre. *℞*. ij. galingale. *℞*. *℞*. Camphore. *℞*. ij. alum. *℞*. j. bonie. *℞*. ij. let all be brused, and boile all in vineger. *℞*. *℞*. j. rose water. *℞*. vj. wash the teeth with this ech morning, and it will preferue the teeth, and keepe them from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vse specially this medicine: *Rx*. pepper, pellitory, melilot. ana. *℞*. j. stauesacre. *℞*. *℞*. *℞*. bruse them and put the powder into a linnen cloth, and lay it on the aking teeth, and keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will cease the paine. Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is verie good.

CHA P.

CHAP. XLVII.

*Of teeth that be blacke and loose.*DE DENTIBVS DENIGRATIS, LIVENTIBVS QVÆ
ET MOLLIBVS.

SOMETIMES the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, not
 vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vici-
 ous humours the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime
 through flowing of moistnes, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and
 maketh the teeth loose, or else gnawing and weaknesse of the gummies in the
 which the teeth are set, causeth them to be lose. The cure of vicious humours
 must be begunne with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be smart or rustie, you
 must deuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medi-
 cines, as is, *licium*, frankensence, mints, gals, masticke, mirrhe, *nigella*, and such
 like. Among many other this is very good: *R. nigella*, mirrhe, frankensence, ana.
 ʒj. masticke, white pepper, ana. ʒij. *pistoloche*. ʒj. roch alume. ʒj. beat them
 into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Tur-
 pentine and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humours being consumed,
 vse dentrifices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this: *R. nitrum* roch
 alume, harts horne burnt ana. ʒj. mirrhe. ʒj. the roote of *Ireos illirice*, fran-
 kensence, dry mintes, ana. ʒj. ʒ. common salt burnt, *pistoloche*. ana. ʒj. pu-
 mish, *testarum sepie*, ana. ʒj. ʒ. pepper, pellitory, dry peniroyall, ana. ʒj. ʒ. beat
 them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth dayly. For teeth
 that be loose you may apply such medicins, as restraine and strengthen loose
 gummies, and fasten them. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decocti-
 ons of restrictive things do profit, as is this: *R. red roses*, mintes, plantaine, ana.
M. ʒ. the barks of Cipresse nuttes. ʒj. seeds of mirtels, sumache. ana. ʒj. ʒ.
 pomgarnet rindes, gals, ana. ʒij. *acatia*. ʒij. seeth them all in red restrictive
 wine, and with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is law-
 full to vse this dentrificium. *R. gals*, the rindes of sweete pomgarnets. ana. ʒj.
balauftium, sumache, mirrhe, ana. ʒj. redde roses, *sanguis draconis*, *calyculorum*
glandium, ana. ʒj. frankensence, harts horne burnt, ana. ʒj. ʒ. powder all, and
 searce them, and rubbe the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good. *R.*
Balaustium, nutmegges. ana. ʒij. roch alume. ʒj. ʒ. powder them, and mixe
 them with hony. ʒij. ʒ. and incorporate them well together: and with this an-
 noint the teeth twise or thrice in the day.

Cause.

Curatio.

Dentrificium
optimum.

Loose teeth.

Collutio oris.

Dentrificium.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Ulcers in the mouth.

DE APHTHIS.

THE vlcers which are bredde in the vppermost part of the mouth, and
 haue a certaine burning heat, in Greeke are called *Apthe*, and of the bar-
 barous sort *acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and
 these be most perillous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infants
 and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the childe
 cannot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to the m that be of perfect age

A pte.

*Signa.**Curatio infantium.**Cure of them
that be of per-
fect age.
Vicius ratio.**Curatio.*

aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humors to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be known by sight and feeling: if you touch it, the places will seeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maistery. Yealownesse signifieth bitter choler: whitenesse, fleume: blacknesse, melancholy. They which chance to children may easly be cured by those things that do meanelly restraine. And you must giue them chiefly in their meates, some quinces, and other sharp things, pears, and mespilers. vidz. medlers or open arses. Sometime also you must comix with their meate some lettuce, endiue and purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuice of purslaine, lettuce and nightshade, the powder of alume, and wash the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a serings; and if the childe can take no meate, then the nurse must vse the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of galles, *balaustrum*, sanders, sumach, acacia, & such like, commixed with *Robderibes* or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age only the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft or moist, or hard, or dry. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicins. In weake and soft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe and salt, and that ingender corrupt iuice. For the cure in fulnes of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalica* veine, and then those veines vnder the tong. If the body be full of ill iuice, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humors. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraine & stop. Moderat remedies against vlcers be these; *sumach*, roses, *Balaustrum* dissolved in wine or *mulsca*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrefie, this decoction is very profitable. Rx. fellerd leaues of sage, hysope, rew, peniroyall, cammomil, woodbinde, knotgrasse, *bursa pastoris*, brier leaues, ana. M. ss. wash them cleane, and boile them all in ij. ss. of good ale or beere, and put therein three or foure spoonefull of hony, alume. ʒ. ij. let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, and wash the mouth therewith foure or fve times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *unguentum Aegyptiacum*, mixt with *mel rosarum* or such like.

CHAP. XLIX.
Of a stinking mouth.

DE FÆTORE ORIS.

*Causa.**Signa.*

There is a grieuous and stinking sauour of the mouth caused for the most part through putrefaction of the gummies or teeth, or through meat sticking still in the teeth. Many times it commeth through hote distempure of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humors sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceth also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs, doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chaunce through putrefaction either of the gummies, or teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone known either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be caused of a hote distempure of the mouth, then heate

is felt in the mouth, and thirst troubleth him. If through vice of the stomach, then the breath of the mouth is more grievous and stinking before meat then after meate. Vlcérations of the lungs are known by extenuation of the body, and by coughing. In the diet the patient must auoid all things that do readily engender corruption in the mouth or stomach, as is, milk, fish, almost all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and such like. Let the meats therefore which they vse be of good iuice, and easie to digest: but they must vse meates rather rost then sodden. In the end of dinner and supper they may eate peares, quinces, and such like, especially, if the stinking sauour come from the mouth of the stomacke. Let them eschew sleeping by and by after meate. If stincke of the mouth come through corruption of the gums or teeth, if there be fulnesse of the body, first draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, and then fasten cupping glasses to the necke, but if the body be full of euill iuice, purge the humor that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The body being purged, vse outward medicines, specially collutions and washings, which in this case seeme to be maruellous good, as this is: *Rx. redde roses, plantain, knorgrasse, ana. M. j. ß. gals, pomegarnet floures, cipresse nuttes, ana. ʒ. ij. rindes of pomegarnets. ʒ. ß. roch alum, ʒ. j. seeth these in iust quantity of water vnto the third part, and in the iuice of the decoction being strained, commixe mel rosarum, diacaron, ana. ʒ. ß. diamoron. ʒ. iij. commixe them al and make a collution, with the which wash the gums and the teeth euery morning and euening. Also often washing with water mixed with vineger in the morning and by and by after meate, is good. If the stincke in the mouth be without exulceration, minister the root of *ireos* steeped in old odoriferous wine, and wash the teeth often withall. Also it is good to hold it in the mouth. Also mirrhe steeped in pure wine minister to wash the teeth. Also it is very good to chew pellitory, *Tamariscus* and rew. Likewise collution of vineger squillitike, or decoction of sage, or only wine. Also decoction of mintes in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often washed with it. This causeth sweete breath, and maketh the teeth white. *Rx. white salt, pumises, origan, ana. ʒ. ij. roote of Ireos. ʒ. j. floures of squinace. ʒ. ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and rub the teeth therewith. If stincke of the mouth come of a hot distempere cure it with contrary medicines. But if it come of a corrupt humor in the mouth of the stomacke, it is healed by those things which doe purge that humor. Those things which be contained in the mouth of the stomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How you shall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, minister medicines which do strengthen the stomacke, as is, *Aromaticum rosaceum, Diamber, hydromalum*, and such like medicines, which be good in all causes, as be cloues, *Masticke*, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, roses, all the Sanders, Nutmegges, *Quibibes*, *Ireos*, and other of the like sort.**

Viciu ratio

Curatio.

Collutio oris.

For sweete breath.

Vomitum.

These suffice. And how many euils so euer there be of the head, whose cure is not expressely named by me in this booke, yet you may find out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.



The second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Against the inflammation of the *Columella*.

DE COLUMELLAE INFLAMMATIONE.



Here chanceth in the throat many dangerous inflammations (as Hippocrates writeth in his *Prognosticis*) and first of this *Columella* appeareth a certaine fleshy peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one doe gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be seene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is caused through blood, and other humours which descend out of the head. The disease may be knowne by sight: and there chanceth in it difficultie in swallowing, paine, swelling, rednesse of the *Columella*, and a seauer. The diet in a maner, must be such as is ordained in other inflammations, and specially, quietnesse, rest, silence, and hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at supper. For the cure, if there be fulnesse of the bodie, you must beginne with bloudletting, and first you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, and afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Also the belly must be purged by clisters, so that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be soluble, but also that the flowing of humours to the grieve, may be taken away. Also for the same purpose you may fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders, neither must we let passe the remedies which are good to repressse and stop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diseases caused of the fluxe of humors, so in this behalf, for their first remedie, they stop the fluxe of humours. Therefore such remedies must be of a restrictive nature and facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, minister things which restraine moderately, as these be which be called soure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it sharpe things, for both be restrictive; but soure be weake, and sharpe things strong, as Galen doth say in his fourth booke of the vertues of simple medicins, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vse collutions made of those things, as if they should be moderate, seeth dares sometime in water alone, and sometime with a litle honie put to them. Likewise make decoctions of roses, vine buddes, brambles, cypresse, the first buddes of pomgranate floures, *sligna*, rootes of mulberie, soure apples, and *serbus*. Those be stronger then these, which be made of the decoction of mirtles, and their berries. Also of sharpe quinces, and young buds of oake, or the mast of oake: also of medlers, & a frute called *Cornus*. The best collutions are made of galles, *sumach*, *acatia*, and the floures of both the pomgranats, and their shels. Among

Gurgulio.

Signa.
Viciu ratio.

Curatio.
Vene sectio.

Cucurbitula.

compound

Compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, *Rx.* the distilled waters of *Gargarismu.*
 roses, plantaine, sorrell, *prunella*, *solani*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Diamoron*, *succi medicati eribes*, ana.
 \mathfrak{z} . β . *succi medicati ex exiochama*, \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . vineger, wherein *sumach* is steeped. \mathfrak{z} .j. *Alia.*
 iuyce of pomgranates. \mathfrak{z} . β . commix them together, & with it wash the mouth.
 Another of the same vertue *Rx.* red roses, brambles, ana. *M.j.* pomgranat flours
 and the shels, gals, mast of oake, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. *sumach*, *hipocistidis*, *acatia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij.
 seeds of sorrell, & quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. seeth them in \mathfrak{lb} .j. of well water, vntill halfe
 remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron*. \mathfrak{z} .j. *succi medicati*
eribes, *diacaron*, ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . vineger. \mathfrak{z} .vj. commixe them all, and make a gar-
 garisine. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease, & espe-
 cially when the grieffe hath not the greatest cause: nor when the bodie of the
 sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggriued place is weake
 through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in
 the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must com-
 mixe some of the discussiue medicines, as is, linseed, fenugreeke, mallowes,
 roote of *ireos* and honie. Moreouer, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, mi-
 nister them warme: for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold.
 After the vigor of it, you may safely minister discussiues, vnlesse the *Columella*
 begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is,
 linseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, *althea*, *tragacanthum*, and such like: of the which
 you may make gargarismes. After that vse discussiues, as is, hisope, figs, licorice
 decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceived by his co-
 lour, & doth not breake alone by collusions of *Mulsa* and *Oximel scillicum*, then
 open it with some instrument. After the breaking, and bursting out of the mat-
 ter, let him vse medicines cleansing, absteriue, and glutinatie, especially the
 iuyce of *enpatorie*, and such like.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose *Columella*.

DE LAXATA COLUMELLA.

Oftentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes
 of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the
 beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation thereof requi-
 reth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicins spo-
 ken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collusions
 and gargarismes of such things as do restraîne and drie: after this sort, *Rx.* red
 roses, sorrell, *enpatorie* ana. *M.j.* *gallacum*. \mathfrak{z} .ij. alum. \mathfrak{z} .j. mirrhe, frankensense,
 ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . flax-seed. \mathfrak{z} . β . seeth them in water to the third part, and add to the
 iuyce of that decoction strained of good hony. \mathfrak{z} . β & make a gargarisme. Also
 pouders do profit, being blowen in with an instrument for the purpose: as this is,
Rx. dry roses, galles, roch alum. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . pepper, ginger, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β mirrhe \mathfrak{z} .j.
 powder it, & learce it, and put it vp as before. Also, take green nuts, & dry them,
 and date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, pow-
 der them, & vse them as the other. Also vnripe galles, bolcarmoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j.
 do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empty the belly first,
 lest the sicke be strangled. Whē the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward,
 lest the bloud run inward. And afterward wash his mouth with the decoction
Gargarismu.

of sumach, *acacia*, galles, putting to it rosewater and vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsilles.

DE TONSILLARVM INFLAMMATIONE.

TONSILLÆ be inflammations of those things which lie between the mouth and the throte; some do call them *Amigdale* (that is) Almondcs. *Cause.* Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hot and moist. They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abundance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, and through much greedy deuouring of meate, specially if they be eager and sharpe. They that be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a litle Cinnamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feuer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meat be souplings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in perill of choking, you must cur the *Cephalica* vein in the arme on the same side. And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositary, and by anointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be ceased something. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministered warme. Outwardly it is best to nourishe it with sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of barley meale, seeds of flaxe, fenugreeke, and such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse: it is good to put hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnes which is in it doe increase fluxe. Also at this time hotter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oile, and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting and gnawing come thereby: you must vse gentler, as is iuice of pisan: Also gargarise warme milke. When the inflammation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the foresaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the partes of the tonsilles which are swelled, may be thrust, wherby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to doe, wherby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therefore if by that means any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministering gentle gargarismes without any annointing. If that by ministering the remedies foresaid, the grief be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening when you look for suppuration and rotting: you must help that

Signes of suppuration.

helpe that it may quickly come to passe: therefore then you must minister hotter gargarismes, as is *aqua mulsæ*, and decoction of figges, hysope and seed of *Althea*. Outwardly lay plaisters of barley meale and fenugreeke, with decoction of figges, *Althea* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will giue place to the finger. Then you must minister sharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he must take great gobbettes of bread steeped in water, and likewise his meate must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rouling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the bitches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better runne out. And let him gargarise *aqua mulsæ* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of lintils and roses. And with these you must tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vicers of the tonsilles.

DE SERPENTIBVS ET MALIGNIS TONSILLARVM

VLCERIBVS.

THERE beginne malignant vicers of the tonsils, sometime with a fluxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vitious humours. They chance to children after the *Apthæ* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto scurfes, which are burnt with iron. Also there chancess to the sicke drinnesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpnesse of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You must proceed in the cure speedily, and if he be of perfect age, and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maydes, whom, at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, this disease doth often infect: then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting blood but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the hart faile, least after it, vertue be destroyed by ouermuch flux of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositaries, and by annointing of the well. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the aggriued place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities as the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the sickness, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulsæ*, then also decoction of Ireos, and other things rehearsed in the aboue said places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, not so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskillfull, to whom with great error men do seeke in doubtful matters: they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the aggriued place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they see the roue lifted vp, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if wee intend to pull

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Gargarisme.

away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vlcration will pierce more deepe, and inflammation will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venomous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blowe in drie remedies, and to annoint liquid things with a feather. Dogs doung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues matuellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fedde only with bones two daies before. It helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnflauorinesse being ministred in meats. Also the ashes of swallows burnt, and the ashes of Centorie *minor* burnt, with hony mixed is good. After the irritations and chafings made by medicines, you must apeale it with decoction of lyquorice, and with a gargarisme, which is made of masticke, mirrhe, *Tracanthum amyllum* & saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milke mixed with *terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlcers. Many infantes do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward fomentes, and emplasters, with taking heede least he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter, that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll sprinkled with *oleum nardinum*. To conclude, when the skurfes are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedie following. *Rx.* floures of red roses. *℥.iij.* saffron. *℥.j.℔.* *Balaustie*. *℥.℔.* mirrhe. *℥.j.* pine nuttes made cleane. *℥.ij.* *Amyli*. *℥.j.* Sumach, roch alume, ana. *℥.j.℔.* beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day.

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancie

DE ANGINA.

Gen. 4.

1

2

3

4

Cause.

Signs.

Curatio.

Vene humero-
rum sectio

ANgina in latine, squinancie in english, but in greeke *Sinanchis*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of squinancies, one is, when the iawes be inflamed. (by the iawes I mean, the place where the ends of the weland and the *trachea arteria* do agree) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed: yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the partes about the throat be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioyns betweene the bones of the head, and the necke be losened to the former part of the necke: wherby the place appeareth hollowe, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancie is caused through abundance of hote blood, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knownen by these signes, the breath is drawen verie hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednes of the face and necke. There chaunceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yauneth with open mouth & draweth breath. Therefore in the beginning euery squinancie requirereth a hastie and speedie remedie. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take awaye the blood by litle and litle. at many times, and

not

not all at once, for the blood being taken away altogether on heaps, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking commeth vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration & fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable perill. Take heed also that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof commeth much sayling of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the blood be, as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the blood drawn out again the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the sick be a woman, cut the veine on the ankles, specially if the menstruis be stopped, and the blood must be drawne out moderately. If by these he be but litle eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or the second day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloodletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharp clister, such as is described in the chap. of *apoplexia*. After vniuersall euacuatiōs, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chinne, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, & with scarification to draw out much blood. Also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cupping glasse behind in the neck, neere to the shutting of the first ioynt, and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humours must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggriued & inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feet with hote water. Also, bind and rub the hands and feet strongly. The necke must be couered with wooll that is moist, or that is dipped in warme oile, also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which don neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet onely discusse. For those which do altogether repell, and driue backe, they bring perill of choking by thrusting humors to the lungs. Those which be onely discusse, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore, when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of roses, lintels, and dates, or els restrictiue gargarismes, declared before in the chap. de *Columelle inflammatione*, cōmixing some discussiue medicins with it. Of that sort are roses, or sumach sodden with *aqua mulsā*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength, and standeth: you must vse those things which haue discussiue vertue only in the, as is decoction of fenugreek, figs, raisons, licorice, or stronger things as the root of ireos, hisope, *nigella*, sothernwood, with *oximell*. Therefore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus. *Rx.* of licorice scraped, *℥.ij.* raisons *℥.ss.* dry figs, in nūber 6. fenugreek *℥.ij.* hisope, sothernwood. *ana. M.℞.* seeth them in one pound of well water, till halfe be consumed: the put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *mel rosarum*. *℥.j.℞.* *oximel simplex*. *℥.j.* commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs doong, such as is found amongst herbēs, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely screened and mixed with hony, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *loboch*, that they may swallow it very softly. Likewise the ashes of swallows burnt, is very effectuell, being so mixed with hony. Moreouer to the necke

Venarum lingua sectio.
Clister.

Concurbitula.

Auersio humani.
rim.

c. d.

Gargarismus.

Cataplasma.

without, you must apply those plaisters in them which be vexed with inflammation which can concoct & discusse, as this is, R. the meale of linseed, fenugreece, and barley. ana. ʒ. j. seedes of *althea*, ʒ. iij. mallows, floures of cammomil and melilot, ana. M. j. leech them in water vntill they waxe soft, then stampe them in a morter, and make a soft plaister, or put to it oiles of cammomil, and lillies, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. and being boyled againe, make an emplaister. Neither shall it be vnprofitable, if the necke be annointed with oiles of cammomil, dill, and lillies, or fomented with decoction of fenugreece, melilot, and cammomil.

Potus.

They which are vexed with the squinancie, let them vse three dayes *aqua mulsa* for their drinke. Afterward iuyce of prisan by it selfe or with some sweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, discusse, nourish, and to coole. When the inflammation is somewhat slaked, and the sicke beginneth to swallow better: giue to him the yolkes of reereggs, and suppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the sicke and his meates, must be according to his strength: therefore he must eschue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe must especially be eschued, as well in the squinancie as in all other inflammations. For in sleepe (as Hippocrates saith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the griued place, doth increase more.

Cibum.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Cough.

DE TVSSU.

Cause.

HERE be diuerse causes of the Cough. For as Galen saith *lib. 1. ca. 2. de sympto. causis*, Cold distemper of the instruments of breathing causeth the cough. Also a humour distilling from the head to the *Trachea arteria*, and sharpnesse onely of the vpper skinne of *trachea arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough. Also wormes troubling the stomake, & raising vp some qualitie, sending it to the iawes, doth cause the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in the lungs & the breast, is the cause of inflammation in the lungs, disease in the sides, consumption and the cough. Those which be outward signes, and may cause the cough, be smoke, dust, and whatsoeuer doth exasperat the *trachea arteria*. The signes of coughing caused onely through cold distemper of the instruments of respiration & breathing are, that those which be so afflicted, they spit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor constraining: but it is so small, that not only it may be suppressed by holding the breath, but also vnlesse it be very great, it may be healed, because through stopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do wax hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, they are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, because the cold thereby is increased, & made more stronger.

Signa.

Therefore if they breath and fetch their wind easily, and be also in a warme house, they cough little or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirsty: they are griued with cold things, and are best with hore things. The coughes which chance with tickling of the pannes on either side of the palate, they do openly shew a flowing humour, comming from the head to *trachea arteria*: and to the lungs which you may well know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do spit out nothing, it declareth it

to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnes, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distempere, occupying the instruments of breathing: you must eschue ayre, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through humours distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the Chapter of distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therefore let the necke be wrapped about with warme woll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes it healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuerfant in a hot house, and let him breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hot oyntments, as is oyles of *ireos*, lillies & dill. If a humor that is thin and sharpe, flowing out of the head to the *trachea arteria*, and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shalbe healed specially by meats of good iuyce, & by medicins which do coole, thicken, temper & stop sharpnes and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of violets, of *Nimphaea*, of poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *diapenidion sine speciebus*, *pilule bechice*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good. *Rx. Diatragacantha, diapenidion sine speciebus. ana. ʒ. vj. iuice of licorice. ʒ. ij. pilule bechice. ʒ. j. storax calamint. ʒ. ʒ. mirrhe, drie roses. ana. ʒ. j. tragacantha, pine nuts. ana. ʒ. ʒ. sirupe of violets, as much as shall suffice to commixe them, and make an Edigma.* Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicins which are spoken of before in the chap. of distillations. But if a grievous & viscous humour be cause of the cough, we shall cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sicke sirupes of licorice, hisope, horehound, calamint, & such like, or else this decoctio, *Rx. roots of ireos, percelly, licorice. ana. ʒ. j. roots of Ella campana. ʒ. ʒ. drie figges in number vij. of raisins the stones picked out, ʒ. j. seeds of nettle, annise and fennell. ana. ʒ. ij. hysope, maidenhaire, scabios, of iust quantitie, til the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuice of that decoction put sirupe of hisope and horehound. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. and make a potion.* Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the bodie with those medicins which do purge grosse and clammie humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of agarick is very good, which is made after this sort, *Rx. of elect agarick. ʒ. ij. ginger. ʒ. j. salt gemme ʒ. iij. beate them, and infuse them one night in ʒ. ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of wormewood and fennell. ana. ʒ. j.* In the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium indi maioris. ʒ. ij. ʒ. Oximel scilliticum. ʒ. ʒ.* & make a potion. The bodie being purged, let him haue a loch sometime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort, *Rx. Loch è pino, loch sani & experti. Loch è scilla. ana. ʒ. iij. Diatreos Salomonis. ʒ. j. powder of Diapenidion cū speciebus. ʒ. j. powder of the rootes of Enula and ireos. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. iuyce of licorice. ʒ. j. sirupe of horehound, as much as shall suffice to commixe them. Moreouer the breast*

Vilui ratio.

Cure of the cough caused of cold distempere.

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors.

Edigma.

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humors.

Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio agarici.

Edigma.

must be annointed outwardly with hote oiles of lillies, *Treos* & sweet Almonds, putting to them grease and other things after this sort. R^y. oiles of lillies and sweete Almonds. ana. ʒ. iij. of hens grease. ʒ. j. ʒ. fresh butter. ʒ. ij. the muscelage of fenugreeke, and rootes of *Alibea*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. *Storax*. ʒ. ʒ. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *Treos*. ana. ʒ. j. saffron. ʒ. j. white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough, are to be sought in the chapter of distillation.

Unguentum.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Asthma.

DE ASTHMATE.

Causa.

Signa.

Vicius ratio.

Curatio.

Dieta.

THE *Asthma* is caused whenas grosse and clammy humors be gotten abundantly into the gristles or lappers of the lungs, or that there be some swelling in it, like vnto a botch. Also they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleat and filled with distillations. These euils are easy to be knowne a sunder. For distillation doth also chance in haile folke by and by through as manifest a cause in a manner altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of a distillation following it. If there be swelling of the lungs like a botch, there must needs follow a feauer, and so within few daies after, the inflammation being rotted: the matter of it is cast out with the cough. If ther be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, such do not feelee any great grieffe, nether are they much troubled with difficulty of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drinke, because they cannot swallow but with much grieffe. Those which be properly asthmatickes, or orthopricks, they haue no feauer at all, and there chaunceth to them heauines of sense, and they do not spit out matter with their spittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and dry, therefore he must eschew aire colde and moist. He must eate the flesh of partridges, birdes of the mountaines, hennes, capons, and such like. He must eschew, fishes, fruite, pulse, and all other things that can ingender grosse and clammy humours. Let him vse often hysope, percelly, and fennell. Vniuersally let him drinke a small quantity at once which bath a botch risen, but much drinke must be vsed of those, whose gristles and flappes of the lungs are stopped with grosse and clammy humours, which are not easie to be cast out with the spittle because of their thicknes, & therefore they haue need of much moistning, that it may come out the easilier. He must vse exercise before meat, but not sodainly by and by, because many by these meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breast do profite. Perturbations of the minde, especially wrath and lamentation are to be eschewed. But for the cure of the aforesayd euils generally, you must labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth these euils, may be abolished and consumed. But before the cure of the euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of grosse and clammy humours, you must cure it by extenuating and clensing medicines. If it come of swelling like a botch, you must cure it by extenuating and drying medicins. Against grosse and viscous humours, those medicines be good, which do extenuate and scoure without heat vehement; for grosse and viscous humours do waxe more rough & clammy as wel with vehement heat as they do with cold,

so that afterward they can scarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therefore *Oxi-
mell squillicum* or *squilla* roasted and braied with hony is especially to be mini-
stred vnto them. Also sirupes of liquorice, horehound, and hysope; Also the de-
coction reherfed in the last chapter before is good for purging. If necessity re-
quire, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine and
draw out so much blood as strength will suffer. But if the body be not full, (the
humour being prepare to purging by the premisses) you must minister oftē
stronger medicines, which may drine out the grosse & clammy humors. Ther-
fore pilles of Agaricke, and *pilule cochie*, also *Diaturbish* with rewbarbe, *antido-
tum indi*, and *diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of
Agaricke described before in the last chapter. Also the belly must be washed *clister*.
with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of radish and
other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first
booke of Melancholiousnes. But in the meane season while purgations be mi-
nistrēd, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate hu-
mours contained in the breast by litle & litle, and he must take *Aristolochia ro-
tunda*, the rootes of *Enula* and Ireos, nettle seed, hysope, *nigella*, calamint & such
like, wherewith you may make decoctions or loches. For which purpose also
those *Ecligmata*, which are reherfed in the chapter of the cough, are good.
Also *Trochischi Beccij albi* be most excellēt. Outwardly you must lay to the breast,
plaisters made of figges, barley meale, or rather meale of fitches, hauing rozin,
hony, and waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast of Ireos, dill, rew,
and such like, as is this: R. oiles of dill and rew. ana. ʒ. ss. the greafe of hennes
and duckes. ana. ʒ. ij. the rootes of Ireos, *Enula*, and *Dracontij maioris*, ana. ʒ. j.
seede of flaxe. ʒ. ij. Storax. ʒ. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an oint-
ment. But the breast must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that
(the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may
more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which
can exulcerate the skinne, and can drawe out matter and waterie humours
as those be which are named *rubefaciētia*. For this purpose the breast must be *Rubefaciētia*.
rubbed with nettels, braied or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be
cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are
ministrēd in vaine, we must flie to burning, as *Aetius* teacheth in *lib. 8 cap. 57*.
how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath
need of medicines to attenuate and drie, (as is sayed before) you must note
that it is cured with Aromaticke things, because they do extenuate, drie, and
heat. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes,
compounded of these things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatū*, *Antidotū emoscha dulce*,
Diamber, *Aromaticum rosaceum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

*Vnguentum.**Rubefaciētia.**Cure of Abs-
cessus.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the plurisie.

DE PLEVRITIDE.

PLVRISIE, to speake exquisitely & properly, is an inward inflammation
of the vpper skinne, girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is cal-
led *lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added to speake exquisitely and properly:

Cause.

Signa.

Videtur ratio.

Curatio.

Venesectio.

Clister.

for through many torments and through meats grosse and flegmaticke there doe engender humours that be colde, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselves by & by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The plurisie which is an inflammation of the vpper skin, which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hot blood, flowing vnnaturally to the aforesayed vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle is redde and bloodie, it signifieth blood to haue dominion: if it be yealow and subpale, choller hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleume ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choller to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two daies the sicke must be content with the iuyce of pisan, for his meate. Afterward make him almond milke with the decoction of pisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a chicken or cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschewe all things that be sharpe and restrictiue. Let his drink be water wherein cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschew cold water as a pernicious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieved. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the minde. In the beginning of the cure, the Phisicion must diligently consider, whether the bodie of the sicke be grieved with abundance of humours or not: so that he must knowe at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the bodie be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the plurisie and inflammation the paine must be mitigated and discussed with fomentes and medicines that do heate. But if the bodie do abound with euill humors, or be full of blood, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heat, for they moue fluxe of humors to the aggriued place: for the place to the which things that doe heate are layed, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote fumentes which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the bodie must be emptied by blood letting, and you must cutte the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on that arnie which is right against the grieve on the same side. For blood letting on the same side, doth not onely drawe blood away from the aggriued parte, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the plurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After blood letting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrementes of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. *Rx.* mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, spinage, of both the garden endiues. ana. *M. j.* whole barley. *℥ j.* seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third parte be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction. *℔ i.* *calia fistula* newly drawn. *℥ j.* *℔.* of the oyles of cammomill and violets. ana. *℥ j.* *℔.* fresh butter. *℥ ℔.* common salt. *℥ j.* and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the bodie is emptied you must apply

apply outwardly foment that doe heat and mitigate paine, such as *sacculi* be, *Sacculi*.

which are made of the floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, *rapsus barbatus*, seed of flaxe, fenugreeke, *milium*, and bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbes aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuises. Also you may well apply a great soft sponge, being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, and applied to the grieve warme. You must couer the foment with clothes, lest their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an apple, take out the core of it and fill the hole with *olibanum*, and rost it till it be soft, then take off the skinne of the apple, and mix the soft of the apple, and the *olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, & swallow it all at once, which doth remoue the pain very much. This plaister also is good for this purpose. *R.* floures of cammomil, *rapsus barbatus*, and dill. ana. *M.* *℞.* line seede, fenugreeke. ana. *℥. iij.* annise seede. *℥. j.* barley meale. *M.* *℞.* bray them and put them in water, till they be as thicke as hony, after put to oiles of dill and cammomill ana. *℥. j.* *℞.* boile them againe and adde to it the yolkes of two eegges, of saffron. *℥. j.* and make an emplaster. *Concurbitula.*

After the seuenth day, if the paine do continue stil after one sort, fasten a cupping glasse to the side, and scarifie the skinne, for a manifest commodity doth ensue to them that haue the pleurisie, by applying of cupping glasses. The cuts of the scarified places must be strewed with salt if the patient can abide it, if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oile, and sprinkled with salt. The next day after the scarifying is done, it is good to fasten on a cupping glasse againe, that the matterly bloud may be drawn out of the litle wounds. This second extraction is better then the first, for at the second time the blond is not drawen away, but the matter. Also the Phisition may not neglect to minister to the sicke such medicines as are good to make the fleume come vp easily (as is) *diapenidion*, *diatragacanth*, conserues of violets, *Trochisci pectorales*, putting to them other loches rehearsed before in the chap. of the cough. Outwardly you must apply medicines that haue vertue to discusse (as is) fenugreeke, dill, melilot, hysope, and such like. And if there do appeare tokens that wil rot, & turne into matter, you must further it with this or the like ointment. *R.* oiles of cammomill, of sweet almonds, and of lillies. ana. *℥. iij.* butter without salt, hens greafe. ana. *℥. ij.* the muscilage of fenugreeke, line seed, and the rootes of *Alhea*. ana. *℥. j.* waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you must minister those things that do cleanse and purifie matter and filth, (as is) *aqua mellis*, or decoction of barley, or suger roset. The filth being cleansed, you may minister glutinatie medicins, which shall be sufficiently declared in the chapter of the Pusicke afterward.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

DE PERIPNEUMONIA.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a sharpe feuer. This disease for the most part is caused of strong distillations falling to the lungs, or else of the squinancy, or the Asthma, or the pleurisie, or of other diseases. Also sometime onely inflammation is the cause of this disease. They which haue this cuill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the

Cause.

Signa.

heart doth bring choking, they haue a sharpe and burning feauer, and also fullnesse and stretching out of the breast without paine. But if the skins which be ioyned all the length of the brest within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the breast. All the face, and the aggriued place looke red, the nose is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples doe beate, the eyes do swell, the tong is dry, the appetite is lost, the breath is hot, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a dry cough, it is froathy and cholericke, or bloudy and red, which be the worst tokens. If the sicke shall die, he shall watch much, and haue fearfull short sleepes, the hands and feet shall be cold, the nailles shall be crooked and swart, and he shall die the fourth or seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholericke & froathy humors: and somtime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sicke is deliuered from all the griefe by and by. And if it doe flow into the lungs and thar abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Pitsicke. For their diet you must minister to them soupings made of the iuice of Pisan, mixed with hony, origan, or hisope. They haue more neede of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the Pleurisie. Also *alica*, or *aqua malsa* is good for the. Let them drink litle, for moistnes hurteth the lungs. You may minister for preseruing of strength (especially if choking constraineth you) *Malsa* alone, and with pine nuts, or *malsa* wherein hisope is sodden, the powder of dry Ireos to *aqua malsa* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia* must in a manner be the same, which the pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recouer. For the cure, you must eschue letting of blood in such as haue fallē to this euill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let blood before. You must mollifie the belly with clisters, if he be costiuē, or apply cupping glasses to the breast & sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, the let him blood, if strength and other things will suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme, and if strength will suffer it, draw blood on both the armes, and first but a litle, in no case vntil his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the blood letting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid blood letting, you may fasten cupping glasses to the whole breast, and the sides, and you must get out as much blood as strength by them wil suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharpe clisters, made of the decoctions of hisope, Ireos and rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Salgemme*, & other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those *Ecligmaces*, ointments, and emplaisters, which are declared before in the chapter against the pleurisy, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister *loch e scylla*, *loch e pulmo-vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of Ireos and *Enula*. And you must make a cerote of oile of rew & *nardinum*, putting to it the marrowe of a hart, of Ireos, hisope,

Pleuris ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

hysope, and horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breast, and the sides.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of blood.

DE SANGVINIS REIECTIONE.

Spitting of blood is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of *Causa.*
falling frō an high place, or a stroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehem-
ent striking, or leaping, or if any heauy things haue fallen vpon the breast,

either else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as Hippocrates witnesseth) breaketh veines. Also spitting of blood may be caused through heate.

Also sometime spitting of blood is caused of inward and secret causes, as fullness and abundance of naughty blood, gnawing a sunder the veines, and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing a sunder of those veines is caused

of sharpe humors either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreouer the blood that is spit out, sometime commeth

from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth or gummies, or the iawes, or from the stomach, vnto

the which doth fall blood out of the veines and members adioyning (that is to say) from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knowen thus: if *Signa.*

the spitting of blood be caused of abundance of blood, then the blood commeth out gushing all at once, & after it is out, the sick is better and lighter. But

if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veines, then hore perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hot baths, & had dwelt in a hot region, vsing hot diet in a hore season. If spitting of blood

be caused through gnawing and eating a sunder the veines, then the blood is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by litle and litle with the cough; and they

are alwaies worse. Also if the blood which is spitted, be froathy and palish, and commeth forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure

token, that the blood commeth out of the lungs. If flegmatick blood be spitted out with easie coughings & reaching, then the blood commeth from the *Trachea arteria*. If blood be spitted forth being black and clodded together, hauing

also the cough and paine in the aggriued place, then it is a toké that it commeth from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate

adstriction, as be rice, hulled wheat called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuices of pomegranates or peares. For flesh, let him eate wild doues,

turtles, and partriches; if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of foure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse quinces, peares, restricte apples, medlers,

and mulberies, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke redde wine, or in stead of it, water wherein

steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersity of

causes: for if the blood come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restricte things applied cold to the palat of the mouth by collu-

sions & gargarises do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seeke in the beginning of this second booke the first chap. But if there do flow much

Victus ratio.

Cura.

Vane sectio.

bloud from the head, the you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humor doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clister, and empty the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs very much with a medicine that will heat and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry, and discusse (asis) that, which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing. Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with sowe soupings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole bodie (the head being excepted only) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a litle hony soddan, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the cuill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowen into the lungs. But if it be a very sharpe humour, which distillerh out of the head you must beware of bloud letting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies heré, after declared, and also before in the chapter against distillations. They which do spit bloud, comming from the lungs, by reason of breaking of some veins in it, or by bursting open of their heades, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noise, and that they speake but litle, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you must by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw bloud twise or thrise a litle at once, for such haue no neede of much bloud letting. Also for the same purpose (that is to say) that the bloud may be drawn another way, you must rubbe the extremities, and vse to binde them hard with broad linnen cloths. These so done, you must minister to him a drinke made of vineger and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being therby dissolved) be cast out, neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this porcion twise or thrise in three hours. After these you may minister both within the body and without, medicines which be restrictive, and haue power to stoppe the pores. For things taken inwardly it profiteth to eate purslaine, albeit that his iuice drunken is of more effect, the iuice of knotgrasse, sharpe grapes, decoction of sumach, gals, the shels of acorns, the roote of bremble, *balauftia*, seed of sorrell, the rootes of horsetaile and such like, which are declared in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. But these are better & of more effect, then the aforesaid things (that is to say) *terra lemmia* beaten into verie fine powder, and ministred with the iuice of pomegranates, or of knotgrasse, or *lapis hematitis* at once. *℞.* in the like iuice. Among compounds you must vse this *loboch*, *R.* of old conferue of roses, of *roderibes*, ana. *℥.* j. of *diatragea*, *anib* *in frigidum*, and *diacotoneon simplex*, ana. *℥.* ss. of the powders of *corall* *lapis hematitis*

Concussibula.

Cure of spitting of bloud from the lungs.
Poisio.

Emplastica.

Ecligna.

matris and *terra lemmia*. ana. ℥.ij. bole armoniack. ℥.j. dragons blood. ℥.℞. pom-
granate floures. ℥.j. frankensence, the roote of *consolida maior*. ana. ℥.j. ℞. sirupe
of mirtels, as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make an *Ectigma*. Af-
terward you must sprinkle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the
oiles of roses, quinces, and myrtles. But if there be much eruption of blood
(especially being sommer) and the spitting therof comming without a cough,
and the sicke not being weake, but strong and fleshie; then you may take vine-
ger for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles,
bole armoniacke, *terra lemmia*, corall, and such like, and to make an ointment
thereof with waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of dates, *acasia*,
the roote of *consolida maior*, the barks of pomegranats, and the meale of lintels.
Also a cerote made of the meat of pomegranats, frankensence, red corall, *ba-
lausia*, bole armoniacke, *terra lemmia*, & such like is good of effect. But you must
specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels, it may grow
together againe, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation
before it be grown together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of
the wombe, for it keepeth it stretched out many daies: and you must washe a-
way aswell the matter, as the waterie blood out of the vicer, after that the in-
flammation is gone. But here the reader must be admonished, that he take
heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the blood run-
neth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction: vnlesse
the matter be first turned another way, and drawen from that place; for else it
would driue the blood inward, and stop the veins full that be within. Therefore
first alwaies you must draw the blood to the contrarie part, & after that applie
restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit blood through erosion & gnaw-
ing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them
which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours, distilling into the lungs, such as
be spoken of before in the chap. of distillation. After that, minister those things
which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humours, and so haue
vertue to stop the distillation, as is, sirupe of violets, roses, mirtles, hidromalon
diacosoneorum, and such like. For the same purpose sometime minister sirupes of
poppie and other somnoriferous medicins. The distillation being ceased, you
must restore the gnawen parts with meates of good iuice, and with medicines
that do engender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit blood must vse the same
diet and cure, which is before rehearsed, that is, if the blood flowe from the li-
uer, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger,
and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meates and drinks, adding
this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may
easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts
that shedde blood. And for blood congealed in the stomacke like a hillocke,
let him drinke creame, and especially of a hart, or let it be auoided with sauory
mixed with vinegar or with *loes*. Those which spitte blood from the palate of
their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and apply to the fore-
head, and to the head, those things which are applied vnto the nose when it
bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the

Note.

Cure of spit-
ting of blood
caused of sharpe
humours.

Cure of vom-
iting blood.

fluxe of bloud is stopped, then the strength must be cherished and restored againe: and specially he must beware of the often vsing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of spitting of matter.

DE EMPIEMATE.

Cause.

EMPIEMA in Greeke, signifieth a mattery spitting: In latin it is called *Suppuratio*. It is caused when an impostume, or borch being in the vpper skinne of them which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or else in some other vpper skin of the brest, is broken all at once, & shed and powred into the empty place of the brest, which is betweene the lungs & the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is caused sometime through bursting out of bloud (an vlcir not being brought to his scar, and perfect shutting vp.) Also sometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts falling thither, which is wont often to change into the squinancy. The signes be these, heauinesse is felt in the bottome of the brest,

Signa.

a strong cough and a dry without paine: and also sometime with moistnesse, for the which they seem to be eased. In the beginning there chancess to them feauers, faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged. When the impostume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vchemēt with quaking, and they are troubled in their speach. Being broken, there appeareth some what to flowe into the brests bottome, according to the often chaunging of their lying, and specially when they change lying from one side to an other, then surely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certain noise of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Also the matter that commeth out is sometimes cleare, sometime thicke and dreggy. Some impostumes do burst out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the brest, & these be most perillous. Some impostumes do flow out downward vnto the paunch, and the bowels, and also the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feuer ethicke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Those that be vexed with this disease of spitting of matter;

Vtilis ratio.

let them remaine in a dry aire, let them vse meates of good iuice easie to digest, brothes of cockes, the flesh of hens, chickens, birds of mountains. Also vse decoctions and brothes of cicers with herbs (as is) hisope, and parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulsa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this disease, except dilige speede be made by and by, the gathering together of matter causeth the priske, the lungs drawing vlcration. Therefore first you must helpe the concoction of the impostume with foment by sponges or bladders, with cataplasmes or emplasters, made of the meales of barley, fenugreeke, and line seeds, of figs, doues dung, mallowes, *Althea*, and a litle rosen. Also you must apply to it cerots, made of butter, ireos, laurell berries, rew, and other things, which can ripe and dissolue the impostume, whereof thou shalt find many in the chapter of *Asthma* before, and if the euill be not dissolued, you must apply to it, things that will breake the borch. The breaking of the borch is procured by lying on the whole side, eating of salt meats, and these pils giuen vnto him when he entendeth to sleepe. R. of the powder of

Curatio.

Hierapicra Galeni. ℞. j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*. ℞. j. with the iuice of wormwood

wood as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make pilles, whereof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it shall come to passe, that the sicke shall couer to spit often, and so by ouermuch spitting the impostume may breake. The rupture being made, you must take diligent heede, whither the matter runneth, and you must helpe his auoiding, for if it creepe into the belly, you must minister most of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you must minister most those things which prouoke vrine. If the matter commeth out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be ministred then prisane, mixed with good hony. Also absteriue & scouring things do profit, which are partly declared in the chapter against the pleurisie, and part of them shall be spoken of in the next chapter. But you may commodiously commix with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flowe. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *aqua mulsa* decoct with iresos, & much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoction of hisope, iresos, horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the chapter of *asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease shall be spoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Pitsicke.

DE TABE.

PTISIS in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withall. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Also it is caused through the bloud & matter that remaineth, after the bursting out of it in them that haue the pleurisie, the *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiema*. They which labour of this disease, they are knowen by wasting the whole body and the flesh. Also their nostrils be sharpe, their temples be slidden down, their eies be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer Ethicke, they breath difficultly, their cheekes be swart, their nailes doe crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the belly is troubled, and thirst doth vex them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they doe spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and clenfed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers, which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the liuer. Neuerthelesse although the causes before rehearsed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must ascribe to those that be pitsicke, a conuenient diet after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire temperate between heat & coldnes, let their meat be prisane, almond milke, reere eggs, flesh of the birds of mountaines, of partrich, of pheasants, of fowls, of blacke birdes,

*Cause.**Signa.*

Looke Hippocrates in his aphorisme. 5. the 14. & the 13. & the 11. The causes why the cure is hard. Viscum ratio.

of hennes, of capons, of calues, of sucking kiddes. Also scaly fishes in stonie waters, crabs of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be priske, specially womā's milke, after that asses milke, & goats milke, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hot. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomacke. But if they be very much feucrous, specially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruites, it is good to eate raisons, sweet almonds, pine nuttes, figges, dates, pistax. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate: and after meat they must altogether rest: let them vse to sleepe on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watchings, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses, and whatsoeuer may empty the body. Let his drinke be but small and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drink water, wherein a litle Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the chapter against the palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured And first for the cure thereof, we must minister those things which haue an abstersiue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of barley with sugar and hony; also decoction of ireos, figges, maiden haire, hisope, horehound and licorice. If there come a feuer, you may comix with the aforesaid things, the foure great cold seedes. Outwardly you must apply emplasters, and cataplasmes, made of line seed, fenugreke, and such like declared in the last chapter de *Empiement*. Also for the same purpose you may seeke many remedies in the chap. against the *Asthma*. The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter: you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vicer. For this purpose conserue of roses is commended almost of all Physicians, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to clense & scoure, but the newer it is, the more it scoureth, and the older it is the more it glutineth. Also these are marvellous good, bole armoniacke, dragons blood, amber, corall, purslaine seede, and such like which haue vertue to scoure and ioine together. Also these things are good *loch de pulmone vulpis*, *loch epino*, conserues of *consolida maior*, and maiden haire. Therefore of these you must make this compound medicin. *R.* conserues of *consolida maior*, and of maiden haire. ana. *℥*ss. conserues of roses. *℥*j. *loch de pulmone vulpis*. *℥*j. *loch epino*. *℥*ij. powder of *diatrachanthos frigidum*. *℥*ij. bole armoniack. *℥*j. *℥*ss. sirupe of poppy as much as will suffice to commix it, & make a loch. Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease. *R.* of the seeds of white poppy. *℥*ss. gumme arabicke, *Amylum* and gumme tragacant. ana. *℥*j. *℥*ss. seedes of cucumbers, citrons, gourdes, melons, quinces. ana. *℥*ij. burnt Iuory, iuice of licorice. ana. *℥*j. *℥*ss. penidies, as much in weight as all the rest, and make a powder, of the which minister daily euery morning. *℥*ij. with sirupe of poppy or roses. At that time also, that the vicer

Curatio.

Edigma.

Pulvis.

is closed, you must annoint the breast without, with oile of quinces, mirtels or roses, adding thereto sometime sumach, *Hipocistides*, pomgarnet rindes, *acacia*, galles and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore with a convenient diet, vsing all those meates which be of good iuyce easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine. *Rx.* of the pulpe of a capon. *℥.j.* cockes stone, pine nuttes, pistax, sweete almonds. *ana. ℥.℞.* of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*. *℥.℞.* powder of *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *dianthon*, & *aromaticum resarum*. *ana. ℥.j.* white sanders and cinamon. *ana. ℥.℞.* maces. *℥.j.* white sugar of the finest. *℞.j.* dissolue the sugar in water of buglosse, and roses, and make lozenges, or an electuarie, of the which minister euery day.

*Morsuli re-
fectory*

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the hart.

DE CORDIS PALPITATIONE.

Palpitatio et tremor cordis in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the hart, it is a corrupt motion of the hart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the hart aboue nature (as is) euery distempure, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the hart, or else of swelling contrarie to nature and such like. The disease is easily known by the words of the patient, who doth easily feele the beating and panting. And also you may know it by the pulse: for in a hot distempure there commeth a feuer, & the pulse is swift & great, in a cold distempure, the contrary. If plentie of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the hart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersely according to the diuersitie of causes: for in a hot distempure of the hart, the aire ought to be meanelly cold, but in a cold distempure it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuersally whatsoeuer the cause be, you must eschue any thing that doth trouble or resolute the vitall spirits, (as be) ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, letcherie, vnmeasurable colde, meate of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humor contained in the vpper skin, that goeth about the hart, do engender panting of the hart: let their whole diet be extenuatiue, let their drinke in a hote distempure be thinne and small, or a iulep of violets or roses, or decoction of buglosse. In a colde distempure they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the heart caused of hot distemper, they must haue remedie by cold medicins, which can correct the hot distempure, and ad strength to the hart. (As these be among simples) roses, violets, floures of water lillies, saunders, corall, camphire and such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidum*, *diarrhodon abbatu*, conserues of roses, of violets, of buglosse, and their plants, iuices and sirupes. Therefore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaisters, specially epithemes *faculi*, and other like, whatsoeuer is able to alter the hot distempure of the liuer. And first among ointments this is good. *Rx.* the oyles of roses, violets, and *nimphaea*. *℥.ij.* of redde corall, and redde saunders, and

Cause.

Signa.

Vicius ratio

*Cure of panting
of the hart
caused by hote
distempure.*

Inguentum.

Epithema

red roses, ana. ℥. j. camphire, gr. ij. white wax as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment, wherwith annoint the region of the hart & the backe bone. Among epithemes, let this especially be laid to the hart. ℞. the waters of roses, sorrell, & buglosse, ana. ℥. iij. water of balme. ℥. j. powder of the cordiall medicine. ℥. j. red sanders, red corall. ana. ℥. ℞. pureclaine, gr. iij. saffron, gr. iij. commixe all together and make an epitheme. Also among the sorts of drie bags this is best, ℞. floures of buglosse, violets, red roses, ana. ℥. ℞. all the sanders, of ech. ℥. j. red corall & white, of ech. ℥. j. of pearles. ℥. j. being first powdred, put them in silke and make a *Sacculus*. But those that be aggrieued with a colde distem-

Sacculus.

*Cure of distem-
pure of the
heart caused
through cold
making it to
beat and pain.
Pungentum.*

pure of the hart, to such among simple medicines, these be profitable (that is) amber, muske, saffron, wood of aloes, *storax*, cloues, maces zedoary, baulmes, and such like: among compounds these are good: the electuary, *plirisar, boticon*, *diamber*, *dianthos*, *aromaticum rosarum*, and such like, of the which may be made kindes of medicines, like as we did against hore distimpure of the hart. For ointments may be made after this sort. ℞. the oiles of lillies, of spike, and of saffron, ana. ℥. ij. *℞. gallia moschata*, cloues ana. ℥. i. wood of aloes. ℥. ℞. maces. ℥. j. saffron. gr. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you may make this epitheme thus. ℞. waters of balme, *marioram*, buglosse, ana. ℥. iij. powders of the electuaries, *diamber* and *diamoscha*, ana. ℥. ℞. maces, wood of aloes, ana. ℥. j. amber, gr. j. of the best wine. ℥. j. commixe them together and, make an epitheme. An example of *sacculus* is thus. ℞. floures of balme, & buglosse, ana. ℥. j. ℞. chosen cinamon, cloues, maces. ana. ℥. j. wood of aloes, ℥. j. barcke of the citrine apple. ℥. j. saffron. ℥. j. amber. gr. j. braie all together, and make a *sacculus* of silk to lay to the hart. And if there be panting of the hart engendred through some humour contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the hart: it must be cured (as Galen witnesseth) with a diet which will extenuate, & by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicins that haue vertue to extenuat and strengthen the hart by applying of ointments, and epithemes and *sacculi*, and such like. Of the which things to make priuat examples, we think it in vaine, seeing it is casie to any man by examples now declared heere, and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose of whatsoeuer sort he will.

*Epithema.**Sacculus.*

*Cure of pan-
ting of the hart
caused of an
humour.*

CHAP. XIII.

Of Sounding.

DE SINCOPE.

Cause.

Sincope is a swift falling of the strength (as Galen saith) it is caused through much excretion and auoiding of blood, or through vnmeasurable emptying of the belly, or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweates, and all other immoderate vacuations, also feare, dread, and all such like perturbations of the mind. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humours, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thinne humours, or else by taking breath in a stinking ayer. The *sincope* is knowon by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreame parts, as the hands and feet be cold, sweat about the face, the taking away

Signa.

away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreover of these three commeth desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the bodie. And moreover there chaunceth sometime with the fownding of the hart, a vice (that is) when the hart is vehemently distempured. Also sometime it chaunceth to the stomacke (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing be in it: that kind of *sincope* is called *stomachica*. They which fall in a sownd through plentie of raw humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of a greater bignes then it should naturally be: also their color changeth whiter then it was wont to do: & to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the droply; also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker like lead, but the pulses of the sinewes be least of all other, moreover they be obscure and vnequall. Those which are vexed with fownding through abundance of sharpe humours, they feeble continuall pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhalate & flye vp) do suffer fownding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead, their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollowe, and such like. The other causes of *Sincope* are knowne by the talke of them that stand by without any great businesse. It is easie to know, that the cure must be diuerse according to the diuersitie of the causes. If fownding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of blood, or through any other vnmeasurable or sudden emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things or with rose water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the bodie, must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a lile with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the blood bursteth out. Moreover the mouth must be opened, by putting in your fingers or a wedge, or some other thing, but the passage of hearing, and of the nose-thrills would be thrust together, that the ayer that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundrie odoraments. For as Hippocrates saith in his booke *de alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens roasted & parted asunder in the midst. Also roses, violets, quinces, citrons and such like be good. You must minister wine to him that is thinne, and alaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chamber be verie full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the coverings wherwith they be covered be soft, and strew the floores with leaues of mirtels, vines, okes, briars, and roses themselves, and sprinkle it with water. In vnmeasurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oile of mirtels, roses & quinces: but specially the neck, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes and the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *amilum*, and powders of frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, and other restrictiue medicins. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as roses, sanders, quinces, floures of water lillies, and

*Sincope cordis.**Sincope stomachica.**Cure of fownding through vnmeasurable emptying.**Stoppers of great sweats.*

Cure of found-
ding caused of
paine.

Cure of found-
ding by affecti-
ons of the mind.
Cure of found-
ding through
abundance of
crude humors.

camphir, but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If sounding be caused through paine, you must diligently enquire the cause: for if it come of an outward cause, the ceasing of the paine cureth the sounding. But if the pain be caused of no outward cause, you must find out some inward cause which causeth paine. If fulnesse with retching and stretching out do cause the paine, by and by, if strength will suffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nighest to the aggrieued part, but if strength be feeble, then you must only pull it back, or you must driue it vpward, or downeward, or both wayes, or vse frictions. But whereas the paine is caused of vicious humours, you must rather purge it. If both the aforesaid causes come together, then you must vse euacuations both wayes: but bloudletting must first be vsed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be fastened, and do sticke fast in some onely place, you must begin your cure with dissoluing and discussive medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper chapters, and especially in the chapter against the cholicke. Those which do sound through great sorrow, feare, and other perturbations of the mind, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do sound for great sorrow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may comfort the spirites. They which be troubled with sounding through plenty of crude humours, they may neither suffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, & you must rub the legges first from the vpper part, and so downward with linnen clothes not very soft, but somewhat sharp: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries and veines be sufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that some wearinesse will come to the senses through ouermuch rubbing: you must vse oyle solutiue and loosing, as is oyle of dill, and cammomill: and you must beware especially of restrictiue things. And when you haue annoied the parts of the body, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe, and that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whose aire must be temperat. Moreouer *mulsa*, wherein hisope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware that you minister not to them, neither meate nor brothes, nor water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *mulsa* the three first dayes, and to rub him by course continually, graunting him onely but time to sleepe, which must be in a meane. But if their pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfull inequall, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as it is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoyd not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly powre in somewhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *agua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midrife vnto the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the bellie a-

boue

boue reason, first you must seeth your *mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make
 the belly lesse soluble, and it nourisheth more. After this, if the superfluities
 do descend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must mini-
 ster for *aqua mulsa*, the iuice of ptisan. And if they continue still to flow, nourish
 him with souplings of *alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulses in the
 meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecillitie, or vnequalnes or
 smalnes: at which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if
 neither the belly nor the liuer be troubled with an impostume; for if they be
 vexed with it (the bodie being stuffed with crude and raw iuices) the sick is
 desperat of all health. Therefore in such a case of the sick, thou shewest thy selfe
 without blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines.
 But if there be at any time found abundance of clammy humors, by and by mi-
 nister *Oximel* in stead of *mulsa*. Therefore if it be sommer, and the sick vsed to
 cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold, but if it be winter, minister it hote. Al-
 so these things are very euill for them, as well bathings, as also the open aier,
 as often as it is ouer hot or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be
 presently vexed with sounding, where the belly and the liuer be without im-
 postumation, thou shalt minister a litle bread, and that with some wine, be-
 cause it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the body: and thou
 shalt come straight to frictions and rubbings, and thou shalt do according to
 the order before prescribed. But if it be sommer, or the region naturally hot &
 burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hot: then let them drinke no
 wine but small ale cold. But the drinke that shalbe given the second and third
 time, thou shalt minister it altogether hot. For in the whole cure, where we vse
 frictions, heat is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to
 those which haue founding caused of choler, which troubled the mouth of the
 stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to mini-
 ster to all that haue the *syncope*, wine that is hot by nature, yelowish in colour,
 thin in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for
 we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, &
 not to carrie in the stomack. They that are vexed with sounding through vice
 of thin humours, those you must emptie by litle and litle, and continually, be-
 cause they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish
 by litle & litle, and often. The outward part of the skin must be thickned: and
 you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must an-
 noint them with restrictiue medicins and ointments, and you must giue them
 meats that do not readily disperse and flow: therefore giue neither *aqua mulsa*,
 nor *ptisan*, but bread and souplings of *alica*, and soure frutes which will not easi-
 ly be corrupted. You shall also giue sometimes to them egges, specially their
 yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of cocks which
 be nourished with milke. Also swines braine, but let it either be diligently ro-
 sted, or well sodden in water with leeks, and dill. To conclude you must labour
 by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thick, and
 thicken the skine, and to stop the exhalations. Watery wine is necessarie to
 them after meat in the beginning of sicknesse, if they haue bene vsed onely to
 wine, but if they haue not vsed themselves to wine, then ale is best for them, or

Plegmon.

*Cure of sound-
ing now pre-
sent.*

*Cure of syncope
caused of thin
humours.*

*Cure of found-
ing through
inflammation.*

*Cure of found-
ing through
humours in the
stomach.*

beere. And if all follow your mind, you may also after other things giue them nourishment by flesh specially after the fourth day, (the iuices comming now to concoction.) If sounding come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feet must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane fro meate and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *sincope*, through vicious humors gnawing the mouth of the stomake, they must be cured by prouoking of vomit: or if that take no place to moue the bellie, do other things which are expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomake. They that begin to found in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, nor you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a found, must be caried out verie quickly, and the rest of the bodie must be couered with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a sponge dipped in cold water, or sprinkle it with rose water. Also the face, the stomake, and feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quils, or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes that the humours that cause the sounding may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull off their haire, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

DE LACTIS DEFECTU.

Cause.

Signa.

*Cure of lacke of
milke in a di-
stempure.*

Little bloud.

Picture ratio.

THE want of milke, doth chance through dry distempure of the pappes, or of the whole bodie. Also through small quantity of good bloud, or because the child is so weake, that he cannot sucke well of the paps: for looke the more that he draweth out by sucking of the, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens wherby the diuersties of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spokē, but yet I wil rehearse the againe. A dry distemper is known by the disposition of the whole body, and by leanness & driness of the body, & pappes & such like. Small quantitie of good bloud is known by the ill state of the body, & by the euill colour of it. Also vnmeasurable euacuations comming out of the bodie before, (that is to say) by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreame exercises, by hunger & such like. For the cure of lacking of milke, which is caused of a drie distempure, we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared afterward in the chap. against the feuer Ethick. Therefore here we wil only treat of the cure of lack of milke, caused of the little quantity of good bloud. In this cure first you must behold the bloud, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therefore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate meanelly: for whatsoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, either else do drie or coole, those partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, & partly by diminishing of it, they do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, milke, veale, chickens, partridges, birdes, fere eggs, fishes scaly, & raisons the stones taken out, sweet almonds, lettuce, buglosse, balme, gourdes, & such like

like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie, they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the blood. But if the blood be worse, (as if it be cholericke) first purging of the cholericke humours is requisite, and then vse the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke blood, it requireth medicines that do heat in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humours do turne them into blood: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest are, rocket, fennell, dill, parcelly, and those things Greene before they be dried, for being dried, they do heat and drie more then they ought to do: and those things which do drie, they make the humour which feedeth the blood, the more grosse, and more small in quantity. The blood ought to be meanelly hot and not grosse, that the milke may be engendered thereof. Moreouer those things that do meanelly heat, and haue no great drineffe ioyned with them, they haue vertue to engender milke: among which, besides those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes beaten, and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised. *Rx.* Rice ten times washed and dried againe, and beat it to powder, then seeth it in good milke vpon burning coales: while it doth seeth, put to as much of white sugar as is sufficient, and make a porage. It is made the better, if you adde to it sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes, barley meale, cycers, and such like: but you must labour also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hot medicines, which haue an attractiue verue, the milke may be drawn, and entised to the pappes.

Euill blood.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

DE LACTIS REDVNDANTIA.

IT chaunceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the pappes are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good blood. The euill is knowne by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared, least the paps be taken with inflammation. Therefore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vse those things which do lightly repress and driue backe, lest that the blood be thrust into the lungs by a certen violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, & to bind it with bands to the pappes, or apply dates braid with bread and *Posca*. Also it is good to apply an emplaister made of oile of roses, of saunders, corianders, *Pisillum*, purcelaine, beane meale, lintels, iuice of plantaine, and of vineger, after this sort. *Rx.* of beane meale and of lintels. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. seed of purcelaine. \mathfrak{z} . j. seedes of flaxe and *Althea*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ss. of plantaine. *M.* j. seed of Coriander. \mathfrak{z} . ij. boile them together in water, vntill it come to the thicknes of hony; after that, put to it oile of roses. \mathfrak{z} . j. ss. boile them againe, and adde thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an emplaister: or make a cerote after this sort. *Rx.* of the oile of roses and mirtelles. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. ss. the meales of beanes and lintels. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. ss.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Posca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.

Emplastrum.

Cerotum.

of mintes and rew. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . with waxe and Venice turpentine, as much as is sufficient, and make a cerot to apply to the pappes. Also wilde rapes do profit maruellously being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, it is verie profitable to annoint the place with the iuice of *Cherua* and greene percelie. Likewise, the stone *pyrites* powdred and applied with oile of roses and vinegar, doth shew a maruellous effect against abundance of milke. And let their whole dier be such, that thereby but litle bloud may be engendred. Therefore hunger in this euill aboute other things is maruellous good.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

DE LACTE IN GRVMO CONVERSO.

Cause.

*Signa.
Fictus ratio.*

Curaatio.

MANY times the milke curdeth in the pappes, and turneth into the forme of cheefe curds. It is caused through abundance of milke, that is, when it is kept long time together on heapes in the pappes, and is not sucked out. It is caused also of a hot distempure, when that through ouermuch heat, the thinn part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curdes. Also the like may chance of cold, which may cause milke to curd and congeale as well as other licours. Also sometime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammie inough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curdes. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is known by & by, both by touching & by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse according to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distempure of the pappes, let the diet decline to cold things, but in a cold distempure contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grossenesse of the milke, she must vse altogether an extenuate diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the pappes of them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by litle and litle. Let the pappes be outwardly annointed with iuice of greene parcelie, mintes, fenugreek, & other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a hare beaten with water, if it be annointed is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of milke. Also lintels sodden in brine is maruellous good, if the pappes be washed with the decoction, & annointed with the lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of fenugreece and *althea* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heat doth cause the milke to curd in the pappes, then annoint them with iuice of purcelaine, and garden nightshade. Also apply oyle of roses with vinegar. Also mouse-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *emolia* annointed with vinegar or with water & oile of roses doth good. Moreouer lintels sodden in vinegar, & applied as is aforesaid, is good against cold distempure of the paps. Use decoctions of cammomill, fenell, dill, linseed, and fenugreece, & therewith foment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of cammomill, dill, lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vinegar annointed, but you may put to it mintes or parcelie, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good. \mathfrak{R} . of hony. \mathfrak{z} . β . of *storaac calamita*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. of oxes gall. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of oile of cammomill.

cammomill. \mathfrak{z} .ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij.β. commixe them together, and make an emplaister to lay on the pappes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of inflammation of the pappes.

DE INFLAMMATIONE MAMMARVM.

IT is caused sometime, (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hot bloud flowing to the pappes. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to suppuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne a sunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chaunceth onely to such. For the cure in the first cause, you must see bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the menstruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or anckle. After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, least that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therfore for that purpose it is verie good to take oile of roses, with the iuice of water of nightshad, vineger, and the decoction of cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the pappes. Also an emplaister made of barley meale, linseed, saunders, bole armoniacke, grease and oile of roses are good. And if the Phisition doth see that reperussiue medicins do not much good, he must straight proceed to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a softe sponge dipped in warme *posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply dates brayed with bread and *posca*. Also apply crummes of bread with mirrhe, saffron, and mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the chapter of impostumes in the breasts, as hereafter shall proceed.

Cause.

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Emplastrum.



The third booke.

CAAP. I

Of weakenesse of the stomach.

DE IMBECILLITATE VENTRICVLI.



EAKNES of the stomake is sometime caused through distempure of the effectrix and working qualities without any flowing of humours. For as Galen saith in lib. 3. de simp. causis. cap. 10. All vehement distempure doth ouerthrowe and cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humour, being contained in the bosome, and large space of the stomacke,

Cause.

Signa.

which hath power and vertue either to heat, or coole, or to moisten or dry, or two of these qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humour stuffed and drowned in the filmes, and cores of the stomake. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meat, and vnlausorie belkings, do betoken distempure onely of a hote qualitie. Contrariwise litle thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and foure belkings, betoken distempure of a cold qualitie. And to be short, if the stomack be grieued with hote or cold distempure, it changeth the meates that be eaten into the nature of the distempure: so that the meates may be perceiued to be chaunged into the sauour of roasting or sowerneesse, without the commixing of any humour. Moreouer if the distempure be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates, or drinckes that be cold. But if the distempure be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distempure, the patient feeleth no thirst, or verie litle; he hath abundance of spiritle, and doth desire moist meates. In a dry distempure there is drinesse of the tongue, extenuation of the bodie, litle spiritle, and vehement thirst. Moreouer vomiting & desire thereto, heauinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meat, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humors. And if yealow choller do abound, there followeth bitterneesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of choller, thirst, belkings, with sauour roasted, and gnawing of the stomacke; but if fleume do abound, it doth cause no gnawing in the stomacke, vnlesse it be salt fleume: there are present sowre belkings, no thirst and stretching out of the stomacke. If melancholy abound, it causeth sadnesse and feare, sinking belkings, and spittings, and sauour of fish, sleepe with fits of strange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Every distempure is corrected and amended by his contrarie. Therefore you must coole a hot distempure, and heate a cold distempure; also moisten a dry, and dry a moist distempure: likewise must you do in compound distempures, either heat and dry, or heate and moisten, or else coole and moisten, or coole and drie. Those that be vexed with hot distempure of the stomacke, are cured with a cooling diet, but specially if they take cold things with vinegar. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *posca*. For flesh, let him vse chickens, partrich, yele foddren with vinegar or veruice. For pot-herbs, lettuse and purcelaine are verie good. Also apples and sharpe peares. The sicke must drinke small ale or beere, if he hath bene vsed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of cinnamon, or wine that is thin and watery. You must apply and lay vpon the stomacke outwardly such medicines as do meanelly restraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold distempure of the stomacke, must be healed with the contraries to the foresayd things, as with the decoction of annise seed, rew, and parcels seed. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dressed with cinnamon, *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, pepper, and such like odoraments. Also giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *diacalamintes*, and *theriaca*. Anoint the stomacke outwardly with those ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vse to drinke wine that is old and somewhat astringent. A moist distempure is helped with meates that do drie without any strong heat or coldnesse. Moreouer, vsing of lesse drinke then he is accustomed to do. A drie distem-

pure

Curatio.

*Cure of a hote
distempure.*

*Posca is a sauce
made with vi-
neger & water*

*Cold distem-
pure.*

*Moist distem-
pure.*
*Dry distem-
pure.*

pure must be cured as the feuer Ethicke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if some humour hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weaknesse of the stomach, you must marke and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largenesse of the stomach, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cotes of the stomach. If the humor be contained in the bosome of the stomach, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomite: warme water or thinne *muls*a drunke doeth cause an easie vomit. It wilbe better if you minister before it things that do moisten, as is the broth of prisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, purge him with *hierapicra*, for as *Ga^l* saith, there can no better medicine be found against vicious humors, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomach. The humor being purged let them vse the same diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomach things that do coole, and meanely restraine, as is oile of roses, oile of quinces, putting to saunders, balaustie, corall, and purslaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the distempure. For ouermuch vse of cold things doth not only not profit, but also oftentimes it causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heat that is requisite for concoction and digestion. If humors being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomach, he must vse *oximel*, wherein hath bene sodden medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is, *hi^op*, the root of *ireos*, or *igan*, *sauroy* and *horehound*. But if the flegmaticke humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and deuide clamie humors & grosse fleume, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleume, looke before in the first booke, chap. 12. Also *hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humours. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate: and let him vse electuaries that do heate, as *diatrion*, *piperion*, *diagalanes*, *diacinnamomum*, *diamber*, ginger condit, *diacorus*, and such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heat, as is, oile of *nardinum*, oile of mints, oile of wormwood, and oile of mastick, and other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also cerotes are commended, which the Phisitions commonly call, *scutum stomachale*, such as is this, *Rx*. chosen cinnamon, cloues, long pepper. ana. *℥*. j. *gallie moschate*, maces, ana. *℥*. *ss*. *calamus aromaticus* frankensence. ana. *℥*. j. *ss*. wood of aloës. *℥*. j. sowne mints. *℥*. ij. masticke, lapdanum. ana. *℥*. ij. oiles of masticke and narde. ana. *℥*. *ss*. with waxe and turpentine as much as will suffice, make a cerot to lay vpon the stomach, and couer it with purple silke; or vse this medicine. *Rx*. mastick beaten to powder. *℥*. j. *ss*. then strew it vpon lether being cut like a buckler, and poure vpon it *oleum nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpon it chosen cinamon, nutmegs, and cloues. ana. *℥*. j. beaten into powder, and apply it to the stoamach. To be short, these & other things which do strengthen and heate the stomach, are to be applied, as is, mints, wormewood, frankensence, masticke, cinnamon, galingale, ginger, maces, wood of aloës, *calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our scuenth booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuerse kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

H iij

Cure of weaknesse of the stomach caused of an humour.
Choler.

Pictus ratio.

Fleume.

Diet.

Scutum Stomachi.

Aliud.

Medicines which strengthen and heate the stomach.

*Cause Nau-
sea.**Signa.**Curatio Nau-
sea.*

Disposition to vomit (called *Nausea*) which is a naughty and wicked motion of the expulsive verue of the stomach, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold, which humor either swimmeth in the concauitie and hollownesse of the stomach, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleaving like birdlime, & can scarce be drawn away: or the humour being more watery, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach, like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes engendred through distemper of the stomach as well hot as cold: sometimes such humors do flow from the whole bodie, as from other parts (being first euil affected) into the stomak as it were the extremities: as from the liuer or the spleene, or the head, or from the whole bodie. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue it by the signes declared in the last chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *nausea* (that is) disposition to vomit, then for the most part vomiting followeth, & the stomach corrupting the meats, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, and changeth it into his nature, but if a tough humour be drowned in the cotes of the stomach, it causeth disposition to vomit, but yet such a disposition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and straine himselfe as though he could vomit: but if that humor be watery and wheyish, then it causeth vomiting, not only before meat, but also after meat, and especially if that humor swim in the breadth of the stomach: for if it be stuffed and cleave to the rop of the stomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the stomach) be euil affected, the sicke himselfe doth first feelee the grieve of the member that is diseased: for either he feeleth heat, or cold, or heauinesse nigh about the place that is diseased, or also he cannot suffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales & pushes in the skin, and also by the vrine you may discern it. For the cure, you must diligently consider which grieve it is, whether it be a disease caused only of the stomach, or of the whole body, or of some other member. For if humors do flow into the stomach from some other member, or from the whole body, you must first take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diseased, but yet you may not neglect the stomach altogether: for vnlesse the whole body be first purged of vicious humors, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to resist the flowing of humors into some one place. So also he that doth cure the member that is first diseased, he cutteth off as it were the fountaine of all flowings into the stomach. If you will know how those members are to be cured that do send excrements into the stomach, you must learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humours be ingendred in the stomach causing disposition to vomit, you must marke whether those humors be thin, cholerick and wheyish, and being contained in the hollownes of the stomach: for then you must giue him

him very thinne iuice of prisan, or hot water, and the sicke must prouoke vomit with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throte. But if the humors be stuffed within vpon the top of the stomack, you must minister one dram of aloes to drinke being dissolued in water. For against hot humors which be in the stomacke, Aloes is the best medicine, so that often it hath healed euill stomacks in one day. After the humors be purged, and other medicines ministred, which do stop or make temperate the sharpnesse of choler, then you must cure the hote distempere of the stomacke, as is taught in the last Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, grosse and tough humours, which do swim in the breadth of the stomacke, you must cure them after that sort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, and then you must get away the cold distempere of the stomack, as is afore taught. Now, for vomiting you must note that in the beginning it ought not to be stopped, if the sicke be the better for it, according to Hippocrates saying. In vomiting which commeth by it selfe, if such things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be suffered; but if not, then contrariwise it is euill. Therefore you may not stoppe that vomit which is decretory, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the stomacke, or when humours be engendred in the stomacke through distempere. But then you must rather helpe the motion of the expulsive vertue in a hot cause, by ministring hot water with oile of violets to drinke: but in a cold cause, minister oximell and other things before reherfed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sicke, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpwrd in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: (that is) let the house be cold, if the disease be hot; and contrariwise let it be hote, if the disease be cold; let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let the body be felt with warme hands, and also binde them strongly with bands: also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good saueur to the nose for to smell, as roses, quinces, peniroyall, mints, fennell, spickenarde. Anoint the stomacke outwardly with oiles of wormewood and roses. Emplaisters made of Dates, quinces, and wormewood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as mints, darnell meale, frankenscence, masticke, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well, dates that haue bin steeped in old wine; afterward you must put to it mastick & frankenscence, ech of them finely powdered by it selfe afore, & then bray them together. To this place also you must call the remedies, that are spoken of hereafter, partly in the chapter of cholera, and partly in the chapter of fluxe dysenteria. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomacke, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomacke with great flame, vntill the place wax red: and you must giue the patient meat, while the glasse hangeth on still.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

DE SITTE IMMENSA.

THIRST, as Galen witnesseth in lib. 1. de simpli. med. facultate, cap. 30. is caused two manner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heat. The stomacke is heat many & sundry waies; that is, either

*Of vomiting.**1. Apho. 2.**Cure of immoderate vomiting.**Causa.*

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold
vnder the tong.Oxieratum
feu posset.

through hot distempure of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hot and cholericke humors engendred in the stomacke, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomacke is dried either through the dry distempure that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuer Ethicks. The diuersity of causes may easily be known by the patients wordes, and by those signes which we haue spoken of in the second chap. next before. Therefore the cause being known, you must remedy each of them according to their causes diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst comming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Therefore both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or watery wine being drunken are good. Also cucumberseed chewed, or if it be hulled & beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomacke. Likewise lettuce seed chewed and drunke profiteth. Also purcelaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this. Rx. of the seeds of sowen cucumbers husked. $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ diatrageantha. $\mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} .$ gumme tragacantham beaten to powder, & serced. $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ and beat the seeds, and put those powders to the whites of eggs being raw, and beating them altogether, make pills and dry them in the shadow. Of these pills minister one at once to be holden vnder the tong, that it may dissolve by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue had burning and heat in the stomacke long time, the iuice of the sweete roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and also the roote it selfe with water & the iuice of purcelain. But those which are vexed with thirst caused of heat & drinesse, as it chanceth in all burning and very dry feuers, and to those which labor in summer, or in great heat, such are best healed with oxieratum (that is) a drinke made with vineger and water sodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (besides the coolnesse that it hath) is moistest of any thing: for nothing (as Galen saith in the place before rehearsed) is moister then water. Also the thirst which engendred in feuers, may be mitigated in sprinkling the head with the coldest oiles, as oile of roses being sprinkled aloft on the fore part of the head. Also the best remedy for drinesse is sleepe, where heat and moisture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of dropsie, in which plenty of salt humors be heaped in the stomacke and belly, or in those which haue their stomake stuffed with salt fleume, then vineger is the best remedy. It is also good for them to soupe the iuice of quinces or pearces, or veriuice with water. If humors cholericke or salt swimming in the stomake, or drowned and stuffed in it do prouoke thirst, then you must minister medicines which can purge out those humors. Afterward you must vse medicines which doe restraine and comfort the stomacke and strengthen it. Examples wherof you must seeke before. They which thirst through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water & other things rehearsed in lib. 1. cap. 14.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the stomake.

Doloru sto-
machi cause.
Kapor adria.

PAine of the stomacke is caused when naughty, venimous, & gnawing humors be kept in the stomake, whereby it chanceth that through intollera-
ble

ble gnawing, they cause sounding, which they call *stomachica*. This disease is known by the continuall pricking & gnawing of the mouth of the stomacke. In this euill you must giue him meates that doe coole, and which may bring strength to the stomacke (as is) lettuce and purcelaine taken with vineger. Also pomegranates, and oranges, pearres, sharpe grapes, and such like. Also bread being steeped in very cold water is good. Also let his other meates be such that will easily digest, and yet not easie to corrupt (as be) chickens, partrich, birds of mountaines, & such like sodden with veriuice. Also fishes bred among stones, sodden with vineger, limons, and the sharpe iuice of Cytrons. Likewise let the sicke drinke water wherein hath bene sodden a litle cynamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you must prouoke vomit by the remedies aforesaid. Then after that also he must purge downward, by taking *H. erapicra*. Which things being done, you must vse remedies to strengthen the stomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the second chapter, and in other places also.

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the stomacke.

DE INFLAMMATIONE VENTRICVLI.

INflammation of the stomacke is caused no otherwise then the inflammation of other parts of the body: that is to say, through the flowing together of abundance of hot blood. Signes hereof, is exceeding great paine continual, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreover there is swelling and burning which you may feele. Also a feuer, heaviness, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) must be thinae, small, and exquisite. Therefore he must vse iuice of prisan, and he must abstaine from flesh and wine, and from other hot meates. Let the sicke drinke water, wherein hath bene sodden a litle cinnamon, or iuice of foure pomegranats, or of some other fruit that is cold and restraining. Let him sleep litle, and let him not talke much. Let him eschew sadnes as much as he can, and let him remaine in an aire meanelly cold. You must beginne the cure with letting of blood, if there be fullnesse of the whole body, & strength of the sicke. You must cut the inward veine of the arme, and you must draw blood according to the strength of the patient. After this you must apply outwardly those things that do repress & restraine, specially vpon the place where the paine & swelling do most appeare. For the stomacke (specially the mouth of it) hath euer neede of the commixing of those things that do restraine, but most of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore those which do attempt the cure with loosening remedies onely, without the commixing of those things that do strengthen the stomacke, they cause perill of death; therefore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nourished withall, or a soft plaister laid vpon that member, you must commixe some restraining thing with the. Therefore for this purpose it is good to apply to it oile wherein wormwood or quinces hath bene sodden, commixed together with mastick. Also the iuice of quinces, or pearres, putting to it red roses, barley meale, sanders, bole armoniack, & such like. Also you may vse this cerot. *Rx* barley meale. $\frac{3}{4}$. white

Cause.

Signa.

Viciu ratio.

Curatio.

Cerotum.

sanders, and red roses. ana. ℥.ij. bole armoniacke. ℥.j. β. aloes, masticke. ana. ℥.j. wormwood, nutmegs, *balauftia*. ana. ℥.β. oiles of masticke, and roses. ana. ℥.j. β. with waxe and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to lay vpon the stomack. But if there be need of great restriction (as it chanceth then, when the stomack is so weake that it cannot hold and retaine meate) you may commixe with the said things veriuice, or iuice of wormwood, or *hipocistidos*, and *sumach*, and such like. All these things (if the inflammation be vehement) must be applied to the grieve cold. And if the belly doth send forth nothing, you must prouoke it with easie clisters. Nor he worketh not vnwisely, that doth minister. ℥.β. of *cassia fistula* dissolued in endiue water, after that the burning heate is somewhat abated. Also at that time you may commix with the restrictive medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do discusse and dissolue, as is, fenugreeke meale, floures of cammomill, and Althæa; and line-seeds; you must neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time, when there floweth no more to the grieve, and that cannot be driuen backe, which is contained in the diseased member) you must not I say at that time, neither vse onely loosening medicines, or onely dissoluing medicines: but alwaies you must commix with them restrictive things which haue power to preserue and keepe the strength of the stomacke; therefore at that time you must vse this emplaster. *Rx.* the meale of linefeed and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.β. seed of dill. ℥.ij. floures of cammomill and melilote. ana. ℥.β. wormwood, balauistic, red roses. ana. ℥.ij. *hypocistidis*. ℥.ij. oiles of cammomill, lillies, roses, masticke. ana. ℥.β. hennes greafe, and goose greafe. ana. ℥.ij. commixe them altogether, & make an emplaster: but before it be applied, it is not in vaine to annoint the stomacke with this ointment. *Rx.* oiles of cammomill, dill, and quinces. ana. ℥.ij. powder of the roote of *Althea*, wormwood, linefeed. ana. ℥.j. waxe sufficient, and make an ointment.

Emplastrum.

Unguentum.

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

DE CIBI FASTIDIO.

Cause.

Abhorring of meat, or loosing of appetite, doth chance either through loosing of the sense of sucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galien* witnesseth, *libro prim. de sympt. causis, cap. 7.* or because there is no sucking out or because the body is not emptied. Also sometime it chanceth through some hore distempure, specially of the stomacke, which distempure doth dissolue the hard and sound members by loosing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moist members, it stretcheth out vneasurably by shedding. Sometime it is caused through abundance of vicious humours contained in the stomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowelles: also through ouer much bloudletting. Also the sicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, also in inflammations of the stomacke, the liuer & the matrice, and for many other causes which need not to be rehearsed here. The signes which betoken a hore distempure, are rehearsed before in the first Chapter. Those which abhorre meat, through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the stomacke, & with appetite to vomite, & with

Signa.

thirst,

thirst. Those that haue humours that be rotten, they haue sometime a feuer: but those which haue loathing of meat through grosse and clammy humors, they neither feelee gnawing of the stomacke, nor thirst, but commonly to all there commeth disposition to vomit. If loathing of meat doth come about the beginning of this disease, or about the vigour & strength of it, which the patients strength may yet suffer, it causeth no perill; for the sicke neede but little nourishment. But if losse of appetite do come in the declination of the whole disease, or in long weaknesse, or in lacke of strength, or of vnmeasurable purging, it is not without perill and daunger. This euill is encreased of age: for children are vnluckily troubled with this disease: that is to say, such as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nourishment; therefore if children haue this disease, great excesse aboue nature is signified by it. For cure of this disease, if the losse of appetite be caused through weaknesse of the stomake, you must marke what distempere doth weaken the strength, and you must cure it by contraries to that distempere, as is before taught. If the presence of vitious humours doe cause loathing of meat, if those humours be thin and gnawing, you must first beginne before any other thing be ministred, to purge the humours contained in the stomacke, by vomit. And if the patient doth vomite vneasily, minister vnto him souplings, and other nourishments which do moisten, that they may driue those humours downe into the bellie, and driue them out beneath; or purge the womb with *hierapicra*. Then we must bring the bodie to a good temper, with such things as be meet for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meat through grosse and clammy humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and curing the humours, as well with *Oxymell*, as also with those medicines, that are made of this and other sawces, as with Capers, Oliues, musterd seed, and such like, declared in the first chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or stopping of any other part of the bodie, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe, onely by odoraments, either by odour and smelling of wine infused, or decoction of quinces, or peares. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles; as oiles of roses, masticke, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the bodie: also inceptions to be applied to the Ioynes and thare. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundrie kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse, they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of dates & damascene prunes, reere eggs, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour, and swines feete much consumed in seething: For if he onely tast such meates, they nourish the bodie sufficiently. Whatsoeuer you minister, ought to be of such sort, that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed: for those things that require much chewing do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the stomake besides the ointmentes, emplasters made of dates, quinces, wormewood, and such like. Also cerotes made of the same things, examples whereof you must seeke before.

Curatio.

Alica is made
of wheat stee-
ped in water
beaten & dried
in the sun, &
then broken
grossely.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of
sharp humors.

Vetus ratio.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meat: and when they cannot refrain their appetite, they deuoure in meat without measure; then they being heauie with the multitude of meate, and their stomake not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselves with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogges. It is caused through cold distempere of the stomake, or through vicious & sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomake: for cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meat. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole bodie, which do follow either the violence of heat, or the weaknesse of the vertue retentive. Cold distempere of the stomake is known by euill digestion, windinesse, rombling, and many egections of seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkins, and much egestion, and verie thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skinne: then the egections sent out by the bellie, be lesse in quantitie then the meate that is eaten, and also the egections be drier: But if that dissipation come through weaknesse of the retentive vertue, which cannot master the meates, then there is much deiection and casting out of those things that are eaten. For the cure, colde distempere must be healed as is taught in the first chap. of this booke. If doglike and vnmeasurable appetite be caused of sharpe humours stuffed in the mouth of the stomake, and as it were water soked into a sponge, you must minister in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*: for this doth not onely heat, but also doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the stomake, humours that be stuffed in it, and it causeth them to auoid downwarde, and yet it addeth strenght to the stomacke, that afterward it will not easily receiue any hurtfull humour: therefore that is the best remedie for vitious humours stuffed in the stomacke, to bring them forth, it is ministred the weight of $\mathfrak{z} . i i j .$ with wine infused with warme water. If a child doth labor of this disease, which cannot drink the medicin for bitterness, make $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{ij} .$ of it in pilles, & annoint it outwardly with honny, & let them swallowe them downe, seeing that for the most parte, this euill chanceth of sharpe and soure fleume, you must vse such meates and medicines, as haue power to cut; deuide, scoure, and heate: as be garlick, leekes, time, sauorie, organ, penitroiall, and such like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you must let the vse this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor well leauened, with the which also you must mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, annise seed, caraway seed, comin, parsley, & such like. Let his meates be fat & oily. Also souplings are good, that do destroy appetite, as be portage made with much honny, and much oile, or goose greafe, hennes greafe,

or swines greafe. Let his pot herbes be mallowes. Also giue him the brains and fairest partes of birdes, and of fishes likewise, and those things that do altogether destroy appetite, and cause fulnesse, and that doe nourish but litle, although they be earene in great quantity. You may well giue them great plenty of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and such wine as doth heat greatly, as those doe that be yellow in colour, thinne in substance, sweete in smelling, and without restriction. For this doth heate the stomacke, and destroy the sharpnesse of humours, so that often such wine with oily and fat meates, sufficeth for the perfect cure. As Hyppocrates sayth, drinking of wine ceaseth hunger: and you must giue wine, as well to them that be fasting, as to them also which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet a thirst. But you must giue it to them that be fasting, hote, or warme at the least. He must abstaine from all fower and restrictiue meates and drinks, but specially from fruites. Let their banquetting meates be *pistacium*, almondes, pine nuttes, and oliues, with hony. Minister also vnto them milke, as well alone, as also with wine called *Passum*, or with hony: so that, neuerthelesse you must take heede that you giue it not to those, that are wont to haue it waxe sower in their stomacke, for to those it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digested, it doth not onely stop the appetite, but it softeneth the belly being stopped, and stoppeth his fluxes. Also you must make portions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, marchpaines, and rice sodden with milke. Also hee must wash now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you must vse as long as the sicke is diseased, and till he be cleane whole. If the dog-like appetite come through vnmeasurable scattering abroad, opening, and dissipation, then in such a disease it is good to thicken the skinne, and make it grosser with oile made with vnripe oliues, or oiles of roses, or of mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictiue thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire: Let the sicke remaine in an ayre, that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hot ayre and hot bathes. Also let him eschue wine and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that doe heate. Let his drinke be cold water, or decoction of Cinamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath, if nothing do let it, or slendernes and leanness of the body, or the coldnes of some member of the body, as the breast or some other. You must giue vnto them meates that be stable, durable, & hard to corrupt, as be periwinckles, and all kinds of shell fish, if they be sodden with water twise changed. Also swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the belly. Also fat beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swimme in the stomach, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this disease, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, which doe digest and consume beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse labour then fishes of stonie places, and such like things which be easie of digestion. Of egges those are good for them, which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without honie. Also rice sodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and so much you must abate of the grosse meates that you are wont to giue, & you must minish the restrictiue things also that you lay without. For sometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated,

2. Aph. 21.

Cure if it come
of immoderate
dissipation.

Pinguentum.
astringens.

when the bodie is filled with crude and grosse humours, it turneth into some other worse disease. Among restrictive medicines besides those things which are aforesaid, you must vse this ointment. R. oiles of mirtles, and quinces. ana. ʒ.ij. oile of roses. ʒ. i. iuice of plantaine. ʒ. iij. red sanders, masticke, bistorta, red roses. ana. ʒ. i. bole armoniacke. ʒ. iij. *Hipocistidos, acatia, sanguis draconis.* ana. ʒ. i. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

DE BVLIMO.

Βελιμωρ.
Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

B *Plimos* in Greeke, is nothing else but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is caused through coldnesse of the stomake, and for want and weakness of strength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iournies (especially when there is snow) causeth this disease. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure: for afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldnesse of the extreame parts, and want of spirit and breath. You must apply remedies for this disease by and by, because there be that in desert places, or in bathes, being suddenly taken with this disease, do perish for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you must recomfort them with vineger, or peniroiall, giuen them to smell vnto, or earth whatsoeuer it be, sprinkled with vineger, or apples, or pearces, or such other like frute which is next hand. Also new bread holden to the nose doth helpe, and cheefe of good sauer. Also porke roasted or sodden, and vniuersally all that doth nourish much: but especially that which hath sauer of roasted meate, and is well seasoned, & hath a sufficient sauer: for by such odours and sauers, they that haue this disease, are for the most part refreshed, seeing there is nothing (as we said before in the second booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refresh and renew the strength sooner then odours. Moreouer you must bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you must put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you must raise them and stirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as also by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is somewhat come againe to himselfe, you shall minister vnto him bread infused in wine, or some such thing, which doth restore strength verie quickly, (as be) reare egges, *Alica* with wine. The next remedie they must looke for by meat, which if they cannot take when it is offered them, you must put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to swallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raised quickly. For this purpose are good also the Antidotes, which are compounded of diuerse sweete odoures, as is, *Aromaticum rosarum, Diamber, Dianthon, diamoschi, Alipta moscata*, and such other like. And if this disease chance to come in feuers (which is seldome seene) and if it doth rush in suddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may minister meat without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and strength of the feuer, the sicke must be refreshed by the odouraments
afore said

aforesaid, and specially by those things which haue corne in them, as is *Polenta*, *Polenta is bew-*
 wet with water, or hot bread that sendeth forth a burning sauer. Also you must *ly steeped in*
 vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme partes, and apply plaisters made of *water one*
 dates, or quinces sodden in wine; and this must you do vntill the declining of *night, then*
 the fit, that you may safely giue him meate. And if the sicke be neuer the bet- *dried, then*
 ter through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. *fryed, then*
 Therefore minister iuice of pisan, or one morsell or other wet in wine that is *ground.*
 white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called back,
 they afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in
 them that haue this disease, long delay from meate, and hunger: for you shall
 giue him euerie houre verie litle meate, for it taketh away great famine and
 the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and
 giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *Lib. 10. method. cap. 3.*

CAAP. IX

Of euill digestion.

DE CRUDITATE.

Rawnesse of the stomake or ill digestion is, when as the meate is not alto-
 gether changed. The causes of it, is distempere in the stomake, inflammations,
 hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates re-
 maine rawe and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased: either
 through immoderate deuouring of meats and drinks at one time, or through
 the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselves, or through heating
 of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through
 some vicious superfluitie growing: or through short sleeping, as *Galen* saith,
Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo. The diuersitie of causes be knowne
 partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by
 certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you
 may know whether meates and drinks haue bene taken immoderately, or
 out of due season, or inordinatly. Also you may know of them the shortnesse of
 sleeping: you may know if the meates their selues were of euill qualities by
 his belkings and saouours, like things roasted or burned. For in them that be
 hot and cholericke, the belkings or corruptions sauer like meate roasted or
 burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the cor-
 ruptions are sowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be
 flegmaticke and cold, they cause sowre corruptions: but those that be hote
 and mixed with bitter choler, do cause sauer like burned meate. Likewise
 iudge of the stomake being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be
 cold, it causeth sharpe and sowre permutations, but if it be hote, it causeth
 a burning sauer. When perfect cruditie and rawnesse is engendred with-
 out corruption, in such sort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as
 they were eaten: by this you may knowe that the stomacke is ouercome,
 either through great quantitie of meates, or through vehement cold taken in
 a hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie and euill dige-
 stion, you must beware of all the aforesaid things (that is) that you neither
 offend in the quantitie, nor qualitie, nor order, nor due season of the taking

Cause.

Signa.

Victuatio.

of your meate: and that you eate those things onely, which you are able to digest, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you must especially take diligent heed to the measure and quantitie of your meate, and you must refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your strength is able to suffer. Also you must beware of euill order; that is, that you do not first eate quinces or pomegranates, or some such like thing, and afterward to eate pot-herbes out of oile or sauce made with salted fish, or other things which doe soften the belly. Also you must eschue eating out of due season, that is, that you do not eate before some moderate exercise, or before yesterdaies meate be well descended, and also not before your accustomed houre. Also you must eschue all things that be hard by nature to digest: as is flesh that is hard by nature, that is, beife and harts flesh: also eschue all olde flesh. Also you must beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in salt, and stale kept. Among pot-herbes, those that be verie hote or verie cold, or also those that engender wind, be hurtfull. Eschue fishes, which are hard, & dried by long keeping. Also abstaine from meates that be corrupt, or that doe stinke, or smell illsaouredly. Refraine from sweete fruite, or that which doth ingender windinesse, or that which is corrupt. Also eschue iunkets which be hard of digestion. Also you must eschue meates that be straunge and vnaccustomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vse to commixe in their tartes and fine cakes: but you must eate your meat in due time, not greedily nor in gobbets, nor swallowe it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and disturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vnitng and knitting together of the meate, and causeth ech peece to swimme from other. After meate eaten, you must eschue vnequall and troublous motions. Also eschue heat and cold, for those things do stop the digestion of meat. But calefaction and chafing of the sides, and rubbing of the feete, do helpe digestion. And if there be heauinesse about the stomacke, so that through it a certaine painefulnesse be spread throughout the whole bodie, then laye your hand being stretched forth, vpon the mouth of the stomacke, or applie to it a fleshic infant, for as *Galen* saith, it is much better and more naturall, then the heate which is procured by fomentis. For which cause, some do lay litle whelpes while they rest vpon their stomach, which doth encrease the abundance of heate, that digesteth the meate. Also you must procure sleepe in the night equall and without disturbance. For this, you must prepare to lye straight, and let your head be bolstered vp high, and in your lying you must incline towards the left side. And if you cannot sleepe, you must lie without turning or stirring of your bodie, and keepe it still in one forme of lying, for often stirrings and tossings do disturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie and the bowels likewise. The cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes: for hote distempere of the stomacke requireth one kinde of curing, and colde distempere requireth another. Also inflammation of the stomacke requireth another kind of cure, and hardnesse or impostumations another kind; and all those cures you shall seeke out in the proper chapters: for here it sufficeth to say thus much. When there commeth an vnpleasant belking, declaring manifestly that there is corruption of meates,

with-

Curatio.

without prolonging you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraîne all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomacke, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomit easily, for that is best in many perils. And if any be hard to vomit by nature, and be ill disposed to drink cold things, in any cause it is not inconuenient to giue him a cuppe of pure colde water to drinke: for the stomacke being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler qualitie. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the belly may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapors which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his minde to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly must be prouoked to auoid those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bidde him rest, and you must powre vpon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure colde water, let him rest in his bedde, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a litle walking, and then a Bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the bodie is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, pepper, especially long pepper, which doth onely helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke pepper. Also for the same, *Diacotoneon* is good, and *diapoliticum*. Also there be other things to be applyed aswell inwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomacke, which are rehearsed in the former chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do peirce quickly, as is Caraway seedes, fennell seeds, *Apium*, louage seed, parcels seed, *ammeos*, pepper, ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meat you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therefore let them be vsed most before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

Vomitus.

Long pepper
helpeth digestion.

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse of the stomacke.

DE INFLATIONE VENTRICULI.

THE stomake is windy, through the windinesse that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomacke, or else through meates dissolued into vapours through want & debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor

Cause.

dissolue meate. Vehement heat for the most part (ouercomming those things
 that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that
 no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of
 the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendered is troublous and
 cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one
 belking or other it vaniseth away straight. The heate that worketh in the
 meates, if it be but of little force and strength, that is, doth somewhat dissolue
 them, but not altogether consume them, thereof must needs engender windi-
 nes, as *Galen* teacheth *lib. 30. de sympto. causis. 70.* They that are thus diseased,
 haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomacke: also sometime swelling,
 and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomacke, and of the stomacke
 it selfe: also empty belkings doe come, sometimes lightning a little, and a
 stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downward. Also this euill
 sometimes is alouer the breast, and sometime behind about the backbone and
 backe, and rusheth among the iointes, and often it occupieth both places. Be-
 sides these things there is vehement pain in drawing of breath, because of the
 pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though
 they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downward, and by
 windinesse breaking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling and
 noyse is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomacke be caused
 of flegmaticke meates: you must minister an extenuating diet, and such me-
 dicins as do deuide and purge fleume, which we taught in the first chapter of
 this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weaknes of
 hear, he must vse meates easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eat
 but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meate, you must
 minister wine that is pure and vnmixed: but yet he must eschue much drinke
 as a deadly enemy. Also let him eschue frute, and eating of moist oiles. Also
 let him vse hote bathes in great vessels, for those do mixigate, soften, and dis-
 solue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleepe. And when sleepe com-
 meth, it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously.
 And as for medicines, let them vse this decoction. *Rx.* Calamint, mints, wilde
 mints, cammomill, organ, peniroidall, ana. *M. j.* wormewood. *M. ss.* seeds of an-
 nise, apium, comin, daucus, parcels, fennell, ana. *℥. iij.* seedes of nettles, cara-
 wayes, ana. *℥. ij.* of the root of *Enula campana*. *℥. ij.* seeth these in a iust quanti-
 tie of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to suf-
 ficient sugar to make the iuice of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor,
 of sirrupe of Calamint. *℥. iij.* and make a potion, wherof let the sicke drink eue-
 rie day in the morning *℥. iij.* Or let him vse this powder. *Rx.* the powders of di-
 anysum, diacuminum, diacalum, inthes, ana. *℥. ij.* seedes of annise, daucus, and fen-
 nell, ana. *℥. j.* quibibes, cloues, ana. *℥. ij.* ginger. *℥. pepper. ℥. j.* sugar. *℔ ss.* com-
 mixe them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but
 a litle before, must first vomit. Also you must minister suppositaries made
 of things that entice windinesse, after this sort. *Rx.* honny sodden. *℥. ij.* seedes
 of rewe, comin, and fennell. ana. *℥. j.* seedes of Carawayes and annise. ana.
℥. ss. salt. *℥. ij.* commixe them together and make suppositaries. If the
 wombe be verie costiue, you must cast in a clister made thus. *Rx.* of the de-
 coction

Signa.

Curatio.

Decoction.

Tritura.

Glaudes.

coction aboue taught. *℞. j. of benedicta laxativa. ʒ. vij. oiles of wormewood, rew, and dill. ana. ʒ. j. goose grease and hennes grease without salt. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. com-* *Clyster.*
mon salt. ʒ. j. commixe al together, and make a clister. In this disease you must
 annoint the stomack outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a litle bunch
 of wooll, and wette it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the
 stomacke. And vpon the bunch of wooll being wound vp together, strew com-
 min beaten, or seed of Apium or dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it
 plaisters made of lincseed, barley meale, darnell meale, commin, dill seed, or
 Apium, or fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or ap-
 ply this cerate. *℞. oiles of rew, dill, nard, and laurell. ana. ʒ. j. meale of lincseed,* *Ceratum.*
and fenugreece. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. seedes of Apium, carawaies, and Nigella Romana.
ana. ʒ. j. laurell berries, and Centorie. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. gumme ammoniacke, and opo-
ponax. ana. ʒ. ij. waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a
 great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell cuerie where, being applyed
 with great flame, is a remedie in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drunke with *Pofca*,
 and applyed outwardly with oile of dill, is good.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

DE SINGVLTV.

YElking is a motion of the stomack, and it is as it were a crampe of the sto-
 mak, raised of the expulsue vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euill
 and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse
 or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through
 the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a
 gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the
 mouth of the stomack, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which cau-
 seth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in
 feuers, specially when the stomack or some other bowell is enflamed. The out-
 ward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke, and them that be a-
 bout him. Fulnesse is known by heauinesse; and emptines by those things that
 went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt by the burnt saour of it:
 but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking and pulling: Therefore
 when yelking is engendered of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomack, wooll
 dipped in the oile wherein hath bene sodden rew, commin, & wormewood. Also
 oile of masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children
 warme linnen clothes being applyed to, do helpe often. They that be of full
 age, minister to them to drinke wine, or Apium sodden in *aqua mulsa*, or com-
 min beaten, or *A'arum*, or *peniroidall*, ech of these by himselfe or else mixt with
 other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them. *ʒ. j. of Castore-* *Cure of yelking*
um with Pofca, as well against yelking caused of colde, as also if it be caused
 through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomack
 with olde oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreover holding of the
 breath which doth encrease heate, is a present remedie for them that do yelke
 through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best reme-

Cure of yelking
offulnesse.
Auerisio.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket
caused of em-
ptinesse.

Cure of yelking
through inor-
dinacie.
Pilule de cyn-
glosa.

Pastillus.

die. If there be grosse humours, they must be extenuate and cut with *Oximet scillicum*, and calamint, and horehound their decoction, and such like before rehearsed. Afterward you must apply those things which may draw the abundance of humours a contrary way, and turne them cleane aside. For which purpose those things are good which do purge downward, and specially clifters, bindings, and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glasses with much flame, fastened to the breast, to the stomake, and to the back. Also these things are good for them, long and quick walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding. Also it is good for them to sneese, as *Hippocrates* saith. For when the yelking is caused of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Also handsome calling loud, with much clamor, & withholding of the breath, is good for them. Moreover, the stomacke must be strengthened by medicines ministred as well inwardly as outwardly. Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, emplasters and cerats before taught. Yelking, that is caused of emptinesse, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient fooode, and by those things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly spoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Ethicke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke and the back with moistening oyle, as is, oyles of violets, and of sweet almonds. But if yelking be caused of gnawing things, first we finde that vomiting is a sufficient remedie for it: then also stupefaction of feeling, and such things as doe alter the gnawing. The senses be astonied and stupefact by cooling things, for which purpose you must minister *philonium*, or pilles of hounds tongue, which do profite maruellously in this disease, you must vse them thus. You must make of one dram, fixe pilles, whereof let the sicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which doe stoppe, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be these, iuyce of Endiue drunk, cucumber seeds husked and beaten being drunke, lettuce seede likewise taken. Also iuyce of purselaine drunke, and purselaine it selfe taken in meate. Also Sebesten decoction taken in drinke, but specially aboue all, Asses milke is good. Or if you haue not that, coves milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the same purpose minister consue of roses, or of violets, or of water lillies, *diarrhodon*, *diatrion santalon*, lulep of violets, of *Nimphaea*, that is, water lillies, and such like. These Trochiskes doe stop, extenuate, and drie vp. *Rx. Costus*, saffron, spikenard, greene roses, masticke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . *asarum*, aloes. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ij} . *opium*. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . with iuyce of *psyllium*, make trochiskes, of the which giue. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . or \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{j} . Note that *opium*, and the roses, and the iuyce of *psyllium* be of a cold operation: the spikenard doth discusse, dissolue, and corroborate: the *asarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the aloes doth purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the seige: the saffron digesteth and strengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heat he causeth digestion, & by his restrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth strength: the *costus* doth sufficiently heate, and moderately restraine, which you may perceiue by his tast. Galen commendeth this medicine verie much, *Lib. 8. de Comp. Med. secundum locos. cap. 34.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Cholera.

DE CHOLERA.

Cholera in Latine, is an immoderate perturbation of the stomake, caused by vomit both vpward and downward. The barbarous sort call this disease, *Cholerica Passio*: they that haue this disease be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It is caused through much cruditie and rawnesse of the stomacke, and ill digestion, which many times engendreth of great-wickednesse of the meates, and sometime through abundance of vicious humours also. The signes whereby this euill is knowne be verie manifest: for they auoid both vpward and downward: also there followeth thirst and swet, and short pulse and drawing vp, and stretching out of the muscles of the hands and feet, and specially of the calves of the legges. Therefore seeing this euill is most sharpe and doth cause verie grievous sowndings, if it endure long, you must do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phisition if he see this disease to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to stop that which is sent forth, for seeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue disposition to vomit, and be troubled with vndigested meates remaining in the stomack, you must giue him warme water, and the he must vomit by his finger or a fether put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomit by ministring of *Aqua mulsa*, nor with water mixed with oile: because these things do increase the fluxes, and cause mordacity and writhings: also you must helpe the matter that purgeth downward: for a strange poison as it were being within doth gnaw the stomacke and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole bodie: you must minister vnto him the easiest purging medicines, as is, aloës, *Cassa fistularis*, decoction of *Mirabolanes* and such like. After that the superfluous things be brought forth, then he must rest, and it is good to nourish the sides with oiles of masticke, or nard, or wormewood, and to cause sleepe. You must commixe sometime with the aforesaid, other things which can strengthen the stomack, which be afore taught, and with them you must make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction & digestion, vse bathes of sweet water, and meates of good iuice, among which is broth of chickens with veriuicē, the flesh of small birdes of mountaines, reere egges and such like. In drinke let him vse iuice of pomegranates, or sirupe of roses, or water wherein burning steele hath bene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath caused slendernesse and leanenes throughout the bodie, and specially if the belly or stomacke do rest after the removing from his place, and that the pulse be lesse, and thicker, then you must bind the extreame and vitermost parts with bands, and you must make them fast by much oile. Also apply to the stomacke Cataplasmes, and emplaisters made of restrictive and strengthening things, as those be which are made of dates, *hypocistidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, bole armoniacke, frankensence, *Balaustia*, roses, and fruite of mirtels. Also it is an effectiuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of crabbes be layd vpon the stomacke, or this

*Scutum Sto-
machi.*

A Cyathe in. ʒ.
i. ℥.

cerate. R^x. of the oiles of roses, mirtels, and quinces. ana. ʒ. j. masticke, frankensence, acatia. ana. ʒ. ij. *hypocisthidis*. ʒ. j. ℥. saunders white and redde. ana. ʒ. j. *balauſtie*, dragons blood. ana. ʒ. ℥. bole armoniacke. ʒ. j. waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, make a cerate to lay vpon the stomacke couered with silke. In drinking giue him the measure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to soupe off, (that is) ʒ. j. ℥. but you must beware that it be not ouer colde, for that being giuen soddenly is vomited vp againe, and sometime with his stupor and coldnesse, it hurteth verie extremely the naturall heat, or it causeth inflammation of the stomack, or of some of the bowels. And you may sometime droppe into the water, a litle of the iuice of sharpe pomegranats, or of roses, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if those things that be voided forth be verie sharpe, and that thirst and burning do trouble the patient: then minister cucumber seeds with three *Cyathes* of water. Also you may giue it commodiously with *Amylum*. Then also minister endiue or Ictuse, or both sodden in Posca. Afterward procure sleepe and rest by all meanes: but if the fluxe will not be stopped, and the pulse decay betweene this and that, and that colde and sweet do take him, and also sometime yelking, you must come to wine that is meanelly restrictiue, which is not verie strong, but yet sweete and not odoriferous: and put into it, warme if it may be, or else cold, crummes of bread or *Alica*, and so by little and little at sundrie times, let them soupe it vp. But yet they must eschue much quantitie of wine, and by all meanes you must go about to bring them to sleepe, by strewing the pauement of the house with roses, vine leaues, bryer, and such like afore taught. Also apply odoraments to the nose, as roses, quinces, and such like: also annoint fopporiferous and sleepe ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the stoole still, cast in by a clister *Amylum* with decoction of poppy heads, for it doth both restrain and coole, and cause sleepe. To stop vomits, it is good to eate and deuour the iuice of medlers, quinces, pomegranates and peares. If with these remedies, and others that be taught before in the second chapter of this booke, the sicke cannot keepe and brooke his meate: you must apply without vpon the stomack a verie great cupping glasse lightly. Against the contraction and drawing vp of the muscles, you must winde about the muscles, linnen clothes soaked in warme oile, and apply moist cerates and ointmentes wherein is put some *Cassoreum* and oile of *Ireos*. You shall find examples enough of those in the chapter of the palsie before in the first booke. When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as chickens, doues, hennes, partrich, wood-culuer, and ouils, or black-birds, and such like.

*Constriction of
vomit.*

*Against con-
striction in the
muscles.*

CHAP. XIII.
Of the fluxe diarrhea.
DE DIARRHEA.

Cause.

Diarrhea in Latine, is a copious & great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weaknesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion: also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscous, and through corrupting of the same

meate.

meat. Moreover gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from about to the belly, and also weaknesse of the retentive vertue. The signes whereby the causes are known are very manifest. For if this fluxe *diarrhea* be caused through the weaknesse of the instruments that serue for digestion (as is) the stomacke, the bowels, the liuer, and the splene: you must seeke the signes of these out of their owne chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meates and drinckes, you may know it partly by the patients tale, and partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing and heat: also the patient feeleth bitternes of the mouth, thirst, thinne state of the body, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrary to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions wil appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moist. If the flux be engendred through fulnesse of the whole body, or if it be indicatory, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen lib. de plenitudine & crisi bus*. And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weaknesse of the instrumentes, the distempere which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first chapter of this booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the body superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that you can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer & watch, till nature hath bestowed all her care & charge: or else also it is good to helpe natures motion, but for to go about to strue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humours which are stopped being caried vppward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or litargie, or impostumation behind the eares not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stoppe the fluxe, which floweth profitably for the health of the body. But after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carying forth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the bodie, and consuming the strength, then you must labour to stoppe it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applyed outwardly vppon the bellie. Therefore if there come forth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straight wayes. For the cholericke matter that is gathered together, and heaped in the stomach, and in the bowell called *icium*, if it be withholden and kept there still, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the stomach, and causeth inflammations of the bowels, it kindleth thirst, and restoreth feauers, and causeth the euils aforesaid, and generally causeth a worse disease. Therefore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie, nature must be expelled with easie purging medicines, as is, infusion of *rewbarbe*, *casia fistularis*, the barks of mirabolanes, *citrine* or *manna*. After that giue cowes milke, or goates milke warme, being new milked, or seeth it at the fire and stirre it continually till it be consumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hot iron, or Steele gads in the milke often, but while it

Signa.

Curatio.

Nota.

Cure of a Diarrhea of choler.

doth seeth you must take the scum or some of it: for surely you can find no quicker remedie against fluxes of choler. And because the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feuer, is wont to turne into a burning sauour, or also sharpe or soure, and so causeth more hurt than good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you shall eschue ministring of milke to him, dressed after that sort. But you must powre the fourth part of water to the milke, and seeth it vntill halfe be consumed, and then minister it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you must cast in clifters made of the decoction of barley, with sugar roset, oile of roses, yolkes of egges and such like. At the length, when the cholericke humours be voided out, you must minister inwardly, such medicines as do restraîne and strengthen (as be) conferue of roses, *diacotoneon* without spices, *diarrion santalon*, trochiskes of *spodium*, *Hidromalon* and such like. And what kind of medicines they must be that ought to be applyed outwardly we will shewe you a litle hereafter. Also the fundament must be fomented and nourished with a decoction made of some restrictiue things. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be engendred through flegmaticke humors that be grosse and tough, or through corruption of them, then you must beginne your cure as you did before with easie purging. Therefore then you must minister the infusion of *Agaricke* with *Mirabolanes imbelici*, or some such like medicine, which is able to bring forth the aforayed humours. Also clifters are good, specially if there be abundance of clammy humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of centorie, and oile of rewe, and such like. Minister within the bellie *Diacotoneon* with spices, greene ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Also apply outwardly those things which do ad strength. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be caused through the weakenesse of the vertue retentiu, you must minister & apply those medicins, which are applied against other vnmeasurable fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations & sprincklings of oile *omphacine*, or oyle of roses, or oile of the blossomes of apples, with some sowre or sharpe wine, but oile of mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement restriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be strong, you may seeth in that irrigation, gals, pomgranate rindes, and *Balaustie*. If the fluxe endure still, apply cataplasmes, emplaisters and cerates, made of restrictiue & drying things, wherof we will make mention in the next chapter. Also this cerate is effectuous to be made. Take seu en mulberies, or black-beries which be sowre and whitish for lacke of ripenesse, bray them well and adde to it oile of roses. ℞. ij. waxe. ℞. j. and make a cerate. After the voiding of superfluous and hurtfull humours, these things heale the fluxe of the wombe being ministred in drink, that is, comin, decoction of maidenhaire, the roote of white thorne, likewise one ℞. weight of the seed of *Apium* ministred: for it prouoketh vrine, and turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Also vnripe mulberies being yet sowre, if they be dried many dayes in the sun and so kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they restrain and stop the wombe maruellously. Also they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vse *Sumach*, which sometime is sodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being

vnripe

Cure of *Diarrhea* of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of *Diarrhea* of the weakenesse of the vertue retentive.

Ceratum.

vnripe and sharpe, do bind the bellie more if they be dried as is aforesaid, and ministred in drinke. Among compound medicines these are marvellous good, that is, trochiskes of Spodium, of terra lemnia, diacotoneon, diatrion santalon, triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges is good. *Rx.* the powders of diatrion *Morsula.* santalon, diarrhodon abbatiss, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. red corall, chosen frankensence, red roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. spodium. \mathfrak{z} . j. seedes of sorrell, sumach, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. balaustia, acatie, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. masticke. \mathfrak{z} . ss. bolearmoniacke. \mathfrak{z} . j. fine white sugar. \mathfrak{lb} . ss. dissolue it in the distilled waters of plantaine and roses, and make lozenges. Also this loch is good. *Rx.* of old conserues of roses, of diacotoneon without spices, *rob. erbes, Edigna.* rob. de barbaries, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. hydromel. \mathfrak{z} . iij. diamoron. \mathfrak{z} . v. the powder of diatrion santalon, \mathfrak{z} . ij. red corall. \mathfrak{z} . j. spodium, balaustia, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. bolearmoniacke. \mathfrak{z} . j. sirope of mirtels as much as shall suffice, and make a loch. Moreouer you shall euer haue this water readie made. *Rx.* sumach, one quarter, raine water. \mathfrak{lb} . iij. in which steepe the sumach a day and a night, then boyle them, and straine the sumach well & strongly. And in that water, seeth rige, or milke, or other meats, or at the least way poure some portion of this water to them. If the fluxe Diarrhea be caused through flowing of humours from some other member of the bodie, you must seeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the stomacke, you must returne to those things which are spoken of before in the chapter against distillation or reume, and so do likewise with other parts of the bodie.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

DE LIENTERIA.

LIENTERIA in Greeke, is a certaine lightnes, or smoothnesse of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a scarre without on the skin of the body. In this disease the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it slide away before it be changed & perfectly digested, euen in the same forme and likenesse that it was eaten. Therefore in Latine it may well be called *leuitas*, or *leuor intestinum*, and in English, lightnesse or smoothnesse of the bowels. It is caused oftentimes through a gricuous fluxe *disenteria* by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels; then scarres that be hard closed together and smooth do follow; which scarres by reason of the hard closing, will not suffer the meats to be distributed about the body, because the mouthes of the veines which are wont to draw nourishment from the bowels to the selues, are now stopped. And because of the smoothnesse (as is aforesaid) the bowels suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weaknesse & debilitie of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomacke. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meats be neither digested nor distributed: but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing chaunged, (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it ingendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when drop sic water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe Lienteria followeth. Therefore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth tast or feelee *Signa.* no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the bodie. Therefore there

6. Aphor. 7.

Pictus ratio.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the stomach.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

If Lienteria be caused of a scarre.

chanceth to the patient continuall seiges, crude & raw, in colour pale or whitish, vnequall & very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Also he feelth a burning which spreadeth all ouer the sides, loathing of meat followeth it. It is a good and friendly signe in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them sharpe and sowe belkings: for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide some while in the stomacke vntill it begin to be changed. When this disease chanceth, it is easie to perceiue, that you must refresh and recreate the vertues retentive and digestiue, aswell of the stomach as of the bowels by al meanes, and that may chiefly be done by ministring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to restore and refresh strength. Therefore the flesh of birds of mountaines are good: also chickens roasted, in whose bellies also must be put *sumach* or masticke, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be litle in quantitie and easie of digestion. And if his seiges be sharpe & cholericke, make him meate with rice and *alica* and such like, with the which seeth some restrictive things, as pearces, quinces, medlars, and such other like. Also milke sodden is good for them, but if their seige be flegmaticke, you must minister vnto them contrarie meates. Also commixe somewhat that is pleasant and acceptable to the stomach, as is annise seed, *commin* or *daucus*. In cholericke seiges let their drinke be ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old and hot. And generally let him drinke but litle, for much drinke is not onely in this flux *Lienteria*, but also in all other fluxes of the wombe, most hurtfull. For curing of this disease, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weaknesse of the vertue of the stomach, you must turne to the chapter of weaknes of the stomach, and there seeke the cure. But to be short, you must minister both within and without to the bodie those things that do restraine, and that can strengthen aswell the stomach as also the bowels. Therefore minister sirupes of wormewood, and mints, and other electuaries which do strengthen the stomach. And you must apply those things outwardly, which be rehearsed before in the chapter of *Diarrhea*, and shalbe taught in the next chap. following. But this medicine is specially good. *R.* oiles of masticke, wormewood, mints, and mirtels. ana. *℥* ij. powders of cinamon chofen, cloues and galingale. ana. *℥* j. *Balaustie* and red roses. ana. *℥* ss. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, or vse this cerate. *R.* oiles of masticke, wormewood and of quinces. ana. *℥* j. oile of mints. *℥* ss. *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, frankensence. ana. *℥* j. wood of aloës. *℥* ss. red roses, white saunders and red. ana. *℥* ss. masticke, *commin* ana. *℥* j. *hipocistidos*, *acatias*, *sumach*. ana. *℥* j. *Gallia moschata*. *℥* j. with waxe and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate. Moreouer to those that you coniecture haue a scarre, to those the eating of sharpe things is profitable, for it caueth a certaine refraction and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth againe the natural heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestiue vertue. Therefore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth in cap. 95. *Artis Medice*) they be good which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restraine a litle: therefore alwayes commixe scouring things with restrictive medicins. In all other causes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure, which you do vse to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhea*, or *Dysentaria*.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe Dysenteria.

DE DYSENTERIA.

DYSENTERIA in greeke properly is nothing else then an exulceration of the bowels. The Latines call this disease *tormina*, because through it, the bowels are tormented and fretted very much with paine. We said before properly, because the Greeks reckon foure kinds of bloody *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Galen lib. 30. de symptomatū causis*. The first is, when blood is sent forth by circuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is when watery blood like vnto the water, wherein bloody flesh being new killed, hath beene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weaknes of the liuer. The third is, when there is sent forth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is natural, being commixt of blood and melancholy. And of these, we do not speake here, but we speake only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by little & litle, & betweene whiles somtimes is cast out of pure blood. Also sometime clodded blood, or shauing of the bowels, commeth out with pure blood. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinkled with drops of blood. This fourth kind (as it is said) is caused through exulceratio of the bowels, which sometime chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughty medicins (as is) *scammony* and such like. Also through eating of fruite, through crudity and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe or soure meates, or through sharpe and gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendered in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenasmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fatty, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloody. And when the exulceration hath pearced deeper, then also is sent forth filthines, hauing as it were litle peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feedeth in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to run from dead bodies. When the small guttes are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauill, the excrements are cholericke hauing the colour of a lecke, and altogether garnished with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient feelth grieve and frettings, and gnawing and loosening, so that the sick is not farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst and be feauerous, and the ordure commeth forth crude and rawe, and the bowell called *jejunum* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it doe chance, the egestions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing black blood wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow of choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vomit do trouble the sicke. Also sometime they vomite and abhorre meates. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, & sometime also malignant feauers do engender. And they that are so diseased be waxen il colour-

4. Kindes of
Dysenteria.

1

2

3

4

Cause.

Signa.

Signes of ex-

ulceration of

the small bow-

els.

*Signes of exul-
ceration of the
great bowels.*

Diet.

Lenticula.

Potus.

*Curatio.
Adstringentia*

red, and do sweat out euen till fainting and failing of hart. Their strength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that commeth forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and commeth out with windinesse and frothinesse sometime. Also fatnesse is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as *Galen* sheweth largely in *libro. 60. de male affectu loci*. For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must goe about the cure by medicines giuen in at the mouth, but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clisters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, si ora whence soeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet & rest, and litle meate. Therefore if a feuer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it minister milke sodden, as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhea*. For this first cleanseth and purgeth downward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, & last of all, it stoppeth & bindeth the wombe. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milke. Also pottage prepared of milke, hath both the nature of medicines, and also they cause good nourishment, as is rice with milke, *amylum* and egges mixed with milke. Also souplings or pottage made of *alica*, and *milium*, *sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meates of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of dates, or quinces, or of pears, or of *sumach*. Also minister chittes well roasted with plantaine, or sodden with quinces braied: the vsing of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall minister to tast vpon endiue, both wilde and tame sodden, and plantaine, and coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of eggs roasted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger nourishment, & do striue against digestio: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially chooſe birds, as is partrich, and wood culuers, & birds of mountaines. Among foure footed beasts, goats flesh and hares flesh are good. But you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beastes. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houſes couered with lead: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, where in burning steele hath beene quenched. But if the stomacke be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also let it be restraining, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *dysenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as doe restrain, stop, dry vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the fluxe some other way. Restrictiue things be these: *orell seed*, *sumach*, *gauls*, *pomgranat rinds* dried, *brier root*, *labdanum*, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, *baiaustium*, *willow leaues*, *comfery roots*, *leaues*, and seed, *rheumponticum*, if it may be gotten, *root of althea*, *horsetaile*, *coral*, *maſticke*, *hares creame*, *dragons blood*, the barke of *frankensence*, *terra lemmia*, *roote of verbasum*, *plaintaine seed*, *white daisies*, a kinde of mallowes called *alcea oxis*, *sanicula*, *ophrys*, *ophioglossum*, *knotgrasse*, *shepherdes purse*, *walwort*, *pedalion*, *nummularia*, *dragons the male*, *sharpe mulberries*, *kernelles of grapes*, the

barke

barke of maces, and such like. These things do stoppe and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and sharpnesse of humors, as is *amylum*, gums tragacanth, tallow of goats, kids, swine, geese and hens. These do dry vpp; haire creame, harts-horne burnt, the shels of crabbes of running water, and sage. Things to prouoke vrine, you shall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you must minister clisters first, such as haue power to scoure and cleanse, as this is: R^{re}. of the decoction of whole barley. ℞. *j. mel rosarum* strained. ℞. *j. sugar roset*. ℞. *β. yolks of eggs* in number *ij.* oile of roses. ℞. *ijij.* commixe all together & make a clister. Absterfion and cleansing being first done, cast in those things that do glutinate and ioine together, as this is: R^{re}. red roses, plantaine, leaues of comfery, knotgrasse, primroses, ana. *M. β. balaustie*. ℞. *j.* rice burned. ℞. *j.* roote of comfery. ℞. *β.* seeth al together in water wherein Steele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction. ℞. *xij.* iuice of plantaine. ℞. *ij.* *acatia*, *hypocistidius*, ana. ℞. *ij.* bole armoniacke, *sanguis draconis*, ana. ℞. *j.* goats tallow. ℞. *j.* oiles of roses, mirtels, quinces, ana. ℞. *j.* commixe all together and make a clister. Sometime it doth not only require things to stoppe the vehemencie of the paine, but also medicines that be stupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vse this clister. R^{re}. of goats milke, or of cowes milke. ℞. *j.* fresh butter. ℞. *j.* goats greafe. ℞. *j. β.* gumme tragacanth, ana. ℞. *j.* yolkes of eggs in number *ijij.* pills of hounds tongue. ℞. *j.* oile of roses. ℞. *ijij.* commixe all together and make a clister. If there be neede of more vehement stupefaction: you must augment the waight of the pils, or else you must adde to the aforesaid waight of pils three or foure graines of *opium*, or more or lesse, according to the vehemency of the paine, and the state of the body. If the exulceration be in the small and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoctiō of restrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it sirupe of roses, and mirtels, and so minister it, and also other medicines which are taught in the chap. of *diarrhea*, are good. Also you may conueniently minister this potion. R^{re}. of the decoction of the roote of comfery, or of some other restrictiue thing. ℞. *ijij.* sirupe of roses. ℞. *j.* sirupe of mirtels. ℞. *β.* powder of the trochiskes of *spodium*, plantaine seede, bole armoniacke, ana. ℞. *ij.* commixe all together and make a potion. Besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapters of *Diarrhea* and *Lienteria*, you must apply outwardly vpon the belly this cerote. R^{re}. of the oiles of masticke, roses, mirtels, and quinces, ana. ℞. *j.* meale of barley and fenugreeke, ana. ℞. *j.* of red roses, plantaine, ana. ℞. *j.* *balaustie*, *sanguis draconis*, ana. ℞. *β.* bole armoniacke. ℞. *j.* *hypocistidis*, *acatia*, masticke, ana. ℞. *ij.* with waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. By the examples aforesaid, you may make many other remedies, which we ouerpaſſe here.

Obtundentia.

Resiccantia.

Cure if it be
in the great
bowels.

Clister ab.

Bringing

Clister glutinans.

Clister do'o-
rem leniens.

Potiq.

Optimum
cerotum.

CHAP. XVI.

Of T enasimus.

DE TENASMO.

TENASMEVS is a cōtinuall desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cannot defer nor eschue, & yet he auoideth nothing, except it be a li-

Cause.

the bloud, or filthy matter like sneuell. It is caused oftentimes through outward cold, or through humours sharpe and cholericke, or of salt fleume, or impostumation, or of inflammation engendred in the straight gut. Also many times, the stopping of hard dung in the blinde gut, may cause *Tenasmus*. The Physition may easily know if it be caused of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath taried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoideth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile his egestion is matter and corruption, & he feelth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowell, & grievous paine together with a feauer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grievous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers according to the diuersity of causes. Therefore if the *Tenasmus* be caused of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine, hore, and you must sprinkle, foment, & nourish the share & the parts about the priuy members with hot oiles and fomentis: as are, oiles of rew and lillies: also bran sodden in wine, and put in a bag may well be applied to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild mintes, organ, calamint, cammomill, fothernewood, seed of annise, fennell, & such like, putting to it oiles of dill, cammomill, and lillies. Also it is marvellous good if you take a very old tile which is blacke with smoke, & bray it with the gere that is contained in it, then commixe it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, and apply it to the fundament by and by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be caused through cholericke humors withholden and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scoure, wash and cleanse. As this is: *Rx*. of the licour of the decoction of barley. *℞*. sugar roset *℥*. j. *℞*. mel rosarum. *℥*. j. yolkes of egges. *ij*. oile of roses. *℥*. *iiij*. commixe them and make a clister, he must eschew all sharpe thinges, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which doe stop and temperate the sharpnesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be caused of flegmaticke humors, it shall be healed like that which is caused of cold, only adding to, and commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge fleume, as is *Electuarium nidum* or *diaphenicon*, or *benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be engendred of inflammation, cast in broth of prisan, wherein hath bene sodden a few red roses, or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister. *Rx*. of the licour of the decoction of plantain *℥*. v. oile of roses. *℥*. *ij*. the white of one egge, commixe them together & make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinkle and annoint the place betwene the priuy members, and the fundament with oile of rew, and mirtels: or apply this foment. *Rx*. red roses, plantaine. ana. *M. j*. *balauftie*. *℥*. *iiij*. *sediorum*. *℥*. *j*. mirtell berries. *℥*. *ij*. leaues of brier. *℥*. *j*. seeth altogether in sufficient water, vntill the third part be consumed, then wette a sponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreover when there is neede of suppuration, rotting or dissoluing, apply fomentis made of the decoction of the roote of *Althea*, of fenugreeke, cammomill, melilore and branne. If the *Tenasmus* be caused of an vicer or botch, first cast in the things which haue an abstersiue and cleansing vertue: and then afterward

Signa.

Curatio.

Tenasmus
of cold.

Tenasmus of
cholericke hu-
mours.
Clister abster-
gens.

Tenasmus of
flegmaticke
humours.

Tenasmus of
inflammation.
Clister.

Fomentum.

Discussiues.

Cure of *Ten-*
asmus caused
of an vicer.
Vnguentum.

that

things that doe glutinate and ioine together must be vsed, euen as you did in the flux *Dysenteria*. Also this ointment put into the fundament is good. *Rx.* oile of roses. \mathfrak{z} . j. *B.* the muscilage of gumme *Tragacantha*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. ceruse, burnt lead. ana. \mathfrak{z} . *B.* *Aloes*, frankensence. ana. \mathfrak{d} . j. waxe, as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherin dippe linnen clothes, and put them into the rectum. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforesaid things, *opium* \mathfrak{d} . j. If the *Tenasmus* be cauled through multitude and abundance of dounge, then in the beginning the dounge must be brought out by litle and litle with soluble and gentle clisters, as this is. *Rx.* mallowes, *Alishea*, mercurie, beates, leaues of blacke violets. ana. \mathcal{M} . j. seedes of fenugreeke and linseed. ana. \mathfrak{z} . *B.* boyle them all in sufficient quantity of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction. \mathfrak{ss} . j. medulle *casea fistularis* \mathfrak{z} . j. *B.* common oile. \mathfrak{z} . iij. salt beaten. \mathfrak{z} . j. and make a clister. But of this one thing you must specially beware, that in this case you do minister no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and destruction to the patient, by reason of drawing of mo excrements from the whole body thither.

Tenasmus of multitude of dounge.
Clister lenitivo

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Chollicke.

DE COLI DOLORIBVS.

THE Chollick, or paine, which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks is caused many wayes: but it hath foure speciall causes. For sometime it is engendred through grosse and flegmaticke humors fallen downe within the thin skinne of the gut *Colon*. Also sometime through windinesse, which hath no roome to get out. Also it is caused through inflammation of the grosse & thicke gut stretching out and troubling or vexing. Also it is wont to engender through sharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflikt and vexe the aforesaid bowell vehemently. Those that haue the chollicke engendred of a grosse and flegmaticke humour, they be grieved and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, (that is) the place which is vnder the mouth of the stomacke: specially they are grieved where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feelee paine, as though the gut were braied or bored through. Also they be fretted & haue disposition to vomit, belkings, sundrie & strange vomitings and specially of fleume. Also the wombe is letted and stopped and sendeth forth nothing, nor so much as wind. Also the dounge which sometime commeth forth, doth looke like oxes dounge, & it is light & full of wind. And there goeth before these things continuall vsing of meates that be very cold and of a grosse iuyce, also filling with meats, ill digestion, & crudity, idlenes, & such as be adioyning to these. Those that haue the chollicke caused of windines, they feelee extentiō, stretching forth & bolning. They that haue the chollicke caused through inflammation, they feelee inward burning and heat, & no small feuer: also retention both of the vrine & ordure. Also they are troubled with thirst, burning heat, dispositiō to vomit, & vomiting specially of choler without any ceasing of the euill at all. And this is the most grievous & worst kind of chollick, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca passio*. They that haue the chollick engendred of sharp & gnawing humors, they be troubled & vexed with burning thirst & watching,

Causa.

Signes of a grosse humour.

Signes of windinesse.
Signes of inflammation.

Signes of sharp and gnawing humours.

Diet for the
cholicke caused
of flegmaticke
and tough hu-
mours.

Cure of cholick
caused of grosse
humours.

Clyster.

Clans.

Vomitua.

Infection.
Vinum absyn-
thyes.

Yea and small feuers, the vrine is made sharpe, and cholericke humours are thrown out oftentimes, going to the stoole doth raise greater paine and torment. Also meats & drinckes that be hote, being receiued doe prouoke it grievously. The diet and cure of this disease is diuers according to the diuersitie of the causes. Therefore when grosse & clammy humors doe cause the cholicke, the whole diet must be extenuate and made thinne. Therefore let the bread which the sick shall eat be new & wel baked in an oven or furnace. Flesh is good specially of birdes, as hens, partrich, wood culuers, turtles, black birds, and doves: he must eschew all kind of foules which do swim or lue in waters, as those things which do abound with many superfluities. Among foure footed beasts the flesh of calves & kids are good. He must eschue all kind of pulse, which do marvellous hurt in this disease. For potherbes you must vse fennell apium, asperage & such like. Also it will not hurt to take garlike & onions raw. To be short let his food be easie of digestion and ingendring good iuice. Let him eschue fulnesse & cruditie: he must drinke wine that is somewhat restritue, white, thinne, shining, of meane age, temperately alayed, and let him drinke but litle. For the cure of the cholicke caused of grosse humours: you must cure it so, that you doe not heat vehemently with no medicins, for such remedies do spread abroad, puffe vp, and make windie all cold and grosse humours, which puffing vp and spreading in the bowels doth cause more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to deuide, cut, and digest those humors without vehement paine or heate, and by vsing of those things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his sharpe and extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of rew, cammomill, & dill. Also make fomentis and sacculi of the flowers of cammomill, dill, and melilote, seedes of flaxe, of fenugreke, of *Althea*, of mill and branne. Also clisters made with the oiles aforesaid, & with the decoction of the aforesaid herbes are marvellous good, or with the decoction of the roote of wild cucumbers, putting to it comin, or rew, with goose grease, or hennes grease after this sort. *Rx.* mallowes, *Althea* cammomill, mercurie, dill. ana. *M. j.* origan, calamint, peniroiall. ana. *M. ss.* seedes of flaxe, fenugreke, comin, louage. ana. *℥. iij.* seeth all together with wel-water of iust quantity, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. lib. i. *Hierapiera* *℥. ss.* *Endicifalaxatua*. *℥. v.* of *Electuar. um nidii*. *℥. j. ss.* of *mel rosarum* strained. *℥. ss.* oiles of cammomill, dill, and rew. ana. *℥. j.* the yolkes of eggis in number two, common salt, *℥. j.* commixe all together and make a clister. Also the putting in of suppositaries, and anointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Cyclaninum*, with hony and salt peter, or centorie with honie and salt peter doe profit. Example of a suppositarie is this. *Rx.* of hony sodden, *℥. j. ss.* powder of *Hierapiera*, *℥. j.* *Colocinthidis*, *℥. j.* salt gemme, *℥. ss.* commixe them and make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bin prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hot oile if it may behad. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althea*, peniroiall, laurell leaues, fenugreke, cammomill, motherwort, dill, & such like. The most conuenient medicine against the cholicke, is wine wherein worme-woode hath bene infused or sodden, if they neede drinking after a bath:

it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boyled being commixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke, doth destroy the disease vterly: and it is better then all medicines. It is ministred to the sicke. \mathfrak{z} j. in three *Cyathes* of *agua mulsā*. And if the paine do not cease & rest, you must minister *diatrion piperion* or *theriaca*. If that the paine be vehement it is good to vse medicines that do meanely ease, make soluble, and mitigate, as well put in beneath as also giuen to drinke. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact and astonie strongly, because they do somewhat ease and mitigate, but they make the disease longer by making the humours more grosse, and thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windinesse, you must cast in clysters that do dissolue winde, as is this. *Rx.* sothernwood, organ, peniroiall, calamint, cammomill, ana. \mathcal{M} . j. rew, mints, wild mints, ana. \mathcal{M} . β . seedes of annise, fennell, carawayes, commin, dill, louage, and *daucus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction strained. \mathfrak{ss} . *j. hierapicra*, *beneficis sal* *ixatrua*, ana. \mathfrak{z} β . *Castoreum*. \mathfrak{z} j. powder of *diacuminum*. \mathfrak{z} ij. oiles of rew and dill, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. β . common salt. \mathfrak{z} j. β . commixe them all together and make a clyster. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the cōfection of bay berries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue and driue away windines. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of an hazell nut of the said decoction or electuary of laurell berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, foment and irrigations of such things as doe disperse and scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforesaid things, *nigella arminilum*, parcelly, bitter almondes, blacke pepper, wilde mintes, bay berries, wormewood, nettle seede, gladon, marioram, cinnamon and others: of these therefore you may make Cataplasmes, foment, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as Galen witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doeth maruelously as it were by enchauntment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, and also from vsing of milke and other things that doe coole, and from meates and drinckes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doeth heate and cutte or deuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the vaine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, doe rule and beare a sway, you must draw blood from the vaines of the ankle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clysters mitigating and easing paine, also cataplasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to poure in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humours without any mordacitie and gnawing: as is broth of prisan, or the decoction of fenugreeke, linseed, cammomill, and *althæa*, with fresh goose grease, or hens grease and oile of roses. This clyster is

*Castoreum.**Anodyna.*

*Cure of the
cholicke caused
of windinesse.
Clyster.*

*Compositio ex
baccis lauri.*

*Note.**Diet.*

*Cure of cholicke
caused of in-
flammation.*

Diet.

*Cure of cholicke
caused of sharp
and gnawing
humours.
Clyster.*

pecially good. R. leaues of violets, both the tame endiues, leaues of *Althea*, cammomillana. *M. j. β.* seedes of fenugreece, flaxe. ana. *℥. β.* boile these in iust quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. *℥. xiiij. cassia fistula. ℥. j. Hierapiera. ℥. vj.* oile of roses. *℥. ij.* oyle of dill. *℥. j.* goose grease and hennes greafe. ana. *℥. iij.* yolkes of egges in number two, commixe them all, and make a clister. Moreouer you must not only purge the hurtfull and corrupt humors, but also you must temper and moderate them. Therefore he must vse bathes of sweete water, for they do mitigate and also prouoke sleepe: for which purpose minister sirupe of violets, and roses and such like, which are able to temperate and stoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. Also he must vse soupping meates, as *pisans* and brothes of fishes of stony places: He must abstaine from all hote and sharpe things, whether they be meates or medicines, or cataplasmes, or fomentes, or irrigations that be hot: as also he must abstaine from drinking of wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and moyst. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things. For in this disease they doe not only pleasure and profit by astringing of the sense and feeling: but also because they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is speciall good, of the which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pilles of hoūd's tongue are maruellous good, if as is afore taught you do make six pilles of *℥. j.* & minister one of them to be swallowed before they goe to bed. But there be very many things which doe helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and substance: among the which white dounge of a wolfe taken with water or thin white wine is not the worst. That dounge is better which hangeth on herbes or bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dounge of the wolfe easeth the cholicke being bound to the lions. Greene mintes as *Ætius* affirmeth, foddren a while and drunke three dayes healeth cholicke.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of *liaca passio*.

DE ILIACO.

THE *liaca passio*, is a disease causing most grievous & deadly paine in the small guts. The latins do call this disease, *volvulus* & *convolvulus*. The barbarous do call it *liaca passio*. This disease is caused through continuall corruptiō & crudity of meats, but specially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruptiō & being withholden, they engender obstructions in the smal guts. Also it is engendred of certain stripes & blowes in certain places in which the smal guts do lie. Also through vehement cold restraining, & withholding of the excrements. Moreouer through abundant drinking of cold things, specially if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chaunceth to them, whose bowels be fallen into the coddies together with the dounge: and being violently thrust backe from thence againe, and through that it is enflamed. Also it is caused through drinking of deadly medicines, & through hard dounge being impacted about the thin bowel. For the most part this disease is engendred ether through

inflamma-

*Vitruvius.**Stupefacientia**Philonium.
Pille de Cyneglossa.**Lib. 9. cap. 31.**Causa.*

inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dounge. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance verie often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, & some swelling of the thin and small guts sticketh out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, losenesse, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the dounge and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp fleume and choler, he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreover to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnes of making water, yea the fundament is so bound & close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dounge is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries, and fomentes, as is declared in the chapter of the Collicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *liaci passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, & through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach: you must prouoke vomit with things aforesaid. But if there do remain no raw and vndigested meats in the stomach, you must go about by all meanes, to draw out beneath aswell windinesse as also the dounge: & that must be done by clysters, suppositaries, and annointings with great diligence in ech of them. Therefore you must cast in this clister. *R.* mercurie, rew, leaues of *Althea*, centorie. ana. *M. j.* hyssop, calamint, wormewood. ana. *M. j.* *β.* root of *Althea*. *℥. j.* root of wilde cucumber. *℥. j.* *β.* seedes of flaxe and fenugreeke. ana. *℥. iij.* seedes of commin. *℥. iij.* boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained *℥. xiiij.* of *Benedicta laxatiua*. *℥. j.* fresh butter, *mel rosarum* strained. ana. *℥. β.* oyles of rew, and dill ana. *℥. j.* *β.* common salt. *℥. j.* commixe them together and make a clister, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient, that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the cholicke, putting to them seedes of rew, commin, and stalkes of coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Ciclamini*, or hony with nitrum or salt peter. The fomentes and cataplasmes, wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the collicke. Also fomentes made of wooll wet in oile, wherein commin, dill, rewe, and cresses haue bene sodden, be verie good. Also emplaisters made of lincseed, fenugreeke, barly meale darnell meale, rew, commin, seedes of dill, and *apium*, are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althea*, rewe and dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat farre off, & then also to the places that are grieved, making deepe scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dounge be

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come
of cruditie.

Clyster.

Glander.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Concurbitula.

Purgatio.

drawn out first by such things as are before rehearsed. It is marvellous good if they vomit by drinking dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliac passio* engendred through taking of some venomous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constrain them to vomit. After that you must giue them hot oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomit againe. After within a few days giue him *theriac* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a litle scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliac passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts scarifying them. Also cast in clifters made of the decoction of mallowes, fenugreece, linseed, with oile & butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine, you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliac passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the coddles, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowelles that are fallen downe to the share, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, with bandes and trusses applied, conuenient for it.

CHAP. XIX.

Of wormes.

DE LVMERICIS.

THERE be three kinds of worms. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third, those be called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *teretes*: according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomacke, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosethrils. And this kind of wormes is peculiar to infants, and children, and boies, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad and long like a gird or band. They be of incredible length as *Plinie* witnesseth. lib. 2. cap 33. Sometime they are seene three hundred foote long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* and *Aetius* witnesseth) is nothing else but a permutacion and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guttes within, into a certaine liuing bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of worms called *Ascarides*, be thinne and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesayd kindes be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, & flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the stomach, thinne and small coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and sleepe with mouing of the stomacke: and also they do arise vp vnreasonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noife: and crying out, and fall asleepe againe: but some do both put forth their tongue, and shut their

their eies and be quiet, and keepe silence, and do fret & fume with them which raise them, because they cannot watch they be so weake. Some haue their eies sprinkled with bloud, and a pulse that is vnequall, obscure, sayling and running backe. Also to many there chanceth losse of appetite. Children, while they do sleepe chew their tongue, and also fashioning of their mouth as though they sucked or receiued meate. Also to some there chanceth gnashing of the teeth. But these things are done by litle and litle and betweene whiles. To some they runne forth into the stomach, and do cause gnawing and disposition to vomit, and the patients refuse meat: and if they be compelled to eat, they scarce can swallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the bellie doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The rest of the bodie it doth consume and make leane without reason, neither fasting going before, nor vnmeasurable purging being made. Also it chaunceth sometime the face to be made verie redde, specially about the balles of the cheekes: but this colour turneth againe into swartnesse. Some do speake foolish things in their sleepe like franticke persons. Some change the place that they lie downe in, and tumble and cast themselves from place to place: they increase feuers in them without order with vehement coldnes of the extreme partes, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But also these signes & tokens altogether which we haue now reharfed, must not euery one of the be looked for in euerie body: but the chiefeft of them & sometime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the stomach, & an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meat. For the worme that is in the guttes, deuoureth the meat that is eaten, so that he hath need of more straight way, & except he eat straightway, the bowels are gnawn: they that are thus diseased there foloweth slendernes & weaknes of the bodie with inequality. The most sure & infallible signe is, if certain things like cucumber seeds be auoided out with the egestion of excrements. *Ascariides* do raise a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the stoole continually. They that be troubled with this disease for the most part be the better after egestion & easing themselves. Let their diet be hot & dry, specially if the patient lack a feuer, & let them vse meates of good iuice, and which wilbe soone dispersed throughout the whole body: & such as do not increase the cause that engendreth worms. Therefore all meates are to be eschued, which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer they that are troubled with wormes, must be nourished and fed liberally, and may not suffer hunger: because the wormes except they haue meate to feed on, they then by & by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, specially when they are not altogether emptie. Let them drinke no strong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be spared: & sometime if there be a feuer with it, you must haue respect to that, & to the wormes also: & sometime you need to be carefull but a litle for the feuer, and you must be diligent notwithstanding to get the wormes out of the bodie. Therefore when many haue not spied and known this, it commeth to passe for lack of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawn and eaten of them, and so being pulled & gnawne, they die. The cure aswell of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may drine them out of the bodie being first killed.

*Signes of brode
wormes: Latii.*

*Signes of As-
carides.*

Curatio.

*Simples to kill
wormes.*

Aloes.

Composita.

Pulvis.

Unguentum.

Ceratum.

Pillula.

Rufi.

*Cure if fluxe of
the wombe be
ioyned with
wormes.*

They are killed specially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not present) these simples are good: wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the sea, sothernwood, calamint, horehound, dittaine, hysope, rew, leaues of persica, coriander seeds, harts-horne, lupines, mintes, peniroiall, origan, centorie, serne, gentian, *aristolachia rotunda*, garlike, seed of colewortes, and roote of *Emula campana*. To these, if a feuer be present, you must adioine the seeds of both the endiues, and also the iuice of their herbes. Among all other, the most commendable remedie is aloës. I therefore if infants will hardly take aloës, because it is so bitter, you must keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and separated, you must cast it in against their willes, with a certaine pipe strengthened with a long splent. Of these aforaid simples now rehearsed, there may be made diuerse compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplasmes, emplasters, & ointments. Among other things this powder is onely good. \mathcal{R} . of worme-seed. \mathcal{Z} .ij. of centory, wormewood, harts-horne burnt. ana. \mathcal{Z} .j. calamint, peniroiall, origan. ana. \mathcal{Z} .ss. sothernwood, mintes, lupines, leaues of *aristolachia rotunda*, ana. \mathcal{D} .j. aloës. \mathcal{D} .ij. com-mix them altogether, and make a powder, of the which minister the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and state of the bodie of the sicke, in milke or hony, or siupe of liquorice: for those things which do kill the wormes, must be ministred with sweet liquors, that thereby the worms may tast of the medicine the sooner, being allured by the sweetnesse of it that is ministred with it. You must annoint the nauell outwardly with bulles gall or with this ointment. \mathcal{R} . oiles of bitter almonds, and of wormewood. ana. \mathcal{Z} .j. bulles gall. \mathcal{Z} .ss. centory, wormewood, lupines. ana. \mathcal{D} .ij. leaues of persica, harts-horne burnt, aloës, sothernwood. ana. \mathcal{D} .j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply allouer the stomach this cerate. \mathcal{R} . aloës, wormewood, meale of lupines. ana. \mathcal{Z} .ij. *nigella*, mints, origan, peniroiall, horehound. ana. \mathcal{Z} .j. centory, calamint. ana. \mathcal{Z} .ss. oiles of wormewood, and bitter almonds. ana. \mathcal{Z} .ij. *oleum costium*. \mathcal{Z} .j. bulles gall. \mathcal{Z} .ss. with waxe and rosen, as much as shall suffice, make a cerate. By examples of these you may easily make emplasters and cataplasmes, so that I need not to rehearse here any example of ech of them. Moreouer, it is good to cast in beneath abundaunce of *mussa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the sweetnesse of the hony, may creepe downeward. But when the wormes are killed with the aforesayd medicines, you must driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both destroyeth appetite and hurteth digestion, and being lifted vpward, it causeth swemmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed are driuen out for the most part by suppositaries and purgations, but specially by *hierapicra* and *pillula pestilentialis*, or *rufi*, which haue a maruelous efficacy in killing and bringing out of wormes. But those that are tronbled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe also: those you must cure by thickning of the flux, and by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meats, as also with cataplasmes: for the more that the flux preuaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is encreased: and againe the flux ceasing, the wormes do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop & restraine the wombe, & to adde stedfastnes and strength to it. Therefore minister

minister iuice of plantaine, or else let him take dried plantaine; for both haue like efficacie as well against the fluxe, as also against wormes. Also make cataplasmes, cerates and ointments of raw barley meale, pomgranate rinds, *hypocischidos*, & such like restrictive things: but adde vnto them those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this cause, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomacke, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawfull in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *hydromel*. The wormes called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of honie and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharp brine, or with decoction of wormwood, centorie, calamint, lupines, peniroyall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oyles. After ministration of clisters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples, (that is) *Acaria*, *hypocischidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictive medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictive things, it looseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth and shurteth out the *ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectuous. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut of the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositarie fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it, then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as is aforesaid.

*Cure of wormes
called Ascarides.*

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorrhoides.

DE HEMMORHOIDIBVS.

THE Hemorrhoides is an vnfoldings and spreading abroad of the veines in the tuell. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or verie little blood: some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth blood. The hemorrhoides are caused through dreggie, and melancholic blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind hemorrhoids may be seene with eyes, & they cause vehement paine, specially in auoiding the dounge. But the open hemorrhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind hemorrhoids appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the bodie be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the ankle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dounge, while it is sent forth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and applied like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath made of the decoction of mallowes, violet leaues, melilot, fenugreeke, cammommill, leaues of *althaea*, linseed, floures of rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot vie that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, and apply it to the grieve. And

Cace.

Aperte.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio cecorum.

To open the
hemorrhoids.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio aper-
tarum.

6. Epid. par. 3.
Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

if these aforesaid things do no good, you must get blood out of them. Therefore put into the tuell wooll annointed with iuyce of *cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of centorie, doues dounge, stauesacre, figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it, and also the pulpe of *colocynthis* steeped in oile of bitter almonds. Among many other, this emplaster is verie good, R^x of doues dung. \mathfrak{z} . β . seed of stauesacre, lupines. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . bitter almonds. \mathfrak{z} . j. pulpe of *colocynthis*. \mathfrak{z} . β . iuices of *cyclaminum*, & onions. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. commixe them all together, and make it like a plaister, putting to it if need be, oyle of bitter almonds. But to take away the paine presently, vse this following. R^x. elder leaues. M. j. boile them in water, vntill they be verie tender, then take a peece of scarlet, as much as a mans hand or greater, and wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, & when it is cold lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fve or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same skarlet, lay the herbes verie hote also, this doth mollifie the hemmorrhoides, and seaseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *cyclaminum*. Also blood-suckers, or horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the hemmorrhoides to open them, and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the hemmorrhoides be open, and do auoyd out blood meanelly at certaine times, they may not be stopped, for the bursting out of such blood, doth cause men that haue this disease, to be free from many other diseases. Which thing Hippocrates witnesseth, where he saith in *Epidemijs*: these words; They which haue the hemmorrhoids, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lounes, nor a feeding vlcet, nor with felons, or cattes haire, nor with *terniusthis*, nor with leproie, nor with morpew. But if the hemmorrhoides do throw out blood immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patient do consume and wast away with this euil, and their strength decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled through immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but litle blood, and that do ingender but litle superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as is *Alica* and rice. Of pot-herbes, endiue, succorie, purslaine, and such like. Commix his meate with *sumach*, and iuyce of vnripe grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuyce of quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictive. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must studie to auert and turne away the blood by fasting of cupping glasses to the sides, & to the liuer. For the which purpose it is good to bind the hands and the feete with bands, and to vse sharp and hard frictions and rubbings. Moreouer you must minister within the bodie those things which do restraine, as are *sirupes*

rupes of roses, of mirtles, of quinces, red corall, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of amber, of *spedium*, of *terra lemnia*, and other which be rehearsed in the chap. of spitting of blood. Also apply those things outwardly, which can stop blood that floweth. Among which as *Aetius* witnesseth lib. 14. cap. 5. is aloës laied on with posca. The same effect also hath scales of iron or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good which is described of *Galen* lib. 5. *therap. method.* R. of frankensence one part, of aloës one part & a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge, vntill all come to the thicknesse of hony and lay it vpon the soft haire of an hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Also ointments, baths, incisions, fomentes, and other such like medicines, made of things having a restrictiue vertue do profite, whereof you shall finde many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhœa*, *Lienteria*, *Dysenteria* & *Tenasmus*. And if you shall vse little bags, it is best before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and restrictiue, or at the least to sprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines seeke before.

*Medicamentū
Galen.*

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the tuell.

DE PROCIDENTIA ANI.

IT chanceth sometime, that resolution or weaknesse of the ouerthwart muscles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cause the tuell to fall out. Wherefore seeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforesaid muscles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you must diligently consider whether it be free from inflammation or no, for if it be not inflamed at all, it must by and by be thrust and put to his former place by compulsion: and because it must not fall out againe, after that it is thrust in, and put vp into his owne place, you must apply restrictiue medicines outwardly to it. Therefore first you must annoint it about with oile of roses being warmed, or scoure the tuell with restrictiue wine, and then being put vp againe into his place, you must bind him vp. And that you must do by and by, as soone as the sicke hath bene at the stoole, lest that when necessitie constraineth them to go to the stoole againe, the tuell should fall out againe. You must apply a liniment of *acatia* and *hypocistidos* with wine. Also you must seeth in water till it be red, galls, *bal. ustie*, shelles of mast, pomegranate rindes, daiesies, sumach, thales of quinces and such like, and afterward of that decoction make incessions and washing. But after that the tuell is washed with wine or with some restrictiue decoction, then it is lawfull to strew vpon it and to apply to it drie medicines. For which purpose you must apply bolearmoniac, frankensence, *sanguis draconis*, galls, *acatia*, mirrhe, *hypocistidos*, harts horn, and such other restrictiue medicins, as we haue rehearsed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be so swollen, that it cannot be thrust vp againe: if the bodie be full of humours, you must first cut a veine, and prouoke vomit. And also you must apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning, those things that do restrain & stop or appease: but if there be no abundance of humors in the bodie, let the sick vse incessions of the decoction of canmomil, mallowes, *althea*, linseed, fenugreek, and such like, or let him descend into hot

Cause.

Curatio.

water, and tarrie in it for a time. Also it is lawfull to apply a sponge or wooll wet in the decoction, Moreouer you must annoint the tuell with oiles of camomill, and dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they becaufe of their dissoluing vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe, without anie difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the fundament.

DE RIMIS ANI.

*Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**Vnguentum.**Alind.*

Clefts of the fundamēt, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humors, or through inflammation, or through extention of the swelling of the tuell. This cuill is apparant to the eyes, and therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharp humors, then they first of all must be purged and tempered. But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the bellie all the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest drie doung should binder, and tarie the conglutination. Of such qualities be mallowes, spinach, milke of sweete Almonds, soft egges, fat broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselves you must vse this ointment. *R.* of the oiles of roses and mirtles, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. frankensence, masticke, litarge, *sanguis draconis*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. aloes, burnt lead, ceruse, *halautia*, bole armoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Or thus. *R.* oile of roses. \mathfrak{z} . j. ss. galls, mirrhe, *terra lemnia*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. roote of comferie, roch alume, burnt lead, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. the yolk of an egge being roasted, waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the cleftes thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of roses, galls & *sidiurum*. And if burning and inflammation do vex the diseased place, you must annoint it with *vnguentum album camphoratum*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the liuer.

DE IMBECILLITATE IECINORIS.

*Cause.**Signa.*

Weakenesse of the liuer is caused of distempere, either hot, cold, moist, or drie. Hot distempere doth rost, and as it were burne vp as well the humours which were before in the liuer, as also those humours which are carried to the liuer by the veines *mesenterij*. But cold distempere doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the liuer, grosse & tough, and hard to be moued, and the humours that be caried to the liuer, it leaue them halfe digested. Drie distempere doth make the humours drier & thicker. Moist distempere doth make the humours thin & more watery. Therefore they which haue weak facultie and strength of the liuer, they are called *hepatici*, as Galen saith. Hot distempere vexing the liuer, there are *colliquations*, first

first of the humours, and after that of the liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoided by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate and casteth vp choler. Moreouer thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is ruffe, & the pulse is swift. When there is cold distempure, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie, the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stinking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thicknesse, but are like putrifact bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse bloud comming nigh to melancholy. And also diuers and many colours of the excrements do signify cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer. The face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempures, if there come drinesse, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistnesse come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hot distempure, & heat a cold distempure. Likewise you must moisten a drie distempure, & dry a moisture. But in the cure, this onely must also be considered, that in all medicines for the liuer, that as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, commixe some restritiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hot distempure, for his diet, let him vse broth of Pisan, and other meates that doe meanely coole, as lettuse, endiue, succorie, fowrbistie, and water and bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also chickens, partrich, birdes of mountaines, and veale, these being sodden in veruine or limons. Offruits let the sicke eate raisons, limons, and sweete almonds. He must eschew wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakenes of the stomacke, for then you must minister thinne and watrie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuice of pomegranates, and *Syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *oxysaccharum*, with decoction of barley or endiue. Also they must eschew all meates and drinckes dressed with hony, and that be verie hot, and haue vertue to cut and deuide. For the cure minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of roses *diarrhodon abbatiz*, *diatrion santalon*, and other such like antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. R. the pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatiz*, and of *diatrion santalon*. ana ʒ. i. ss. seedes of both the tame endiues, red roses. ana. ʒ. ii. raisons. ʒ. j. white sanders, withwind, floures of squinant. ana. ʒ. j. sugar. ʒ. vj. dissolue it in the stilled waters of withwind, & endiue that hath the brode leaues, and make lozenges. And also the antidote *Philonium*, only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distempure of the liuer. Apply outwardly fomentes made of roses, cammomill and quinces, or seeth wormewood or dates in the aforesaid oiles of roses, cammomill and quinces, & then wet wooll or a sponge in them, and lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment. R. oiles of roses, of quinces, and of water lillies. ana. ʒ. j. white sanders and red, red roses. ana. ʒ. j. scraping of iuory. ʒ. j. ss. seedes of both the tame endiues. ana. ʒ. j. vineger. ʒ. j. ss. purslane.

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hot
distempure.Cure of a hot
distempure.
Orbiculi.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

seed.gra.ij.waxe as much as is sufficient and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profite not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort. *Rx.* the distilled waters of sowen Endiue with the broad leaues, of lettuce, of sorrel, of roses, of water lillies ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. iuice of fengreene, \mathfrak{z} .j. vinegar. \mathfrak{z} .j. red roses, red sanders, shauing of iuorie. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatrion santalon*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . seed of purslaine. \mathfrak{D} . β . Commixe them all, and make an Epitheme. You must apply Epithemes in sommer cold, and in winter warme. When there is cold distempure of the liuer, you must vse medicines that doe heat, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meats easie of digestion, and heating. For potherbes let him take sauerie, hysope fennell, parsley, sothernwood, sage, and such like. And let his meates be dressed with Aromaticke things, as cinnamon, cloues, and such others. He must drinke wine that is thinne, yellow, and odoriferous. He must eschew eating of fish, and cold frutes, and idleness, and in conclusion what so euer doth make cold. Within the bodie he must take this decoction. *Rx.* roots of *Apium*, of fennell, and of parsley. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. agrimonie, hysope, mintes, wormewood, succorie, withwind, origan, calamint, *Asarum*. ana. \mathcal{M} .j. seedes of annise, fennell, *dancus*, commin, carawayes. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. squinant. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . masticke. \mathfrak{z} .j. floures of cammomill, redde roses. ana. \mathcal{M} .j. cinnamon chosen. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine, and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it, & put to the liquour of sirupe of agrimonie. \mathfrak{z} .ij. sirupe of wormewood. \mathfrak{z} .j. Commixe all together and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner. \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . at a time, for the same purpose you may minister hot antidores, as *diacinnamomum*, *dianisum*, conferue of sage, galingale condite, rootes of pimpernell couered with suger, and such like. You must annoint him ourwardly with hot oiles, as be oiles of Narde, Cammomill, wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment. *Rx.* of the oiles of wormewood, and narde. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . iuice of Agrimonie. \mathfrak{z} .ij. Cinnamon, Cloues, wood of *Aloes*. ana. \mathfrak{D} .ij. spicknard, squinant and masticke. ana. \mathfrak{D} .j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerate. *Rx.* of the meale of fenugreeke, and of lupines. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. roote of *Treos*, and *Asarum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of agrimonie, wormewood, melilore, and squinant. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . gallia moschata. \mathfrak{D} .j. seede of Annise and fennell. ana. \mathfrak{D} . β . masticke. \mathfrak{D} .ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. \mathfrak{D} .j. oiles of masticke, narde, roses, and dill. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. waxe and rosen, as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. *Rx.* seedes of annise, fennell, ammeos. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . Cinnamon, cloues, squinant. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. seeth all in a pound and halfe of malmesey, till halfe be consumed, then straine it and commixe with the liquour of that decoction, waters of wormewood and agrimonie. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. pouders of *diacinnamomum*, and *diagalanges*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. withwind. \mathfrak{D} .ij. vinegar. \mathfrak{z} .ij. commixe all together and make an Epitheme. In a moist distempure of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie, as flesh of birdes roasted, thinne wine: those things that doe prouoke sweat, as, drie bathes, or hot houses, and also bathes comming of their own accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschew all kind of fishes, and frutes that haue powre to moisten. You must minister within the

*Cure of cold distempure.**Decoction.**Vnguentum.**Ceratum.**Epithema.**Cure of a moist distempure.*

the bodie, sirupe of wormewood, *dialaccha* and *diacurcuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do drie without any great heat: of the which we will speake afterward in the chapter of the dropsie *anasarca*. Drie distempere of the liuer must be cured like the other by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words: it is good for him to vse a diet that doth moisten, and bathes of sweete water, and other things which doe moysten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistning things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the propertie of their whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ʒ. j. thereof ministred with sweete wine alayed with water. For this by often prooffe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating or cooling.

Cure of a d. distempere.

Eupimio Iecur.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of obstructions of the liuer.

DE OBSTRUCTIONE IECINORIS.

Obstuctions of the liuer are caused of vapours, windinesse, and grosse and hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and viscous humors in the ends of the vaines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which vaines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomacke and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporous windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth ingender obstruction, there ariseth then not only griefe & heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling & perceiving of distension and stretching out. If obstruction be engendred through grosse and viscous humors, there followeth heauinesse with feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscous humours, being many, do cause obstruction and stopping more then other, & specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantity, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obstruction is made more vehement: when the bodie is stopped, they suffer both stretching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hot meates, and that haue vertue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be leekes with *oximel*, *sperage*, *fennell*, *parsley*, *capers*, and other like things, either sodden in portage & meates, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructions. You must eschue all meates & nourishments engendring grosse iuice. Also refraine bathes and exercises after meates. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin & old. Besides his diet it is requisite for him to vse very quickly medicines that do attenuate & take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not only ingender putrefaction in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, & kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicins these that follow do take away obstructions notably & without griefe (that is) wolues liuer, fumitorie, agrimony, camomill, galingale, dragons roote, *asarum*, annise, *apium*, wormewood, *casta iueos*,

Cause.

Signa.

Victuatio.

Curatio.

Simple taking away obstructions of the liuer.

licorice, *rhaponticum*, lupines, capares, *auini*, with wind parſley, *piſſacium* bitter almonds, ſpikenard, ſtichados, gentian, roote of plantaine, alſo the ſeede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagalli* the female, ſuccorie, *alkakengi*, both the endiues, ſperage & bruſcus. Of theſe alſo you may make diuerſe compound medicines, and ſpecially decoctions, putting to it *Oxymel ſimplex*, *ſclititicum*, *ſyrupus acetosus compoſitus*. Syrupes of wormewood, of hyſope, of calamint, of horehound, and ſuch other like. For the ſame purpoſe it is lawfull to miniſter trochiſkes of *Agrimonie*, of wormewood, of rubarbe and ſuch like. Alſo theſe Antidotes, *diſaccha*, *diacurcunia* are good and ſuch other like. Among other ſimples before reherſed *piſſacium* is notable good to take away obſtructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but alſo pleaſant, if you ſteepe *piſſacum* tennue or twelue houres by night in malmesey, & miniſter them in the morning, the digeſtions being ended. You muſt apply outwardly, Epithemes, ointments, emplaſters, and cerates, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold diſtempure of the liuer. And theſe aforeſaid medicines do ſuffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you muſt vſe both blood letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You muſt purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of agaricke, and with other antidotes, which do purge groſſe and thin humours by the belly. You muſt purge them ſpecially by the belly, whē the hollow part of the liuer is vexed. But you muſt purge by vrine, when the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by blood letting and purgations, then you muſt miniſter theſe medicines, which are before reherſed. And ſpecially this Eleſtuarie. R. of the roote of ireos, *chamaepiteos*, of ſeeds of anniſe and *apium*. ana. ʒ. ij. of *aſarum*. ʒ. ij. ʒ. of cinnamon, ginger, carawayes, cammomill. ana. ʒ. ij. of *ſtichados*, gentian, and horehound. ana. ʒ. ij. with *Oxymell ſclititicum* as much as is ſufficient, make an eleſtuarie. This doth maruellouſly take away obſtructions, not ſo much thoſe that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as thoſe that ſticke in the out ſide, of the liuer. For it purgeth out vchemently by vrine.

Antidotum
liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

DE INFLAMMATIONE IECINORIS.

THere is inflammation ingendered in the liuer as well as in other mēbers, and through the ſame cauſes that they be ingendered of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauineſſe all ouer the right ſide comming vp to the necke, and downe to the baſtard ribbes. Alſo there is ſwelling of the right ſide, ſpecially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a ſharp feuer, a ſmall and drie cough, an inſatiable thirſt, abhorring of meats, hardneſſe and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue firſt redde and afterward blacke. Vomits as well of pure choller as alſo like yolkes of egges, and afterward alſo ruſtie, the belly is coſtiue. Alſo the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundie, alſo he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine raving, & do void forth ſharpe vrine. The inflammation that chaunceth through cauſes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, do cauſe abhorring of meate, diſpoſition to vomit

vomit

Cauſe.

Signa.

vomits of choller, & vnquenchable thirst. The inflammation, that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and do raise a greater cough, and it doth stretch our paine vnto the right part of the neck, so that it seemeth to plucke it off. Also it chaunceth sometime, that the muscles leaning vpon the liuer be enflamed; therefore manie being deceiued, doe thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessarie to tell the differences betweene these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater, when the bodie is turned downe on the left side, and againe lesser, when it is turned to the right side. For the liuer going vnder the bastard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling. Againe the thin skin, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a natural fashion. If the muscles be enflamed, the skin is stretched out round about, so that if one wold pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot easily. Moreouer there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the muscles that lie vpon the liuer, long in fashion and manifest to sight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be enflamed, you must by and by let him blood, if age and strength will permit it. Therefore as Galen witnesseth you must both pull backe and purge the blood, that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: because that veine in the right arme is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage: hauing societie with the veine which is called *Vena cava*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vpper veine, you must draw out abundant, and sufficient blood if his strength will suffer it. After blood-letting within a litle space, make the bellie soluble, with a simple and easie clyster, specially if it do not voide by it selfe. The next day after the blood letting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and againe, likewise fasten it on within a day after, for many haue felt more ease the second time of the applying, then at the first time. Also you must vse fomentents of woll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue & discussiue, you alwaies commix some restrictiue medicines. Therefore make a foment of oiles of quinces, or of mastike, or roses, or mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a spong wet in the decoction of wormewood, melilot, red roses, chammomill, dill, plaintaine, tame endiue, and other like. Also make Cataplasmes or emplaisters of linsseede and fenugreece, barley meale, quinces, melhore, floures wormewood and such like. Or this emplaister. R. barley meale. \mathfrak{z} . β . meate of quinces beaten. \mathfrak{z} . ij . wormewoode, floures of melilot, squinant. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij . linsseede. \mathfrak{z} . j . oiles of roses, quinces, chammomill, wormewood. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . vineger \mathfrak{z} . j . Commixe altogether, and make an emplaister. Also this Cerote is good. R. of the meate of dates. \mathfrak{z} . ij . of mirrhe, steeped in old restrictiue wine, storaxe, & masticke. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij . floures of melilot, wormewood, chammomill. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j . β . saffron. \mathfrak{z} . β . oiles of quinces, of masticke, and of roses. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j . with waxe and rosen as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerote to apply to the liuer. For the same purpose, you may

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clyster.

Fomenta.

Cataplasmata.

Emplastrum.

Cerorum.

Epithemata.**Note.****Vicissitudo.****Cure of inflam-
matio turning
to suppuration.****Cataplasmata.****Emplastrum.****Ruptura.**

make Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, plantaine, wormewood, cham-
momill, or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you
must take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictiue
things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And
contrariwise when the vehemency of the heate is somewhat flaked, the mol-
lifying things must exceed restrictiue things. Moreouer you must beware, that
you doe not apply the afore said things when they are cold, but first warme
them a litle. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer, when there is great and
vehement paine, you must also minister drink medicines, that do ease paine:
but so, that you do eschew continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of
simples most. Therefore minister groundswell sodden, as a thing very profita-
ble, or iuice of lycorice with hore water. Also iuice of endiues doth profite no
lesse then the other, putting to them a litle honie: for besides that it cooleth,
and addeth strength to the liuer, it also purgeth the mouthes of the veines of
the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of nettles or mercury
sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by
clisters, for which purpose polipody & *Epithimum* with *mulsā* are put in: & that
especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hol-
low part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guttes. But the
round & outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreouer in in-
flammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisite diet (as Galen witnesseth
lib. 13. Therap. method. The liuer it selfe requireth meat chiefly that can with-
stand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thin substance, and which doe
scoure without gnawing, as is, *ptyſan*, *mulsā*, and such like. Therefore the best
foode for them that are thus diseased, is *ptyſan* broth, wherein *apium* hath
bene sodden. Also you may minister broth of a chicken, wherein parsley hath
bin sodden: but drink *mulsā* or barley broth, or decoction of the tame endiues.
And if that inflammation doe begin to change to suppuration and rotting,
then all the afore said signes will encrease, as paines, feuers, rauiings, careful-
nesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation, & rot-
ting, that it may quickly be done, lest other members in continuance of time
do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme. R.
of the root of *Althea*. \mathfrak{z} .j. β *sānugreeke*, and lincseed. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. leaues of *Al-*
thea and mallows. ana. \mathcal{M} .ij. dry figges in number vj. boile these in water till
they wax soft, then bruise them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do
amisse, if you apply an emplaister, that can helpe it to change into matter. As
this is. R. of barley meale, and *sānugreeke*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .iij. of the root of *Althea*. \mathfrak{z} .
 β of the root of white lillies, \mathfrak{z} .j. β lincseed. \mathfrak{z} .j. floures of cammomil, and
melilote. ana. \mathcal{M} . β boile all in water vnto a iust thicknes, then commixe of oile
of cammomill \mathfrak{z} .j. of oile of lillies. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . boile them againe, and make an em-
plaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerote, by putting to them
butter, *ladanum*, rosen, and waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fullie
come to a perfectio, then the paines do cease, & all the fets do appeare gentler
and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth encrease
more againe, therfore then also you must helpe the rupture or breaking of it,
by vsing of goats dung and doves dung, newle seed, mustard seede, and other
things

things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of poley, sumitory, root of *Chamadrios*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of hony, or decoction of cicers, and other like things which have an abstersive & scouring vertue. And if the matter doth avoide by the veines, you must commix things that prouoke vrine: as be *sum, asarum, casia*, and cinamome. But if it avoide by the belly, commix those things which do purge gently, as be goats wheye, *tamarindes*, and *casia fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clisters made of the decoction of bareley. When cleansing & scouring of it is done, minister medicines, which can glutinate and ioine it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distempure of the Spleene.

DE INTEMPERIE LIENIS.

Like as other parts of the body haue eight kindes of distempures, so many hath the spleene, and most often it suffereth colde and moist distempure. Ech particular cause is not to be declared herefor there be some causes, that be in other distempures of other members of the body, therefore you shall seeke them in Galen *ex capitibus primi, 2. & 3. lib. de morborum causis*. The surest and shortest signes of distempure of the spleene is knowen by those signes that be eaten and drunken, and by those signs which are applied outwardly vpon the skin, nigh to the skin, nigh to the left side. For if cold distempure doth vex the spleene, all meats and drinks which do coole notably, doe soone and manifestly hurt the spleene. Also all cold things applied outwardly doe hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distempure of it; but contrariwise al hot things do ease it. And if the distempure of the spleene be hot, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat encrease, there is not onely no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrinking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meats and drinks that be hot, and those things that adde heate being applied outwardly, doe encrease hot distempures, and make them outrageous. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may gather the signes of drie distempure, speciallie when it is not euiden by the proper nature of it for lack of greatness. Also those things that be applied outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardlie, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they doe drie vp the spleene. When the spleene is vexed with moist distempure, and so continuing a while, it causeth it to encrease so much, that it toucheth both the stomacke & the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these aforesaid signs do declare the distempure that vexeth. For in a hote & cold distempure, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also in a moist distempure: but least of all in a dry distempure. By these afore saied signes, you may make coniecture of compound distempures of the spleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hot distempure is vehement, a dry distempure followeth it; and to a cold distempure being inueterat, a moist distempure followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the spleene do cause swelling: you must haue diligent consideration to them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hotter, although there be no feuer present. Also the eyes & the vrine

*Cause.**Signes of distempure of the spleene in bare qualities. Cold distempure.**Hot distempure.**Dry distempure.**Moist distempure.**Signes of distempure of the spleene through humours.*

Choler.

be coloured by choller. The sicke shall alwaies accuse drines and complaine of thirst, and choller troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and desireth cold things, and withall these his tongue is yellowish. He hath tertian fits, and the manners of the sicke be wrathfull,

Melancholie.

and they will chafe out of measure. If Melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the rest of the bodie, and he hath vnaturall appetite to meate, the patient is sad and heauie, and other signes of choller be present with these. Also fits do vex him the fourth day. When a

Fleume.

flegmaticke humour floweth into the spleene, his choller shall be like fleume. The sicke doth not thirst, he desireth meate, vnlesse the humor be salt fleume: for the sicke abhorre meate, and be more desirous of drinke, for they are thirstie. Also fits do vex him euerie day. And their vrines are white, and they

Bloud.

themselues be slow and sluggish. Some of them that haue colde distempure with it, haue a great and a hard spleene. And if it be a sanguine humour, that floweth into the spleene, it is possible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skin. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the sicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more sicke then the rest, although they haue not like swelling of the spleene. The veines of the whole bodie doe appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. These signes we haue declared

Note.

at large out of *Asius*, because they are common, and may almost be applied to all distempures of other medicines, caused through flowing of humours. Generally distempure of the bare qualitie of the spleene is almost without

**Cure of distem-
per of the bare
qualitie of the
spleene.**

Hot.

swelling. You must cure and correct them both by meates and drinks, as also by simple medicines and fomentes, oiles and ointmentes and such other like, which be contrarie to the distempure. Therefore you shall heale hot distempure of the spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates & drinks that do coole, and by annointings with oiles of roses and *oleum molinum*, and other thinges which be rehearsed before in the 23. chapter of this booke. Likewise colde distempure of the liuer, by those things which do moderately heat. In a moist distempure of the spleene, besides those things which are rehearsed before in the 23. chapter, these things do profit: roote of fine leaued grasie, drie plantaine, the floure and some of salt, *ammoniacum*, iuice of willow and such like. If you make of them an ointment or cerote by putting to sufficient vinegar, such as we will a litle after describe. Also frictions are most conuenient for this,

Drie.

which haue a discussing vertue. Drie distempure of the spleene is cured by sweete bathes and hoat waters, also annointings with sweete oile, and meates

**Cure of distem-
per by flowing
of a humour.**

moisting without coldnesse, as is *Ptylian* iuice. If distempure of the spleene be caused through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be sanguine, you must let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *lienaris vena*, or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger, then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which doe adde strength to the spleene, as is, the bareke of the roote of capers, of hartes tongue, *Ceterach*, maidenhaire, *Yreos*, calamint and such like, which also are able to adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer: of which we will speake abundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flowe to the spleene, first you must auoide the superfluous humours by purging them

them with medicines: then all the rest of the time, you must correct the distempere that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

DE LIENIS INFLAMMATIONE.

THE Spleene, like as other members is vexed with inflammation as oft as hot blood doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is known by heaviness and swelling of the left side, which wil not giue place to the feeling; also by paine & stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humors do rush in thicher, it is known by the greatnesse & swiftnesse of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the spleene be simple, & giue them those things that will easily digest for their meate, as is Prysan iuice, bread wet in other things which be often rehersted of vs before in the inflammation of other members. And if the inflammation indure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, & fishes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinnamon or watrie wine. Let the cure be begunne by cutting of the veine of the spleene, or that veine, which is betwene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with clisters, but specially, if you may not let him blood. Then lay vpon the spleene restrictiue medicines, which can appease the turie of that, that floweth, and keep the strength of the liuer and spleene, but yet you may not onely applie restrictiue thinges, but you must commixe with them those things which do extenuate, cut and loosen without euident heat, least grosse matter be stopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you must applie moist wooll wet in wine that is old, sharpe and thinne, and mixed with sweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of roses, or *oleum melinum*, or oile of cammomill with vinegar, you may comixe them together after this sort. *Rx* oile of roses and quinces. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. oile of cammomill. \mathfrak{z} . j. the best vinegar. \mathfrak{z} . ss. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforesaid oiles be not at hand, seeth bryer leaues and quinces in oile, & adde to also some extenuating things, as is wormewood and peniroidall. And you must beware also that you applie nothing vpon the spleene cold, but whatsoever medicine you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foment and irrigations, you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of darnell and barley with drie figges, linseede and oile wherein wormewood and peniroidall be sodden. But you must beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplasmes, but as soone as those be taken away, by and by applie such cerotes or emplasters as be described in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. For both the liuer and the spleene require one kind of medicines, but the spleene requireth so much the stronger medicines, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shall seeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of inflammation of the liuer: obseruing only this thing, that you alway commixe vinegar, and somewhat that is acceptable to the spleene, and that doth peculiarly defende his

*Causa
Signa*

Dyspe

*Potus.
Curatio.
Vene sectio.
Clyster.*

Fomenta.

Note.

strength. And if the inflammation of the spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which do seeldome chaunce, you must helpe to further the sup-
puration, least other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter,
whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

DE LIENIS SCHIRRH.

Cause.

Signa.

Vitiatio.

Curatio.

Fomentum.

Friguentum.

INflammation of the spleene, if it be not rightly cured, it draweth together a
hard swelling of the spleene. The cause of this disease is a certaine humour,
which cleaueth stubbornly to the spleene; but it is when hardnes engendreth
without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. The euill is easily known by
touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating: therefore
he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth engender good iuice
and thinne. He must eschew all hard flesh, which doth engender grosse iuice,
and which do strue against digestion. He must drinke wine that is thin in sub-
stance, yellowish in colour, not verie old, and being without all restriction. Also
he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vse before meate, the
bodie not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation,
and crying out, oportunatly done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill.
For the cure, you must vse very strong things as wel outwardly as also inward-
ly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they
may suffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the
rootes of capers, hartestongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariscus* sodden in
vineger or *Oximell*. Also iuice of centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter lu-
pines taken with rew and pepper. *Anagallis* the female. \mathfrak{z} . j. with *Posca* or *Oxi-*
mell profiteth maruellously to drinke it. Also the most convenient remedie for
the hardnes of the spleene is iron quenched often in water or wine, or *Posca*.
For that water or wine or *Posca* ministred in the beginning is pleasant, & most
profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the
feuer, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a
feuer, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instru-
ment that is laid with Steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be mini-
stred to strong and rude men. For this doth melt the spleene notably, for it
hath a consuming vertue. But yet least it should hurt the stomake, it is good to
commixe with it some strengthening medicines, as is hartestongue, toppes of
wormewood, *casia*, annise seed, *serpillum montanum*, or such other like. Apply out-
wardly this foment. \mathcal{R} . centorie, hartestongue, rew, ana. \mathcal{M} . j. barke of the roote
of capers. \mathfrak{z} . j. seeth all in vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in
the decoction, and apply it hot to the spleene. Moreouer this ointment shew-
eth a maruellous effect. \mathcal{R} . of the oiles of capers, lillies and *Ireos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. mar-
row of oxes shankes. \mathfrak{z} . ij. muscilage of the roote of *Althea*, fenugreeke, and
linseed, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. badgers grease, hens grease, goose grease, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. the barke
of the roote of capers, *Tamariscus*, *castus*, centory, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. gumme ammoniack,
bdellium, *g. libanum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . the gummes being first dissolved in vineger, with
waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplaisters and cerores
do

do profit much being made after this sort. R^x. of the oiles of lillies, Treas, and of *Cerotum*, capers. ana. ℥. j. barley meale, fenugreece, linseedc. ana. ℥. j. the barkc of the roote of capers, hartstongue. ana. ℥. j. ℥. roote of *Althea*. ℥. j. *bdellium*, ammoniacke, *garbanum*. ana. ℥. j. ℥. *opoponax*, mirrhe, frankensence. ana. ℥. ℥. with rosen, turpentine and waxe, as much as is sufficient make a cerote. Moreouer the Phisitian must looke diligently to the disease, as he seeth cause sometime adde and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate and dissolue, or which adderth strength. In conclusion cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene

DE LIENIS OBSTRUCTIONE.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weakenesse of attractive vertue, which is in the spleene, but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humour of melancholy is desied from the liuer vnto the spleene there followeth obstruction. After ward that vnpure and naughtie blood is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, & enclineth to blacknesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes, which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the liuer. This euill is known by heauines, which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines. But yet the spleene hath neede of stronger medicines so much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer (this onely obserued) that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that doe adde strength to the spleene, (the humour being preparate) then they must be purged by such medicins as doe purge grosse and dreggie humors, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. Therefore those places will shew you medicines abundantly.

Cause.

Signa.

Diet.
Cure.Preparatio
humorum.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the iaundeis.

DE ICTERO.

TH E Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of *Icterus adrigu* melancholy all ouer the body. Sometimes there chanceth shedding of *arguatum* choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *Crisis* of diseases. Many times *regium*, the iaundeis is caused, and doth chance when the blood is corrupted without Cause.

a feuer offome outward occasion, and is made cholerick, as it chaunceth by biting of venemous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stong of a viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of leekes. Also it may chaunce that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, such corruption of humour may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with palenesse. Also sometime it shall be like the colour of lead, as also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the spleene. Also it is caused many times through weaknesse of the bladder that receiue the choler, which doth not draw as it was wont to doe the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, & therefore leaueth the blood vnpure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels, whose mouthes are deriued from the gall to the liuer, and do not therefore draw the cholerick humour. Also many times through obstruction of the passages, which goeth to the bowels. But that we may discerne well the causes of the iaundeis, you must of necessitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholerick deiections do inuade, and there be heauinesse in the right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the liuer: by whose violence the blood is changed into choler, & carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauinesse and griefe, the euill is ingendred onely through hot distempere of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauinesse about the right side, white excrements be auoided: in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauinesse, you may iudge their strength to be weake, either the attratiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholerike humour from the liuer, or weaknesse of the expulsue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humours be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholic sent to the skinne together with the blood, they be vexed together grievously: for there followeth it sadnesse without reason, and gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they anoid black vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or shomakers bleach, and their wombe is much costue. But those that haue the iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they doe not so much abhorre meates, they auoid white egestions, their vrines be coloured like saffron: but they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the iaundeis, there chanceth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweete meates. Also itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the partes of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes doe betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifye an abundant humour. The iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis*, when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussive oiles, and all things

Signa.

Bl acke humors.

things that rarifie the skinne, (as be) oiles of cammomill, of dill, of yreos, or such like. Also rosemarie sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the iaundeis caused through biting of a venemous beast, they are to be cured almost as those be, which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we wil speake in another place. Those that haue the iaundeis through hot distempure of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer. Therefore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiue the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloudletting and purging. In them therefore that bloud do much abound together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines or stretching out about the liuer or the spleene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, & that if the liuer be affected euill: but if the spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme, you must draw out the bloud now and then, least if you should drawe it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloudletting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after bloudletting, for by the auoiding out of the dung, it maketh easie breath, and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth vnto it the humors that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. R. both the endiues, horehound, agrimonie, maiden haire, origan, wormewood, ana. M. j. seedes of annise, fennell, percelly, sperage. ana. ℥. ij. β. licorice, apium, fennell, the rootes of them. ana. ℥. j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third parte: then straine them and take of the licour of that decoction. ℥. xiiij. casta fistula. ℥. j. hierapicra ℥. β. electuarium de succo rosarum. ℥. ij. oiles of dill and yreos. ana. ℥. j. β. salt. ℥. j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: but so that the humors be first attenuated, and made thinne by brothes, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, & potherbs prouoking vrine: specially endiue, sperage, louage, fennell, & such like. Flesh of wild beasts being ramed are best, specially of goates. For his sauce vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath bin steeped. He must abstaine from fruites, but let his banket be almondes, a few at once, and cicer, a litle roasted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a litle. Wine white and thinne, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those, that be taught in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer, and also in the first booke the 11. chapter. Aboue other specially, apium, percelly, maiden haire, calamint, veruaine, roote of chikweed, or mather, *aristolochia*, *serpillum*, S. Johns wort, being decoct, are good. The humors being prepareate and extenuate at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the iaundeis: for through the drines of their stomach, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of rewbarbe, described in the first booke the 11. chapter. Also *hierapicra*, *electuarium de succo ro-*

Cure of iau-
deis comming
through crises
of a fever.

Of venemous
biting.

Cure of iau-
deis of hote di-
stempure of the
liuer or inflam-
mation.

Cure of the
iaundeis
through ob-
struction.

Vene sectio.

Clyster.

Vituaratio.

Purgatio.

sarum, de psillio and diaphenicon. And if you profit him nothing with the first purgation, you must returne againe to those things, which haue vertue to take away obstructions and stopping: & after three daies you must purge him more vehemently again. If the iaundeis be engendred through disease of the splene, you must turne to the chapter of melancholiousnesse, and the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The belly being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the entrailes. For which purpose the roote of *cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrailes, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler, by sweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweat by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it. $\mathfrak{z} . i j$ or $i i j$. with *aqua muls*a. Also iuice of the barke of radish doth notably well, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnalaied, or *vinum muls*um, so that $\mathfrak{z} . i j$. of the iuice be tempered with $\mathfrak{z} . j$. of wine. Also earthwormes drie giuen three daies with *vinum muls*um, do send out the iaundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuice of endiue and succorie to them that haue feuers by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers with wine. Also iuice of *cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also cammomill is most profitable, which is called *leucanthemus*: and also *buphtalum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath if it can be, when the patient stireth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet, that recomforteth & refresheth strength by the which the vertue expulsive may be repaired: and if any member be hurt, let it be strengthened, & let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hot houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oile, wherein *serpillum* or rosemary hath bene sodden. And if any of the iaundeis be left about the face and the eies, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoiding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuice of *cyclaminum* is poured in, also *nigella* with vinegar, iuice of the roote of beetes and *anazallis*. Also let the sicke siting in a bath draw into his nostrils verie sharpe vineger, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the bodie.

DE MALO CORPORIS HABITU.

Symptia.

Causa.

Signa.

Cachexia in greeke is nothing else, but an euill and naughtie state and disposition of the bodie. For it is in such case that it is spread abroad in waterinesse, and all the whole bodie is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is engendred of a long sicknes. Also it followeth when some entraile is hardened, specially after the hardnesse of the liuer and the spleene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria*, & the disease called *Celiacus morbus*. Also through letting of some accustomed excretion. The whole body is made whitish and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is seldome and

weake

weake. Also their belly sendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are specially taken with this disease, which doe soone perish through weaknesse of the vitall facultie, and because the iuyce doth breath out of them readily through thinnesse of the skin. But they that be full of age, do seldome fall into this disease, and do soone get it away againe. If this disease do indure long, it turneth into the dropsie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. *Diet.* Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be simple, and which will easily digest, and that can ingender the best bloud. Let them eschue all fruites also that ingender grosse and viscus humours, and that be hard to digest. Wine is good for them which is white, thinne, and odoriferous. *Curatio.* For the cure, if the disease happen by letting of accustomed excretion, you must stirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you must vse bloud letting, if nothing do let it, which you must drawe out by litle and litle at sundrie times vnto the third or fourth day in them that fell into this disease through retention of the hemorrhoids or menstruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humors, bloudletting is hurtfull. Therefore rather purge them with some conuenient purgation. The bodie being purged, let him vse chiefly waters that spring by themselues of alume and salt peter, & afterwards sulphurous waters. Also let them exercise diuerse deambulations, gestations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exercises. After let them vse anointings with oyle, wherein is put somewhat that drieth vp humours, as be *nitrum* and salts. To cure the wearinesse apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Also portion of wormewood helpeth them maruellously, and *dropaces* applied. Also if the liuer be affected, or some other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before prescribed. If the euill turne into the dropsie, you shall find it next.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropsie.

DE AQUA INTER CVTEM.

There be three kinds of Dropsie. The first is called in Greeke *Ascites*. The second *Tympanites*, and the third *Anasarca*, *Xposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Ascites* is, when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites* is when much windinesse or filme called *peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites* is when much windinesse and superfluous breath is gathered in the aforesaid places of the bellie. *Anasarca* is, when the humours is dispersed throughout the whole bodie, that all the flesh appeareth altogether moist and wet like a sponge or paper. The dropsie is caused through great coldnesse of the liuer, or through other parts verie notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the same affect. The liuer is affected by the spleene being colde, and by the stomacke and the bowelles, also by the longues, the reynes and the midriff. Also it chaunceth through vnmeasurable auoyding of the hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menstruis, or through some other great affection of the wombe. For in all these the liuer hath no vnnaturall swelling: and yet the bodie is taken with the dropsie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer.

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which is euident to be seene in them, which through vntimely drinking of cold water, haue their liuer cooled on heapes, so that the dropsie followeth by and by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knottie swelling. Many haue fallen into the dropsie after the gout, and through the vexing paine of the hucklebones. Most commonly thole which feeble not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the iaundeis, the dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Celiacum morbus*, and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euerie dropsie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtie colour. Also they abhorre meat, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also after for the most part, there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the saide three kindes of dropxies, *Timpanites* is the most perillous: *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of dropxies: that their meate be easie of digestion and sufficiently coact, and dry. For that meat that is loose & moist, is apt to be turned into watrinesse. Therefore let his bread be verie well baked, & let it haue salt, *ammi*, fennell, annise, or comin comixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of birdes the driest are good, as partridges, turtles, blackbirds, & thrushes and such like. Of foure footed beasts, goats & hares. Also chickens, their extreme parts, when they are roasted. Of fishes, crabbes of foulds. Also egges roasted are good. Let him vse potherbes, but seeldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heate: as is, *Apium*, percelly, *Daucus*, rocket, penitroiall, coleworts, garlicke sodden, oinions and leekes. He must altogether abstain from pulses. For sauce let him vse vinegar with pepper, cinamon and such like. Let their salt be compound with fennell, hisope, rosemarie and *apium*. You must giue them so much drinke only as shal suffice somewhat to breake their thirst: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage the that be sicke of the dropsie without measure. They must drinke thinne wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschew sweete wines & *mulsum*: vinegar doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreouer let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschew much frutes and second tables: but yet nuts, almondes, pomegranets, peares sodden, and drie figs are to be giuen vnto them, but yet let them take all those moderately and not euery day. Let not their bed be verie soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them drie herbes, as be, penitroiall, calamint, origan, and such like. For it is marvellous, how much those doe drie vp while they sleepe: so that it hath bene proued that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheat, to haue risen againe after sleepe strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer and a faire day, but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed and nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, and to be caried hither and thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feete, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also

the

the patient must be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into hot sand. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily, thrice or foure times, frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shut, and it drieth vp, extenuateth and casteth a funder humours. Therefore it doth verie quickly prouoke foorth much sweat and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie handes, or with salt beaten in water or hoat oile. After this they must be washed with alomme water, or sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue bene taken with the dropsie *Anasarca*, and haue vsed such kinde of bathes, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kinde of dropsies. For the *Curatio*. cure, the remedie that is common for all dropsies, is that by and by in the beginning, you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do both by blood letting, and by purgations, and by those medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will teach in the chapters following, in which we will followe the cures of them euerie one particularly.

CHAP. XXXIII.
Of the dropsie *Anasarca*.
DE ANASARCA.

IN the dropsie *Anasarca*, all the whole bodie, and the flesh appeareth loose, *Signa*. and wet like a sponge as it is saide: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this disease you must beginne the cure with let- *Curatio*. ting of blood, especially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemor- hoides or menstruis, and if age and strength will suffer it. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that doe hurt, are drawn out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being *Purgatio*. drawne out & purged by bloodletting, you must come to the remedie of pur- ging medicines. But if there be neede of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions & other things which be rehearsed before in the Chapters of weakenesse of the liuer, and ob- struction of the liuer. For which purpose minister also syrups of wormewood, of tame endiue with the brode leaues, of agrimonie and *bizantijs*. Let the pur- ging medicines be, of simples, rubarbe and agaricke, of compounds, pilles of rubarbe, *pilule de hiera simplici*, and pilles of agaricke, and such like. Also *hierap- pica* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intrailles. Therefore you must onely beware that you minister not purging medicins that be strong, and which adde no strength to the liuer: but you must bring foorth the hurtfull humour wih easie medicines by litle & litle. For if you purge but once, and on heapes, you destroy the strength mar- uellously, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwayes passe from gentle remedies, by litle and litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of dropsie the Antidotes *diapheni- con*, and *Electuarium nidum* be good. Also the roote of Elder sodden in wine

doth purge notably. Also the roote of wolwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth frō purging medicines, you must minister those things that adde strength to the liuer, wherof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstruſiō and weaknes of the liuer. Also minister those things which prouoke vrine. For which purpose, you may well minister *diarrhodon abbatin*, *aromaticum rosarū*, *dialacca diacurcuma*, trochiskes of agrimony, of rubarbe, of wormwood, *theriaca*, & such like. And this medicine profiteth notably. *Rx.* the powders of *diacurcuma*, and of *dialacca*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. powders of *diatrien santalon*, and of *diarrhodon abbatin*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . powder of *aromaticum rosarum*. \mathfrak{z} . j. rubarbe chosen. \mathfrak{z} . β . seedes of endiue with the broad leaues, of melons, and of fennell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of wormwood, chammomill, and withwinde. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of nutmegs, squinaunt & spiknard. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of very white sugar. \mathfrak{z} . j. commixe them together, and make a powder. Also this profiteth maruelously. *Rx.* seedes of caraway, fennell, & annise. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. seedes of comin and *S. lohns worte*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. seedes of *ammeos*, parcely, daucus and louage. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of the rootes *yreos* and of *Asarum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. wormwood. \mathfrak{z} . j. of licorice. \mathfrak{z} . j. sugar, the weight of all the rest, commixe them all and make a powder. And you must doe your diligence, that in *Anasarca*, the medicines be more dry the moist, because the whole state of the body is so watery. Moreouer you must apply those medicines outwardly, which can dry vp humours, as be cataplasmes, emplasters, ointmentes, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of barley and beane meale, of fenugreek, of the root of walwort, of laurell bearies, of wormwood, and of origan sodden in wine, & laid ouer all the whole body. Also oxes dung conueniently dried, may well be applied with *posca* or *oximell*, hauing the fourth part of brimstone put to it. Also fresh cheese hauing much creame being laid to, maketh well against all swelling parts. Moreouer doues dund, and goats dung, mayweed, and chammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in vineger, and hony, may be applied. Moreouer you must vse emplasters of leaucn, dry figges, *nirum*, *yreos*, melilote, sage, peniroyall, *cardamomum*, *sulphur viuum*, laurell bearies, stauesacre, salt armoniacke, masticke, frankensence, sothernwood, *Aristolochia rotunda*, doues dung, make it vp with *oximell*. But you must altogether eschue fat and rozenny cerots, for they engender windinesse and cause swellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other partes of the body being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by a fire. *Rx.* of *unguentum agrippa*. \mathfrak{z} . j. of the meales of line-seede, fenugreece, beanes, and barley. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. seedes of *Althea*, *nigella*, *dau-cm*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *Sulphur viuum*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. bole armoniacke. \mathfrak{z} . ij. roote of *yreos*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . roche alome, frankensence. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *Euphorbium*. \mathfrak{z} . j. oyles of *yreos*, white lillies and chammomill, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the swollen partes verie often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former chapter of the drop sic.

Tritura.

Alia.

cataplasmata.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the dropſie *Aſcites*.

DE ASCITE.

IN the dropſie *Aſcites*, all the whole belly is ſwollen vp, and if it be ſtriken, *Signa.*
 there is heard ſuch a ſound, as a bottle doth make that is not full of water,
 but the other partes of the bodie, ſpeciallie the vpper partes, are not puffed *Diſ.*
 vp nor ſwollen. Let his diet be, that hath this dropſie, of birdes of mountaine
 and other meates eaſie of digeſtion, and which doe engender good iuice, as
 is ſaied before in the thirtieth chapter. The cure muſt be begunne by vſing *Cure.*
 of purging medicines. Let them be ſuch as we rehearſed in the former chap-
 ter. Coleworts of the ſea called *ſoldana*, and *ſoldanella* taken in drinke excel-
 leth all the reſt: for this ſheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hi-
 dropicke water, ſo that many by the onely vſing of it, haue beene reſtored to
 health. Giue of it in wine or wheye. \mathfrak{z} . ij. or more or leſſe according to the
 diuerſite of the bodie. Alſo pilles of *ſagapenum* are verie good: and two drach-
 mes or three of the iuice of the roote *yeos*, putting to it. \mathfrak{z} . j. of ſugar. Alſo you
 muſt miniſter ſharpe cliſters, vnleſſe the belly be ſoluble of it ſelfe: for then
 it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this cliſter is ſpeciallie com- *cliſter.*
 mended. *Rx.* floures of laurell. \mathfrak{z} . ij. roote of polipodie, agaricke. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β .
 dodder or *cuscuta*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. ſeeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be
 conſumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained. lib. i. of
benedicta laxatina. \mathfrak{z} . β . of *Electuarium nidum*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . mel roſarum. \mathfrak{z} . j. oiles of
 rew, chammomill and *yeos*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. ſalt gemme. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . commixe them all,
 and make a cliſter. For the ſame purpoſe, if you thinke good, you may ſeeth
ſolocynthia, *cartanus*, laurell berries, annife ſeede, ammi, and carawaie ſeedes,
 rewe, roote of wilde cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the
 aforeſaide remedies you muſt laie vpon the whole bellie, ſome of the preſcri-
 bed cataplaſmes and emplaſters. Alſo applie ointments and remedies that
 prouoke vrine and ſweat: and let him vſe exerciſes of the which we haue ſpo-
 ken abundantly before.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the dropſie *Timpanites*.

DE TIMPANITE.

IN this kinde of dropſie, the bellie is puffed vp and ſtretched out: and being *Signa.*
 ſtriken, it maketh a noiſe like a tabour or timbrell, but the other partes
 of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of drop- *Picturatio.*
 ſies haue: but in this all windie things are ſpeciallie to be auoided. Alſo let
 their exerciſes be much, and great thirſt doe helpe and ſuccour the patient
 ſtrongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicines, whereof you ſhall find *Curatio.*
 exâples before. Alſo it is good to caſt in cliſters, which haue vertue to diſſolue *Cliſters.*
 and diſcuſſe wind, as this is. *Rx.* roots of *apium*, and fennell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. ſeeds of an-
 niſe, fennell, daucus, louage, parſely and comin. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. careawaie ſeede.

Saculi.

Cerotum.

Lozenges.

℞ iij. rew, *asarum*, leaues of wall-wort, melilot, ana. M. j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strayned ℞. xij. *hierapicra*, *benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℞. β. *Electuarium de bacca lauri*, ℞. iij. oyles of rew and dill, ana. ℞. j. β. salt. ℞. j. β. commixe them together & make a clyster. You must giue alio vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse aswell inwardly as outwardly, those things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you finde plentie in the chapter of the cholicke. The belly must dayly be nourished with *Panicum milium*, salt, branne, leaues of rew, cammomill floures, hot ashes sewed in bagges. Also you may apply to it this cerote. R. floures of cammomill and melilot, ana. ℞. j. β. mintes, sauorie, *asarum*, ana. ℞. j. seeds of annise, fennell, rewe, comin, daucus, ana. ℞. j. *cardamum*, ℞. β. mirthe, *castoreum*, ana. ℞. j. oyle of rew. ℞. iij. oyle of dill. ℞. j. β. rosen and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastened often to the whole bellie lightly & with much flame, do maruellously profite. Afterward the bellie must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long till it be red. Inwardly he must vse the antidotes *dianisum*, *diacuminum*, and *electuarium ebacculauri*, or these lozenges. R. the powders of *dianisum* and *diacuminum*, ana. ℞. j. the powders of the antidote of laurell berries, ℞. j. the powder of *diagalange*. ℞. β. seedes of annise, carawayes, *daucus*, and fennell, ana. ℞. β. leaues of rew, seeds of *Apium* and louage, ana. ℞. j. sugar, ℞. vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the Chapter of the cholicke.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of raines that send forth bloudie vrine.

DE RENIBVS CRVENTAM VRINAM EXCERNENTIBVS.

Cause.

MANy times there happeneth a disease of the raines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weaknes of the raines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena caua* vnto the reines. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reines do sent out bloud likewise as it is wont to do in the hemorroides. Moreouer, some do voide out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen cut of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines of sharp humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weaknesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out verie wheyish: but if it be through amplitude & largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chauce through breaking of a veine, then bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent forth by little and litle, and paine doth vex the reines. Therefore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine, which is caused through weaknesse of the reines, or

Signa.

Cure of bloudie
vrine by weak-
nesse of the
veines

amplitude

amplitude of the vessels that straine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and restrictive meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are rehearsed, in the chap. of spitting of blood. You must abstaine from those things specially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke besides those things that are rehearsed in the chap. aforesaid, minister decoction of the root of comferie, and *tragacantha* ministred, that is steeped in blacke wine, is good. Also ℥.j. of hartthorne with wine, iuice of marigolds doth stop bruising out of blood from the reins. Likewise leaues of willow braied with wine, *Lapis hematitis*, ℥.j. root of white thorne and decoction of knotgrasse. Moreouer ℥.j. of bole-armoniacke ministred, is good. Sirupes of roses and mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, of *terra lemnia* and of *spodium*. Moreouer sheeps milke is only praised being ministred fasting. ℥.iiij. with. ℥.j. of bole-armoniacke commixed with it. Applie outwardly to the reins and the loins those things which be described against spitting of blood, and in the chap. of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of blood. And whatsoeuer can together with his restraining & drying adde strength also: (as be) leaues of brier and oke, mast, mirtle, berries, pomegranat rindes, *balanisia*, and such like. After this the state of the body must be refreshed and restored with meates of good iuice, with milke and flesh of birds, also with swines flesh that is lene. That thereby the whole body may be brought to his former strength, and the reins being strengthened also they may fulfill their own proper office, and that they may deuide, and straine out the wheishe humor from the blood. But if the reines doe send out blood according to the circuite, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from about, then by and by you must cut a veine of the same side in the arme. To those that send out by circuits blood, let them blood a litle before the circuit, but let the other blood by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the blood, that his pulling back and auersion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reines be couered with sponges wet in *Posca*, or moist wooll, with oile of roses and vinegar. After this apply ointments, emplaisters and cerotes described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applied, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them, which pisse blood through breaking of a veine. Also porions are good rehearsed before in the chap. of spitting of blood. In the meane season also, the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharp things. But when excretion of blood ceaseth, he must vse a diet that doeth not engender much blood, specially in those that voide out blood by circuite. Also the vpper partes of the body must continually be exercised. In those, which pisse blood through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the blood is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the chapter of exulceration of the reines.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

DE RENVM INFLAMMATIONE.

THE reins are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both corrupt humours, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medi-

*Cure of bloody
vrine comming
through cir-
cuits, or
breaking of
a veine, or
gnawing.*

Signa.

cines doe engender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There commeth to the sicke a beating paine behind about the first ioint of the backe, a litle above the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side reine being vexed, but downward vnto the bladder and priuy members and the loins and hips; and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neate, that it can neither be stretched out right, nor he cannot goe on his feet. And whether sneefing or any other concussion do chaunce, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreame parts be cold, and most the calves of the legs, and the feet. There is present difficulty in making of water, and they pisse continually & painfully. In the beginning their vrine is thin and watery, hauing no residence in it: but the inflammation waxeth worse, it is more rubicund. Also afterward it is grosse & filthy, & there be vehement feuers present. And if the inflammation encrease still, al these signs wax more vehement. To these commeth disposition to vomit, & gnawing of the stomacke, & vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, & sweat vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is stopped, so that they are puffed vp with wind, & do send out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to some there are continuall exacerbations, but to some between whiles. And generally egestion of the wombe, & much excretion of vrine do go before those paines. The sick must lie in a very soft bed: & the first day he must abstaine from meate, but you may not extend his fasting to many daies. For the vrines being made more pure & sharpe by fasting, do vex with most vehement biting & gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you must nourish them with thin soupings, that do ease and cease gnawing and biting (as is) broth of *prysan* or *alica* of barley. Also mallowes for his pot herbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bin soddē. To be short let his diet be thin, & such, as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you must by and by let him blood, & you must cut the veine that is in the ham or in the ankles, and that must be done on the leg that is right against the reine, that is vexed. Also sometime (as *Galen* saith) you must let blood of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of blood is present. After blood letting you must come to outward medicines, as cataplasmes, fomentis, liniments, emplasters, and such like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, & to ease paine, made of the oiles of roses, quinces and chamomill, of barley meale, beane meale, fenugreeke, linseed, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer & the spleene. And if the paine be not eased by those things that be applied outwardly: apply a cupping glasse to the loines, and the guts, and scarification being made, you must draw out much blood. Then you must vse nourishment of sponges, and other things which can ease paine. You must only beware al this time, that you giue not such medicins to drink as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humors to the inflamed parts. This medicin I haue proued to be singularly good *Rx.* the iuice of clary, and the iuice of nightshade. ana. *℥ij.* drunk in *℥j.* of stale ale, morning & euening *vj.* daies together. Also you must beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicins. But yet you may vse soft clisters (specially

¶ *Itius ratio.*

Curatio.

Locatio.

Note.

(specially if the belly be costive) made of the decoction of mallows, or linseed, & fenugreek, or *peysan* broth, putting to it oile of violets, or chamomill oile. But you must beware that you put not in great abundance of it, for the bowels being filled & stretched out with it, will presse together the reins. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceased and concoct, which you may know by the ceasing of the paine, then also you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct & digest, the vrine cometh forth much in quantity & grosse. And in those that haue residence, it is good, & so iudgeth the best altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the second book of making of medicins the 7. chap. specially among pot herbs, fenell, *apium*, and parfeneps well sodden, are good. And if by the aforesaid medicines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauines do rest by vsing of the aforesaid things, and also if difficulty of pissing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vex the patient, these betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as swiftly as you can, you must helpe the suppuration, and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpose, a sponge continually wet in water and oile applied in stead of a foment profiteth. For the same purpose also vse cataplasmes which are made of barley meale, bran, figs, *althea*, & such like, rehearsed before in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. Also it profiteth greatly to descend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as mallows, *althea*, linseed, fenugreek. And if after perfect suppuration, the rupture & breaking be delaid & taried (which you may know if the fevers and pains wax lesse, and sense of heauines remain about the reine that is affected) minister those things in drinke, which prouoke vrine, as is decoction of fenell, peniroiall, origan, & such like. For these sometime do breake the suppuration, & purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vsing of the do profit nothing, you must wash the belly with sharpe clisters: as with root of wild cucumber sodden and alaied, or decoction of garlike or radish. You must sleepe those in brine & commix a litle oile, wherby they may be made slippery to be poured in. These must be thrown in with a clister pipe, and the sick must be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that suppuration, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Also if the rupture & breaking tary, commin with wine called *passum* helpeth, & rew with *vinum mulsum*. Moreover the rupture being made, litle peeces of flesh being log, are sent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be sent out humors stinking, swart, and slimy, but if they be benigne & gentle, the matter that is pissed forth, is white, equall, light, & without grievous sauour, & litle in quantity. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, minister milk, with hony, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reins.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the stone in the reins.

DE CALCULO RENVM.

THE stone of the reins happeneth oftner to men of perfect age, then to children. The cause of ingending of such stones is continual crudity and rawnesse of the stomacke, whereby abundance of grosse and earthy humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fiery heate about the reins, parcheth

*Signa suppurationis.**Signa perfecta suppurationis.**Signa rupturae facta.**Cause.*

Differences
of stones.
Signa.

Curatia.

Vena sectio.

Purgatio.

Clister.

Note.

Enguentum.

the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reins, nigh their ventricles either litle or great, and sometime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselves in greatnesse, figure, colour, and sharpnes, for they are found black, whitish and pale. I here chanceth to the sicke gricuous paine in the reins, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his backe bone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine, that is diseased, is astonied there is present abhorring of meat and vomiting. About the beginning of obstruction and stopping, the vrine is pissed forth litle in quantity & watery. Afterward there followeth perfect suppression of the vrine, & the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go to the stoole. Sometime there is auoided forth bloud, through the violence of the stones, specially if they be sharpe stones. Also the vrine hath grauelly residence, specially when the stone is remoued from the reins, which signes aforesaid Hippocrates declareth in lib. 6. Epid. par. I. Aphor. 5. Moreouer things that be light and round, are easily sent out: but not so, if they be of any other forme or fashion: but specially if they be long and sharpe, they are hard to be sent out. When the stone, stopped in the reins, doth cause most vehement pains, lest abundance of bloud through the greatnesse of the paine should come downe together to the member diseased, in a body that is full of humors and strong, you must fly and by cut the vaine in the hamme of that leg that is astonied, and is right against the reine that is diseased. But if those that labor of ill digestion or vicious humors, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted, except some other thing do forbid them: which also Hippocrates biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men should be purged with *hellebore*. Also if it be not lawful to let bloud, nor to minister purgation, you must wash the womb by ministering of clisters, which you must do at that time specially, when there is great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you must onely beware that they be not strong clisters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, lest the passages of the vrine should be streightned and pressed together. But let them be such as are only able to auoid the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this clister. R. mallowes, *althea*, mercury, maidenhaire, perietary. ana. M. j water cresses. M. j. seeds of parsley, apium, fennell, & flaxe, ana. ʒ. ii j root of *gladon*. ʒ. j. ʒ. bran. ʒ. j. boile them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part, & then take of the licour of that decoction being strained ʒ. x. j. of *castia fistula*. ʒ. j. of *hierapicra*. ʒ. ʒ. mel *resarum* strained. ʒ. j. ʒ. oiles of dill, rew, and chammomill. ana. ʒ. j. salt ʒ. ij. commixe them all and make a clister. But we may in no case vse continuall clisters, and neglect almost all other remedies, as many phisitions do now adaies, but vse them twise or thrise, but so that they be not kept aboute their accustomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cause pressing together, and streightnes of the reins, and the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you must minister those medicins, which can loosen the conduits and passages. For which purpose the region of the reins, and the loines must be annointed with this medicine. R. oiles of dill, and of sweete almonds. ana. ʒ. ij. oile of chammomill. ʒ. j. ʒ. hens greafe, and goose greafe. ana. ʒ. ij butter without

without salt. 3. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make a soft ointment. Also he must vse incessions of the decoctions of calamint, organ, water cresses, colewortes, leaues of *althæa*, mallowes and such like, or the sicke must often be let downe into a great vessell of warme sweete water. Also fomentes of bran, with leaues of *althæa* sodden, being applied to the grieved place be verie good. Also cataplasmes made of wheat meale, of linsseed & fenugreeke, of lupines, of the roote of dog fennell beaten very small, and of cammomill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine called *passum* about the loynes and the bellie. Neither shall he doe rashly which applyeth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed to the bladder and the share. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another, before the first do coole: for cold doth draw together & bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines, and in the conduites of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it that it coole not for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these drie not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: gladon, S. Johns wort, parsley, or *cofelinum*, grommell, ammi, seede of *daucus* & fennell, *asarum*, roote of briony and mather, barke of the roote of capers, sperage and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is roote of pencedane, or dog fennell, briony, *apium* and *radicula*. Also commix with them those things that breake and teare the stone in the reines, as is, *sum*, maiden-haire, *bdellium*, turfan seede, *bruscus* roote, saxifrage, betonie, roote of *damosmit*, broth of cicers, roote of cypresse, grommell, *laps judaicus*, *xanthium*, the seede and roote of *althæa*, gumme of plomb tree, earth wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the sea. Euery one of these part of them sodden, & part of them very finely powdered, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone, at that time, when the vehement paines be released, which chaunceth when the stone is removed, and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschew much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and losen the reines, & the conduites of the vrine, with fomentes, cataplasmes and incessions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clysters, least the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subtilly fastened to, if inflammation do not let it: for often times cupping glasses do so remove on heapes those stones, that they cease the paines by and by (that is) the stones being caried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten a cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priue members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduites of the vrine. Morcouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine,

as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must goe about to let the sick lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioints of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by al the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe, and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profite nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *catheter*, which is apt to drawe out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the bredth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it staieth about the middle passage of the yarde, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must poure hore water by litle and litle, from the furthest parts of the yarde, or you must put the yard in hote oile, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of, those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawn is wont to fall out. But when you cannot drawe him out this way neither, you must cut the yarde about with a litle wounde, about the bignesse of an acorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yarde; for almost alwaies it turneth into a *fistula*, and afterwarde the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone.

*Preseruati-
on from the stone.*

The greatest thing to auoid engendring of the stone, is to vse meates of good iuice, easie of digestion, & moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but litle all kinde of pulse, and of corne: also cheese, milke, & the meates that are made of them. Moreouer blacke wine, and plentie of flesh, and generally all things of grosse iuice, and that be ouer hot and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine, or if vicious humors be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also, their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thinne & white, and not verie old; for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must cate daily parsneps very well sodden, fennell, *Sium*, peniroidall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of much effect. *R.* of the rootes of fennell, sperage, & *filipendula*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. rootes of mather. \mathfrak{z} j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, & *Althea*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. licorice scraped. \mathfrak{z} ii. the stones of sea sponges, & *Lapin iudaicus*, ana. \mathfrak{z} j. seedes of *ammos*, *daucus*, parslie, flaxifrage, fennell, annise, grommell. ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. seedes of melons, and citrons pilled. ana. \mathfrak{z} j. \mathfrak{ss} . seede of *alkahengi*. \mathfrak{z} ss. pellitory of the wall, mallowes. ana. \mathfrak{z} j. puluill mountain, maidenhaire, peniroidall, *asarum*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. of the bloud of a male goat dried & preparat. \mathfrak{z} j. *bellium*, *ammoniack*, ana. \mathfrak{z} ss. of crabbes eyes, cinnamon chofen and squinant. ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. beate all &

*Powder a-
gainst the stone
of the reines.*

bring

bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparing of the goates blood aforesaid is taught of *Ætius, lib. I. cap. 12.* Other remedies we will speake of in the chapter of the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnm easurable pissing.

DE DIABETE.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: *Diabetes quid.* and also whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is pissed out againe. *Cause.* This disease is ingendred of weaknes of the retentive vertue of the reines: but there is such strength of the attractive vertue, that it sucketh the whole body through immoderat heate. There followeth to the sick a stubburne thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kind of licour. Therefore they are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke, goeth on so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the loynes swell vp, and the stones and haunches also. And if yet more gnawing heate be increased in the bowels, the stomacke is wrinkled, and the veines in it are lifted vp, all the state of the body is leane, and there chaunceth grieuous consuming of the body. The effect of the cure consisteth in that, to stop the sharpnes of the humour, and the blood, & with that to make the wheyish humour which is commixt with it, of slow mouing, and to correct the distemper of the reines. *Signa.* Therefore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out blood moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meancly, which may purge out the vicious humours that be settled in the reines. But if the euill be immoderate & old, you must neither vse blood letting, nor minister any thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colliquation and consuming of the body, which doth chaunce also by it selfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their strength faileth them, and through bloodletting the whole body is made sharper, and things that prouoke vrine, do multiplie and increase the euill in them. The greatest and chiefe remedie of this disease, is to reuomite that vp againe, that is drunke. Let his drinke be verie cold, as also let the rest of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meates of good iuice, and which can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacitie and gnawing: or which is able to stop mordacitie and sharpnesse, as be, rere egges, *alica* made like a souping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new cheefe well compact, and without salt: and milke wherein flint stones, or red hore Steele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold Prisan broth is good. For potherbs, take endiue, lettuce, & purslaine. Of fruits, peares, apples, and pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good. He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to wash the salt humours, which cause the thirst: for wine chaungeth the temperature of the bodie to sweetenesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuyce of pomegranates, *rob de ribes*, or *rob de barbaries*. For medicines, minister vnto him *Me.licamenta.* the iuyce of knotgrasse, or of sanguinarie with blacke wine. Also decoction of

Localia.

comferie and of dates, and of mirtle berries, or peares. Likewise sirupes of roses, and mirtles, and such like. Also Trochiskes of *spodium* may be ministred with iuyce of knotgrasse, or blacke wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes, and the share, ointments, cataplasmes, and cerotes that do coole: as be those which are made of rose vineger, *solentia*, lettuce, duckes meate, pellitorie of the wall, vine leaues, purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also, ointments do profit, made of oyles of roses and mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of nightshade, or of vine budde. Also you must lay to the *Hypochonders* or sides in forme of a cataplasme, Barley meale, wrought vp with vineger, & oyle of roses. Also vse this emplaster; *R*. barley meale. \mathfrak{z} . β . vine buds, tops of willow, *bursa pastoris*, ana. \mathfrak{M} . β . the rind of pomegranates. \mathfrak{z} . β . purslaine. \mathfrak{M} . β . seeds of quinces. \mathfrak{z} . β . red roses. \mathfrak{M} . β . boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oyle of roses. \mathfrak{z} . β . oyle of mirtles. \mathfrak{z} . β . boile them againe, & make a plaister. Of these aforesaid things you may make a Cerote, by putting to *hy-pocistidos*, *acatia*, bole armoniack, rosen and wax. Also you must prouoke them to sweate, that the vicious humors may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with herbes and other hot things to prouoke sweate after such sort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the patients feete, lying in his bed, and prouoke sweat. Also wash the conduite with plantaine water, and burnt alumē.

Emplastrum.

Sudorum euo-
catio.

CHAP. XL.

Against vlcers of the reines.

Cause.

Renum vlcera.

Signa.

Diet.

VLcers or boyles of the reynes be caused through rupture, and breaking of the veines in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammation, and through sharpe and gnawing humours, caried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loines, with heauinesse, and the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chaunceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is utter commixed in the vrine with litle peeces of flesh, or haire swimming in them. According to *Hippocrates* saying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who saith, if bloud or utter be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reines, or of the bladder. And by and by after he saith, if in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeareth litle peeces of flesh, or as it were haire, they are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and facietie or fulnesse. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammations or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things, which do soone waxe soure or sharpe. Also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoeuer doth breed and ingender choler: as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarinesse, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue aboute all things immoderat riding, & all vehement mouing and stirring: also he must auoyd perpetual idleness, and continuall bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, and kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scale fishes of grauelly places, roasted on a grediron. Moreouer, riuer crabs, souplings of *Prusan*, and *amylum* sodden with milke, be marvellous good. Giue him also

also milke mixed with eggs, and the fat broth of a hennie. Also rere egges minced alone, are good. Of pot-herbes, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, and lettuce are good: but all these must be sodden, for the sicke must eate nothing that is raw, as is aforesayd. Of frutes, raisins are not hurtfull, and pine nuts. Also almonds well blanchèd are good. Much drinke & strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hippocrates* saith, 3. 4. *pher.* 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is a-layed, and somewhat restrictive: or let him drinke goates milke, or sheepes milke, or almond milke. Carnall copulation is marvellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seidome vsed, as is aforesayd. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselves, and specially allunie waters, and brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as well outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humours, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humours. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is not good onely to auoyde vicious humours, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chaunce there: for it turneth the moving of the humours into a contrary part. Also in the meane season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, seede of melons, cucumbers, and gourds, syrups of violets, roses, and water lillies, and the conserues of them. But when the vicious humours be purged, he must drinke *aqua malsa*, or the decoction of fenugreeke with honie, or of cucumbers, or of mallowes, or of melons seede with *hydromel*. Also minister milke with hony newly milked, and hote: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also goates whey, decoction of barley, raisins and licorice, is marvellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed: which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine, neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie arter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantitie: then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him bolearmoniacke, gumme tragacanth, *amylum*, *terra lemmia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things, this powder is marvellous good; *R. Terra lemmie*, bolearmoniacke. ana. 3. i. *β.* *Tragacantha*, *spodium* burnt. ana. 3. j. *amylum*, pine nuttes toasted. ana. 3. *β.* linefeed, cucumber seede blanchèd, melons seede. ana. 3. ij. seede of *Apum*. 3. ij. dragons blood. 3. j. beate them all together, and make a fine sieue powder, of the which giue the sicke daylie 3. ij. with milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must applie such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplasters and cerotes, or ointments made of the oyles of roses, and of mirtles, of barley meale, frankensence, masticke, red roses, & such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

Curatio.

Vomite.

Medicines stop-
ping gnawing
of humours.Purging of
the vlcers.Glutinatues.
Puluis.To drie and
strengthen the
reines.

*Of the stone in the bladder.**Calculus vesicae.**Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**To breake the stone in the bladder.*

STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke. When that vrine grosse and very thicke is caried into the largenelle of the bladder, it setleth and stayeth there, like dregs of wine, or muddie water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a stone. Therefore there be two speciall causes of the ingendring of the stone in the bladder: that is, thicknesse of the vrine, & heate of children. They that haue the stone in the bladder, they itch often, and do handle their priuie members, which also are swollen, and they are constrained to make water continually, & they are vexed with the strangury, or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this disease is almost the same that the cure of the stone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, because the stones of the bladder require stronger medicines, and you must apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The stones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with these medicines (that is) the seed and roote of fennell, of louage, blacke pionie seeds, motherwort, cammomill, the roote and seede of *althea*, *sum*, maidenhaire, sorrell rootes, the stones of sponges, the stone of *tecolithus*, grommell, *brusens* roote and seede, the stones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the seed of little burres, the barke of capers, sothernwood seed, iacin, white violets, smalach, parcelie, and other such like, which do prouoke vrine, and which be rehearsed in the chapter of the stone in the reines. To these you must conioyne the most laudable remedie (that is) a hedge sparow being dressed in salt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the disease perfectly. For it expelleth the stones that are already ingendred by the vrine, & it letteth them from ingendring any more. Also goates bloud is a present remedie, aswell for the stone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it dissolueth those that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, & ceaseth paine. Furthermore, if the stones of the bladder cannot come out by the passage of the vrine, but that they be there stopped, and compact together, & so do cause suppression of vrine, then the sicke must be vpward, so that his hips must lye vpward and highest, and then you must moue him hither and thither manie wayes, that thereby the stone may fall out of the passage, and afterward bid him pisse euen as he lyeth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water so neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyting, and after that you must minister those medicins which haue vertue to breake the stone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to passe by this meanes, you must come to cutting. The stone therfore being consumed by any of the meanes aforesaid, such an order of diet must be appointed to the patient, that the stone may not ingender againe, which we haue prescribed in the Chapter of the stone in the reines.

CHAP. XLII.

*Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.**Cause.*

IT chanceth sometimes that a veine breaketh in the bladder, & then some of the bloud is sent out, and some waxeth thick and curdeth within. When the bloud

bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulſes be ſmall, darke, and thicke, he is ſorrowfull, he is cold, and his ſtrength decayeth. And ſometime when a clod of bloud chaunceth to fall into the paſſage of the vrine, then it ſtoppeth the going out of the vrine. You muſt in this caſe, as alſo in other burſtings out of bloud, cauſe a very quick and ſpeedie remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawen backe often, and by litle and litle. Let the patient in his lying be layd vppward, and let his hips be liſted vp, and apply ſponges dipped in *poſca*, that is, water & vineger ſodden together, to coole him. Alſo the extreme parts muſt be bound, and the ſhare muſt be couered with ſponges dipped in *poſca*. If the euill increaſe, cupping glaſſes faſtened to the ilions, & to the loynes profit much. After irrigations with the ſponges dipped in *poſca*, you muſt vſe cataplaſmes of knotgraffe, brambles, plantaine and pomegranate floures. Alſo vſe cerotes made of *hyſciſchia*, *acatia*, bole armoniacke, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the Chapters of ſpitting of bloud, and of the fluxe *dysenteria*. You muſt poure into the bladder, iuice of knotgraffe, plantaine, or millefolie, commixing with it *acatia*, bole armoniacke, trochiſkes of *ſpodium*, and ſuch like. Alſo incellſions of ſuch like things are good; for both *poſca* and decoction of *Lentisces*, and alſo of brambles and ſuch like, are good. Alſo you muſt miniſter in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *rhaponticum* finely beaten, & xij. red ſeeds of ponie, *terra lemnia*, horſetaile, the roote of centorie the great, the barke of frankenſence, and ſuch like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, firſt you muſt go about to diſſolue and diſperſe that bloud with conuenient medicines. Therefore you muſt miniſter in drinke, motherwort, *ſchidaz*, citrine, wormewood, ſothernwood, ſhauing of a vine, radiſh ſeeds, hares or goates creame, each of them with *oximel*. Alſo *oximel* miniſtered by it ſelfe doth profit maruellouſly, for it diſſolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by litle and litle with the vrine. Apply outwardly bathes, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to looſen and releaſe, which you muſt ſeek out of the Chapter of the ſtone in the reins. Aboue other things this Cerote is verie good. R^e. of the oyles of roſes and cammomill, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . calamint, comin, leaues of elder, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *bitumen Iudaicum*, gum ammoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. hares creame, \mathfrak{z} . iij. ſothernwood, meale of ſenugreece ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . ſpermacetie, \mathfrak{z} . j. with roſen and waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote to apply to the ſhare. And if you profit nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is ſtill ſtopped, you muſt of neceſſitie vſe a cyring: by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you muſt againe miniſter the things aforeſaid in drinke, & apply thoſe things outwardly, which do diſſolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of bloud will not yet be diſſolued, you muſt come to the curing of it likewiſe as you did in the ſtone of the bladder.

CAAP. XLIII

Of inflammation of the bladder.

OF diſeaſes that be in the bladder, and ingender there, the moſt grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The ſicke haue theſe tokens fol-

Signa.

Curatio.

Diet.

Clister.

Fomenta.
Sacculi.

Catheter.

lowing. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomit pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole, as is wont in the dis ease called *Tenasmus*; the ordure that commeth fourth is thinne and hath no residence: also sometime inflations follow, and the wombe is costive, the right gut being pressed together of the inflammation of the bladder. To them that haue this dis ease, if nothing let it cut the veine of the hamme without any taryng, or draw bloud of the ankels. Also minister to him a thinne kind of diet, as is prescribed in other inflammations. He must also abstaine from wine, and he must vse water, wherein a litle cinnamon hath bene sodden. Outwardly you must apply those things that haue power to cease and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder must be nourished with oyle wherein hath bene sodden dill, linseede, and sometime reu and *althea*. Medicines that be cold and restrictiue must altogether be forborne: & that chiefly because the bladder is full of sinewes: for colde as *Hippocrates* witnesseth 5. *Aphor.* 28. is an enemy to sinewes. Moreouer because cold things do shut vp & bind, and so do stop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it selfe) it encreaseth it. And last of all because cold things do prohibite and let that the humors causing inflammation, may be dissolued, consumed & digested: therefore medicines meanelly hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to cease paine, to losen the pipe and passage of the vrine, and to dissolue the inflammation. Also let the guts be washed with soft and easie clisters, and after the dung is come forth, cast in oyle of dill, or such like thing to ease and cease the paine. It is good to seeth poppie shelles, together with oyle, and to poure in goose grease, or fresh hens grease sodden together in the same oyle. In most vehement paine you must poure in ʒ. j. of pilles of houndes tong dissolued in oyle of dill: or take *opium* with mirrhe and saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Also let the sicke sit in the decoction of linseede, fenugreeke roote of *althea*, *daucus* steede, and such like, and bid the sicke pisse as he sitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not strong enough to receiue and expell out the vrine: therefore the patient or some that be about him, must thrust & presse the share easily & softly, and that must not be done out of measure, least that paine shold be augmented therby. Also after clisters and inceptions vse fomenta by hote water, and apply oyle in oxe bladders or other vessels, halfe full, or litle bagges as is shewed in the chapter of the plurisie. And if for all these things, the euill cease not, fasten a cupping glasse with scarification to the grieved places. Moreouer he must abstaine from those things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he must eschewe much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the dis ease, you must come to the vse of those things that haue vertue to dissolue and mollifie, whereof we haue spoken often before. The putting in of a Cyring into him that is diseased with inflammation of the bladder is not easie to vse, and specially in men: for seeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it sharpeneth the paine and increaseth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vse it. For the passage of the vrine in them is short and straight, so that they may suffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the stopping of vrine do ve-

ty much constraîne you, then you must of necessity vse a ciring in men also, not because it taketh away the anguisthe of the disease, but rather because it should amend the great suppression of vrine, and deliuer the patient frō deadly perill. After that you haue entised out the vrine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vnill the inflammation be dissolued & reduced. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolued by and by through the meanes of an *Erisipela*, rising outwardly vpon the skin, & remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much vrine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheles although these things appeare, you must still vse the remedies aforefaide: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceased, and the constitution of the disease is now waxe old, you must come to the vsing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewise emplasters, which do rubife and blister the skin, are to be applied which you may finde after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the bladder and his necke.

TH E bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling, which hath bene before, or through some rupture, or by eating, and gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sicknesse sharpe paine of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, there commeth forth dreggy and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residue like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll are sent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do spread abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out vrine that is blouddy, attery and stinking. To these signs may be added, difficulty of making water, and rising vp of the yard. There is paine not onely, when the passage of the vrine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottom or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottom of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and passage of the vrine by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the share: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is pain felt only at such time, as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing: & also his paine is the greater if the vrine be sharp. They that are vexed with this euill, they either sit continually, or they can not stand vpright, nor rest lying along, and through great and continuall pain they are killed with feuers, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the least waies very hard to cure: as well because the bladder is sinowy, as also because the vrine which is of nature sharpe doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them: and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioine together. For although much vrine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwaies some of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers. Yea whe the abundance of vrine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth

Vlcera vesicae.

Signa.

*why the vlcers
of the bladder
be incurable.*

Curatio.

euery part therof. But seeing that oftentimes somethings chance besides our expectation, you shal go about the cure, by the which, if you bring nothing else to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie downe & to rest in his bed, and that specially when that he hath a feuer. The you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. The chiefe thing in this case hath bin drinking of milke, and this is to be compared about all other medicines. For it maketh smooth roughnes, & washeth vlcérations, and scoureth the cuill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is, which is ministred in the exulceration of the reins. Also you must comfort the sick by medicins, that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of linefeed, and fenugreeke, and other things, which are reherfed before in the chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meet to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spread broder & eat deep, you must apply outwardly medicins somewhat restrictiue, and that such as be hot whē they are applied, that by their heat they might helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, & that through their vertue, they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed & eat. Restrictiue medicins be these, galls, pomegranat rinds, alome, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, and such like often reherfed vs before. Also you must vse to minister to the, medicines cast in with a ciring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of roses warme. And if none of these be at hād, you must cast in continually most sweet water warmed: specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuice of *pūsan*, or the decoction of linefeed, cucumber seed husked, fenugreek, mallows, or milke with oile of roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpwārd, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusio to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sicke sit often in hot water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And when the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a ciring such things as can stop the feeding: as be *acatia*, *hypocistis*, *terra lemnia*, bole armoniack, & other rehearsed a litle before. But if the vlcers be foule and filthy, you must powre in medicins, which haue vertue to scoure & cleanse them, as is *mulsa* much watered, or milke with a litle hony, or with the seede of cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *anlyum*, or tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scar, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue incissions, and by emplasters, fomentes, & irrigations, that be of like faculty and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits apply emplasters and irrigations, hauing power to cease & ease the paine, and in the time of the intermission between the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the cuil. Therefore apply to the share,

Synapismes,

Restrictiue
medicines.

Note.

Synapismes, and such things as will rubife & blister. And let the sick vse a diet that is good to restore strength. And if the euil doth not wax gentler, you must make burnt scurfes about the share, either by medicines or with iron, and to suffer the vlcers to purge and cleanse them selues long time with matter flowing out. You may also minister medicines to cease paine in drinke, if vehement pains vex him. For this purpose aboue other things, which we haue reherfed in other places, the pills of *Alkakengi* with *opium* are good. Also these things following do much mitigate the pains of exulceration (that is) cucumber seede, mallowes, white poppy, *tragacanth*, *amylum*, pine nuts and almonds. Therefore this medicine may be ministred. R. conferue of violets. ℥. iij. seed of mallowes. ℥. ij. of the foure great cold seeds. ana. ℥. j. liquorace scraped. ℥. j. gumme D. ij. bole armoniacke. ℥. ℥. trochiskes of *terra lemnia*. ℥. j. make them vp altogether with sirupe of liquorice. Minister of it daily in the morning the quantity of an hasell nut. Moreouer you must throw into the bladder medicines that can cease paine, and heale the exulceration.

To cease paine.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

DE STILLICIDIO VRINAE.

Stranguria in Greeke, *stillicidium vrinae* in Latine, is a disease whereas the v-
rine distilleth downe by drops, or by litle and litle and causeth a continuall
prouoking & desire to pisse. This disease is caused through the sharpnes of the
vrine, or by exulceratiō of the bladder, or by an impostume of the liuer, or the
reins, which being broken & sending the filth & attre to the bladder, through
the sharpnes thereof, it causeth continuall desire to pisse. You shall iudge that
sharpnes is the cause, if his vrines be cholerick, & also al the state of the body,
if the rest of the signes betoken choler, & that gnawing do chaunce about the
bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as also an impostume
or bile of the liuer & the reins, by the signes afore reherfed in their owne pro-
per chapters. If therefore the strangurie be caused through sharpnes of the v-
rine, then you must purge the vicious and naughty humor, that doth abound,
with all speed. For the which purpose, besides those things which are oftē spo-
ken of before, whey with *casia fistula*, is maruellous good, or some other medi-
cine that bringeth out choler. The cholerick humor being auoided & purged,
the patient must vse meats that be temperat, & that can stop the sharpnes: as
is iuice of ptyfan, mallows, purslaine, violets, cucūber seed, & such like. He must
abstaine from all things that be sharpe or salt. Also let him eschue wine, exer-
cises, wrath, & slow eating: for all these things do heape vp choler in the body.
Let him vse stony fishes, & baths of sweet water, which is wont to make tempe-
rat vicious humors maruelously. In drink you must minister much sweet water
hot, or the decoction of barley with sirupe of violets, & roses. But you may not
giue him wine, as is said, except it be sweete and alaied with water. Also milke
drunk hore, is the best thing that can be. To conclude for the order of his diet,
he must vse meats that do moisten, & broths that do make the wombe soluble.
But the sicke must be cōpelled to pisse continually: for if the sharp dregs do ta-
ry long in the bladder, it gnaweth & exulcerateth it. Also to stop the sharpnes of
the humors, minister the medicin which we described in the end of the former

Stranguria.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vitium

Pulvis.

Terebintina
resina.

Clister.

chapter. For the same purpose minister decoction of licorice, or this powder following. *Rx.* of the seeds of melons husked, citrons, and cucumbers. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. seeds of gourds, purslaine, & letuse. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of red roses. \mathfrak{z} . j. iij. of licorice and of mast. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . beat them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of \mathfrak{z} . j. β . in the morning with sirupe of licorice, or in leps of violets or roses. *Alio* venice turpentine washed in rose water or endiue water, & minister the quantity of a nut, or sometime two or three is maruellous good: for this (as Galen witnesseth *lib. 5. de tuenda sanitate*) doth not onely loosen the belly without hurt, and so by that meanes, turneth away the sharpe humours from the passages of the vrine: but also it scoureth and cleanseth the inward parts, and specially the reines. And there hath bin some, that haue recovered health only by the vse of this. Also clisters made of the decoction of mallowes, violets, *althea*, leaues of willow, water lillies, and other afore herised, putting to them *casta fistula*, suger, and oile of violets, and roses do profit much. But if the sharpnes do still encrease, you must also cast in by the yard into the bladder milke with *amylum*. Also for the same purpose, you may cast in the decoction of white poppy, and you must annoint outwardly vpon the share, and there abouts oiles of violets, & water lillies, putting to them a very litle of the iuice of purslaine. But if the strangury doeth chaunce through exulceration of the bladder, or through some other part of the body being euill affected, and so purging it selfe out by the vrine, then it is manifest that those members ought first to be cured, but yet so that this present euill be not neglected. The cures of euery part you may seeke out in their proper places and chapters.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie of pissing.

DE DIFFICULTATE VRINAE.

A uo^oopia
Causa.

Signa.

Cure of a cold
distempere.

Fomenta.

DYSURIA in Greeke, *vrine difficultatis*, it is a disease wherein the vrine is pissed hardly and difficultly. It is caused through weaknes of the bladder, and through cold distempere of it which hurteth his actions. Also sometime it is caused of grosse and fleugmaticke humors which stop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold distempere if it come of an outward cause, by the patients telling, and by the thinnes and whitenes of the vrine. But if besides the whitenes there appeare grosnesse in the vrine, you may iudge it a fleugmaticke humour, which hath stopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforesaid. Cold distempere is cured by those things that do heat. Therefore he must vse heating meats, and wine that is hote and condite. Also he must vse medicines which prouoke vrine, as are parsneps well sodden, fennel, *apium*, sperage, smalach, & such like. Also crabs and hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well. You must dry their flesh and minister the weight of one \mathfrak{z} in drinke. Also minister in drinke the decoctions of aromaticke things, or electuaries made of them, and so named of them. About other things the antidotes of *diacalaminthes*, *dialactia*, and *diacurcuma*, are very good. Also triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You must nourish the share without, with hote oiles, as is, oiles of rew, dill, lillies, scorpions, and of *castoreum*. Also you must apply fomenta, and litle bags made of chamomill, sothernawood, betony, mugwort, rewe, calamin, lauein & such like

oyles into the fundament. If a cold and fleugmatike humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse ointment, and decoctions of hysope, penicill, origan, time, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foiments, irrigations, and litle bagges made of hot things, whereof we spake a litle before, and in the former chapters. Moreover whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kind through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a Cyring, vnlesse inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

Cure of fleu-
matick humer.
that stoppeth.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the vrine.

DE SUPPRESSIONE VRINAE.

ISCURIAC in Greeke, *suppressio vrine* in Latin, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patiēt is altogether letted & stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weaknes of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage straighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it cometh by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression & stopping of vrine. Also attē sent down to the bladder frō the reins, or the liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humor doth. Also it chaunceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, & yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsive, whē as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folk whē the vrine is holdē long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused thorough weaknes of the bladder, it is knowen by those signes which declare the cold distempere of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humors, it is knowen by the digt that went before. As if one that liueth idly, hath vsed much meats which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the chapter of the stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowen by paine, by feuer and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused thorough some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowen by the signes of vlcers aforelaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine cometh out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the byle to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion & pissing of bloud, or flux therof. When as attē hath stopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chance before for either the bladder or the reins laboured of some euill before, whereby such, & so much attē might gather: or there hath bene an impostume in some member about the reins, which being broken the attē is sent down into the

Truxione
Causa.

Signa.

Curation.

*Cure if it be of
weaknes of the
bladder.*

*Cure if it be of
grosse humors.*

Unguentum.

*Cure if it be of
the stone or
clodded bloud.*

*Cure if it be of
a peece of flesh
or knobbe.*

*Cure if it be of
the obtuse
sence of the
bladder.*

*Cure if it come
in haile folke.*

reines, & so into the bladder: the rest of the causes may be knownen by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuersity of causes. For if the stopping of vrine be caused through imbecillitie & weaknesse of the bladder, you must minister and apply those things which do heat, as is said in the former chapter. For you must altogether remoue cold distempere, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of grosse and clammie humours, he must be cured by fomentes, iniections, and cataplasmes made of herbes that be hot, and that haue vertue to cut & diuide the humours, and with a diet of such like things. Besides those things which we haue rehearsed in the former Chapter of difficultie of pissing, this ointment following is notably good, to take away the disease. *R.* of the oyle of scorpions, oyle of narde, and of lillies. *ana.* \mathfrak{z} . iij. gumme serapine, *baellium*, and *oppeponax*. *ana.* \mathfrak{z} . goose grease, duckes grease. *ana.* \mathfrak{z} . β . roote of *Emula campana*. \mathfrak{z} . ii. peni-roiall, calamint. *ana.* \mathfrak{z} . β . dissolue the gummes in wine, & with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must throw into the bladder with a cyring, oyle of scorpions, or lillies, or some other thing that can dissolue, cut, & diuide clammie humors. If the vrine be stopped through the stone or clodded bloud: you must seeke the cure out of their proper chap. For the stone which hath stopped the passage of the vrine must be removed out of his place as is taught before in the 41. chap but the clodded bloud must be dissolued, as is taught in the 42. chap. If the vrine be stopped through inflammation, or some other swelling against nature, the cure must also be sought out of their owne proper chap. And if the vrine be stopped through some litle peece of flesh or hard knob, apply bathings and other dissoluing & loosening medicines & such as doe open and spread abroad the pipe and conduit of the vrine: examples whereof you may seeke out of the chap. of the stone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out so, you must come to the vsing of a cyring, and by putting in of the instrument you must entice out the vrine. If the vrine be suppressed through the dull sence of the bladder, you must raise vp his action, by prouoking vrine, & you must helpe it by iniections, fements, and other hot medicines, which can take away his sleeping & dulnesse. But you must only eschue those things which prouoke vrine, least that through plentie of it, the bladder be stretched out, and so the contractiue vertue of it should be hurt. Moreover you must entice out vrine with *nitrum*, or salt peter, or with a quicke louse, or with some other thing, that can stirre vp the vertue expulsive of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through some great busines the vrine is holden too long, and so hath made the bladder feeble, that it can not expell it out, then he must helpe himselfe thus. He must stand, so that the necke of the bladder may leane downward, and must lay both his hands about his share, and he must presse it and thrust out the vrine by litle and litle, and thus may he doe also in the dull sence of the bladder aforesaid.

CHAP. XLVIII.**Of exulceration of the priuie members.****DE EXVLCERATIONE PVDENDI.**

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines, which doe drie vp vehemently: such as these be,

paper

paper burned, drie dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into powder, for you can scarcely find a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, that is the most effectuous and profitable. *R. Aloes epaticum. 3.ij. galls. 3.j. dragons blood, bolcarmoniacke, ruttie. ana. 3.j. roots of Aristolochia rotunda. 3. B. mirrhe. 3.j. of gumme arabicke. 3.ij. alum burnt. 3. B.* let all these be beaten, and make a fine powder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate partes. But if the vlcers be very moyst and foule, first scoure them and cleanse them with *muls*a well alayed, and then after with goats milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid powder, or *lapis hematites*, or frankensence, or pomegranate ryndes, or *terra lemma*, or such like beaten into powder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammation with linnen clothes wet in rosewater, or night shade, or purslaine water, or housleeke water, putting to it the white of an egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies, seeke out of other Chapters.

*Aloe arida.**Puluis opti. mu.**Absterion of the vlcers.*

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

DE PRIAPISMO.

PRAPISMVS (as Galen witnesseth in *Lib. 6. de male affectu locis. Cap. 6.*) is when the yarde is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heat gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as Galen doth witnesseth in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirite ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinow. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuius and windie aire to ingender in the hollow sinow. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, & that also their mouths should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or aire into the hollow sinow, which being a little filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his powre doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinow. Sometime this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time fro carnal copulation contrary to their custome. And this thing chaunceth specially to them, that do abound with much blood, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of blood with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be griued, as those be, which be taken with distention & stretching out of the sinows: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, doe quickly perish, vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they die their belly is puffed vp, and their sweat is cold. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do chance through gaping of the mouthes of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by & by it is good to let blood by cutting of a veine; which thing also you shall doe, when this euill taketh them which abound with blood, & haue abstained long time from car-

*Priapismus.**Satyriasis. Causa.**Curation.*

Cyber.

The summe of
the cure.

small copulation, contrary to their custome. And you must cut the blacke veine which is called *media* or *mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Also he must vse a thinne dyet, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but litle meate made of corne, and that which doth ingender no winde at all, and that causeth thirst, and it is good for him to vse to drinke water: exercises & frictions or rubbings are well applied and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits or ayre. Also it is good to goe about emptying by vomiting. Also if the wombe be costive and bound, you must make it soluble with a cyster, that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of beetes, mallowes & mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, least that the humors should be drawne downward. For the same cause also, he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labour & study to minister those medicines which can void & empty the abundance, and draw vpward, & so turne the humours from the priue members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnes, apply horse leeches. But you must lay vpō the loines, those things which do euidently coole, as is, nightshade, purslaine, benbane, & singreene. Also you must of necessitie annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament & the yard, with some iuice or water of herbes that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oyle of roses, washed often in cold water applied as well to the yard, as also to the loynes, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate which is called *ceratum liquidum*, is taught of Galen. lib. i. de *simplicium medicamentorum facultate*. cap. 6. Also this cerat is good. R. white waxe washed tenne times in cold water. quar. j. purslaine. Zij commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerate. To be short, apply, and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next chap. Moreouer it is hurtfull for him to rest, lying vpright, but he must lie on his side. He must altogether be kept from sightes and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lecherie. If this disease chaunce of a vaporous and windie spirite, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinow, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissoluing of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation, and windinesse of the stomacke, and to the cure of the windie cholicke: for there you shall find plentie of remedies.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

DE SEMINIS PROFLUVIO.

Teroppeia.

Causa.

GONORRHEA in Greeke, *seminis profluvium* in Latin, it is excretion and shedding of seed or sperme against the patients will, and without sicknes of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weaknesse of the retentive vertue in the vesselles conteyning the sperme: or through some other disease that moueth the partes of the vesselles of sperme, after that sort, as the expulsive vertue doth, according to nature: as in the falling sicknesse it chaunceth sometime, and in other violent conuulsions and crampes. Also sometime it is caused through fluxe of the spermaticke vesselles. The seede that sheddeth out,

is waterie thinne without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the most part without feeling of it, but sometime it cometh out with certaine pleasure. They that haue this disease, their whole body corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, specially about the loynes: and there followeth much weaknesse, not for the multitude of seede, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not standing) there followeth imbecillitie and weaknes of the retentiu vertue in the spermatike vessels. But if it cometh out (the yard standing) the griefe is somewhat like a conuulsion, or cramp. This disease chanceth not only to me, but also to women, & in womē it is hard to cure. The cure of this disease is comon with those cures that are ministred in euery flux. First therefore you must keepe the sicke in quietnesse, with litle meat, & with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about the share and priuities, and the loynes with wooll wet in oyle of roses and in wine, or in oile of blossomes of apples, or of quinces. Also sponges wet in *Posca* applyed are not hurtfull. The dayes following you must vse cataplasmes, emplaisters, and ointments, made of vine branches, quinces, *acacia*, *hypocistis*, sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictiue iniections made of decoctions of bryer, plantaine, mirtles and such other like. These things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse meates which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly chaunged, and that haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke, the seede of *Agnus castus*, and of heste, specially roasted. Also the seedes and leaues of rew, the seede and stalke of lettuce, and the roote of water lillies. In drinke minister daily, in steede of common water, the water wherein yron hath often bene quenched. To be short he must eschue the vsing of sharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage, and all his whole diet must be appointed of such things, as do drie vp & restraîne. And you must minister such medicines as do extinguiſh and quench seede, as is turſian seede roasted and rubbed: also the leaues and floures of it are said to restraîne lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslaine eaten, and lettuce seede drunke, and the roote and seede of water lillies taken in meat, doe extinguiſh the seede by cooling of it. But rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his heate. They which eate calamint continually, do loose the power of generation, and likewise the seede of white violers doth the same. But smithes water, in which iron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminish the seed without any griefe. Moreouer of these simples before rehearsed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this pouder is good: *R.* of the pouders of *diacuminum*, *diacalamint*, ana. *℥.j.* *℞.* seede of turſian and rew. ana. *℥.j.* calamint. *℥.ij.* seede of lettuce and purslaine. ana. *℥.j.* sugar, the weight of them all: commix them together and make a fine pouder, whereof minister. *℥.j.* or *℥.j.℞.* infused in soure wine. Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead, vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To those which can not suffer hardnesse of lead, you must giue counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the aforesaid herbes dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, vine leaues, rew, calamint, & roses are prayed: for these profit, & besides that they hurt not the reins. For vehem

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguiſh
seede.

Tritura.

Lamina
Plumbea.

ment cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let not his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vpright lying, lest thereby the atteries of the loynes should wax hot. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sick to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed and strengthened. Also it shalbe good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washings, which is wont to driue away all the grieue ingendred of flux: and that specially if the water be indewed with any medicinable qualitie. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, & that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer the patient must exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. II.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

DE HIS QUI RE VENEREA VTI NON POSSVNT.

Causa.

Dieta.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Simples to provoke carnall lust.

Amidotum liquidum.

THEY which be maried, and cannot vse the act of generation, because of the sluggish impotencie and weaknesse of their members, coming of a cold distempere wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause: such ought to exercise the neather partes, and to vse meats that doe heat and engender good humours: as is the flesh of hennes, capons, partrich, feafantes, young doves, birdes of mountaines, and specially sparrows, cockes stones and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be chiche peason, beanes, scalions, leekes, the root and seede of parsneps, pine nuts, sweete almondes, rape rootes and such other like. Also the egges of partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleep in a soft bed, and let him read things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priue members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following. R. oyle of lillies. ℥ j. β. oyle of castoreum. ℥ ss. pepper, nigella, pellitorie, ana. ℥ j. mirche, ℥ ss. Euphorbium gran. iij. wax as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. And also he must vse medicines, which do engender plentie of sperme, and can heat. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be rocket, mustard seede, garden cresses, nettlesseede, roote of Aron, & pepper, *satyrion orminum*, annise, squill, *orchis*, called also *testiculus canis*, whose greatest round root drunke with milke doth prouoke stiffnesse of the yarde, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water doth slake the stiffnesse therof: also fennell & dill are good. The stones of a Fox dried, beaten to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffnesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffnesse of the yarde. Moreouer burne the drie pissell of an hart and minister ℥ j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine. R. Dianthus, *plirisarcoticon*, *diagalange*, ana. ℥ iij. *disatyrion*. ℥ vj. pine nuts, sweete almondes, pissax, ana. ℥ ij. *satyrium*. ℥ j. roote of Aron. ℥ j. seedes of rocket, netules, and garden cresses, ana. ℥ j. β. *seincus*. ℥ ss. *nux indica*. ℥ j. of long pepper and ginger, ana. ℥ j. β. powder of harts pissell. ℥ j. sirupe of mintes, and sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an electuarie, wherof minister before supper

or fasting the quantitie of one drachme, or two alone, or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

DE RAMICE.

CELSE in Greeke, *ramex* & *hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *ruptura*. It is caused diuers wayes, and thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritoneum* doe breake, and the bowelles fall downe into the coddies, it is called in Latin, *ramex intestinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels doe cleaue or stay about the priuie members, it is called in Latin *ramex inguinis*: that is, the rupture about the priuie members. And if any quiet and waterie humour be gathered in any part of the filmes, or skinnes of the coddies, it is called in Latin, *ramex aquosus*: that is waterie rupture. When there groweth hard flesh, with in the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *ramex carnosus*, that is a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that doe fill vp the coddies. As if the call or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddies, it is called in Latin *ramex omenti*: that is the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slip downe also with it, it is called in Latin *ramex armenti & intestini*: that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *ramex varicosus*: that is the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, are caused either because the *Peritoneum*, is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken. Both these do chaunce through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp of a great weight. A waterie rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessels that are ioyned together be increased in the coddies, & then a waterie humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those partes, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroke, the vessels breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is chaunged into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe & waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowels, & the rupture about the priuie members are comon. For there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or about the priuie mebers, which appeareth greater, then it did before in exercises, iourneys, holding of the breath & such like occasions: being thrust together, it goeth back againe slowly, and it roulerh downe again quickly. The particular signes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritoneum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space & for very litle cause, the swelling appeareth equall & deepe, the bowels that fall down being staied with the *Peritoneum*. The proper signes of a rupture that commeth when the *Peritoneum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent

Κήλη.

Ruptura.

Ramex intesti- Enter
norum.Ramex ingui-
nis.Ramex aquo- hydrae
sus.Ramex carno- farosa
sus.

Ramex omenti. epiplo-

Ramex ormen-
ti intestinique.Ramex vari-
cosus.

Cause.

Signa.

*derocelle et epiplocele permanens tumor non est, na resupino intestina et omentu
nte vel blando digitorum impulsu remeant; illa virgula et flatulento maxime, hoc
et multo sono. Hydroceles et arthroceles tumor speltimus, nec impulsus in abdomine
tato cadit. hoc mollior illa durescit.*

causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, inequall, and it sheweth streight way sticking out in the skipne, because the bowelles are fallen out of the *Peritoneum*. The comon signes of a waterie rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme; & permanent in the coddles, not vanishing by any occasion: but in them that haue but a litle of the humour it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddles, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddles, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the swelling doe encrease into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vex him. The rupture of the bowels, & of the parts about the priuy members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by litle and litle: and when they are put vp, you must keepe them vp with conuenient trusses, and ligamentes. But if the places adioyning to the coddles, or to the place about the priuy members, be grieved with inflammation and most grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windines, and so therby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply fomentes, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to cease paine and inflammation, & to disperse windines: as those things be which be made of mallowes, cammomill, dill, linefeede, fenugreeke, carawayfeede, annisefeede, comin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moyst, dipped in wine and oyle. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you must go about, that they may be kept vp still, with conuenient trusses and bandes: applying to it first, restrictive or glutinative cerates, or emplasters, as this is. *R.* ship pitch, masticke. ana. *℥. iij.* frankensence. *℥. ij.* *hypocistis*, *sarcocoll*, *acatia*. ana. *℥. j.* *℞.* *lapu hematitis*, dragons bloud. ana. *℥. iij.* *bolcarmoniacke*, rootes of comfory, galles, pomegranate rindes. ana. *℥. iij.* misle of the oake. *℥. j.* *℞.* of either *Arisolochia*. *℥. ij.* *sumache*, pomegranate floures. ana. *℥. j.* goates tallow. *℥. ij.* turpentine and waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolve the gummes first in vineger or wine, and make a cerate, and put it in a weathers skinne, and apply it binding it fast, and doe not loose it before the seuenth day. Also in the meane season let the sickie tarie thirtie daies in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loud and such other like. And in the meane season let him drinke this decoction. *R.* both the kinds of *sanicula*, of *solidago saracenic*, or *consolida saracenic*, *ophio glossum*, pedelion, agrimonie, *numularia*. ana. *M. j.* knotgrasse, *clenatis daphnoides*, great plantaine, burnet. ana. *M. ℞.* roote of comferie, hounds tong. ana. *℥. ℞.* roote of the sixth kind of *geranium*. *℥. vj.* seede of mirtles. *℥. iij.* pomegranate floures. *℥. ij.* leaues of laurell. *℥. i.* *℞.* boile these in red wine and water of iust quantitie till the third part be consumed. Then straine it & by putting to it sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweete, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister dayly in the morning. *℥. iij.* Also you must take

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

Diet.

A glutinative decoction.
Prunella.

take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costive: for if he be constrained to labour much, when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe: Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as be admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of moving requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicines, as do heate and drie vp, as be beane meale, laurell berries, linseed, daucus, althaea, yggella, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the drop sic *Asteites*, and other drop sies. To conclude: as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by surgerie, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta*, libro sexto, chapter 62. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treat therof in these bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a watery rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of menstruis.

DE SUPPRESSIS MENSIBVS.

THE menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped you shall knowe it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body, nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the fourteenth yeare, & in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth for two or three daies, to many fife daies, in some it endureth vnto the seuen day. The menstruis also do stoppe in some the fiftie yeare, or the fiftie fife yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtie yeare, but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for what soeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperatüre, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out litle or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouer much grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without blood, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that litle blood which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But they that are leane & slender which be wasted with some continuall sicknesse, they haue no superfluous blood in them. Moreouer the menstruis doe not flowe in them, whose blood is either grosse or clammy, or if it be sent to some other part of the bodie, and purged out, as for example, if it goe out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much blood from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much blood hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings, fluxes of the bellie, and all kindes of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis are withholden through great and sharpe sicknesses, & through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of lile foode, that litle doth expire and breath out streight, and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion

Cause.
In whom the floures are naturally stopped.

In whom the floures are stopped against nature.

and voyding out of the menstruis is preuented and letted. And for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole bodie being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withholden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chaunceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distempure of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted thorough hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrecence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinned ingender about the necke or entrie of the matrice. To other some the scarres of vlcers, which haue beene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vessels, which caried blood into the wombe. To some after the aborsion of the wombe, (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of blood. Moreouer stubburne carefullnesse, immoderate feare and great sorrow do stop the menstruis. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomit, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceiued. Moreouer there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the forepart of the head. Also there follow continuall feauers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atters, and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately bene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly or else it is stopped altogether. The diuersitie of causes is knowen partly by the dispositiō of the whole bodie, and partly also and for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distempure in themselves, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepeie and slower to all kind of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer their vrine is waterie & such like signes appeare, which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distempure are cleane contrarie to these signes of a cold distempure before rehearsed. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont specially to be these: that womē, that are vexed therewith, are grieved most in the time of the menstruis, and they feelee vehement paine, about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp very great. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distempure of the liuer or wombe do stoppe the flowing of menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is, with meate and medicines that doe heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the bodie. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, peniroidall, time, calamiat, sothernewood, diptaine, root of yreis, *casia*, gladon, *asarum*, and faucine: of which you may make decoctions and fomentes. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Also the meet & conuenient times to take these

Signa.

Cold distemper

*Hot distemper
Plenitudo.*

*Curatio.
Cure of a cold
distemper.*

medi-

medicines be, first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annoynting, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and effectually. Women that be too hote and vse much exercise haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safeguard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not neede to be purged: but this were against conception: for they doe not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscete dyet, purgations be necessaie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis, that are stopped thorough hote distempere, may be brought out. Women therefore, that be hote, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moyster by moyst meates and drinks taken in good quantitie, as be souplings of ptysans, and of *Alia*, and meates that are made of lambes flesh, kiddes flesh, and fishes that be tender, birdes of mountaines, & milke. Let their pot herbes be lettuce and gourdies, & their frute, new figges. They must vse white wine, that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good, and to conclude, the diet ascribed to them that haue the feauer Ethicke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be withholden and stopped by reason of the fulnes that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of blood. And you must cut the veines of the ankles or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legges. The blood being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annoyntings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but only grosse and flegmaticke humours do stop the flowing of the menstruis: First you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and prepareate them, and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction *Rx*. the roots of gladdon, *yreas*, parsley and *Sperage*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of the seedes of *apium*, fennell, *bruscus*, annise, *dancus*, ammi, and nettles. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. calamint, wormwood ana. *M.ß* origan, sothernwood, mugwort, peniroidall, *asarum*. ana. *M.j*. hysope. *M.j.ß*. chosen cinnamon. \mathfrak{z} .j. seeth all these in a conuenient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then streine it and make the licour of that decoction sweete with sugar, & clarifie it with the white of an egge, putting into it of the sirups of calamint, of hysope, and of horehound. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. *ß*. & make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning the weight of \mathfrak{z} iij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *hierapiera*, *diaphanicon*, and *clethuarium nidum*, pilles of agaricke, of *benedicta*, or such like. After purging the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather partes, and specially walkings. Moreouer apply fomentations, and bathings made of camomill, motherwort, mintes, and other things rehearsed in the decoction above said. Also annoynt the patient with this oyntment. *Rx*. of the oyles of lilies, and reu. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. motherwort with the thinne leaues, peniroidall, calamint. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. root of *yreas*. \mathfrak{z} .ij. hysope, origan. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. with wax as much as is suffi-

*Cure of hote
distemper.*

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercise.

Foments.

Unguentum.

To prouoke
menstruū.

A notable me-
dicine.

Pessus.

Alim.

Suffitus.

Cure of fat
women.

Cure of leane
women.

Cure if it be of
vice of the
wombe.

cient, make an ointment. After this, for the cause abovesaid, minister medicines, which can straight way prouoke and bring forth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: mirrhe, *castoreum*, laurell berries, madder, pepper, sage, rew, saucine, *casta*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good. R. *castoreum*, ℥j. wild mintes beaten into pouder, ℥. ss. old wine, or *mulsa* ℥ iiii. commix them together, and minister it hote after a bath. Also the decoction of peniroidall, mugwort, rew, comin, *daucus*, sage, dill, *ammeos*, fennell, *enula campana*, and such like are good. Also calamint beaten into pouder, the weight of ℥. ij. or saucine, the weight of ℥. j. drunke in wine or *mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer trochiskes of mirrhe do maruellously profit. Also wine wherein wormewood hath bene infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is. R. of *Tripthera magna*, that is without opinion, ℥. j. of the meale of *ernum*, *nigella*, mather, mugwort, peniroidall, ana. ℥. j. ss. iuice of rew, ℥. ij. commixe them together & make a pessarie, and put it in with wooll or cotten. Or this pessarie. R. mirrhe, *bdellium*, storax, ana. ℥. j. calamint, sothernwood, and wormewood, ana. ℥. j. ss. roots of gladen and mather, ana. ℥. j. seede of *nigella*, drie rew, laurell berries, ana. ℥. ij. saucine, ℥. j. *castoreum*, ℥. ss. beate all these to fine pouder, and commix them with hony or *Tripthera*, or *mithridatum*, and make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hote oyles, as is oiles of yreos, lillies, laurell and such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of storax, *galbanum*, frankensence, *bdellium*, the roote of *Aristolochia*, mugwort, cloues, cinnamon and such like. Examples whereof you shall find in our booke of making of medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated, and fomented with odoriferous things, as with marioram, saurie, calamint, cammomill, peniroidall, mugwort, root of yreos, and such like sodden in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherein you must put a reed or some other pipe, and you must annoynt it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profit, if the woman sit in this decoction vp to the nauell, and after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, and with swift exercises, and with other medicines which can make the bodie slender and leane: as be continuall deiection and solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate and breath out, and such like, which be abundantly intréated of by Galen Lib. 14. Ther. meth. Cap. 15. & lib. 6. de uenda sanitate. Those which are not purged of their menstruis, through leanenesse of the body, whether it chance through sicknesse, or any other meanes, you must first recreate, and refresh them, and restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient dyet, and by other medicines, which Galen rehearsed in the places aforesaid. And if they waxe fleshie, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord, which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, fomentes, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis doe not flowe, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the euill, that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: & after that, we must proceede to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the

disease

disease of the wombe, must be sought out of their proper places.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of menstruis.

DE REDVNDANTIBVS MENSIBVS.

VVE say, that menstruis doe redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plentie of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most women they flow two or three daies, to many five daies, and to some seuen daies. The menstruis doe chaunce to flow out of measure, through great or small vessels opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations doe engender in women, sometime through grievous trauaile in childbirth, which also do cease oftentimes of themselves. Oftentimes after abortion, they labour of a vehement abortion, & fluxe of menstruis, & sometime it bringeth the into a dangerous perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the blood floweth out gushing on heapes: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle and litle, and not in great quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle and litle, but also it floweth with very great paine. Moreover when the menstruis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthy colour, the feete are puffed vp with a light swelling, the strength of the body is decayed, both the digestion and appetite of meat is corrupted: and in all points such signes, as are wont to follow immoderate voyding of blood, either by the hemorrhoides, or by any other fluxe of blood doe follow in this disease. First therefore in the beginning of the cure, you must bind the places betwene the ioints, and the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armes and the shaires. Also you must fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder the paps, as Hippocrates teacheth. 5. Aphor. 50. Also they must vse meates and drinckes, that be sharpe and restrictiue, as is rice and such like: and let the sick rather eate roasted meates, then sodden: and specially such flesh, as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birdes that liue in mountaines, and wilde beastes. They must abstaine from mouing, and winde, and in steed of it they must vse some restrictiue potion, or *posca*, not cold but warme. Moreover you must minister restrictiue medicines in drinke, as these simples be following. R. pomegranate floures, *hypocistis*, *acatia*, corall, *Lycium*, *terra lemnia*, galles, knotgrasse, both the *Consolidae*, the stone *hematites*, shels of mast, plantaine, barberies and such like. Compound medicines be these following, as syrups of roses, mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, and of *terra lemnia*. Also these pilles following are marvellous good to stop and restraints the menstruis. R. *terra lemnia*, bole armoniack, frankensence, masticke, galles. ana. ℥ij. dragons blood, the stone *hematites*. ana. ℥j. harts tongue burnt. ʒ. j. *hypocistis*, *acatia*, red corall. ana. ʒ. ss. pomegranate floures, red roses. ana. ℥ij. Ambre. ℥j. comix them with syrup of mirtles, and make pilles whereof minister the weight of one drachme or ʒ. ss. Also foment the place outwardly, with the oiles of roses, mirtles, quinces, and sharpe wine. And apply oynments, emplasters, and cerates and restrictiue Epithemes, whereof you shall find many before in the chapters of the fluxes, *Dysenteria*, *Diarrhea*, and *Lienteria*. Also incisions made of the decoctions of the

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

To restrain
menstruis.

Cataplasma.

Infusio.

aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines, as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuice of plantine is maruellously commended, wherewith Galen sayth, in foure dayes, he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuices of knotgrasse, or nightshade, or *hypocistis*, or *acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of Pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praysed. *R.* of frankensence, pomegranate floures, and galles. ana. *℥.j.* of gumme arabicke, *acatia*, ambre, harts horne burnt, ana. *℥.ij.* bolearmoniacke. *℥.ij.* beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oile of roses, and put it into the wombe.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

DE FLVORE MVLIBRI.

VTERI *fluor*, in Latin, *fluxe* of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body, purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour, as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or attre: some white, which commeth of fleume: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie which is, of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowen. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she saoureth no meat but abhorreth it, in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with exulceration or without it, and either with an inflammation, that is with the vlcer, or else it is filthy or pure. The diuersitie of causes you may knowe by the colour of that that floweth forth as is aforesaide. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of bloud. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first goe about to repress and stop the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomach, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud letting, as you doe in them, that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a litle. You must cut a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bandes, and you must vse and apply all such things, as can turne the fluxe of the humour another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thicknesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vex a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humors may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also, it is not against reason, seeing that, that which is flowed out, is ingendred of fleume, if you doe minister a medicine

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Restrictio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and attre.

to her, which doth purge fleume. And you must minister, and apply to the whole bodie, medicines and remedies which doe drie vp, seeing that the disease it selfe is moyst. Therefore exercises specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birdes of the mountaines, and wilde beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred, as doe extenuate grosse humors, and after that doe bring them out with the vrine, as be *asarum*, *fennell*, *apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be oyles of roses and quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse absterfue and scouring medicines, least that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and clesing of the filth, you must annoint oyle of roses, or of quinces, or of mirtles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that pugeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting absterfue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall neede, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceaseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the bellie and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heat, and from such things as doe prouoke vrine.

*Cure of a pale
and cholericke
fluxe.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of strangling of the wombe.

DE VTERI SVFFOCATIONE.

SVFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe, is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnes, that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe, when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to an other place like a wandring beast, but is drawn backe through the extention. Also it chaunceth oftentimes, through the seede that is restrained. Also many times it chaunceth through cold, which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard aborsion, or when as any hath hastened to stoppe sodainely a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slownesse, weaknesse of the legges, palenesse of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voyce doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawn vp together. The pulles are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrilles, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries, doth remaine still. When the euill doth cease, the bals of the cheekes begin to waxe

Cause.

Signa.

red, and the eies be lifted vp and opened: Also a certain humidity and moistnesse, that one may by feeling perceiue to ruane out of the wombe of women, and the bowels doe make a noyse: and also the wombe it selfe is a litle loosened, and so their mind, senses, and mouing commeth to them againe. This disease commeth by courses at certaine times as the falling sicknesse doth, and that chaunceth when the matrice (as is aforesaid) is filled with seede, or with some other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it selfe is diseased with the quantity & qualitie of any thing, then menstruis, or seede, or other kind of *symptomates* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body, do cause this disease, the body is so vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating, cannot be perceiued by the senses. Which humour, if it be either grosse or sharpe, it causeth conuulsions and cramps: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it causeth sorrow and sadnesse, and defectiō of the mind, refrigeration, and paine of the stomach. This kind of disease ingendreth in all seasons, but specially in winter and autumn: and most commonly yong folke, and such as be prone to lecherie, & barren, specially if they be made so by medicines be most taken with this disease. Many doe recouer from this disease, and many againe doe perish sodainely in the very fit, or at the least way within few houres after. That chaunceth, when the pulses be swift and inordinate, and then do leaue off & vanish cleane away. At the last a cold humour in litle quantitie doth bedew and moisture the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you must bind the extreme parts, and besides the bindings, you must rubbe the legs, and all the whole bodie, and doe euen as you would recouer one that is sounded. And you must place the sick with her necke and shoulders, bending, and rising vpward, and with her thighes & share leaning downward. You must apply to her nostrilles, stincking things, as the snuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers specially of partriches burat, or wooll burnt, or soales of shoes, or shales of garlick, or onions: also haire burnt, and specially if they be the haire of the sick, or gores horne burnt. Also pitch melted vpon the coales, *galbanum* or *castoreum*, or such like. Also you may hold a chamber vessell with old vrine to their nose, or old linnen clothes dipped in brimstone and burned. And you must perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things, as be storax, wood of *Aloes*, cinnamon, cloues, and such like. And it is good to fasten cupping glasses with much flame, and lightly to the partes aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As soone as the fit doth come, you must apply fomentes, and litle bagges warmed, to the bottome of the belly and share, for you shall scarcely finde a more present remedie in the coming of the fit of this disease. And you shall make them of both the motherworts, & with origan, betony, cammomill, calamint, wormewood, pennyroyall, linscede, louage seede and such like. And if the fit be prolonged, you must also adde to, such things as are good to dissolue and bring out windinesse: whereof you shall find example and names out of the Chapters of windinesse of the stomach, and paine of the cholike. Also then, you must poure into the wombe, both oyntments & oiles, that be very odoriferous, as is, oiles of spike, and *grees*, and such like. Also let a midwife dippe her fingers in these oyles, and then put the into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it, long & easilie, that the

Curatio.
How to doe
in fit.

Saculi.

rough

through that prouoking, the grosse and clammy humor may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, & call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause sneezing, as be pepper, *castoreum*, *struthium*, & such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse incessions made of the decoction of laurell berries, & leaues, peniroyall, calamint, motherwort, horehound, saucine, *althea*, cammomill, *serpillum*, *yeos*, *aristolochia*, and fenugreeke. But in the time of the incessions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of roses and vinegre. But I iudge, that you must rather vse foments and litle bagges, then incessions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldest neuer so faine, thou canst not vse incessions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceased, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomits doe lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must apply cupping glasses with scarification to the loines, & the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *hiera colocynthide*, or pilles of agarick, & by & by come to the drinking of *castoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient straight way from this euill. Also you must minister euerie day therof, \mathfrak{z} . j. sometime with *mulsa*, sometime with the decoction of motherwort, and sometime minister it with thinne wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in the time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse incessions and pessaries that do mollifie made of goose grease, *storax*, mastike, gumme armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heate, and haue vertue to bring out wind. Therfore vse this perfume specially. \mathfrak{R} . of the Trochiskes of *gallia* and *alipta moschana*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *storax*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. cloues, maces, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. wood of aloes, \mathfrak{z} . ij. cinnamon chosen, leaues of laurell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . beat them into powder, and commix them with *storax liquida*, and make trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be content with a verie litle meate & drinke, and let all her diet be exciccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must beginne oftentimes with bloud letting, specially if the menstruis haue bene stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *hierapiera*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, salt, then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply verie well *Synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, pellitorie, pepper, and mustard seede. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as deambulations in the morning, gestations, and caryings in a cart or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carying about, crying out loud, distinct and apt reading is conuenient. Also anointing and frictions vsed now & then are good. Bathes of sweete water are seeldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is verie good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this, as it were the verie last refuge. Aboue others those bathes are good which be in *Badenia* in the base Germanie in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe and at

what must be
done straight
after the fit.

Trochiskes of
perfumes.

Diet.
Cure of the
whole bodie.

Diet.

Buxtons in Darbeshire, and there is a bath neere Newmarket in Suffolke at a towne called Exning, they be all verie good, but if they goe to anie of these bathes they must take heede of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

DE VTERI. PROCIDENTIA.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

WE say, that the matrice falleth out, whe it is so turned downward, that it sticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rowleth not downe, being loosened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwise folke do thinke, for if it should fall downe so, it could not be restored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but seeldome, yet there be many causes of the falling out of it. For a woman falling from a high place, if she fall on her haunches, the pannicles & filmes, that hold vp the wombe, & the members adioyning doe breake & cause this disease. Also it chaunceth many times that in a sore trauaile of child birth, the wombe falleth out because of the drawing out of the secundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Also many times it chaunceth through negligent & vnskillfull drawing out of the child, specially if it be dead. Moreouer it chaunceth sometimes through a stripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or coming of enemies, or through perilous sailing, or through some such like cause, all the body being loosened, the wombe falleth out. Also sometime this euill chaunceth (all the whole being loosened) through resolution or weaknes of the pannicles & muscles, which thing chaunceth specially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie & clammye. It falleth out most commonly by the mouth of it, & that which falleth out, is like to the eggs of an Ostrich, differing only in that, that it is bigger, or lesse in quantitie. There is no neede of many signes, because the diuersitie of causes may partly be knowne by the constitution & state of the bodie, & partly also by the telling of the sicke, & them that be with them daily: when this disease is but newly begun, you must endeavour to put vp the wombe againe, & to restore him into his owne place, for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarie so still, specially if age agree vnto it. For in them that are well stricken in age, the womb being put againe, it slideth out againe through euery light cause. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clyster. Likewise if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on each side. For otherwise it chaunceth by their stretching out, that the matrice, which is in the midst betwene them is pressed together, & pent in a strait place, and so when he is fallen out, they let it and stop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you must lay the sicke vpright so that her haunches may lie highest, her hammes bowed, & her legs spread abroad: then you must bath and nourish abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme oile or butter, or mallowes foddin, or with the decoction of *aliban*, *fenugrecke*, *linefeede*, or such like: and you must prepare

wood

wooll together on a heape, in figure and thicknesse, according to the proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *hypocistis* infused in wine, and put it into the wombe, & you shall wrest & writh vpward all that which is fallen down by litle and litle, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you must couer the parts about the priuie members with a sponge wrong out of *Pescæ*. The woman shall lie with her legges stretched out & ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more safeguard to binde the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be swollen thorough continuance of time, and be stuffed vp with plentie of humours, so that the swelling do let the putting vp of it, you shall norish it with decoction of beetes and then you must cense it and wash it with vineger, & strew in it, salt finely powdered, & when it leaueth swelling, then put it vp as is aforesaid. Then fasten cupping glasses with much flame to the nauell, & both the ilions or small guts: and apply continually to the nose odoriferous things. The third day (the wooll being as yet still in the wombe) let the woman sit in blacke soure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of mirtles, bramble leaues, pomegranate rinds & such like. This being done let her lie vpright again with her haunches highest, then take the former wooll out, and put in such another in the stead of the first, dipped in the same medicine. Also apply cataplasmes & emplasters outwardly to the bottom of the belly, made of dates, pomegranate rindes, lentils and such like. Also Cerotes that are made of mastick, wood of aloes, *lapdanum*, frankensence, squinant, *acorus*, nutmegs, gumme *traganthe*, and such like, are good to be applied. But let these things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Also during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eschew mouing, & such things as prouoke sneezing. And the womb must be perfumed beneth with stinking things, but to the nose you must apply most odoriferous things, for because the matrice flieth from stinking things, and it followeth & embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be such as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Also the belly must be made soft & soluble, least if she shold go to the stoole difficultly, the matrice shoud also fall out again. But yet you must take good heed, that the belly be not too much loosened, for then the parts adioyning are loosened, & so the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer if that part of the womb which is fallen out, hath thorough continuance of time by negligence bin putrified & rotten, & through continual wetting of it with vrine, & filthinesse sticking in it, it be exulcerated: you must cut off and seare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bene knowen (as *Paulus* testifieth) that the whole matrice, because it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued still.

Victuratio.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the mole of the matrice.

DE MOLA.

MOLA in Latine is called of *Ætius* & *Paulus*, a swelling that is hardened, sometime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & sometime it sticketh out in all the matrice, & in feeling it is almost like a stone. Galen in li. 14. *ther. met.*

*Causa.**Signa.**Curatio.**Vnguentum.**Pessus.**Morsili.**Pessus.*

defineth *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seede, and much menstruous blood flowing into the matrice, and there kept, retayned and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne together, and changeth it into the forme and fashon of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, tendernes of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppression of the menstruis. Also in this euill the pappes do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with childe, but in proceesse of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceived in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspicion of the dropisie, but yet there is a difference betwene the two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the dropisie doth, nor maketh a noise as the tympanic doth. But yet often in proceesse of time, the liuer is cooled and the dropisie ingendred. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the beginning. But howsoeuer it chaunceth, the cure may not be neglected but you must applie and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you must giue her meates that ingender good iuice, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that will cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and caryings, and deambulations and bathes, and in her lying let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine of the arme, and then you must purge her by *pilule fetide*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, applie cataplasms, fomentes, iniections, pessaries, ointments and cerotes, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althea*, mallowes, cammomill, melleot, fenugreeke, linseed, and such like. For this purpose also it is good to apply *vnguentum dialthea* or *emplastrum diachylon simplex*, or applie this ointment. R. of the oile of sweete almonds. ʒ. iij. oile of lillies. ʒ. ij. ʒ. goose greace and hens greace. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. musculage of linseed and fenugreeke. ana. ʒ. j. of the gummes *ammoniacum*, & *bdellium*. ana. ʒ. ii. roote of *althea*, *nigella* seedes, and *daucus*. ana. ʒ. ii. dissolue the gummes in wine, and with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must put in Pessaries made with butter, swines greace, hartes marrow, reisons, fat figs, linseed and fenugreeke. After this you must minister such medicines, as can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that we rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good. R. the powders of *diacinnamomum*, *diagalanga*, *diacuminum*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. powder of diambler. ʒ. j. powder of *diakacha*. ʒ. ʒ. Cinnamon chosen, S. Iohns wort, *calamus aromaticus*, *asarum*, roote of gladon, anise seede. ana. ʒ. j. seede of rew, ginger, motherwort, horehound, *distemus*, sage, ana. ʒ. ʒ. suger dissolved in the waters of motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient, and make lozenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three. ʒ. Also it is good to put in this pessarie. R. of the roote of *asarum*, gladon, and madder. ana. ʒ. ij. seede of rew, *nigella*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. maioram, nutmugs, cloues, laurell berries. ana. ʒ. j. faucine. ʒ. j. *castoreum*, *caphorbium*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. powder them and scarce them that haue neede, & with turpentine make a Pessarie. To conclude, you must

must vse medicins that can dissolue and loosen congealed bloud: for so there will follow excretion, and voiding out of much blacke bloud and clodded. Also it profiteth maruellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselves, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearsed in Chapters of the Dropsie, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

DE INFLAMMATIONE VTERI.

THE wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe or retention, and stopping of mensstruis: also by abortion, exulceration, vniuersi-
Cause.
 rable lecherie, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also oftentimes it chaunceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the share, the loines, &
Signa.
 the rootes of the eies: Conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the neck, and declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomacke, & shutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulses that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesaid signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe wilbe vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loines most, and hard dung is withholden and stopped, because then the right gut is pressed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the strangurie or difficultie in pissing is engendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the partes about the priuie members are stretched out, and the legges are griued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the
Abdomen, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor state of the bodie, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the hams or of the ankles, (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voiding of bloud.) Afterward you shall place the sicke in a darke house, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rub the space betweene the ioints, and also the extreame parts, that you may turne away the course of the flux from the wombe. For her meate, which must be litle in quantitie, you must vse prisane broth and rere egges: but there must be a day betweene: she must abstaine from drinking of wine, and for that, she must vse the decoction of cinamon, or hore water. Also the bellie if it be not soluble inough of it selfe, must be washed & emptied by easie and mollifying clysters. Outwardly you must apply vpon the loynes, and about the share, wooll wet in vineger, wherein roses haue bin sodden. Also
Locatia.

dates or quinces sodden in wine, and commixed with oile of roses, is good to be applyed. Also you must apply cataplasmes made with the meale of linseed, fenugreeke, and with melilot, plantain, lintels, knotgrasse, purslaine, singreene, and such like: and that specially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *erysipela*. Moreouer you must put into the matrice, wooll moistened with oyle of roses, or quinces, or in the iuyce of purslaine, or singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and cease, you must come to the vsing of those things which haue vertue to release, dissolue and discusse. Therefore you shall bid the patient sit vp to the loynes in fenugreeke sodden, or in the decoction of *althea*, linseed, mallowes, and sometime also motherwort, horehound and sage. Also you shall annoint about the priuities, and the loynes, barley meale with fenugreeke and linseed sodden in *mulsa*, or the decoction of drie figges. Also put in pestaries made of butter, harts-marrow, goose greace, hens greace, and such like. When the cure hath proceeded, sundrie meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifest, bring the sicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windinesse in the wombe.

DE INFATIONE VTERI.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

THE wombe is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it or through abortion, or sore trauel in childbirth, the dore of it being shut, or a clod of bloud being in it and stopping it. Oftentimes the windinesse ingendreth in the hollow bought and space of it, sometime in the bosome of it, which is euident to the senses, and sometime in the thinner parts of the substance of the wombe, not appearing to the senses. There followeth this euill, swelling of the bottome of the bellie, with hardnes & paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the stomach: and yet neuerthelesse it is stretched out on both sides, sometime to the share, and sometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom also the head agreeth. Also many times wind breaketh out of the priuities that the sicke may feelee it. If therefore windinesse be gathered in the hollownesse of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noise in the bodie, such as chaunceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: also if you beat your fingers on it, it maketh a noise like a timpanie. But when the windinesse is contained in the thinne and slender passages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured first if age, the region and time of the yeare do not let it, by bloudletting, fasting, and purging with *hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you must vse fomentes, and annointings with oile of rew, or with oyle wherein dill bath bene sodden. Also let her vse incessions made of the decoction of rewe, peniroyall, calamint, horehound, motherwort, *althea*, & such like. Also apply cataplasmes made of the seeds of *apium*, fenell, caraway, commin, louage, *daucus*, anise, fitches or darnell meale, and such like. Also you must powre into the wombe such things as haue power to loosen and dissolue windinesse: as is, oile of rew, *ammos*, origan, and the decoction of things before rehearsed. And if windinesse be included and stopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vsing of

of the aforesayd things, and specially incessions, let the midwife put her finger beeing first annointed into the womans priuities, and dissolve, and bring forth the clod easily and by litle and litle. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is. *R.* sothernwood, origan, & calamint. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seed of rutisan. \mathfrak{d} . ij. of centorie the lesse. \mathfrak{z} .j. Caraway seeds *Ceratum.*
ammi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *casta.* \mathfrak{d} .j. *bellium*, armoniacke, ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . oyle of rew and dill.
 ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. with wax and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and apply it to the wombe: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether, as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the top. Also, for her diet you must minister food that doth attenuate and dissolve windiness, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *chamson*, and *diacuminum*, and *diacalamintus*, and such like.

CHAP. LXI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

DE VTERI EXULCERATIONE.

TH^e matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the aggrieved part: and at certaine times stinking and arterie humours are sent out from the filthy vlcere. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore part of the head, of the great sinewes in the neck, and of the rootes of the eyes, is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers endes, and other tokens declared before in the chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vlcere may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *specillum oricularium*; but if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vlcere be inflamed, the humor is litle in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie with great paine. If the vlcere be foule & filthie, the humor cometh forth in more great abundance, & is matter with lesse gricfe. If the vlcere doth eate and feed, the humor is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcere is, enflamed, you must vse bloodletting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the bodie doth abound with vicious and corrupt humors. Also apply such medicines, as do repress & stop the flowing of humors, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuices of waters of purslaine, plantaine, *bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcere be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicins, as is, *peisan* with hony, *mulsa* with the decoction of the roote of *ireos*, *aristolochia*, wormwood or agrimonic: Those vlcers which do eate and feede, must be washed with mares milke, or Affes milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony, and roote of *ireos*. These

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Ceratum.

things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, cast the in with an instrument called *metrenchita*. Whe the vlcers be wel purged & cleansed, you must vse such things, as will close them vp: first gentle things: and then those that be of a more effect. The Cerate of *Etius* doth especially please me, which is this. *R.* of white waxe. *℥.ij.* of fine oyle of roses. *℥.iij.* & melt them together vpon the coales, and when it is cooled, then put it into a morter, & put therinto womans milke, or asses milke, or goats milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle, vntill it be white, then poure out the aforesaid milke, & put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about. *℥.j.* of saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of roses. *℥.ij.* the grease and marrow of a goose. ana. *℥.ss.* Also you may put to oile of quinces, in steed of oyle of roses. You must apply this Cerate to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by seeret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that facultie: as be, the decoction of pomegranate rinds, roses, quinces, bramble, mirtles, sumach, *acatia*, *hypochisis*, with restrictiue wine. To this place you may transerre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reynes, the bladder, and the yard.

C H A P. LXII.

Of Straitnesse of the matrice.

DE PHINOSI VERT.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

PHINOSI in Greek, *obturatio* or *coarctatio vteri*; in Latin, it is a stopping or straightening in the mouth or neck of the matrice, whereby those places are made so straight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seede: or if they do receaue it, they can not hold it, for because of their knobby hardnesse, it can not shut together. Sometime it receaueeth seede, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, & thereof is a child conceaued, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great straitnesse of the places, it can not be brought forth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations, that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and inceptions, that be of like power & vertue. Therefore you must apply foment made of the decoction of fenugreeke, and *hyssop*. Also you must vse pessaries, that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *aspum*, that is, oyle tried out of woll in sheeps flanks or necks, salt peter, and turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is mallowes, *althea nigella*, fenugreeke, linseeds, *ammoniac*, *bellium*, ozin, grease, and such like, of the which you may make cerats, emplasters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, & euaporations made of aromatike things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a drie sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you must put in another that is thicker. There

fore

For you must haue many and sundry drie sponges ready. Afterward you must annoint vpon the sponges that you will put in, some medicine made of alum, and *elaterium*, mixed with honic, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if, after the sponges be taken away, the place do not seem open and wide enough, and inflammation be present through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applyed, then annoint vpon the sponge, that you will put in this ointment. *R.* oyle of ieros. *℥*.j. of fine turpentine. *℥*.ij. of goose greace, *℥*.j. roote of ieros and frankensence. ana. *℥*.ss. wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oyle of roses or violets in stead of oyle of ieros. When the inflammation is ceased & the place is open, annoint vpon a sponge a cerat made of oyle of roses and goose greace, and vse that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle sounder: but yet you must alwaies put in sponges vntill the end of the cure, lest that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe.

Vnguentum

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrennesse.

DE STERILITATE REMOVENDA.

STERILITAS in Latin, barrennesse in English. It is caused of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part, when his seed is either hot, and as it were burned, or else cold, thinne, watery and feeble, as is the seede of old and feeble men: or when it is sent forth thicker then it ought to be: or because the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very short yard, so that they cannot cast their seed into the innermost place of the matrice, which also sometime chaunceth through much fatnesse: for fat men haue such great bellies, that they cannot cast the seed into the deepest partes of the bodie. Also women of their part cannot conceaue, that haue their matrice either hot & fiery, or cold and moist, or foule, filthy and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* saith *5. Apho. 62.*) the seed is corrupted or quenched in such. Also women that be very grosse & fat, do not conceaue (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. *5. Apho. 46.* Morouer women that be leane and slender do not conceaue, or if they do conceaue, they doe suffer abortion straightway, which also *Hippocrates* witnesseth. *5. Apho. 44.* Also some do not conceaue, because their wombe is weake, or streight, or short: or because the vessels of it be stopped or shut vp, or blinded and couered, by reason of a scarre, or because the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or because the mouth of the matrice is too streight or too wide open. Also vnwilling carnall copulation for the most part is vaine and barren: for loue causeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceaue often. Also age too great or too litle, doth let conception. Therefore you must separate them that be young from carnall copulation, so that the man may be 30. yeares old, and the woman 18. But specially an vncomely and foolish shape and forme of the womans body, doth giue an occasion to barrennes. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate stature and height of the bodie, breadth of the loines & the share, buttockes sticking out, a handsome and conuenient greatnesse of the belly, a straight breast and large pappes. The signes whereby the diuersitie of causes be knowne be these. The hote distemper of a man, is easily knowne by the abun-

Cause.

Signa.

Hot & Remper.

Cold tempera-
ture.

Cure of both to
man and wo-
man common.

Cure of a wo-
man full of
corrupt hu-
mors.

dance of haire, specially blacke haire vpon the genitalles, and the places ad-
ioyning, from about vnto the middle thighs. Also this distemperature is lasci-
uous and readie to carnall lust, but it is soone satiate and filled. A temperamēt
that is too cold, is declared by the parts being about the stones being bald and
withour haire. Also they that be of this temperatūre, be not desirous & prone to
carnall lust. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the rest of the bo-
die, and because few menstruis are sent out and that with paine, so that some-
time the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is sent out, is
blackish. Also there followeth this temperatūre, an instinctiō of tickling to
lecherie, and driness of the whole bodie. A temperatūre of the matrice, which
is cold, is knowne by suppression and stopping of the menstruis. Also they that
haue this temperament, do despise vse of carnall lust, and haue the mouth of
the matrice drawn together. If through too much moistnesse, barrennesse be
engendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with
moistnesse and the menstruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Driness
is knowne by the contrarie signes to moistnesse. The rest of the causes may be
knowne, partly by sight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about
her. For the cure comitonly to both, as well the man as the woman: it is con-
uenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate; and to keepe a
meane and measure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other
exercises. Men therefore that haue their seede corrupted through naughtie
and euill kind of dyer, if they vse a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their ge-
nitōrs will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her
selfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idlenesse doth
fill and stuffe the whole bodie with superfluous humours and excrements: but
great labour drieth vp the blood, and consumeth the menstruis. Let her vse
meates and drinks easie of digestion, and such as the stomack may well com-
prehend and consume. And you must specially obserue in their order of good
diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fat. For they that be fat, are
vnapt to procreate and beget children, because their genitōrs cannot touch
together, and also because they send out litle seed. Moreouer it is conuenient
that you giue vnto such as desire to get children, some accustomed and plea-
sant thing to eat or drinke before meate, which be most apt to prouoke carnal
lust, and to engender seed: as those be that do heate measurably, and puffe vp
with winde. Therefore wine in this case measurably drunke, is to be preferred
before water. For as the prouerbe is: *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus* (that is)
If you haue not bread and wine: carnall lust will coole and pine. For potherbs
they must vse rocket, *orminum*, it is an herbe like vnto horehound, *erisimo*, and
other such like which we haue rehearsed of them that cannot vse carnal copu-
lation. Rewe, calamint, and mintes must be eschued altogether: for calamint
and mints, although they engender much seed, yet, that which they engender,
is feeble and weake: but rewe doth altogether corrupt and destroy seed. If a
woman do not conceaue, through the vice & corruption of certaine humors,
it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, & to amend her with a good
diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heede as can
be to those things that chance to the matrice, and that their menstruis may
flow

flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgation of their mēstruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a measure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke and stir vp the purgation of the mēstruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, fennell, *apium*, louage, and such like, whereof you shall find plenty in the chapter of the stopping of the mēstruis. After the purging of the mēstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distēpure doth cause barrenesse, you must correct and amend it by fomentes, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heat: as those be that are made of motherwort, peniroyall, sage, rewe, annise seede, commin, gladdon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *Castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, commin, annise seed, and iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of mēstruis. You must amend & correct a hote distēpure of the matrice causing barrenesse, with such things as do coole and moisten: as these herbes be, lettuce, mallowes gourds, purslaine, and orach with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bath in sweet water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuice of nightshade mixed with oile of roses, which also being layd vpon wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceaue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier diet. Also they must exercise themselves much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the bodie. Also to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and sometime fasting, and you must dry them with scarcity of meat, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts roasted, and giue them pure wine, that is mightie to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictiue things to the matrice, as be, roses, leaues of brier, galles, *sumach*, mirtles, knotgrasse, pomegranat rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vnlesse the whole bodie be first purged. A dry matrice must be cured by the contrarie to that which is aforesaid, as with bathes of sweet water, annointings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse wine that is alayed, being not very olde. And if a womans conception be impeditied and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite diet, and meates that do engender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: and all other things which be rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of mēstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse here particularly. Also windinesse engēdred in the womb, doth let the fertilitie of conception, & causeth barrenesse. Such women therefore as haue this, must first be amēded with a straighter diet. Then you must minister both outwardly and inwardly to them, such medicins as can dissolue, disperse, and consume windinesse, as is, commin, rew, dill, seed of *apium* and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrenesse, you shall open it by casting in of odoriferous clisters, and by vsing of fomentes and incessions made of fenu greeke, line seed, mallowes, and such like rehearsed in

*Cure of a cold
temperature of
the wombe.*

*Cure of a hote
distēpure.*

*Cure of a moist
distēpure.*

*Cure of a drie
distēpure.*

*Cure of grosse
humours.*

*Cure of windi-
nesse.*

*Cure of a m-
atrice shut vp.*

Cure of an open
matrice.
Cure of a wri-
thed matrice.

the chapter of straightnesse of the wombe. And afterward you must proceed to stronger medicines, as motherwort, calamint, peniroyall, and marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vse a drying dyet, and drying fomentis. And it is good also to vse restrictive medicines, as be the decoction of galles, bramble roots, mirtles, and such like rehearsed before in the cure of a moist distemper. Last of all, if crookednesse of the matrice do cause barrennesse, you shall direct and make straight the matrice with mollifying fomentis: for fomentis can do that best: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying pessaries. But specially the decoction of pene-royall, and motherwort, and *castoreum* drunke with posca, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* saith, that then carnall lust vsed backward, is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures, onely by other chapters. For the particular cure of each cause, must be sought out of his proper chapter.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of sore trauaile in child-birth.

DE DIFFICULTATE PARTVS.

Difficilis par-
tū.

SO RE trauaile in child birth doth chaunce either through default of the parent, or of the childe, or of the secundine, or through some outward cause. Of the parent, if she be grosse and fat, faint harted, and vnskillful of pain, or if the whole matrice be small, or if there be inflammation of the whole womb, or of some part of it, or that it be vexed with some other diseases, or if she be naturally weake, so that she cannot driue out the childe: or if that she do labor before her time. Also if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be some peece of flesh ingendred there, by reason of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the childe is, if it be of an vnaccustomed greatnes, or small and of a litle weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monstrous, as hauing two heades, or three feete, or if it be dead, and so doth not labour to come forth, or if it swell, or being aliue, if it be weake, so that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or mo, & do all rush suddenly together into the neck of the matrice, or if the childe be fashioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a childe comming forth is, first with his head, (his hands being stretched out vpon the thighes) & with his head declining to the nether parts, but straightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the best form in coming forth, next vnto this, is, first with his feete, hauing the hands stretched vpon both thighes, and so descending straight vp. All other formes in comming forth, except these two, are contrarie and abhorring to nature. The trauaile is made difficile through the Secundine: if it be not pulled away, because of the grosse-nesse or thicknes of it, or if it break before it should do because of the thinnes of it. For then, the humor that is gathered together in the matrice, is sent out before the conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moisture, & be drie at the time of the trauaile, when moistnesse were necessary, which should make a slipperie, and easie going out of the childe, and so through driness the child slideth out hardly. Also difficultie in child-birth is engendred of outward causes: as of colde, which thickneth the matrice, and maketh the passages straighter, or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the

Signa.

strength.

strength. But outward causes are known by the telling of the patient, or of *Signa.*
 them that sit by her. Weaknesse of the woman that laboureth, as fatnesse, may
 be known by the state of the body. Also by diseases, that she hath had before,
 you may readily come to the knowledge of weaknesse, and of manie other e-
 uils. Weaknesse of the child is known by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which
 if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the belly, and great paine
 about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, & a naughrie colour
 of the face. Greatnesse of the child may be coniectured by the constitution of
 the parents bodie, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenes & thick-
 nesse of the secundine may be gathered & known thus: if none of the afore-
 said signes be present, and the woman strong & lustie, and the child moueth
 quickly & easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of cau-
 ses. Therefore you must place a fat woman downwarde in a litle bed, that is, *Cure of a fat*
 hanging downward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bend- *woman.*
 ing and enclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the
Abdomen, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint
 the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, ducks greace, hens greace, and
 such like, and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by little and litle.
 You must comfort and encourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskilfull *Cure of a fear-*
 of paines in trauaile, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and *full woman.*
 let her thrust it out to the ilions with al her might. If sore trauell in childbirth
 be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or, as it were, a darcti-
 tion & penning in of the child, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing,
 by pouring in largely sweete wine & hoat. Also the decoction of fenugrecke,
 or mallowes, or linseedes, or also eggs are good, because they are of a losening
 and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the partes about the priuy
 members, and the belly and loines with the aforesaid decoction, or with some
 other losening and mollifying medicine. Also it profiteth to vse hoat inces-
 sions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house enclining to heate.
 Also it is good to vse infusions and annointings, with oiles that be hote in tou-
 ching and vertue, and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a fe-
 uer, nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, &
 you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely
 hote. Many doe vse to such violent shaking of the bodie. And if any woman be
 weake, and haue sore trauaile in childbirth through resolution of the bodie,
 you must comfort and refresh the bodie, with medicines that do thicken, and
 drawe together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore, &
 adde strength to the bodie: as be incessions & sprincklings with mirtles, vine
 leaues, pomegranates, roses, smelling to vineger, and annointings with wine
 mixt with cold oile of roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie
 those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the
 matrice. If sore trauaile do chaunce through an innaturall forme of the child
 in comming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as
 much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly
 by turning, and partly by making it straight. And if the head or foote, be sent
 out first, you may not draw out the child taking hold by that member: but put

your fingers to the shoulders or haunches of the child, & thrust vp that againe which is come forth into the conuenient place, if there be two or three, or mo children, & do thrust altogether into the necke of the matrice, you must driue backe the rest into the bottome of the womb, & bring that out first, which seemeth to be most ready: but if it do not come forth, because the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through some other cause, you must come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting which is taught abundantly of *Ætius*, li. 16. cap. 23. and of *Paulus* lib. 6. cap. 74. For it is not our purpose to teach handie cure here. Moreouer if the tunicle or secundine of the childe be thicker and stronger, then that it may be broken, you must cut it. Those that haue the humour, which is contained in the tunicles or secundine, flowing & running out before the conuenient time, so that the places be dried vp, you shall wash it all about with whites of eggs, with the decoction of mallowes, & fenugreeke strained, or with iuyce of Pisan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuersally helpe all that haue fore trauellin child birth, is this that followeth. *R.* Cinnamon chosen. *ʒ. ij.* mirrhe, *casia lignea*, ana. *ʒ. j.* white amber. *ʒ. j. ʒ.* beate them together and make a fine powder, wherof minister in wine that is odoriferous, the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne, oftentimes it changeth that the secundine doth sticke fast in the wombe, which if it chanceth, then sometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, & sometime shut, and the secundine many times is still ioyned to the bottome of the wombe, & many times it is separate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, & the secundine which is left therin do cleaue to some part of the womb, being wound vp together like a ball, it may easily be drawn out. You must draw out the secundine with your left hand being warmed, & annointed with some fat thing, & put into the wombe. If the secundine be fastened & knit to the bottome of the wombe, you shall likewise put in your hande, warmed and annointed with greace, and take hold of the secundine & draw it out: but you may not draw it straight forth, least the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but softly & easily, first pulling it crooked, bringing it this way & that way: then after that, you may draw it somewhat harder, for by this meanes you shall loosen it from the fastening. But if the mouth of the matrice be shut, you shall vse perfusions, & with the fingers of your left hand you shall labour to open it easily, & to make it wider by litle & litle. Which if you cannot bring to passe, it is good to apply about the priuities, foment, perfusions & ointments that can mollifie, dissolve & release. If she be strong, you must put into her nostrils at that time also sneezing powder, made of *Castoreū*, pepper & such like. For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph.* 49. writeth thus, that the secundine may come out, giue her sneezing powder, and let her stop her nose & mouth. Also you must minister ynto her potions that can prouoke menstruis: which things aforesaid, you must do the first and second day. Moreouer she must vse suffumigations, seething in a pot, motherwort, *yreos*, saueine, peniroyall, calamint, *dilemnus* and such like. Then put the pot vnder a close chaire, vpon the which let the woman sit, being compassed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand and labour to pull out the secundine as is aforesaide, but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rent it, for

Pulvis optimus.

To draw out the secundine.

within

within a few daies after being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But because through the euill saour & smell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head and marreth the stomach. They that are troubled with this euill, must be continually perfumed. For which purpose these thinges are good: *Cardamones*, *bidellium*, with saueine, frankensence, *storax*, *lapdanum*, wood of *Aloe*, and such like. Also a perfuming with iuate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke mensruis, be good: as decoction of motherwort, and laurell berries, with *vinum mulsum*. Also make Pessaries of mirrhe and *Cyclamminum* commixed with oile.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

DE ISCHIADE.

ISCHIAS in Greek, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioint, which the Greekes doe call *Ischion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischias*, and they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The barbarous sort call this disease, *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sciatici*. It is caused through a grosse & flegmatike humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioint of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities & rawnesse, and vnmeasurable vsing of venerious acts do not a litle helpe the ingendering of a *Sciatica*. Also sometime swift deambulations & walkings, and suppression or stopping of the hemorrhides, & custome of vomiting being omitted, & purgation of mensruis, or also other familiar & accustomed emptyings being impeded & stopped, and neglecting of exercises. For each of these doe ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euil sometime paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, & specially of the loynes, sometime the beginning is in the huckle bone it selfe. Also sometime it chaunceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe only about the hammes: and to some about the ankles, but in some all the leg is equally vexed with paine. Also in many, there is paine about the priuy members, & then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in pissing; and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunches to the heeles suffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voiding & purging of the humor that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humors, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the bodie be stuffed with a flegmatike and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpose, you must minister Clysters often, made after this sort, or in like maner. R. of Centorie, sage, *Verbasculi odorati*, rewre, *chamapityos*. ana. *M. j.* rootes of gladen. *℥ j.* *stachados*. *℥ iij.* seedes of annise and fennell. ana. *℥ ij.* *ℓ.* agaricke of the best. *℥ ij.* roote of polipodie. *℥ v.* seeth these in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction. *℥ xij.* of *hierapicra*. *℥ ss.* of *electuarium nidum mairis*.

*Vomitus.**Cucurbita magna.**When sharp
medicines may
be used.**Simples.**Emplastrum.**Vnguentum.**Electuarium.*

℞.ij. of oile of lillies. ℞.ij. oile of rew. ℞.j. the yolkes of two egges, salt. ℞.j.℞. commixe them all and make a Clister. Also vomittings doth helpe them, that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward suddenly. Therefore you must prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterwarde you must minister vomitting medicines, beginning first with them that be easie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickened together, which can difficultly be dissolued and loosened, caused through Phisitons vsing sharpe medicines out of time, such be holpen by fastening on of a verie great cupping glasse with scarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vse such medicines as can repress and stoppe the fluxe. For seeing the disease is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, blood is expelled from the veines and muscles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is sent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this disease, there is neede of medicines that can mitigate and assuage which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as those things which doe coole, doe thrust the humours violently to the ankle bone: so those things that do vehemently heate, doe draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer you may not come to the vsing of sharpe medicines, till after blood letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man applie sharpe medicines to the diseased member, before the bodie be emptied or purged, he shall make the disease hard to cure, because of a multitude of humours so thickened there, that they cannot be dissolued. For besides other things, it is made grosse and viscous, and through the heate and driness of the sharpe medicines, it suffereth as it were roasting, or burning. First therefore you must irrigate and sprinkle the aggriued place with oile of rew. After you must apply more effectuous medicines, which doe heate and can draw humours from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum nulpinum*, oile of pepper, *oleum costium*, oile of iuniper, *vnguentum aragon*, *martiatum*, and *agrippa*. Also sage, rew, laurell leaues, elder, roore of wallwort, peniroidall, sauine, *opoponax*, *bdellium*, *ammoniacum* and such like. Of the which you may make foment, ointments, emplaisters and cerotes. But if the grieve be extremely painfull, then vse this, which followeth, for it is most excellent against this euill. ℞. rosen of the pine tree ℞.j.℞. *Galbanum*. ℞.v. melt them with a soft fire, and then streine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the powder of masticke. ℞.j. and then spread it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, and stricke it a good thicknes, and before you applie this plaister to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following. ℞. fresh hogs greace, ℞.j.℞. and take sowes or monkes peason in number twentie, and beate them both well in a mortar, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the place and the plaister, and warme the plaister against the fire, till it be soft, and lay it to the agreed place, and let it lie nine daies. If there be haire vpon the place, you must shauethem off first, and roule it well, least it slippeth away, then euery day, morning and euening at ech time, let the patient take. ℞.j. of this electuarie. ℞. of the rootes of *Acarus*, or *gladian*, being made cleane. ℞.j. stampe the very small, (as possible you may doe) then take of clarified honie. ℞.iij. and put in the rootes by litle and litle, euer stirring it, and when it is well sodden,

put

put into it of cinnamon. ℞. j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse, and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaisters, other nine dayes, vsing the same electuary, and procure vomit, as before, euery sixth or seuenth day, for that doth greatly reuert the humor. But in the beginning of the grieve, apply to the aggriued place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of iuniper, or sage, or elder leaues. Afterward, vse this oyntment. *Rx. of unguentum martiaton.* ℞. iij. oyle of yreos, and lillies. ana. ℞. ℞. iij. iuyce of rew, and *chame ptyos.* ana. ℞. ij. hony. ℞. j. sage, peniroyall, pepper. ana. ℞. ℞. pellitory, staueacre. ana. ℞. j. wax as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Also the vsing of this cerote profiteth. *Rx. oleum costinum, & vulpinum.* ana. ℞. ij. ℞. oyle of pepper. ℞. ℞. *opoponax, bdellium, storax.* ana. ℞. iij. roote of briony, salt peter, leaues of elder. ana. ℞. ij. *aristofolochia rotunda, rewe.* ana. ℞. j. ℞. *Euphorbium.* ℞. j. dissolue the gums in very sharpe vineger, and with turpentine & waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. And if the euill doe remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforesayd, which being done, you must come to the vsing of *Dropaces*, and *Synapismes*, and so to the vse of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the herbe called *Iberis*, is not the worst being new, digged vp in sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little olde swines greace, being layde and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shancke or leg. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applied, let it lie not past two houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be possible for the to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling with burning and rednesse, as a *Synapisme* is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath sweat a little, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring byting and gnawing with burning heat, then bring him out: from which alwayes almost (as *Aetius* witneseth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oyle with a very little wyne, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humor with a sharpe cloath, and couer the leg it selfe with very soft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath bene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chaunce any part, or remembrance of the euill to be left still, within a few daies after, you may vse againe the same remedy. And certaine dayes after, you may lay on the cerote, which is a litle before described. Moreover, among burning and blistering medicines, this is good. *Rx. Mel anacardinii,* leauen. ana. ℞. j. *cantharides*, (the wings cast away) ℞. ij. vineger, as much as is sufficient: and commixe them together. Or this is good. *Rx. Euphorbium,* salt peter. ana. ℞. ij. sope, quicke lime ana. ℞. j. *mel anacardinum*, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thickenesse of hony. Let his diet be such, that his meat may be meanelly thin, and easie of digestion. Let his exercise be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dauncings and running. It is good alwaies to haue the body soluble. And if the disease hath en-

*Aliud unguē-
tum.*

Ceratum.

Causicum.

Aliud.

Victu ratio.

dured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforefaide medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort, as *Paulus* teacheth in lib. 6. cap. 76. and *Aetius*, lib. 12. cap. 30.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the goate in the feete and ioyntes.

DE PODAGRA ET ARTHRITIDE.

*Podagra.
Arthritis.*

Causa.

Signa.

*Signes if blood
doe flow.*

PODAGRA & *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde. And therefore they differ not, but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakness of the ioyntes, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humor doe flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioyntes, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *articularis morbus*, the ioint sicknesse. Sometime, this euill doeth rushe in sodainely, being equally disperfed throughout all the ioyntes. But for the most part, the fluxe is wont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doeth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is griued, either through chafing of the shoe, or some such like thing. The gout taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, and also to the iointes of the huckle bones, and the thighs. Afterward to the handes, euery ioint particularly being griued. They that are taken extreemely with this disease, they haue paine in the backebone ioints, and in the ioints of the ribs, and cie lids, and to some paine in the throte also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is engendered of continuall crudities and drunkennes, and of imoderat vsing of lechery, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkings, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions & fluxes, and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde doe not onely engender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humors. Also many times the cholick being naughtely cured, is wont to be a cause, why the ioint sicknesse should follow. But, for the most part, a disposition to this kinde of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posterity. Also vniuersally aboundance of all raw humours is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and doe fasten them selues in the ioints, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is engendered of commixtion of humors. The outward causes may easily be knowen by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humors you shal know by the signes following. The humour of blood, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skin of the whole member that is griued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very colde, or very hotte, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the blood doth chaunce continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow, and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with blood, and

are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Also meats that engender good iuice, and nourish abundantly were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted is spring time. If the humour that floweth into the iointes, be cholerick, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skin. Sometime rednes is mixed with the yellow color, that is whe choler is comixed with blood. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like launcing. Also moistnes so dainely bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is eased with cooling medicines, and reioyceth, but with hotte things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometime also it is sharpe. There is wont to goe before this disease, great cares, and wrath watchings, & werines, and a diet, that was apt to engender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare, that is hore and dry, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioints be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderat. The colour of the member afflicted, is white. Old age is most afflicted with this humor, and a complexion cold and moist, and it changeth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idleness, rest, and a diet that engendreth flegmaticke humours. If it be salt fleume, greatich, and gnawing, or byring doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioints be of melancholy, which changeth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age, which doth most engender this flux, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and dry, and the time of the yeare, haruest, a countrey that is cold and dry, and like state of the aire, and a diet that engendreth melancholy. When the humour that floweth into the ioynts, is blood, by and by you must let blood, not once onely, but often taking it away by litle and litle: for if you doe omit blood letting, and doe vse repercussive medicines, you shall be an author of great euil. For the blood being driuen back from the vn-noble members, it rusheth vp to the principal members, and that be necessary to life. Therefore in fluxes of blood, letting of blood is very necessary, specially in them that abound with blood. You must cutte a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cutte a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the anckle, or the sole of the feete: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacy and strength. Then specially must blood letting be vsed, when this euill beginneth first to invade anie man. For they that be vexed often with this flux of blood, do feele more hurt, then helpe of blood letting, speciallie if their body be weake & cold. After blood letting, you must apply remedies to the agrieved member, which doe neither coole greatlie, least they should driue together, and thicken the humors, nor heat vehemently, lest they should draw mo humors vnto the diseased member. Therefore you must sprinckle the grieved place with old vineger, & oile of roses mixed together, specially if the cause of the paine do seeme to be deep within. For vineger of his owa proper thinnes, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of roses, which naturally can ease pains. But if the pain be aloft

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy fluxe.

Cure of blood letting.

Localia.

nigh the skinne, you shall helpe it greatly with oyle and wine, applying it in sommer warme, in winter hot. Afterward also you must vse cataplasmes, which can ease, and cease paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of offengreke, barley, beans, lupines, chammomil, and such like: and you must see that those things be cuer hot, which may well be, if they be continually changed, and couered ouer aloft with wooll. Also this medicine profiteth not a little. R. goates milke. \mathfrak{z} .v. the yolkes of two eggs, oyle of roses. \mathfrak{z} .j. saffron, \mathfrak{z} . β . crums of bread as much as is sufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplasme, stampe these, till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieved. Also you may make an emplaister or cerote of oyle of roses, vineger, rosen, waxe, galbanum, gum ammoniacke, frankensence, saffron, and such like. You must giue him meates, which doe extenuate, and that do nourish but little, as be pot herbes. Let him abstaine altogether from flesh, except it be birds of mountains. Let him vse fishes that breede in stony waters. Wine if the intemperaunce of the sicke may suffer it, must altogether be taken away: for it is almost the only reason, wherby health should follow: which, seeing among a thousand, scarce one doth obserue, it is not maruaile, though there be very few which be deliuered from this disease at these daies. In steed of wine let him vse water, wherein cinnamon, annise seedes, or such like hath bin sodden: or that drinke, which is called foolishly now adaies *ypocras*: the making wherof you may finde before in the chapter of the Palsey. Let the sicke diligently auoide fruite and carnall lust. Also he ought to haue a soluble belly alwayes, that can auoide out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, wash it with some easie clister. If through flowing of choller, the disease in the iointes be caused, then your labour must be to voide and purge out the humour that doth vex the patient, which you must doe, as well by vomiting, as by the belly downewarde. Therefore you must surely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full state of it, you must apply medicines that haue vertue to coole & reſtraine, as be those that are made of singreene, green roses, sharpe sorrell, nightshade, plantaine, and such like, often before rehearsed. In this kinde of fluxe, many times, because of the vehemency of the paine, you must vse such medicine, as can cause astonishment. For the which purpose, it is good to apply the medicine which we described before, of gotes milke, crummes of bread, saffron and yolks of egges, with the which, you must commixe poppy seeds. \mathfrak{z} .iij. or *opium*. \mathfrak{z} . β . or more, or lesse according to the paine. Also, for the same purpose, leaues of hemlocke and henbane do profit, being applyed and layd on. But, you must note, and take heede, that, when you be compelled to vse stupefactiue things in feruent and vehement paines, that afterward you doe recreate and nourish those members by such things, as doe heate. For vnlesse you doe so, you shall make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines, be origan, sauory, mustar seedes, pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but so, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you must minister in drinke those things, that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine.

Also

*Cataplasmata.**Vitius ratio.**Why few be cured of the goutte at these daies.**Cure of a cholerike fluxe.**Stupefactionis.**Note.*

Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are wont to doe good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially, if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnes encreaseth the flux. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Offruits, let them vse restrictiue apples & medlars, and other that do coole, and stop, or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether frō wine, as is aforesayd. They which are diseased through flowing of fleume, you must begin the cure of them with purging of fleume. The flegmaticke humour is auoided by vomiting, but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euil, is downeward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioyntes of the body. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleume, is to goe out by the guttes. For if it were drawn by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth peril. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be preparate, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many daies, for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon Hippocrates saith 7. Aphor. 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clisters and medicins that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and cease paine, and which can dissolue and dry moderately, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things, that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussiue thinges. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althea*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure, or barely meale applied to it. Also the roote of it sodden in *aquamulsa*, and stamped and applied is good. And this oyntment is good. R. of the oiles of laurell, and yreos, ana. ℥. j. old swines greace, butter, ana. ℥. iij. the marrow of a hart. ℥. ij. fine turpentine. ℥. v. *galbanum* dissolued in vinegar. ℥. j. Ilope, roote of *althea*, fenugreece seed. ana. ℥. ij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Moreouer let the meates that you giue to nourishe him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuice of rice, rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birdes of the mountaines, roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *acetum mulsam*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very little quantity, at certaine times, and let it be thin, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, they must be emptied either with bloudletting, or by purgation. Vse bloudletting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy. And vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholy: but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesayd things. But first, cutte a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also doe in other euils that haue neede of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must vse such things as can repress, stop, and also heate sensibly.

Diet.

Cure of a flegmaticke fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Vnguentum.

Vetus ratio.

Cure of a melancholy fluxe.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

*A defence for
the goute.*

After purging, vse those things that can gently heate, attenuate and dissolue or discusse, as is afore taught. But because knobbes and hard swellings do engender afterward in the ioynts, aswell because of the grossenesse, and earthy hardnes of the humor that hath flowed thither, and also through the vsing of immoderate discusseive and drying medicines, without mixing of such with them, as haue a mollifying vertue. Therefore to take those knobs away, you must vse those medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the spleene. But specially very old and sharpe cheese, braied in the decoction of very fatte and old swines flesh is good to be applied. Also, for this euill, figges brayd and laid on are good. Also *Althea*, twise sodden, oates, nerles, briony roote, round rootes, dill, sothernwood, mayweede, horehound leaues, mixed with pitch, sulphure and wine. Also you must commixe fat and greaces of swine, goates, calves, and geese. Also all marrowes & other things that haue vertue to mollifie and soften. And also bathings, after the inflammation is ceased, is most commodious, and profitable to all that haue the gout. While they wash them, put sponges wet in vineger & salt mixt together, round about the diseased places, that they may remaine safe from humours flowing to it. They must wash them selues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tary long in hotte water. It is best therefore that they be sprinkled and wet with hotte water, poured on them. Also it is profitable, that all the body be rubbed with dry linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the goute, shall defend themselves afterward from it, by this means: First, twise in a yeare, that is, at spring time and autumn, if nothing doe let it, let him bloud largely. Also about those times, and oftner, let him vse purging medicines. Also it is necessary for him to eate little meate, and to abstaine from fulnesse. Also you must vse meates that be easie of digestion, and which readily be distributed into the members of the body, and be without excrementes. Let him abstaine altogether from wine, or let him vse it very scarcely. Let him vse exercise very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* saith) must goe before meate. And to conclude, they that desire to be free from the goute, let them remember this short and most holesome precept of *Hippocrates*: the way to help and preserue health, is not to be filled with meates, and to be vnslouthfull in labouring. Also let his sleepes and vnerous actes be in a meane. As for remedies in this case, let salt be brayed small in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all those that wil be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderfull dry temperature. And he must vse annointing with that, morning and euening all the daies of his life.

The end of the third Booke.



THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An exposition of feauers.

FEBRIVM EXPLICATIO.



FEBRIS in Latine, a feauer in English, it is an vnnaturall *Febris quid.*

heat, which taking his beginning at the heart, is spread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a feauer, vnlesse the heate being immoderately encreased, do offend the man, and hurt his operations & actions. More-

ouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witnessing) which doe ordaine and constitute our body (that is to say) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently, (that is) the hard and sound members in the body, the humor and the spirite or aire: so also there be three kindes of simple feuers. For if immoderate heat be kindled in the spirites and aire of mans body, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in English it may be called one day feauer. This feuer is like to hote aire or wind, included in a bladder or bottle: for, like as the aire heateth the bottle, that it is in, euen so, the spirites of a mans body, being heat more then they should be, doe heat all the whole body. There chanceth in this kind of feauer but one fit, and for the most part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon, it is called *Diaria febris*, (that is) the one day feauer. For they cease after the first fit, if they be rightly handled. But you must note, that there be feauers called *Diarie*, which last vntill the third day, as those be which are engendered of thickening and stopping of the conduites and passages. For although that this word, *Diaria*, be not of the very substance of such feuers, yet because they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching should be brieue and euidēt, notwithstanding that the word repugn against it, seeing that they be of the same nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may most rightly be called *Diaria*, as *Galen* sheweth abundantly in lib. 9. *therapeutices* cap. 1.) Hereupon it is euidēt, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: One, which is named *Diari* simply and without adiection or putting too of any word, which feuer doth not extend aboue the space of a naturall day (that is) 24. houres. An other kinde there is,

*Three princi-
pall kindes of
simple feauers.
Ephemera.
Diaria.*

Note.

*Diaria sim-
plex.
Diaria pluri-
um dierum.*

Putrida.

which is called *Diaria plurium dierum*, (that is) a diary of many daies. It is called by an other name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The second kinde of simple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humors, and it is called *putrida* (that is) rotted, onely because the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hot waters for as that doth heat a cold vessell, that it is poured into: so also humours, hote aboue nature, doe heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot either within the vessels or without. If they rot within the vessels, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or else one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and a little within all the vessels or veines, or specially within the greatest it causeth a feuer called *Synocha putrida*, which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth: you must note first that the Philosophers of Greece doe call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fire remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many daies. Or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *continens febris*, and is in English a constant or continuall feuer.

Συνοςχος.

Two kindes
of *Synochus*.
Synochus putrida, non
putrida.

Three sorts of
Synochus.

1

2

3

συνοςχος.
what a continuall
feauer is.

Difference be-
twene *Syno-*

chos, and
συνοςχος.

Three kindes
of continuall
feauers.

Tertiana con-
tinua.

But althoug there be one forme and likelyhood of such feauers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For some of them haue manifest signes and tokens of rottenesse: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a little before) be of the kinds of *Diaria*. We to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euidet, doe call the first *Synochus putrida*, and the last we call, *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last of them *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) contene them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of those feuers, which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundry sorts or differences: for some of them doe endure of an equall vehemency and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *humtoros*, and *acma* *θε* *σ*, (that is) remaining still in the same force and vigour. Some alwaies encrease and augment by little and little, those the Greekes do call *anab. ticos*, and *epacma* *sticos*, (that is) encreasing and augmenting more and more. Some doe decrease and diminish by little and little, those the Greekes call *paracma* *sticos*, (that is) decreasing. Moreouer, if one onely humour doe putrifie and rot within the vessels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latins, *continua febris*, in English a continuall feuer, which is, when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and slaking in euery fit. Whereby it is euidet that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis* (that is) a constant feauer and a continuall feauer doe differ much a sunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remission or slaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is sensible remission and slaking in euery fite. Also the feauer *Synochus*, hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fites. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or else *continua febris*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rotte within the vessels, it causeth a continuall tertian, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *causas*. If sleume doe putrifie or rot within the vessels, there engendeth a continuall quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessels, there engendeth

pendreth a continuall quartan. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straight way. For a continuall tertian, agreeth with a true intermitting tertian, in that, that it hath a fit, aswell as it, euery third day. And a continuall quotidian agreeth, with an intermitting quotidian, because ech of them hath a fit euery day. Also a continuall quartaine agreeth with an intermitting quartain, because both of them causeth a fitte euery fourth day. But yet these feauers doe differ two waies, notwithstanding that they agree in the humor that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is dispersed into all the members of the body, whereuppon it chaunceth through violence of spreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by them selues. Hereby also they differ another way, (that is) the intermitting feauers slake betweene the fits, but the continuall feauers doe not cease at all betweene the fits. Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kindes of feauers humors putrified within the vessels doe cause and engender. Now we will expound, what feauers humors putrified without the vessels doe conceiue, engender, and kindle. If therefore an humour doe putrifie and rotte without the vessels, it causeth an intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fit doeth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceasing, and leaueth off betweene the fits. It may most aptly be called in Latine *febris interpolata*, because the fites come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kindes, (that is) a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartaine. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rotte without the vessels. It is so called because it ceaseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphimerinon*, it is caused of sweet fleume being putrified and rotten without the vessels, and it is so called because it returneth euery day. We did not rashly say sweete fleume: for if glasse fleume doe putrifie and rot a little, it causeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feuerous, and feruently colde, and doth feele both heat and cold immoderat in all parts of his body, both at one time together. To the aforesaide feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowelles and entrals: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartaine is engendred of Melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceaseth two dayes, & returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled, in the sound, hard, and fleshy parts of mans body, & it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Heclica febris*, and in English the feauer Ethicke. This feuer is like to a hote vessell, for as the vessell doth heate the water that is poured into it: so also the feauer Ethicke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humors of the body. And if this feuer doth so encrease, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it: then it is called *Heclica marasmodes*, and *marasmus*. And this (as *Gale* witnesseth) is vncurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the driness which is left, being proper to old age, will

*Quotidiana
continua.*

*Quartana
continua.*

*Likenesse be-
tweene conti-
nuall and in-
termitting fea-
uers.*

*Difference be-
tweene conti-
nuall and in-
termitting
feauers.*

*Intermittens
febris.*

Interpolata.

*Tertiana in-
termittens.*

*Quotidiana
exquista.*

Epialos.

Lypiria.

*Quartana in-
termittens.*

3

Heclica febris.

Marasmus.

**Pestilent fea-
uer.**

**Fewers engen-
dred by infla-
mation of some
member.**

**The kindes of
compound fea-
uers.**

**Complications
of Quotidians
and Tertians.**

Hemitritans.

kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another feauer which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this feauer (as *Galen* witnesseth *Libro primo de differentijs febrium, Capite quinto*), is engendred of rottenesse, for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying, and rotting euaporation, causeth also the humours of the body to rotte. Therefore it may be contained vnder the second principall kinde of feauer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be engendred without disease or griece in any member of the body, and some feauers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therefore, as the former feauers haue their names: so also each of these that follow haue their proper names. For that feauer which is engendred through inflammation of the filme or cal that girdeth in the ribs, it is called *Pleurctica febris*. That which engendreth through inflammation of the lungs is called, *Peripneumonica febris*. That which chaunceth through inflammation of the stomack, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewise all other feuers, which engender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerse names, according to the diuersity of the member. Therefore in euery sicke person you must diligently discerne feauers which come without disease of other members, from those feauers which engender through inflammation of some member. Of the aforesayd feuers, some be *Typice*, (that is) certaine and ordinate: and some be, *Erraticæ*, (that is) vn certaine and vnordinate. *Typicæ* be such feauers, whose fits and slakings from them doe come iustly at their appointed time. *Erraticæ* are such feuers as be contrary to these, for they keepe no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene them, as be those feauers, which engender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in some it remaineth vn moueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kindes of simple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two waies: first, because these feuers aforesayd (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Secondly, because these feauers, which be engendred through inflammation of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are sometime complicate and ioyned together, and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witnesseth) is when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres. And confusion is, when they begin at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the feuer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together being both intermitting feuers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitritans*, because all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the sayde feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feuers of the same kind, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feuers, and

Tertians

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feuers of diuerse kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and sometime intermitting feuers are mixed with continuall feuers. Moreover after the same sort, feuers which are engendred with inflammation of some members, are sometime mixed together, as if diuerse members doe each of them kindle a feauer proper to them selues, or the affection where they engender, be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feuers are compounded and mixed many sundry waies: first the kinds of simple feuers must be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that study Physicke: for vnlesse they know them verie perfectly, it can not be that euer they should knowe well compound feuers. Therefore seeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in so much that oftentimes cunning Phisicians are deceiued in iudging of them: you must seeke the signes and tokens, whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the studious haue comprehended all the kinds of simple feuers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of simple feuers there be three principall kinds. For vnnatural heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.	Spirites or breath, and doth cause Ephemera, or Diaria, whereof bee two kindes, that is to say.	Ephemera simpliciter or diaria, one day feuer. And Diaria, pluriū dierū otherwise called Synochus non putrida, enduring three or four daies.
Of simple feuers there be three principall kinds. For vnnatural heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.	Or in the humours, and causeth putrida febris, a rotten feuer, they do rot in two places either	Within the vessels, & that two waies, for either, Or one only humour putrifieth, and so causeth a continuall feuer: and if there be putrefaction of
Of simple feuers there be three principall kinds. For vnnatural heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.	Or they putrify without the vessels, and cause an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrefaction of &c.	Choler it causeth a continuall Tertian. Sweet do rot it causeth an intermitting quotidian, pure
Of simple feuers there be three principall kinds. For vnnatural heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.	Or in the fleshy parts, and causeth either.	Glasé it causeth Epialos. If melancholy do rot, it causeth an intermitting feauer quartane. Hætica febris. or Marasmus.

CHAP. II.

Of one daie Feauer.

DE DIARIA.

Ephemer
quid.

Causa.

Signa.

Common signes
fixe.

1

2

A naturall
vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular
signes of diariesSignes of
watchings.

DIARIA Febris in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke: in English one day feauer. It is that which hath one onely fitte, finishing for the most in one day, at the most, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the first fitte, and doth not exceede, nor passe a naturall day, if it be rightly vsed. And that, because of the matter wherein it is, (that is) the spirite of breath which is easily dissolued and dispersed. Therefore *Galen* doeth most worthily call this, the most simple feauer, because it is the shortest, and the most gentle feuer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Physicians, or through intemperance of the sick, or by errors of the ministers & assistants, whereby it turneth into an other kind of feauer, that doth not chaunce through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is caused, when as the spirite or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature without any putrefaction or rottenesse. And that chanceth many waies: somtime through constipation binding or thickning of the skinne, which stoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or spirites which were wont to flow out by the pores, which because they be hote and sharpe, therefore they engender a feauer. Sometime it is caused through wearinesse, & vehement defatigation. Also through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digestion, sadnesse, feare, ire, vehement care of the minde, burning of the sunne, cold, hunger, drunkennesse, and swelling of the kernels in the throte, and such like, which can heate the spirites and inflame them. The signes whereby *Diaries* are knowen, are of two sorts: for some signes be common to all *Diaries*, and some be proper and peculiar to ech cause. The common signes be fixe in number, whereof the first is the pulse. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulse in greatnes, swiftnesse, and oftennesse. But it keepeth exquisitely that order, softnesse and equality, which is according with nature. The second common signe is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doeth little turne from a naturall state. An vrine, that accordeth with nature, is subruse in colour, meane in substance, hauing in it a residence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equality of heat which in al *Diary* feuers is gentle, pleasant, & easie. The fourth signe is the maner of ending of it, for all *Diaries* are loosened and ended by a breath or vapor, which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moistures, or sweet sweets. The fift is the wanting of euill symptoms, & accidents: as be vehement paine of the head and stomach, and other parts, abhorring of meats, vnquietnes, vnfatiable thirst, and such other like. The sixt and common sign is, that all *Diary* feuers be engendred of an outward cause which the Physicians at these dayes call a primitiue cause. But the particular signes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ frō other, be these that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, caused through watching, there chaunceth to them a naughty colour, and swelling of the face, heavy motion of the eyes, for they scant lift vp the eye liddes, there is moystnes of the haire of the eye liddes, and small pulses. For watching (as *Hippocrates* saith) seeing it letteth digestion, it engendreth

abun-

abundance of crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the naturall heate, and vnlooseneth the body, whereupon there followeth the tokens aforesayd. To be short, watchings doe reuoke and pull backe nature from digesting: therefore they cause great crudity and rawnesse, as well in the braine, as in the rest of the body, whereupon also doth chaunce the tokens aforesaid. The signes of a diary, caused of care and sorrow be these, leannes of the body. If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer, if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and driness of the eyes doth signifie both the sayd effects: but in thoughts and cogitations it is least, because the spirites and humours are lesse consumed. And it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effectes, a certaine vnaccustomed palenesse or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her naturall colour. They which haue a diary through wrath or furious anger, they haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eyes seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is lostines of the pulses. So also the signs of the rest of the diaries being engendred through perturbation of the minde, may chiefly be known by the pulses. For in sadnesse the spirites are caried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, and rare. In feare new begun, the bloud and spirits runne inward as it were to the spring head, and the minde is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth the spirites hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby the pulses are made swifte, necessity compelling them, and the minde being chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dispersed and vertue being feeble,) it causeth such pulses, as we speake off before in sadnesse. They which haue a *Diaria* feuer, through burning and heat of the Sunne, their skinne is hot and dry, their head seemeth to them to burne, because of the spirites inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and sometimes the veines in their eies, temples & forehead, and in all their whole face are stretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feuer through cold, they are taken with heauy distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumes excrements within the skin. Moreouer the skinne is lesse hore, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moisture, because the wonted fluxe is restrained and stopp'd through colde. Moreouer there is no filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused of wearinesse, their skin is made drier, then it is in other diaries, because exercise drieth vp the body, and draweth out the moisture of it: also their pulses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and bee wearied about measure, they haue small pulses, because of imbecillity and weakenesse of strength, but they that haue vsed but small labours, their pulses be great, because their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* feuer through drunkennes or hunger, they need no signes to know the cause, for such causes may bee known by telling of the sicke. They which haue this feauer through kernelles, swellings or impostumations about the throate or mouth, or other where: they haue very great pulses, and because of the feuerous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equality of their pulses because the instrument of mouing is not lett'd neither by obstructiō, nor through abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

*Signes of care
and sorrow.*

Signes of anger.

Signes of sadness.

Signes of feare

*Signes of Sun-
burning.*

Signes of cold.

*Signes of wear-
inesse.*

*Signes of drink-
kenesse and
hunger.*

*Signes of swell-
ings about
the throate.*

*Vltima ratio.**wine good for
diarries.**Curatio.*

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heat. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diary feauers is brought to passe by diet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple consist in this: that you minister vnto them meates that engender good humours, and that be easie of digestion and apt to be distributed about the body. Giue vnto the that are burnt in the Sun, and to them that be angered, a diet which doth coole & moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heat moderately. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vie a diet which can both moisten and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a feuer of wearines, you must allow them to eate as much meat as they can digest: for you must alwaies eschue cruditie and rawnes of the stomach. For the substance of the body being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantity of taking of meate, by the patientes strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreover by the time of the yeare, the region, & such other like. But those, whose temperature of the body is very hot and dry, those you must feede with meat by & by, at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diary feauer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly about other, they may be fedde with a thin diet, which haue a diary caused of a botch or impostumation, for in them, the substance of the body is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feuers, those, which be properly named so, & doe endure but twenty foure houres. For besides that, it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweat (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care, because great abundance of spirites is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easlye and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feuerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pearceeth the head quickly. And they that haue this feauer engendred of great anger and fury, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, they may haue no wine giuen to them, for the spirites, and bloud is maruellously chafed, and boileth sore. Also you must driue from wine those that be feuerous, throug the swelling of borches or kernels in the throte vntill it be loosened; not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feuer, but that it hindreth the cure of the botch. For it increaseth the flowing of the humors into the grieved place, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with bathes. Therefore whosoever hath this feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath. But yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this feuer caused of borches, or impostumations, they may profitably tary in the aire or fume of the bathe, because it both rarefieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh and enticeth sweate out of the body. Neither doeth it hurt those

those patients with drinesse, as it would doe those, that haue this feauer engendred of wearinesse, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For seeing their body is dried vp altogether by those causes, they must be kept from the aire of the bath, least it augment their griefe. Therefore such may tarry the longer in a bath of sweete water being made hote, that through the moysture of it, they may recouer the humidity that is lost, and is decayed in them. Afterward soft handes must rubbe them gently, with plenty of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of restriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moisten, loosen, and soften the hard and fleshie parts, and it dissolueth and disperseth those things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the body. They that haue this feauer caused through burning of the Sunne, you must cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of sweete water, and onely with pouring on a little oyle without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiseth heate. Things that doe coole the head being applyed to it, be oile of roses, and of vnripe oliues, and other which be rehearsed in *libro primo*. These being first made cold, and then receiued with wooll, and holden vp aloft, you must presse it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the fore part of the heade, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the sicke into a bath. If any person haue this feauer through colde, he must also be brought to a bathe in the remission of his fitte, and his head must be nourished both before and after the bathing with oyle of *yroos* and *oleum nardinum*, and such like. For they that haue a feauer through this cause, haue neede of medicines that can heate, and remoue constipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the inclination of the fit, you must bring them straight vnto a bathe, and pouring vpon them much sweete oile warmed, rubbe them softly, and you must keepe them long in the water of the warme bathe, that thereby the drinesse, which hunger hath caused in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bathe, you must recreate and refresh the strength with conuenient meates, and then you must bring them againe to a bathe, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceased) you must giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you must minister iuyce of pisan, and sometime they may take lettuce, and they may eate fishes taken out of grauelly places, and being light meat sodden in a white broth, which, what it was in olde time, *Galen* sheweth in his fourth booke, *de sanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* doe chaunce through crudity or rawnesse of the stomacke: you must first consider, whether the wombe be soluble, or else costiue. If it be soluble, and those things only which be corrupt, do seeme to voide forth, then you must wash him and nourish him in the remission of the feauer. But not vnlesse first you diligently behold and foresee all thinges chauncing to the stomacke. For if such abundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, so that the verue and strength of the sicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and washe him both together. But you must diligently beholde first those things that be about the stomach. You must vse about the sicke, if the emptying

Note.

doe endure no longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomach with oyle and wormewood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the thirde booke in the Chapter of weakenesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applied to the stomach, let them be wel heat. For those things that be applied bloud warme, do dissolue and loosen the strength of the stomach. If the belly be altogether costive, handle, and feele the sides, & then the whole body, and consider, whether the meate is descended into the small guts, or into the colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomach, let the sicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throte, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the food is descended already into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face & stomach downward, and you must nourishe the belly and prouoke sleepe: for that digesteth crudity maruellously. After sleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppositary, or cast an easy clister to loosen the wombe. They which haue a feuer caused through swelling of the kernelles of the throte, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort, that *Galen* teacheth in his bookes *de medendi ratione*. When the sicke declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thinne and scarce diet, because in them, the substance of their body is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine, for the causes aforelaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* Feuer, being to called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

Sleepe digesteth.

CHAP. II.

Of a *Diary* lasting moe daies.

DE DIARIA PLURIUM DIERUM.

Diaria plurimum dierum.
Synochus non putrida.

Causa.

Signa.

1

2

3

4

THERE is an other kinde of *Diaries*, which is named *Diaria plurimum dierum* for no other cause, but because it extendeth and continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The auncient authors haue called this feuer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right *Diaries* are of. For it endeth after the first fit, if it be rightly and well handled. This feuer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores, and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chaunce either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it selfe is moderatly thicked, which is wont to change through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicin that is very sharpe and restrictiue: or through burning of the sunne, and other such like which can dry the skinne. This feauer may be knowen first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together, then it is wont to be: Secondly you may know this feuer by mouing of the heat, for at the first touching it seemeth gentle, and easie, but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the heat is sharper. Thirdly you may know this feuer by the vrine, which is not much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly, you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state and doth not fall away, because the thicknes

of

of the skin doth let the dissolving of the vapours and moysture, and therefore also the eyes are not hollow, nor dry, but more swollen and more moysture, then they should be naturally. First, you may know it by the pulse, which is equall great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them blood, and you must draw out so much blood, as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a surety, that vnlesse you vse this remedy to those, which by nature haue their body vnapt to breath out vapours because of abondance, it will come to passe that either they shall be choked, or be in daunger of often swoounding, vnlesse great strength or much sweating, or large fluxe of blood do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by blood letting, shortly after minister meates and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meates which can do this in feauers (as Galen witnesseth) be *ptyfan* and *mulsā*. The medicines be *ptyfan*, *oximell*, and things sodden in *mulsā*, as be calamint, hisope, origan, serpillum, *greos*, and *apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they enflame and kindle feuers, as also wine doth. *Oximell* doeth only scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not enflame and kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deluereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions & stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heat is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennes of humors in the pulse, nor crudity or rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspectt houre wherein the feuer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may boldly wash the patient quickly long before six of the clocke, but it is sufficient, if you end the washing three hours before. Likewise if you suspectt the tenth houre, you may washe him vntill the seuenth houre, for three hours or foure is space enough betweene the bathing and the fit. When the body hath bene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweet oile warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following doe scoure and cleanse most moderately (that is) meale of *Eruum*, and of barely, and also of beanes. Moreouer *mulsā* which is watery doth the same. Stronger things be *greos*, roote of *panax*, and *aristolochia*, and *mulsā*, which is of a meane commixtion, but that *mulsā* scoureth most of all, that is pure, which is, when there is but a little water mixed with the hony, so that the melted hony may easily enter into the small pores of the skin. Stronger scourers then these, be the frooth of salt Peter, the salt Peter it selfe, and then *aphonitrum*, sope is one of them that is able to seoure most of all. Moreouer after a bath, you must giue the patient nothing but water, which hath had a little *apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two hours sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him only iuyce of *ptyfan*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them then you may wash him againe, if you will and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chaunce any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit, which you had the first day, and

5
Curatio.

Absterfue
medicines.

Oximell.

then you must consider the vrine, and also the pulses. For all these will appear to be in a meane temperature, when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforefaide considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused; that feauer is not of the kinde of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feuer called Synochus.

DE SYNOCHO PUTRIDA.

Definitio.

Continens febris.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

SYNOCHVS in Greeke is a *Feauer*, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many daies, or els it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens febris*, and in English it may be called a constant & stable feuer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vesselles, which be about the armerholes, and the share, which is wont to chance, when a feuerous heare is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breath or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kind of feauer is not engendred nor kindled in folke that be leane & slender, nor in them that haue a thin and rare state of their body, nor in a cold temperament of the body, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it engendreth in them which do abound with blood, and in those that be hot, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises & diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshy, grosse, and thick bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hot excrements. They which haue this feuer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent & equal. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature: but the quicknesse and frequency of it, is according to the greatnes of the feuer, and these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this feuer, there is signs of rottennes, and that aswell in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the quality of vnkind heat. The cure of this feuer must be begun with letting of blood. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop it or let it, you must draw blood til he do faint and swoond. For if the patiēt be strong, this is the chiefe remedy for this kind of feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swoounding. As for cooling of the body, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, nor more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreover in such bodies, there chanceth of necessity, loosenes of the belly, or a lask. And oftentimes also vomiting of choler. Which things, moisture or sweates do gather from the whole body. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these feauers, not to marke the nūber of daies past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe and strong, you may let blood not only the 6. or 7. day, but also in the daies

daies following. But, and if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not only the remedy of bloudletting hath bene pretermitted and kept backe, but now also either through ignorance of Physicians, or through fear of the sick or his assistants in processe of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discern & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke will drink. And you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bin vsed to drink cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it; you shall abstaine from it: and vse other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, & that the burning heat of the feuer may be cooled and eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinks ministred immoderately and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse & clammy humours to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue engendred obstructions or rottennes, or inflammation, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like affects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencherh the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth stil, of necessity another feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse, then that which went before, because that the body is thickned through colde. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall disposition, or by some vice that they haue gottē. So in some, it hath bin found that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow, in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest, in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reins, or the bladder, or som other such like member is so stricken with cold, that it is made weak & vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderat drinking of it out of time, haue by & by bin taken with difficulty of breathing, & with cramp and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling of fleume or bloud, or any knobby hardnes: you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them, that a raw humor doth hurt with obstruction or rottennes. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, & then you doe perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if then there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sick haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may the more boldly minister it, for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perilous in them, that haue but litle bloud & flesh. Therefore by these things before reherfed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefe remedies of these kindes of feuers called *Synochus putrida*, be these 2. bludletting, & drinking of cold water: but bloudletting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient wil suffer it, & drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feuer is greatest, & when you are compelled to leaue bloudletting. You must note well the time, when you should let

When cold things should be ministred.

Discommodities of cold drinks.

Of cold water.

Continens febris hath two remedies chiefly.

You may not
let blood on a
full stomacke.

When the
fever is
in the
first stage

Diet.

When the fecke
should be fed.

blood, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if crudity and indigestion of meates do go before, you must refraine so long time from blood letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there will follow of necessity any fluxe or emptying, you must leaue so much blood still, as will voide by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of blood letting, the menstruis doe chaunce to flow, or also that the hemorrhoids do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the flux, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shall let nature worke alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much blood, that thereby vnder them both conieyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feuers be chiefly this that followeth. In them that haue bene let blood, minister to them two houres after blood letting, iuice of *pyssan*, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe *pyssan* broth. In this diet the patient must persist & continue vntill the third day. You must note, that in these feuers, called *Synochis*, the patientes must be fed at such time as hayle folke are wont to eat, and when they feele most ease, for so they shall the easlier suffer and beare their fooode. And if they be strong and lusty, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feuer straight way, the patient must vse a most thinne and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weak and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently foresee, and ponder his strength and ability. He that desireth to know more of this kinde of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him read *Galen in lib. 7. therapeut. meth. cap. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

DE CONTINVIS FEBRIBVS.

Febris continua.

Cause.

Three differences of continuall feauers.

Signa.

FEBRIS *continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall feuer. It is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heat betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is caused, when one only humor doth putrisie, & rot within the vessels. And there be three differences of this feuer, according to the diuersity of the humor that putrisieth in the veines: for if cholet do putrify within the vessels, it engendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feuer. If sleume do putrifie and rotte within the veines, it engendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feuer, then that, none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing only in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffness, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continuall Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it only differeth from it, because it doth

nor

not intermit and flake betweene the fits. In like maner the continuall Quartanes haue the signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fittes. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers. It is necessary for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifying & rotting. Therefore two things must be taken heed of at the first, whereof one is the feuer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feauer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and enflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennesse, one is, that the rottennesse already engendred, may be healed, the other is to let & stop that which is ready to engender putrefaction. That which is ready to engender, is caused through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedit and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first that the humour which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: secondarily to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe, it will be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Again note, that the obstructions which are engendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted and drinen backe away. You must cure that obstruction which is already engendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall drue away & stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors, whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing that must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing that therefore (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be five things in continuall feauers from the which, considerations in curing be gathered (that is) the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedit and letted, obstruction and abundance of obstructiue humours. You must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therefore seeing that the abundance of humors that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out: in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him blood. You must then specially let him blood, whe the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veines be swollen vp, or stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of blood. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hote, it is to be feared, least they should encrease both their rottennesse, and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from obstructions without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second Chapter of this Booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be deuided, cut, and scoured, you must assay to voide & empty them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hote, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be encreased by them. Therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be five things to consider in feuers.

Curatio.

Blood letting.

How obstructions should be healed.
Oximell.

*Bathing doth
coole.*

*Cure of putri-
faction.*

*Cure of the
feuer.*

Dys-

Aphor.

labour to choose such a thing as doth heate but lide, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all, (as in this case a Bath, you must vse that. *Galen* teacheth in *libro tertio de tuenda sanitate*, cap. 3. that a bath can do this. For he saith, that the strength of sweet waters made hot, if they be temperat, be hote and moist, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moist. And a litle after he sayeth, A bath if it be discretely vsed, it mollifieth the hard and stretched partes, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any sticke within the skinne. These things being done, and those humors being scoured out, which were compact together in the skin, so that the obstruction and perspiration impedit be taken away, you must come to the cure of the rottennesse. Therefore at this time you must first corroborate and restore the strength, whereby it may exuperate and overcome the rottennesse, and be able to digest the humours. And you shall heale the putrefaction and rottennesse, if you do void and empty out by all meanes, that which is corrupted & putrified. That which is left still within, you must bring it to an exquisite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings, and you shall worke the emptying out of your humors by vrine, egestions, vomiting and sweats. Last of all, you must proceed to the curing of the feuer, which must be done by cooling things. For euery feuer, in asmuch as it is a feuer, must be remedied by cooling and moistening things. But to know how each of these things should be rightly done, it is partly rehearsed before, and partly it shall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whose state or vigour of the disease will come at the farthest within seven daies, if their strength be lustie, and their age agreeing to it, you must ordaine them a very exquisite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feuers, whose vigour, force, and state is longer then seven daies after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the first you must feed them liberally: when the vigour and state draweth neare, their diet must be more scarce. But in the state and vigor of the disease, you must feed them most thinly and scarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, & feed him most, increasing his diet in like case as the vigor & state of the feuer doth diminish, as *Hippocrates* saith in the first section of his Aphorismes

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning feuer.

DE ARDENTE FEBRE.

*Continua Ter-
tiana.*

*Difference be-
twene a bur-
ning feuer and
a Tertian.*

ARDENS Febris in Latine, *Causos* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer. It is of the kind of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former Chapter. And it is caused when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquisite intermitting Tertian, because it is engendred of the same humor that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the bodie: but in a burning feuer the choler is contained in the vessels together with the blood. Hereupon it commeth that the fits in a burning feuer do not intermit nor slake. But when the choler in them is stirred most vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing strong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth 4. *Aphorif.* 38. saying, he that is taken with a burning feuer,

if it be vehement cold and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feuer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, grosse, rough and blacke, there is gnawing of the stomacke, intollerable thirst, watchings, and also many times rauing, and egestions of the wombe be liquide and pale: which signes *Hippocrates* rehearseth in *lib. 4. 1. et. Acutorum*. They which haue this feuer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a sweetaire, from whence pure wind commeth. Also let him lye in a soft featherbed, which must be made often, let the couerings be verie thin & cleane: which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great widenesse, that he may easily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, lettuce, gourds, sorrell, pisan broth and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or veriuiue. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoon-full or two, or mixe Iulep of violets, or some Iulep of roses, or such like with decoction of barley. Morcouer the stomack must be refreshed with iuyce of roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene vine leaues, and with the leaues and floures of roses, water lillies and violets, and by sprinkling and powring often of colde water on the floore yp and downe. For the Cure in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue and strength do permit it. Hereuppon *Hippocrates* sayeth in the Aphorismes thus. In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole body is cooled, and the feuer is quenched. In many also a lape is caused, and sweats flow forth. Afterward let the breast and stomacke be nourished with dates brayed with oile of roses, or of quinces, or of water lillies. Also other cooling medicins be good, as be, vine buddes brayed, endiue, succorie, knotgrasse, lettuce, sorrell, vine leaues and such like. Also a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oyle and water made hote, and applyed to the brest and stomack: it ceaseth the burning of feuers mariellously. Also a handfull of wooll soaked in water, and oile of roses her greatly, and being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemencie of the burning hear. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength and vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also commixe vineger against vehement burning feuers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the affect of the body is driuen about, and the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt, for fire heate being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement and burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, & vigor of the fittes, when the heat is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these colde things may be wel applyed: for then the residue of the vnnaturall heate which remaineth about the inward members may readily be quenched. Hereuppon the patient will begin to breath better, & shalbe troubled with an easier thirst. Also some by breathing out of a dewie vapor, do fall on sleepe. The epithemes which you must vse in this feuer is this. Rx. of rose water, and lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward curatio.

Epithema.

When cold water may be ministered.
Nota.
To whom a bath is good.
Fuctions.

ana. ℥. iij. β. waters of endiue and succory. ana. ℥. j. β. good vineger ℥. j. all the three Sanders of each ℥. β. seed of purslaine. gra. iij. commixe all together and make an epitHEME. Moreouer when the vigour and strength of the sicknes is at hand, you may safely minister pure cold water, if none of these things which be rehearsed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very litle, doe let it, you shall minister the first draught refrained after this sort. Take one cupfull of temperate water, and commixe fve cupfuls of pure cold water with it, and so minister it to suspect bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you must needs bring to passe one of these things, that either the cholerick humors may be voided and empried out; or else that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by sweats, vomits and egestions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water where-with very often great burning feuers haue bin cured quite and cleane. A bath of sweet water is good only to them which haue a burning feauer without any swelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Erisipela*. But & if signes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more cōuenient for the patient. Let the sicke which in a vehement burning feauer desireth to vse a cold bath, be young, and of a moderate state of the body; as also *Hippocrates* witnesseth and monisheth. Neither let it be done to him in sommer time, and in hot times of the year, and in the vigour and strength of the feuer, & let it be one that hath vsed to wash in cold water in his health. But when the feuer waxeth more moderat, and vertue is stronger, and if there be signes of concoction together with it, a bath of sweete and temperate water is sufficient & doth good. For annointings, oile of chamomill doth good, specially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter, whereon you should make competent remedies against burning feauers, you shall find in the Chapters following.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

DE EXQUISITA TERTIANA INTERMITTENTE.

Causa.

Exquisita tertiana febris intermitiens, in Latine, an exquisit and pure intermitting tertian feauer in English. It is caused of choler caried by the sensible parts of the body, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, sincere, & vnmixed. Therefore seeing it is engendred of choler that is sincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phisitions exquisite. This feuer engendreth in persons that be cholericke by nature & in their flourishing age, in sommer time, in hote and dry regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppressed with labours, watchings, cares, deepe thoughts, and burning of the sunne. Also this feuer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fitte causeth a vehement cold, rigour and stiffnesse, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearsed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the colde in a quartane feauer thus, because in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vicerated. But in a quartane the cold seemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feelee in winter time. Therefore a tertian feauer doth not chaunce without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the flesh: but a quartane.

Signa.

Differences of coldnesse in a tertian and quartane.

quartane feuer doth not by and by the first day inuade the patient with vehement rigor and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and encreaseth, so also the rigor and cold encreaseth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a tertian feuer an exact & perfect order and equality of the pulses: but yet in the encreasing of the fits, the pulses are raised and prouoked to vehemency, greatnes, and frequency. Moreouer in the vigour & force of the feuer, it causeth thirst, and burneth vpon the patient, so that he casteth off the cloths, to make him bare & naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate spreadeth equally alouer the body, so that the breast is no hotter then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the first touching you shall feele much gnawing, and biting heate, bursting out as it were with a certaine vapor and moisture: but not long after your hand wil vanquish it, if you do hold it still. Moreouer there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they pisse vrine that is cholerick, subruse, and somewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Also their vrine hath by & by a white cloude, or a laudable sublation in the middes. If the vrine be redder, and if in the first fit there doe appeare neither sublation in the middes, nor cloud, the feuer will extend and remaine seuen fits. Moreouer this feuer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the space of xij houres at the most. For this is the longest time of a fit in true and pure tertians. But sometime the fit is shorter then the aforesaid space of time, hauing difference more or lesse according to the quantity and quality of choler within, or because of the strength of the patient, or through the present affect of the patientes body at that present time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, that is not called an exquisit tertian, but an extended & stretched out tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigor and cold, & with the signes aforesaid of the vrine and pulses, as also of other things afore rehearsed: then it is called *duplex tertiana*, a double tertian. But as for an exquisit tertian, because it is engendred of pure choler moued about, you must moisten it, and coole it, as much as you may possibly by all meanes. For this humor (as Galen witnesseth) is the hottest & driest among all the other that be in the body. Let the sicke lie therefore in a cold place against a sweet and pleasant aire. Also you may not suffer many to be in the house, because they should make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be sprinkled often with cold water, & with rose water, violet water and such like. And strew on the floore willow leaues, flours of roses, violers, water lillies and such like. Let the patients vse meates that haue vertue & power to coole and moisten. And you must giue him so much of the, as he can very well digest. Let his pot herbs be orach, beets, spinach, mallows, lettuse, gourds, sorrell, endiue, succory, & such like. Also giue him *pyson* broth, and souplings made with Alica. Of fishes, let him eate such as liue in grauelly places: for such, besides that they do coole & moisten, they engender good iuice, and are easy to digest. Of fowls, let him eate the that be of soft flesh, as be chickens & partrich, doves, yong sparrowes, feafants, & such like: but of those that

Signes of a
double tertian.

Victus ratio.

haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements,
 because of their often exercises. Also he may eate cocks stones, & fowes feet,
 for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: & their braines,
 specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of pigges well sod-
 den, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easilier be consumed of the stomacke.
 Also rere egges, which be but onely hot through, may be suffred, specially the
 yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest than the whites, and they do coole
 meanelly. You may suffer him to eate fruites, which be not verie hard to digest,
 as be, cherries, roines, mulberries. He must abstaine from honie, because it
 will easly turne into choler, and from mustard, salr meats, and all sharp things.
 Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be dige-
 sted, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a litle cinamon
 hath bene sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this. *Rx* lulup of violets. *℥.iiij.* water
 wherin a litle cinamon hath bene sodden. *℥j.* commixe them together, and
 powre them out of one vessell into another, often. But when the disease begin-
 neth to digest, you must giue him in the beginning a litle wine that is thinne
 and alayed with water, and giue him more liberally of it, when the end of the
 disease is at hand. This is the order of dyet for many, but not for all men: for
 they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of na-
 ture, you must ordeine for them a thinner diet (that is) let them be contented
 with ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the feuer. As for sleeping, they may
 not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud and
 spirits, and naturall heat may be letted, and stopped from creeping to the in-
 ward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawn to the outward parts:
 for otherwise the feuers will scarce be dissolued, and they will come very slowly
 to their state, and fluxes will increase & be multiplied: when the fit is ended,
 sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehe-
 ment motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the minde, specially an-
 ger, feare, sorrowe, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before
 prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole
 and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, & to mitigate
 the cholericus heate, let him vse this decoction. *Rx* of floures of violets, borage,
 and red roses, ana. *M.j.* floures of water lillies, *M.℥.* endiue, succorie, lettuce,
 ana. *M.j.* of raisons picked. *℥.i.* damascene proines number ij. seeds of endiue,
 succorie, lettuce, puerclaine, gourds, ana. *℥.iiij.* of the roote of succorie, *℥.vj.*
 seeth all together in *℥j.* of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then
 straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with sugar, and purifie
 it with the white of an egge, then adde to it sirupe of endiue with the broade
 leaues, and lulup of violets, ana. *℥.ij.* commixe them together and make a
 potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting. *℥.iiij.* But and
 if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this
 medicine. *Rx* of conserues of violets, borage, roses, water lillies and succorie,
 ana. *℥.℥.* *el. clarium de prunis damascenis* without disagreed. *℥.vij.* *diatriodon abb.*
℥.i. *℥.i.* diatrion santalon in powder. *℥.ij.* of lulup of violets as much as is sufficient
 to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer you must remoue the cause of
 the feuer: which you shall do, if you empie out the cholericke humor. There-

fore

Poets.

No sleepe in
fittes.

Curatio.

A decoction to
digest choler.

Mistura.

Vaccination.

fore you must emptie out the choler which is crept into the stomacke, by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former books. The choler which is caried downward it is best to emptie it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thirher: as in the inclination and flaking of the fit, nature thrusteth it to the neather partes and to the skin. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easie and soft clister, that it may both bring out the choler easly, and that also by his gentlenesse, the sharpnesse of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the guttes, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clister. *Rx.* of mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, endiue, and succorie. ana. *M. j.* seed of purslaine and of melons. ana. *ʒ. iij. ss.* seeth them all in sufficient quantitie of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, the marrow of *castia fistula* newly drawne, *ʒ. j.* oile of violets. *ʒ. iij.* common salt. *ʒ. j. ss.* commix them and make a clister. Also you must emptie out choler by prouoking of vrine and sweats specially, if it be caried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therefore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherin *apium* or dill hath bene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister wormwood softly, which is a speciall remedy for the stomak, when it is vexed with choler: specially if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, and infuse it in *melicratum*, that is, wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines. *Rx.* roots of *apium*, sperage and succorie. ana. *ʒ. ss.* of the seedes of parsley, fennell, *bruscus*, and louage. ana. *ʒ. ij.* black cicers *ʒ. iij.* dill. *M. ss.* seeth all in sufficient quantitie of water that runneth vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweet with sugar, adding to it *oximel compositum*. *ʒ. ij.* and make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euerie time. *ʒ. j.* or *ʒ. j. ss.* with *ʒ. iij.* of *oximel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annointings with oiles of cammomill, dill and such like, are not a litle profitable. Moreover hote bathes of sweet and potable water do profit two wayes, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such bathes do moisten and coole. But bathes of sea water, salt water, saltpeter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profit much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they doe good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more commoditie then the emptying by any means (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident that emptyings and purgings in an exquisite tertian, do but litle please *Galen*. Specially those emptyings that are done by bloud letting, and by a vehement purging medicine, for all such kind of purging medicines be of a

Vomitum.

Clyster.

Prouokers of
vrine.

Abscysium.

To prouoke
sweate.Bathes of sweet
waters.

hote facultie and qualitie. But seeing this feuer is the hoteft of all other, therefore it rather defireth to be cooled & moiftened, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other meanes, and fpecially when nature laboureth and affayeth to driue out the humour. Alfo nature muft be holpen, if of her felfe ſhe be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath this is the effect and ſcope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moiftened. Therefore you muſt ſtrew in, neither ſalt peter, nor ſalt, nor muſtard ſeede, but it is good to poure much oile, being made hot, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to waſh him. And if he will ſwimme in it, you may ſuffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delired in bathing, if you ſuffer them to waſh twiſe in a day, you ſhall not do amiſſe. But you muſt haue this in memorie, that it be opportunatly, & done in due time, for if ſignes of concoction do now appeare, then if you waſh him oftener, you ſhal not erre from Galens doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against a baſtardly Tertian.

DE TERTIANA NOTHA.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Diet.

Tertian.

A Baſtardly Tertian is cauſed, when choler is mixed for the moſt part with ſleume. Hereupon it commeth that all the ſignes of this feauer do nor declare the nature of pure and ſincere choler, as in an exquisite tertian they do. In this feauer alſo the time of the fits doth exceede 12. houres, neither is this iudged in ſeuen ſittes, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreover in this baſtardly Tertian, the ſignes of concoction do appeare more ſlowly, neither is there ſuch great heate in the vigour and ſtate of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Beſides all theſe, it doth not end with abundance of ſweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth. Therefore the diet in this feauer muſt not be altogether cooling and moiftening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue ſome power & vertue to heate, cut and diuide: for the choler in this feauer is groſſer, neither is it ſo hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of piſan, wherein ſome pepper is put, and you muſt giue them *mulſa* to drinke, wherein hath bene ſodden, hyſope, origan, and ſpiknard. Alſo you muſt giue them ſoupings and brothes eaſie to digeſt. Moreover ſeeing the time of the fit is long, and ſo endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meat daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we ſhall be ware and take heede, that nature be not called away from her office and worke, and ſo the diſeaſe ſhould be increaſed: for you muſt only take heede that the diſeaſe doth not increaſe, and that the ſtrength of the ſicke, which muſt ſtrive and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate and caſt down. But it is hard to keepe and ſaue both, becauſe hunger looke how much it profiteth to the digeſtion of the diſeaſe, and ſo much or more it hurteth & debilitate the ſtrength. And meats, looke howe much they increaſe the patientes ſtrength, and ſo much they hinder and let concoction and digeſtion. To conclude therefore, you muſt uſe hunger to them that be ſtrong and luſtie, & their diſeaſe hard to digeſt. And you muſt feede them more largely, whoſe ſtrength is debilitate and weake, and their diſeaſe not ſtubborne for to digeſt. Let their drinke be water, in which a litle cinamon, and ſome hyſope or origan hath bene ſodden. Quiet and reſt is good for

for them, but exercises do hurt them: for this doth call forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digest crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient blood, you may not faile to doe it, but by & by in the beginning, if the age, time, and region, and state of the body will permitte it, you must draw out so much blood, as the present state of the body requireth and will suffer. By the present state, vnderstand the state aswell of the patient, as of the disease: for the sicke, if he be strong, may suffer blood letting, if not, the contrary: if the disease remaine, and be caused through abundance of humours, it requireth blood letting not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the disease will endure long through crudity, and lacke of digestion, you must draw out but a meane quantity of blood, that the strength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the disease. Also you must cast into the belly not very easie clisters, that they may bring forth the sluggish and hurtfull matter, & make them thus. *Rx.* mallowes, mercury, leaues of violets, organ, and hisope, ana. *M. j.* seed of *cardanum*. *℥. iij.* seeth altogether in sufficient quantity of water, and adde to the licour of that decoction, *benedicta laxatiua*, *herapicra*, ana. *℥. iij.* *mel rosarum*. *℥. vj.* oils of violets and chamomill ana. *℥. j.* *℞.* common salt. *℥. ij.* & make a clister. Also you must minister to the patient, decoctions made of such things as can cut, & diuide, & also prouoke vrine without any great heating & drying. As this is. *Rx.* roots of *apium*, fennell, and succory, ana. *℥. j.* endiue, succory, organ, and hisope, ana. *M. j.* lettuce, *M. j.* *℞.* the foure common cold seeds, ana. *℥. j.* seeds of fennell and *apium*, ana. *℥. j.* seeth all these in two pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then straine it, and make the licour sweet with sugar, and purifie with whites of egges the streined licour. Then adde to it *serpus acet.* *℞.* *simplex*, *mel rosarum* clarified, *oximel simplex*, ana. *℥. j.* *℞.* and make a potion, wherof minister daily euery morning *℥. iij.* After these you must minister such medicines, as doe empty the belly gently, as is infusion of ruberbe, *electuarium è psillio*, and *diaphenicon* and such like, which are able by them selues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with scume. Whereof we haue reher sed many in our former bookes. After the seuenth day, you may minister continually decoction of wormewood: also *oximel* drunke alone helpeth many. Also vomiting after meate is so healthfull, and profitable to these olde and inueterate feuers, that many (as *Galen* witnesseth in *lib. 1. ad Glauconem*) haue bene cured with this one remedy. For a feuer which hath continued long, doth engender and breed any flegmaticke excrementes in the stomach, which being cast out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered frō the feuer. Also the sides must be nourished with hore medicines, that therby the windes and bolning which stretcheth them out, may be dissolued & dispersed. Among other this foment is very good. *Rx.* floures of chamomill, melilote, and dill, ana. *M. j.* wormewood. *M. ℞.* red roses. *M. j.* linseede, and fenugreeke, ana. *℥. iij.* boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vnto the third part, then dippe a sponge in it, and nourish the sides therewith. Also it profiteth to annoint the stomach, with this or such a like ointment. *Rx.* oiles of masticke, roses and chamomill, ana. *℥. iij.* of cloues. *℥. j.* wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer bathing in this feauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction

Curatio.

Blood letting.

Clister.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Absynthium.

oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

Vnguentum.

Balneum.

do appeare, because crude and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and so it doth increase obstructions.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a quartane Feuer.

DE QVARTANA FEBRE.

*Cause.**Signa.*

*Cause of long
intermissions
in quartane
fittes.*

*Curatio.**Bloud letting.*

AN exquisite quartane is another kind of the intermitting fevers, which is engendred only of a melancholy humor, putrifying and rotting without the vessels. This fever doth not by and by in the beginning invade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that are cold in winter through vehement frost: but when the fever hath continued & proceeded forward and is increased, then also the rigour & cold encreaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease be come to his full encrease and force. And the cold doth not seeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skin, as it doth in an exquisite tertian, but there is caused vehement cold, & as it would breake the bones. Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the fever is in his full force, or also when it is increased, then of necessity the pulses are swift & often: but yet they do keepe their naturall slowness and rarity, if you consider the swiftnesse and frequency comming in the fits. But the moving of the heat, the increasing and the vigour, and force of this fever is cleane contrary to that in tertian fevers. For in this fever the melancholy humor is kindled and inflamed by little and little, as it were a stone, or a shell, or a bone, or some other such cold & dry body. And when that any flame or heat is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaveth nothing fumous or smoky, but it burneth & consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceasing and intermission of this humor, betwene the fits, then there is in feume. And the intermission and ceasing betwene the fits seemeth to be exquisite & pure without any griefe at all: because in this fever, look how much melancholy is kindled and inflamed, and so much in the time of the fit is dispersed, consumed, and drawn out cleane. Moreover in a quartane fever there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thin, white and watery, and as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this fever beginneth specially in Autumne or Haruest, comming after erraticke feavers. But you must behold both the nature of the patient, & his temperament, also his diet vsed before, his age, the region, and other such like. For if those things be cold & dry, then you may looke more surely, that a quartane fever will ensue, specially if at any time, quartans be rise among the people. They that haue a quartane fever, in the beginning they must be handled and ordred moderately and gently, neither may they be vexed with any vehement medicin, or by vehement emptying and purging: for the humor which causeth the quartane, is stubburne to be drawn and handled. Therefore in the beginning, and before it be digested, it will hardly & scarcely follow the medicine that draweth it: and that because of his grossenes and coldnes, and also because it stoppeth the narrow waies, by the which it should passe out. Yet if bloud do seeme to abound much, then you must take away that. And if when you haue stricken a vein, the bloud that cometh out do appeare blacke and grosse, as for the most part it doth in diseases of the splene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abondance of such bloud

bloud being drawn out, nature will get the vpper hand in digesting the rest of the humor, and wil make the feuer shorter. You must cut the innermost veine of the left arme, which is called *linearis vena*, the splene vein, or *mediana*; for this veine emptieth out the melancholy humor, specially from the splene, which is wont to be diseased in a quartane feuer: but if, when the veine is stricken, the bloud doth appeare thin, and yellowish, you must stop it by and by: for such an humor is not vnprofitable in a quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the grosse and cold humor, as well because of his substance, as also with his quality. You must ordain for the patient a very good diet, such one as is not windy, and engendreth good iuice. Therefore you must keepe the sicke from swines flesh and from all other meates that be grosse, tough and clammy, and slow of digestion. Moreouer, let him abstain from all things which do coole & dry the body. He must eat birds that liue vpon mountains, & do engender good iuice: for those that do liue in fens & marishes, they be vnwholesome and full of excrements, and do engender a grosse humor. He must vse fishes of grauelly waters, which be soft and without roughnes, but in this feuer salt things and mustard must be ministred in meats, that they may extenuat, cut, and deuide, the grosse and clammy humors, and that they may consume & feede vp the superfluous humidity and moisture. They must vse wine that is white, thin, & meanly hot: for that by the thinnes of it doth extenuat the grossenes of the melancholy humor, and by the meane heat that it hath, it heateth the body by little and little, which is cooled with the melancholious humor, and it helpeth digestion, and also prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accustomed exercises (that is to say) you must suffer the to vse exercises, but not so much as they did in their helth. Neither may they vse frictions, deambulations, and other exercises of the body so often nor so vehemently as they did in their health, for that would cause peril and danger of obstruction. But if exercises be vsed moderately, and that in the time of intermission betweene the fits, they will void out excrements and bring other commodities which *Gal-en* rehearseth in lib. 2. de tuenda sanitate. They must altogether abstaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, because it doth heate, doth profite, yet, because it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obstruction, specially when the body doth abound with excrements. And if the quartane be short, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermission betweene the fittes, when the patients haile daies be, if he vse his wonted exercises. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes it must be kept soluble, either with his accustomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clisters first gentle and easie, and after sharper: for you must encrease the strenght and sharpenesse by little and little, as the matter of the feauer doth concoct and digest by little and little: for at the beginning (as is sayde before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easly. You may seeke examples of easie clisters out of the former Chapters. A clister somewhat sharper is this that followeth. R. mallowes, chammomill, mercury, leaues of blacke violets. ana. M. j. leaues of seene, the roots of polipody. ana. ʒ. v. harts-tongue. M. j. ss. seeth al these in sufficient quantity of water vntil the third part.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

Clister.

Piper.

*Prouision for
the intrailles.*

Unguentum.

*Prouokers of
vrine.*

*Purgation of
melancholy.*

Vomitus.

Vomite.

Then straine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *casta fistula*. \mathfrak{z} .j. *diapena laxatiua* \mathfrak{z} .ß. common oil \mathfrak{z} .iij. *melrosarum*. \mathfrak{z} .ß. salt gem. \mathfrak{z} .j. and make a clister. Within certain daies, giue to the patient *diarrion piperi* on: but becaufe it doth heat vehemently, you may not minister it daily, whose making and vertue you must seeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. de sanitate tuenda*. Also (as *Galen* saith) the patient shall doe rightly, if he drinke daily, onely pepper with water: for it heateth and dissolueth the grossnesse of windy spirites and vapours, and it extenuateth and digesteth the crude and raw humors, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hypochonders and sides. And these things must be done from the beginning of the feuer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and state. And if the sicke seeme now to be in the vigour and state of the disease, then he must vse a thinner diet, then he did before, or must doe afterward, and you must commaund long quiet & rest to the patient, least nature being occupied about digesting of the matter of the disease, should be called from her office and worke. Afterward you must prouide and forsee the intrailles which are wont to be swollen and stretched out with viscous, tough and grosse humours, and also with abundance of windy spirites and vapours, which being dissolued and emptied out, the bowels wax soft and are loosned. Therefore you must annoint them with those things which can mollifie and loosen, as be ointments which are made of barely meale, seed of *apium*, rootes of ireos, rew, and such like. Among other annoint the left side with this ointment. \mathcal{R} . of oile of capers. \mathfrak{z} .iij. oile of ireos, & of sweet almonds. ana. \mathfrak{z} .ij. seeds of *apium*, and of comin, rootes of ireos. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. After these things you must minister medicines, which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you minister such things before the inward members bee free from obstructions, because those medicins be hote, they cary the humors downe with them, and do encrease the obstructions. For to prouoke vrine, you must minister *mulsa*, wherein dil, or rew, or else *apium*, hath bene sodden. If signes of concoction do appeare, the you must straight way vse purging medicins which can purge out melancholy, and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter seeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out al at once, seeing the body is not able to suffer and beare so strong a purgation, as should purge out all that stubborne humour at once. You may seeke examples of such medicines, as doe purge out melancholy, out of the first booke in the Chapter of Melancholiousnesse. But yet aboue other things, *Aetius* praiseth sweet wine infused in the inward part of coloquintida, but so that you commixe with it some *apium*, or *daucus*, to make it pleasaunt. After meate, you must prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white hellebore first commixed with radish as is declared in the other booke, which if it worke little or nothing, you must minister hellebore by it selfe. And if any man abhor from hellebore, let him vse this or such like medicine. \mathcal{R} . iij. of radish, or distilled water of it. \mathfrak{z} .iij. *oximel simplex*. \mathfrak{z} .ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke, but they which cannot vomite, must be purged downward, such be they that haue a straight and slender breast. After purging you must giue them *theriaca*, or somewhat that is of like vertue, as this is. \mathcal{R} . *Liquor cyreniaci*, sine mirhe, pepper of each a like

like much; beat them by themselves, and commix them with the iuice of reu,
and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of ℥.ss. They that minister
any of these medicines at the beginning of the sicknesse, or at all, before the
vigour, state, and force thereof: they make of a simple quartaine oftentimes
a double quartaine, or without doubt they make the single quartaine greater
and more vehement: and of a double quartaine they make a triple quartaine,
or else the double one is made greater.

C H A P. X.

Of a quotidian Feuer.

DE QVOTIDIANA FEBRE.

QVOTIDIANA *Febris intermittens* (that is) an intermitting quotidian fe-
uer. It is engendred of putrified and rotten fleume being thrust of nature
by the sensible partes of the bodie. It is called of the Greeks *amphimerina*, be-
cause it causeth a fit euerie day. But if glasse fleume which is the coldest of all
other fleumes, do putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, (that is) if the whole
substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some
do not, then it engendreth a feuer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is
feuerous, and vehemently cold together, & at one present time he feelth im-
moderate heate and immoderate cold in all the partes of the bodie together.
For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread
by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, engendreth the rigour and cold, but
the other rotten part of the humor engendreth the feuer. A quotidian feuer
doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first
day, but in proceffe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a ri-
gour. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, litle &
weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the quotidian is
there swiftnesse of mouing of the pulses, nor greatnesse, nor vehemencie. The
heate in this feuer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a tertian: for it
neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies,
and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breath much &
often, & to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to desire to drinke
cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapour. Also
it is hardly kindled, and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it
come to the force and state. Moreouer, they that haue this feuer do not thirst,
because not only the tongue, but also the whole body in this feuer is moist.
The vrines in quotidian feuers either be white, and thinne and waterie: or
thicke, and troubled. There bursteth out no sweat at all in the first dayes, nei-
ther is there any exact and perfect rest from being feuerous. For the feuer re-
maineth ech time almost the space of 18. houres. There chanceth also to them
vomiting of fleume: and those things which are sent out by egestion, are col-
der, moister, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Also a quotidian fe-
uer doth chiefly vex them that be moist and flegmaticke of nature. Also it chan-
ceth in a moist season, specially in winter that is cold and moist, and in olde
folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer saw a young man
that was cholericke and dry by nature, taken with this feuer: but they that be

Cause.

αμφιμερινη.

Epialos febris.

Signa.

*Viluratio.**Curatio.**Unguentum.*

and most flegmatick, hauing a grosse substance of the body, and do liue an idle life, seruing their belly and giuen to drunkenness, vsing bathing often and specially after meate, they are soone taken with this quotidian feuer. Let the dyer in this feuer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly, what kind of diet it should be. In the first daies (that is) when signes of cruditie and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleume must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and clenfed. And therefore you must minister *oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammie humors, & it deliuereth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things which prouoke vrine, that the fleume (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the conduites, and be emptyed out. Therefore it is good to minister decoction of the root of *apium*, percelly, *ireos*, fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel rosarum*, and *sirupus de duabus radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and deuide. About the vigour and force of the feuer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things which being applyed outwardly, may ad strength to the stomack, such as be, masticke, spikenarde, wormewood, and such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment. R. oiles of masticke, wormewood & nard. ana. ℥. ij. ℞. masticke, cloues, and wood of aloës, ana. ℥. v. cinnamon. ℥. j. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the stomacke. The stomacke being strengthened, you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of radish, then after, meates must be eaten, for so it listeth vp the meates, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleume: for fleume when it is digest, may conveniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleume, it is euident in our other books, and this here sufficeth to cure a quotidian feuer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feuer ethicke.

DE HECTICA FEBRE.

*Hectica febris.**Causa.*

HECTICA febris in Latin, the feuer ethicke in English. It is a feuer wherein an vnaturall heare is not onely kindled in the spirites and humours, but now also it is kindled in the massie, sound, and fleshy parts, and members. This feuer knoweth no payne, & they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate, seing all the members of their body be equally heate, (as Galene declareth abundantly in his booke *De inaequali intensitate*). The feuer ethicke is ingendred and caused two wayes. First for the most part, of burning feuers which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the bodie of the heart, or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feuers are not onely ethickes, but also *marasmus* (that is) consuming and melting feuers: for feuers being ingendred, (the humiditie yet still remaining) when they haue caught and occupied the body of the heart, hereupon they are specially kindled

fed and inflamed like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring of the feuer ethicke. Another way of ingendring of them is this, when they begin of themselves by and by, being ingendred as diarie feuers be either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning of the heate of the Sunne. The feuers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions, if those feuers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and dry, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is verie much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you poure abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small & weake panteth alwaies vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *marasmodos* (that is) consuming. The feuer ethicke which turneth into *marasmus* or a consumption, is very ready and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses & heat by touching them, you may see the eies wonderfull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes, for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye browes stick out. Also there hangeth on the haire of the eye lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanly affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long journey in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perissheth, and the skin of their forehead is dry and retched out, and their eye lids winke often as though they were sleepey, but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places, for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast, and if you touch their skinne, it is verie drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pull it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thin, hard, weake and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him doth seeme weak: but a litle after it bursteth out sharpe & gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shalbe a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse & swiftnesse. It is called a feuer Ethicke, so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and referued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the body, then it is an absolute & perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *marasmos*. For the cure of a feuer ethicke before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these pointes (that is,) to coole and moisten aswell with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the aire that the patient doth breath in, be cold and moist. And if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the 6. Chap. in

*Marasmus.**Signa.**Hellica febris.**Marasmus.**Curatio.**Aer.**Diet.*

Lac.j.

Poin.

Nota.

Balneum.

the cure of the tertian. He must also vse meates, that do coole and moiste, as broth of ptisan, bread steeped a litle in cold water, the flesh of kids, sea-fants, birds of the mountaines, cocks stones, capons flesh, reare eggs, new cheefe without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters lettuce, endiue, succorie, gourds, spinach, mallows, and such like: cherries, proines, pomegranates, melons, figs and such like. He must also take milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feuer be not compounded and mixed with another feuer that is engendred of rottenesse of humors. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue bene vsed to it before. Let him drink thereof moderately, or let him drink water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or wine that is watered, and thin. Moreouer it is good to them that haue this feuer to eate meat often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware & take heed that they eat not great abundance of meat at one meale, which vertue being weak should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue moderate niouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feuer ethick; for purgations are hotter & vehementer then they are able well to suffer; but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clisters that can coole and moisten, adding to them marrow of *capra fistula*. You must minister such things within the body as haue power & vertue to coole & moisten. As among the compound medicines be these, sirupe of violets, of water lillies, and of tame endiue, *sirupus acetosus*, and such like. Also *diarrhodon abbatii*, *diatrageacanthum frigidum*, *diapapauer* & such like. Of simples these be good, the iuyces & distilled waters of lettuce, purslaine, tame endiue, and poppy. Among those things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feuer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be caried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to carie the sheete at each corner one. The water of the bathe must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarrie in it long least any of his moysture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate it. There be some that vse to seeth in the water of the bathe herbes, as violets, mallows, lettuce, flowres of water lillies and such like: some other do seeth calues feet, or lambes heads vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware, least any thing be powred on his head, seing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole bodie, the sheete being let downe easily, and then againe lifted vp by foure young men which must carie him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped all ouer once in cold water, and he may not tarrie in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bathe, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* sayth.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheet be ready, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, & first wipe him with sponges, and after with soft linnen clothes. And let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other this liniment is good. Rx. oile of violets. ℥.ss. oile of gourds. ℥.iij. new butter without salt,

swines

swines greace, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. commix them, and make a liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it musculage of *stragacanthæ*. ʒ. ij. marowe of calues shankles. ʒ. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oyle of water lillies, and of poppie, are good, and specially oyle of roses, which (as Galen saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed, or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also, it profiteth him to haue his hart cooled, and moistened with epithemes: as is this, R. waters of violets, water lillies, and lettuce, ana. ʒ. iij. strong vineger. ʒ. ʒ. red roses, all the saunders, ana. ʒ. j. pouder of *diamargariton*. ʒ. ʒ. seed of purslaine. ʒ. iij. saffron. ʒ. ʒ. commixe them and make an epitheme, and apply it to the region of the hart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus, R. water of lettuce. ʒ. ij. vineger. ʒ. j. *diarrhodon abbatis*. ʒ. j. ʒ. scraping of iuorie. ʒ. ʒ. purslaine. ʒ. ʒ. commixe them and make an epitheme and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feuer ethick, medicines are good which can coole and moisten, with their odour and sauour, as be floures of water lillies, purslaine, violets, roses, and such like. Also you may find mo things, that are good for the cure of the feuer ethicke, in the second booke, in the Chap. of the Pufficke or Consumption. And in curing of the feuer ethicke this onely must be your study and labour, that the bodie may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applied outwardly, and specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applied and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboute an C. yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Dionysius Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulsio, foris oleo* (that is) I keepe me moist with *mulsio* within and oile I annoint vpon my skinn.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iocoris.

Odoramentum

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an hemitricke feuer.

DE HAEMITRITICO SEV SEMITERTIANA.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will only speake of that feuer which is compounded of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *hemitriticus*, and in Latin *semitertiana*, in English halfe a tertian. It is so called because this whole feuer hath halfe the nature of the said feuers, each of them: by the example of this compound feuer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers. Therefore an hemitricke feuer is caused, when putrified fleume is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreame parts. Therefore the feuer which is compounded of them both causeth horroure and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a tertian, and greater & more vehement then the cooling of a quotidian: so that it is a meane betwene them both. It is engendred two sundry wayes: for either two fits are ioyned

Hemitriticus quid.

Cause.

Signa.

R. iij

together by and by at the beginning, and do invade the patient together both at once, or els each of them commeth separate from the other. Therefore when the tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feuer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, & there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour, but when the quotidian exceedeth the tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a little shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vex him. But when the intermitting tertian, and the continuall quotidian be equall and of like force & greatnesse, the fit doth come with horreur and shaking for cold. And when the quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horreur waxe lesse and gentler: but if the tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horreur increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feuer is ingendred of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian being equall of like force, greatnesse and strength, then it is called an exquisite *hemitriticus* ague: but if one feuer do exceede the other, then it is called an vnpure hemitritice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite hemitritice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed (that is) a tertian and a quotidian: you must also vse a cure conuenient & agreeing equally to a tertian & a quotidian. But in an vnpure hemitritice, where there is most of choler, or most of fleume, you must also varie and chaunge the cure, according to the humour and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the tertian. But if fleume abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound, but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we neede not in this place rehearse the remedies whereby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the tertian and quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly & perfectly the curing of simple feuers, he shall also know how to cure compound feuers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feuers being knowen, and considered, it is most readie to any man to cure compound feuers, so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feuers.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Pestilence.

DE PESTILENTIA.

Seeing that at this present time and day, there be euery where treatises of the Pestilence made of diuerse new Authors: I neede not now long dispute here of it: but it shal be sufficient, if we do briefly declare the causes, signes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diseases before. There be two especiall causes of the Pestilence (as Galen writeth in *Lib. 1. De differentiis febrium. Cap. 5.* The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten ayre. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors

Exquisite hemitriticeus.

Non exquisitus hemitriticeus.

Cura.

Cause.

1.

2.

be

be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occasion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted ayre. Therefore the chiefest cause why men are infected with the Pestilence, is breathing in of ayre, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the most part of breathing in of ayre which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies nor burned or buried, as it chaunceth in warres, or the euaporation of some peoles, fennes or marishes in the sommer time. It chaunceth also sometime to come before immoderate heate of the ayre, when the temperature of the ayre is chaunged from his naturall state, to immoderate heat and moisture, of necessitie the Pestilence must follow. Hereupon Galen saith, that of all temperaments of the ayre, the worst is, that which is hot & moist. Also oftentimes (as is aforesaid) naughtie and corrupt diet ingendreth humors in the bodie that be easie and readie to putrifie and rotte, and so is the cause why such bodies are infected with the Pestilence. And then truly they specially haue the Pestilence, which vse a naughty and corrupt dyet, and so be full of all kinds of superfluities. Therefore it neede not seeme maruellous, if sometime some one among many (which yet doth very seldome chaunce) be infected with this disease, the ayre yet not being pestilent and corrupt. For they that keep a good and healthfull diet, and be without superfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or else very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and pestilent ayre and may easily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and state. Hereby it is easie to answere them that aske, how it chaunceth that all men are not taken equally with the Pestilence, seeing euery one is constrained to breath in the pestilent ayre. The first cause why some remaine vnhurt, is because they be not full of superfluous humiditie and moisture, but do vse moderate diet & exercises, & haue their bodie easie to breath out vapours. Another cause is, because all mens bodies be not of like disposition & affect. For dispositions of mens bodies are of many sundry formes, for some bodies are quickly overcome and infected, and doe most readily suffer any cause: but some againe be insuperable, and cannot be overcome, nor will at all suffer the infection, or else very hardly. And therefore the greatest portion of ingendring of diseases, is the disposition of the bodie of him that suffereth the disease. For els all men, that taried long in the burning heat of the Sunne, or that vsed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine or inflamed with anger, or affected with sadness, should fall into a feuer. Also we doe not deny, but that sometime great plagues & pestilence be sent of God for the grievous sinnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he punisheth the great offences of vs: whereof there be many euident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel cap. 5*. The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Pestilence is rife and flourisheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of haruest or Autumn: for the both the aire & mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt, & rot, for many causes. There be many & diuerse signes of the Pestilence to come rehearsed of the new Authors: among which signes, the first is the chaunging of the times of the yeare. The second is often Phenomina in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pusses, and

whereon rottennesse beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues from God.

The time of the Plague.

Signes of the aire corrupted.

1 2
3

Pocks, and measles do not only vex children, but also young folke of perfect age. The fourth is, when the windes are often in the South and in the West in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine, but yet it doth not raine at all. The sixth is, if women conceiued with child, doe suffer abortion for euery light cause. The seventh is, when in sommer after raine suddenly a great abundance of frogs of diuerse colours do gather together on a heape. The eight is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beasts and fishes. The tenth is flying of birdes from their neasts, leauing their egges there still. The eleuenth is the dearth of victuals and corne. The twelfth, (which is the most certaine signe) is a hot and moist temperature of the year. There be many signes, that declare whe one is already infected with the Pestilence. The first is if the outward members be cold, & the inward mebers burning hot. The second is heauinesse, wearinesse, & slouth of the whole body, & difficultie in breathing. The third is paine & heauinesse in the head. The fourth is carefulesse of the mind and sadnes. The fifth is a maruellous inclination for the most part to sleepe, for sometime watching and raiuing do vex him. The sixth is a diuerse & frowning looke of the eyes. The seventh is losse of appetite. The eight is immoderate thirst & often vomiting. The ninth is bitternesse & driness of the mouth. The tenth is a pulse, frequent, smal, & deepe. The eleuenth is the vrine, for the most part troublous, thicke, and stincking like beasts vrine. Although sometime the vrine of them seemeth to differ litle from the vrine of healthfull men, therefore by such an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other signes be quickly deceived, suspecting no hurt, because of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the most surest token of all, is, if there do arise and ingender borches; behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the share, without anie manifest cause, or also if carbuncles do suddenly arise in any meber: for when they appeare, they betoken strength of nature, which being strong and mightie doth labour to driue the poyson out of the bodie. Also they doe declare, which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, doe thrust out from them the venomous humors. For if they do appeare in the neck, they do declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes; the hart, but if they appeare in the share, the liuer is most affected. But seeing that borches do not alwaies appeare, (which is most perillous and daungerous, for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expel and driue out the venomous humors) you must haue respect to other signes & tokens, which be rehearsed a litle before. As for the Cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing doe let, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other partes of the face and necke, you must let blood out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side, it is commonly called *Basilica*; or if that veine will not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch doe appeare in the share, you must draw out blood from the anckles of the same side. But if there doe appeare no botch outwardly, you must drawe out blood from the same side where there

Signes of one infected.

Signifying of borches.

*Curatio.
Vena sectio.*

there is felt greatest paine and heauinesse. But out of which veine you must let blood, the paine and grief of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: for if the members about the brest be grieved and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most grieved and afflicted, cut the *basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the ham or anckles. And if nature be strong, and other things not letting, you must draw out blood abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloudletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomacke is filled with meate, then he must vomite straight way. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poyson, that it may draw the poyson to it, and call it backe from the heart, for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is praise worthie, which is called *Electuarium de ouo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I doe preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruellous effectes and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerse sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white diptaine, which cannot well be gotten, for the which it is better to vse the leaues of true diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the aforesaid *Electuarie* to them that be of perfect age. \mathfrak{z} . j. and to them that be younger sometime. \mathfrak{z} . ij. will suffice, you must dissolue it in water of roses, or endiue, or scabious: Also this medicine vsed is good to preserue a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of barley, or the quantitie of a pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much. \mathfrak{R} . *Theriaca Andromachi*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Mithridatum*. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Bolcarmaniacke* prepare. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . waters of Roses, scabious and buglosse. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. Commixe them. What powre and strength is in bolcarmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, Galen teacheth abundantly in libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus. Where he writeth that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as drunke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vsed in the time of the Pestilence. Moreouer this powder doth profite verie much. \mathfrak{R} . the leaues of true diptaine, the roote of turmentill, the roote of pimpermell, zedoarie, gentian, roote of *Betonica altalis*, commonly called *tunica*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . *Bolcarmoniacke* prepare. \mathfrak{z} . j. terra lemnia. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *Aloes epatike*, mirrhe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . saffron. \mathfrak{z} . j. masticke. \mathfrak{z} . ij. and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*. Wherefore minister to the sicke. \mathfrak{z} . j. in rose water or sorrell water. When the patient hath taken some of the aforesaide medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with soft sheetes, and well couered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure or fise houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tyles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient, for these by reason of their heate will readily prouoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onely take heede, that he doe neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating you must diligently wipe

Cucurbita.

Vomitum.

Alexiteria.

Electuarium
de ouo.

Potis.

Bolus arme-
niacus.

Puluis optimus

Sudor.

*Aeris correctio**When meate
should be mi-
nistred.**Of sleepe.**Potio.**Comfortatives.**Electuarium.**Epithema.**Succulum.*

off the sweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterwarde let the sicke rise from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him chewe the open ayre. Let the ayre of the chamber in which the sicke doth lie, be corrected, amended and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes, dayly foure or five times. It is best for the sicke to chaunge from one chamber to another. Because the ayre of one chamber by the continuall taryng of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath sweate, giue vnto him the broath of a chicken, and that you must doe often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refreshed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eat often, and but verie little at once: for they that are thus fedde, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eat the flesh of chickens, sodden with sorrell, or with iuyce of lymons, or else veriuycce. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day by talke of the assistantes, by rubbing of the extreame partes, by pulling of their eares, nose, and hayre. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dippe a sponge in very sharpe vineger, and holde it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion. *Rx.* Iulep of violets. *℥. iij.* syrupe of the sharpe iuyce of Cytrons. *℥. j. β.* syrupe of sowen Endiue. *℥. ij.* of the decoction of sorrell, scabious, and floures of buglosse. *℥. tenne.* or so much of their distilled waters, commixe them and make a potion. Also you must take the water wher, in barley hath bene sodden a little, and commixe with it iuyce of roses, or sorrell, or lymons, or of vnripe grapes, and minister it in steede of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as this is. *Rx.* conserues of violets, roses and buglosse. *ana. ℥. j. β.* Bolc armoniacke prepare. *℥. j.* redde corall. *℥. j.* barks of Cytron apple. *℥. j. β.* Camphire. *℥. v.* with syrupe of the iuyce of sharpe Cytrons, as much as is sufficient, make an Electuarie or liquide antidote. Also you must lay vppon the region of the heart, (specially if the sicke doe yet feele heate about the breast) this Epitheme. *Rx.* waters of roses, buglosse and sorrell. *ana. ℥. iij.* powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*. *℥. j.* wood of *Aloes*, red saunders, the barks of a Cytron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart. *ana. ℥. v.* saffron, grain, fixe, commixe them all and make an Epitheme. But you must note that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote: and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straight way: for then they constraîne and shut vp the pores, and so doe bring vnto the patient no small griece. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bagges, as this is. *Rx.* floures of red roses, water lillies, and of violets. *ana. ℥. ij.* of all the saunders, corall white and redde, *spodium*, pearles. *ana. ℥. iij.* cinnamon, cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barks of the Cytron apple, saffron. *ana. ℥. j.* seede of sorrell. *℥. ij.* seede of purslaine. grain. *iiij.* beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bagges of silke, and apply

apply each after other being heate. Moreouer you must altogether couer and labour, that the venimous humours may be entised and drawn to the place where the botches appeare and burst out, and you must doe it by setting to of cupping glasses, or by medicines applyed, that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is. *Rx.* fat figges in number fixe, great raisons. \mathfrak{z} . β . salt gumme. \mathfrak{z} . ij . honic. \mathfrak{z} . j . with oyle of cammomill, make it into the forme of an emplaister, and apply it hot to the botch. Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men. *Rx.* a great onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the core within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of rew or sage, which done, stoppe the hole fast that is in the toppe of the onion with lute, and set the onion in the imbers to roast. And when you doe thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barks of it, and then bray it in a mortar, vntill it be thicke like an implaister, and apply it hot to the botch. You neede not to be affraid to apply *theriaca* to the botches, because of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valescus* and some other authors. For *theriaca*, and such like medicines against poyson do not worke their operation by driving the poyson from them (as they being in a wonderfull error doe affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poyson to them (as *Galen* teacheth, in his booke *de theriaca ad Pisonem*.) Also this emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch. *Rx.* meale of fenugrecke, and linseed, of floures of cammomill. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . rootes of *althea* and white lillies. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . figges in number fixe, leaues of true diptaine. \mathfrak{z} . ij . rootes of valerian. \mathfrak{z} . ij . mustard seede. \mathfrak{z} . β . dounes dong. \mathfrak{z} . β . oyles of cammomill and lillies. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . make them into the forme of an emplaister or pultise. Also this is practised. *Rx.* of *emplastrum diachylon simplex*. \mathfrak{z} . ij . of gumme armoniacke, and *galbanum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j . bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesaide things, you must then lay vpon it goose dong dissolved in the common oyle, or in oyle of cammomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here as touching the cure of them which be taken with the Pestilence.

Now we will briefly expound, by what meanes a man may preserue and defende himselfe from the infection of the Pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certaine place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the pestilence is not caused, but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt aire: there can not be a more present remedie to preserue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoide the pestilent aire, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such aire, vnlesse we get vs away into some other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectious. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place verie soone. Hereupon it is not rashly sayde of the common sort, that these three Aduerbes *Cito*, *longe*, and *tardē*, in the time of the Pestilence, do more pleasure and profite then three shoppes very well furnished. Therefore they that may conueniently for their businesse fly away,

Outward medicines.

Emplastrum.

Error of Gentilis and Valescus.

Emplastrum suppuratorium.

Aliud.

A preseruati-
on from the
pestilence.

Flight is the
best remedie.

let them not suffer themselves to be perswaded by anie meanes to tarie in the pestilent aire: which if they doe, they shall foolishly put them selues in danger of Pestilent death: but if you may not flie for vrgent businesse, and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tarie, be without all kind of stinke, and kepe cleane from all filthinesse & sluttishnesse. Let the windowes of it be iust shut, specially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is risen about the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you fro the infection. You must make fires dayly in your houses, with oken wood, iuniper, *tamariscus*, laurell, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and strength in fire to amend and correct the rottennesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following. *R. rosamari. M. s. sage, betonie, wormewood, marioram, organ. ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder. R. of iuniper berries. ʒ. j. mirrhe. ʒ. iij. frankensense and masticke. ana. ʒ. iij. ʒ. roote of benedicta, ʒ. j. rew. ʒ. ʒ. cypresse barks. ʒ. j. ʒ. roote of Angelica, lauender, ana. ʒ. ij. beate all together, & make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, iuniper cleft in small stickes, or the berries of iuniper. Let richer folke vse wood of Aloes, or powder of Gallia moschata, cloues, and such like. When necessitie constraineth you to go abroad, carrie this or such a like pomander with you. R. Lapdanum. ʒ. iij. storax calamita. ʒ. ij. cinamon, mace, cloues, nutmegges. ana. ʒ. j. wood of Aloes. ʒ. j. spikenard. ʒ. ʒ. mirrhe, masticke, frankensence, ana. ʒ. ʒ. muske and amber. ana. gra. iij. powder them and searce them, and with storax liquida and water of marioram as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a pomum odoratum. In sommer time, let the aire be purified & corrected with cold things, as with floures of roses, violets, water lillies, vine leaues and branches, willow leaues, & such other like. Also sprinkle the pauement with water of roses, sorrell, and such like, or with cold water wherewith some vinegar is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell roses, vinegar, camphire, saunders, & such other like: or to smell to this pomander. R. Lapdanum. ʒ. ʒ. storax calamita. ʒ. iij. flowers of water lillies, roses, and violets. ana. ʒ. j. barks of the citron apple. ʒ. j. ʒ. all the saunders. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of maces and cinamon. ana. ʒ. j. masticke. ʒ. j. white poppie. ʒ. ʒ. Camphire. ʒ. ʒ. amber, muske. ana. gra. ij. bray and commix them with storax liquida and rose water, and make a pomander. But seeing Galene saith, that one of the chiefeest things which they that would be preserued from the pestilence ought to regard and take heede of, is that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breath out the vapours. Truly there is nothing more to be eschewed at such a time, then ouer much deuouring, and swallowing in gluttonously of meat & drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as ingender good blood, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commix with the meates that be eaten at that time, some vinegar, or some other sharpe iuyce,*

Suffiment a.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

Diet.

iuyce, as veriuyce, or iuyce of citron apples, or of lysons or oranges. In Summer time he must vse for potherbes, buglosse, endiue, succorie, and lettuce: and in Winter let him vse sage, parchy, ^{epum}, marioram, balme, and hysope. He must abstaine from all fruites, vnlesse they be sharpe, as be pomegranates, citrons, lymons, oranges and such like, which are good for him royle. Let his drinke be wine that is thinne and waterier. Let euery man beware of strong wine that is vlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vse exercise, but in a meane and in a temperate place, and in an aire being first purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you must eschue common dauncings openly, and also turnings, leaping, and whatsoever such like exercise there be that requireth oft breathing in of aire. Therefore because of this also in the time of the pestilence he must eschue companies gathered together by magistrates by some open commandement, for matters of the common wealth, as courtes, sessions and such like. Let his sleepe, watchings and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he must sleepe in a chamber that is close, well stopped and shut, lest the pestilent aire should enter into it: the aire of which chamber must be purified and corrected with some perfume, aforesaid morning and euening. He must vse sheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from sleepe let this be his first care and worke, to emptie the bodie of superfluities and excrements. And you must onely take heed and beware, that the bodie be not costieue at any time. Therefore if it do not of itselfe void out excrements daylie, you shall prouoke them out with *pilule rufi*, or with a soft clyster, or with a suppositarie made for the purpose. When the body is emptied from superfluities and excrements, as well by the güttes as by the bladder, he must take some medicine that can preserue him from the infection of the pestilence, for the which there be many things before rehearsed. And if necessarie businesse do constrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew zedoarie, or root of angelica, or pimprenell, or you shall smell to rew. For the fauor of it doth maruelously resist the pestilent aire. He must eschue all carnall lust, specially immoderate vsing thereof. After copulation, he must keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes must altogether be abhorred, as a most present poison, specially common bathes, because when the pores of the hodie are opened by the heate of it, the pestilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vse a priuate bath, let them preserue and defend themselves most diligently from the corrupted aire, when they go out of the bath. But it is better and more wholesome to vse frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let bathes alone, but yet you may wash the head weakly with lie wherein hath bene sodden *asarum*, marioram, lavender, rosemarie, betony, sage, cammomill, and such other like, but young men and such as abound with bloud, must in the time of the pestilence vse bloodletting: and that not onely once, but, (if nothing let to the contrarie) bloodletting often doth profite much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that specially in the spring time and autumn. As for per-

Exercitium

Excretion

*Venus.
Balneum.*

Bloudletting.

Purgatio.

Preseruatius.

Pilule communes.

Pilule.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Puluis.

turbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth, that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilule rufi* or *pestilentialis*, or else *communes*, are principall and chiefe. *Rx.* aloës eparick two parts, saffron orientall, mirrhe. ana. part 1. with white wine, or with water of scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily .ʒ. j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles because of the aloës and mirrhe in them, which do most resist putrefaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pilles following. *Rx.* aloës eparick ʒ. iij. mirrhe. ʒ. j. agaricke prepare. ʒ. j. saffron orientall ʒ. ʒ. bole armoniacke prepare. ʒ. j. seed of Citron apples. ʒ. ij. masticke. ʒ. ʒ. roote of pimperl. ʒ. ʒ. with rose water make 13. pilles of ʒ. j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *electuarium de nucibus*. *Rx.* of walnuts in number 20. of fat figges in number 13. rew. *M.* ij. of wormwood, *cotula fetida* & scabious. ana. *M.* j. roote of *aristolechia longa*. ʒ. ʒ. roote of *aristolechia rotunda*. ʒ. j. ʒ. of turmentill, *petasitis*, and pimperl. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. leaues of true diptaine. *M.* j. of laurell berries. ʒ. iij. of harts-horne burnt. ʒ. ij. ʒ. macés, mirrhe, bole armoniacke, true *terra lemnia*. ana. ʒ. iij. salt of the sea. ʒ. j. ʒ. *nux vomica*. ʒ. ij. floures of buglosse. *M.* j. beate them all, and commixe them with .ʒ. ij. of clarified hony, and made a liquide medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is verie good. *Rx.* leaues of true diptaine. ʒ. ʒ. of the rootes of zedorie, *tunica*, pimperl, and turmentill. ana. ʒ. ʒ. barks of the citron apple. ʒ. iij. *terra lemnia*. ʒ. vj. bole armoniacke. ʒ. j. mirrhe chosé, aloës eparick. ana. ʒ. ʒ. saffron. ʒ. ʒ. mastick. ʒ. j. liquorice, ʒ. j. scabious and sorrell, ana. ʒ. iij. red saunders. ʒ. j. scraping of luorie, and *aubera*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. the bone of the Harts heart, red corall. ana. ʒ. ij. seed of pursflaine. gran. s. bray all finely and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these lozenges, with sugar, and waters of roses and scabious, and minister daily of them. ʒ. j. or more, or lesse according to age and strength. Also onely bole armoniacke taken with vineger, is notably praised.

Likewise *theriaca*, *mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plentie named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

The end of the fourth booke

*Omni solum Forti patria est
Ingenuis perit Caro Poeta mori.*



THE FIFT BOOKE

CONTAINING THE CVRING

OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN

ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

What that swelling is which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the diuision of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THES Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chyrurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of olde writers haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeede *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and all other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kinde of those swelling tumours, which commonly are sayd to chance besides nature, which the Latines haue verie fitly termed *Abcessus*, and the crew of younger Phisitions do call it *exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the Interpreter of *Auicene*: of the which, as also of all other kindes we will intreate particularly in his severall Chapter. Although indeed it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumors besides nature: appointing it to be diuerse from that which they call *exitura*, and also from that other kinde *pustula*. For vnder the name of *Apostemes*, they will conclude and place those tumors onely which being lifted vp into a great bignesse, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humors (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumors besides nature by *Auicene* and his followers, it is thus commonly defined. An *Aposteme* is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bignesse, which definition they do affirme to be essential, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do verie sufficiently explaine the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, & the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities,

Apostema.

Abcessus.

Apostema.
The common
definition of
Apostema.

Three kinds of
diseases appoin-
ting the essence
of tumors be-
sides nature.

Accidentall
definitions.

Definitio pri-
ma.
Secunda.
Tertia.

A perfect defi-
nition besides
nature, taken
out of the writ-
ings of Galen.
The division of
a tumor besides
nature into his
species after
the opinion of
the later sort.

which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: All which distinctions and diversities, Galen doth recite in his hooke intituled *de morbo & symptmate*. But these three kinds of sores, which in that swelling, besides nature commonly called *Apossema*, do concur establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: Intemperature, which they also call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a sinister composition, and the solution of that agreeing ynitie which nature affordeth to euerie bodie. To which three kinds, the Greekes haue assigned three opposite and fitt termes, calling the first *anoxeia*, the second *pusis*, the third *anuresis*, &c. but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apossema*: for definitions I dare not tearme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined; neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence, which they very well knowing, are content to let them goe vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue desumed and taken out of Galen his booke which he wrote *de tumoribus præter naturam*. An *Apossema* or tumor besides nature, is one of those things which happening vnto the body, doeth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremest dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of Galen his words which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinarie assertion. You may fashion (if you please) manie such definitions, as this for one. An *Apossema* is an increment exceeding naturall constitution: or this: an *Apossema* is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state & habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas Galen in his lib 13. *Therap meth.* hath these wordes: in this thirtieth part of our whole worke we will begin to discoure of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more bigge, so that you seeing the slender weight of these definitions, you must annexe this particule, *actiones ledens*, hurting the duties of the body, or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall: for euerie tumor making distention or swelling in length, breadth or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature either in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or euerie excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apossema*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as Galen sayeth in his booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not onely to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole body, as in any member of the same. For grosse men, although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie: yet they haue not this distention besides nature, but (as he saith) onely not naturally: for they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those increments, which are besides nature: and those tumors which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the tast of griefe, may well be said to be about & beyond nature, but not besides nature, as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely be maruellously increased, or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoiance, this cannot appositively be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond

yond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of Galene, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions thereof. But such like tumours besides nature are wont to be deuided into three kinds by Guido, and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions, and pushes or vicers. Impostumes they call great tumours, in which the matter whereof it springeth, doth offend in plentie or quantitie: pushes are those litle tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in qualitie than in quantitie, yea and in them there lurketh a poysonous venim (as they say) but the abscessions are those tumours which the Latines call *Abscessus*, and of the Greekes may well be named *αποστημα*, as we prooued before: but let it be lawfull for euerie man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as Galen sayth they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselves: but leauing all the scrupulous and Scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumours or impostumes, (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will begin with inflammation.

Apostema,

Pushle.

Exure.

CHAP. II.

Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature.

DE DIFFERENTIIS TUMORVM, QVI PRAETER NATVRAM INCIDVNT.

THERE be many and sundry differences of tumors besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apostumes: the differences whereof, of the later Chyrurgians are obserued, to proceede either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the Accidents, or from the affected partes, or else from the efficient causes. The differences, which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the litenesse thereof. Amongest the bigge tumours, they do reckon *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in flethie places, which are fit to be distended) and *edema*, *erysipelas*, and *scirrhus*, which all do grow yp to a great bignesse and quantitie. Litle tumours are called of them litle eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skin, and the vttermoſt parts of the body, as the Greeks leprosie, the scabbe, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more at large hereafter. The matter of the aforesayd tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall (that is to say) fleume, melancholie, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature, sometime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yelow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre

The diuision of a tumour into his differences. From whence the differences of tumours besides nature are taken of the later sort. Substantia.

Materia.

Accidentia.**Pars affecta.****Causa efficiens.**

From whence
the difference
of tumours a-
boue nature do
come & arise.

Emphysema.**Calidi humores.****Tumores frigidi.****Tumores serofi.**

Tumores
complicati.
One euill see-
meth to haue
affinitie with
the other.

vnto another place. The symptomes or accidents, which are commonly incident to these tumours are, griefe, heat, softnesse, hardnesse and such like; from the which they will deriue some differences: but those which they take from the members and from the affected partes, are *ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the squince, the inflammation of the throat, *phyma*, *phlycthemum*, and those inflammations which we terme *glandula* and *bubones*. But the efficient causes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congestion and fluxe, and *crisis* (that is to say) iudgement thereof, which happeneth in diseases: there be also certaine other causes both internall and externall, whereof we will dispute more copiously & earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truly all diuersities and differences of these kindes of swellings chancing about nature, haue their beginning from the nature and substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth (as witnesseth *Galen* in his book which he wrote of tumours hapning about nature.) Likewise in his 2. book that he wrote vnto *Glauco*. cap. 13. meth. med. in which places he declareth that the varietie of all swellings which are about nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when (saith he) a flatuous matter hath more free access, then also the tumours are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *phlegmone*, whe as bloud aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when melancholie hath his course: and they be also more vexed with *edema*, when fleume or reume descending from the head doth raigne. Also they be grieved with the disease *Scirrhus*, when either a thicke or too cold a humor is seled in some part thereof. Therefore all tumours do chance (as *Galen* affirmeth) besides nature, which proceede either of humors, or of flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thin filmes that couer the bones, sometime in the belly, sometime in the intrayles, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *peritoneum*. The Greeks call it *Emphysema*: and *Auicenna* termeth it a windie *apostema*. If such swellings happen of humors, then they are either hot or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumors come of the best blood (that is to say) which is perfectly ruddy, & of a meane soundnesse, & moderat qualitie, & then the Greeks call it *phlegmone*, the Latines *inflammatio*: or they proceed of yealow choler or of burning & thin bloud, or else of those things which be hotter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin fleume; & then the Greeks call it *edema*, but our Phisitions terme it *laxus tumor*: the interpreter of *Auicenna* *indimias*, or else it is caused through the humour of choler, or through thicke, cold and clammy fleume. They call this *Scirrhus*, the Latins *durities*, the Arabians, *sephirus*. Also swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous bloud, as hereafter shalbe declared. Tumours are said to be mingled when such kind of humors tempred together, & if one maisteth the other, from that which exceedeth in the mixture, is the name giue to the swelling, as in blud ruling choler, we will call *phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatodes*, and also because melancholy gouerning, *Erysipelas* is said to be *phlegmonades*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretatio, both *Scirrhus phlegmonosus* with *phlegmone scirrhus*: & *edema phlegmonosus* with *phlegmone edematosa*. And after this example you shal name the other tumors, although there chase together comixtio of three or foure

four humors at once. Moreover if the humours be of like force, & equally incorporated, so that the one cannot overcome the other, then we will name the tumors by the coupling together of those humors which they stirre or raise up. As if blood be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the kind & nature of *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*. These truly be the chiefe swellings and tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humors (that is to say) *phlegmone*, *erysipelas*, *edema*, *schirrhus*: vnto the which innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced & comprehended vnder them, although they haue chose to themselves diuers names according to their sundry causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *phlegmone*, *phlegmon*, which is called *parvus* (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *phyma* & *tuberculum*, also it is named of the same *Celsus* *terminatio*, or *Oribasius*, the kinds or species of *phyma*, but of *Aetius*, *phigethla*: also they be called *dothienes*, which *Celsus* doth call *furunculi*, *felons*. Likewise *gangrena* of some men, *regio* (that is to say) mortification, but not absolute, & also *sphaselus*, which is called of the Latins *syderatio*, and of *Auicenna* *ascachilos*. *Carbunculus* also is called of the Greekes *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicenna* writeth in the chapter *de pruna & igne persico*. But vnto *erysipelas* are referred *herpetes*, which in kind be two manner of wayes (that is to say) *miliars* and *exedentes*, byting and gnawing, which the Greekes doe call *scorpiops*. He which expoundeth *Auicenna* hath called both the kindes *formice*, but he being deceiued with the likenesse of the name, hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great ouersight, with those verruce which the Greekes call *mirmecie*, the Latines *formice*: *Celsus* seemeth to haue comprehended those *herpetes* vnder the name of *ignis sacer*: but the Chyrurgians of later time haue numbered them among the cholericke pustules (as they terme them.) There commeth also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *phlystene*, and therefore they belong vnto *erysipelas*, whereof *Auicenna* doth intreat in his chap. *de rescis & inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors caused of fleume (that is to say) vnto *edemata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greekes vnder the name of *apostema*, which be called of *Auicenna* *nodi*, of *Haly abbas*, *selaa*, and *dubeleta* *Phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: whereof there be diuerse kinds according to the diuers matters contained in the. Moreover in *Galen* there be three such kinds of *abscessus*, chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greekes: those be, *atheromata*, *stratomata*, *melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies contained in them, as we will declare hereafter more at large. There also is a kind of *apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherein are other things contained, which do represent not only the properties of humours: but also of certain found bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome. And of these also we will speake hereafter when we shall intreat of abscessions. But now vnto the said kinds of *abscessus*, there appertaine certaine names of tumors being deuised of the later sort, & neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *testudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *salpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto *atheroma*, the other vnto *melicerides*. But vnto *stratomata* doth belong a certaine swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing of humors.

What tumors do associate phlegmone.

Erysipelaptofe tumors.

Aedematofes tumors.

Certaine new names of tumors giuen of the latter sort of Physicians.

Tessudo.
Talpa.
Ganglium.

Struma.

Leucophleg-
matia.

Scirrhus tu-
mor.

Cancer.

Carcinoma.

Elephantiasis.

Verruca.

Porra.

Myrmecia.

Acrochord-
on.

Clauus.

Idos.

Thymion.

Cornua.

Galli.

Dracunculi.

Posule.

in his place. Hitherto also do pertain the evils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of Auicene *glandule*, which do differ from the aforesaid *noat*. There cometh also of flemme that which the common sort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *adematia*. These be called of the Greekes *Cherades*, of the Latines, *struma*. Notwithstanding Galene in a certaine place amongst the diseases named *scirrh*, doth take it for *dermites*. Also vnto *adema* is referred in Galene that kinde of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *leucophlegmatia*, and *hyposarca*. But the swellings or tumours which pertain vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the sayd *Scirrh*, are *Cancer*, which of the Greekes be called *carnici*, and *carcinomata*. Notwithstanding Celsus maketh a difference betweene *cancer*, and *carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceede by little and little of those things which do chaunce outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (some member being corrupted.) The same Celsus diuided *cancer* into many partes or kindes (that is to say) into *erysipelas*, *gangrena* & *vlus nigrum* of this kind also is *elephantus*, or *elephantia*, or *elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Phisitions *lepra*, and of some sancti *Lazarus morbus*. Therefore the name of *lepra* signifieth with Auicene and with the vnlearned company, a most grieuous and deadly disease, when yet with Gal. Paul. Aegineta, & with other Græcians it is counted but a light grief not much differing from that which we call *scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kinde of tumours, are accounted the diseases called in the Latin tongue of the interpreter of Auicene, *verruca*, which be swellings like vnto little hillockes appearing in the skinne, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common sort *porra*. To this kind also may be referred *myrmecia*, as if one should call the *formicula*, and *acrochordones*, which of our countrey men are termed *pensiles verruca*, and *clauus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes *idos*, of Auicene they are called *almismar*, *Thymion*, or *thymon* representing the knobby tops of the herbe thyme. Auicene seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *tustum*, or (as another translation hath it) *tarsectu*. Also among the diuerse kinds of *verruca*, there be evils called of Auicene *cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned again crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *calli* which the Greekes call *tumoi*, these are engendred by meanes of the skin being obdured & hardened through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertain this euill, which the Græcians call *dracontion*, the Latines *dracunculum*, according to the hucly similitude or likenesse of that name, Auicene calleth it *vena medeni*, Haly Abbas, *vena saniosa*. Whereof Paulus Aegineta intreateth *cap. ultimo. Lib. 4.* This disease is not very rife with vs. Besides these tumours which we now haue rehearsed, there chaunce other also, affecting oftentimes the superficial parts of the body (that is to say) certaine smal appearings, which they call *posule*, and *bothor*. Which although they differ both among theselues, & also from those tumours which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumours. Therefore they onely seeme to differ frō the in respect of their greatnesse and smalnesse. But that such little tumors (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignoraunt of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of euery man: I haue thought it expedient,

and

and a thing worthie the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue already done in the greater. Therefore that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kinde of pustules or pusses, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining the same title amongst the Latines, and *Psora*, called of the same writers *scabies*, being truly diseases verie neare of affinitie among them selues: for there is roughnesse and sharpnesse of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, coming of the same humour (that is to say) of choler. Notwithstanding they differ in this, because *Lepra* doth consume the skinne with manifest scales somewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Psora* doeth onely hurt the outward part with diuerse formes, and doeth vnloose a certaine scurfe of the bodie. Hitherto also doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne, called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *impetigo*, in English the ring-worme, and commonly of some (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *volatica*. This chaunceth by reason of the mingled putrefaction of wyld bloud being thinned and sharpe, with other that be thicke: and verie often and easily it doeth turne it selfe (Galene affirming the same) into the aforesayd euils (that is to say) into *Lepra* and *scabies*, which they call *Psora*. Yet there are some which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of Celsus, *impetigo*. But truly seeing he doth write specially of *impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Lib. 5. sue medicine*, it is evidently apparent, that he meant some other thing by this word *impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongst the Greekes, seeing that truly we neuer read in anie Greeke Authour, that there were so many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed off or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with Galene speake properly, *Lepra* and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the same euill: otherwise the same should be chaunged into it selfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into fewe words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughnesse and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*. But when the grieve waxeth worse, it chaungeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cause manifest scales, and doth pierce the skinne somewhat deeply, it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be stretched out onely by the outward *superficies*, and doeth cause brannie or scalie bodies, it is called *Psora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *scabies*. Although this word *scabies* doth extend verie farre commonly also amongst the Phisitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skinne to be *scabies*. But they speake verie improperly, for the pure and true *scabies*, so called of the Latines, is without all doubt that disease which is called of the Greekes *Psora*, of Auicene also *Albara* and *morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of some. For that which is sayd of him and almost of all the Phisitions of Affricke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of Celsus also *Leuce*. But amongst them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greekes *Alphon*, in which disease the whole flesh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as Galene sayth) it were set about with certaine scales. But these *Alphi* (as it is in Galene) in their kinde are of two sorts, that is to say, *Alphon* is of white, which come off sleume: and blacke, which procede from a melanco-

*Lepra.**Psora.**Lychene.**Foure kindes of
Impetigo.**Impetigo.**Lepra.**Psora.**Scabies.**Albara.**Leuce.**Alphon is of
two sortes.*

like humour. But these things we now haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Leuce*, nor *Alphi* themselves are accounted amongst the tumours besides nature, but rather among the euils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very litle, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these euils (that is to say) *leuce* & *alphi*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *vitiligo* (making three kinds thereof) although our students of phisick, turning Greeke into Latin, do conuert *Leuce* in all places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with his Epithete or addition, as to say *alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we will comprehend it vnder any certaine head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habit of some part of the bodie, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nourishing facultie, whereof some do constitute two kinds, the one which doth infect the skin onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto litle scales: the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and coloureth the haire: for in it there ariseth gray hayres, like vnto a certaine kind of mossynesse: this is gathered together of viscus and glutinatie fleume, but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first species, which is aloft & superficiall, whether they be white or black, it is called of the Greeks *Alphos*, by the same name (as before) because it chaungeth the colour of the skin, for *ἀλφός* (whereof *ἀλφός* is deriued), signifieth amongst the auncient Greeks to chaunge. *Auicenn* calleth it *morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greeks, and of *Celsus* also *leuce*, and of the rest of the Latines *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicenn* *albara*, *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth *lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greekes affirme it) and litle differing from a scabbe: neither (as *Auicenn* thought) pernicious and grievous, but onely lothsome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that litle credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnlesse the matter be thoroughly discovered. For one and the selfe same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vpholde many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doeth euerie where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the euilles and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued, which happeneth by wordes misvnderstood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne to our purpose, and with as much breuitie as we can, we will dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, among which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched already, are reckoned by the Greeks *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hydroa*, *Psidraees*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papule*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are litle swellings and these hard which arise in the outward skinne and superficies of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolued, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *vari*: *Galen*

Vitiligo.

Small credit to
be giuento
wordes or
names.

Ionthi.

lene maketh mention *Lib. 5. De medicam. secundum locos* of an affect which he calleth *Ianthosus affectus*, which he sayth is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Imperigo*. *Epinyctides*, (as *Celsus* suppoeth) are Pestilent pusses either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising either in the legges or in the feete. About them there is alwayes a verie vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thicke and clammie exulceration within, his colour is like vnto his humour: but the grieve greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either as *Celsus* *why they be called Epinyctides.* thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grievously, or because they most commonly arise in the night. *Plinie* termeth the blewish pusses, disquieting specially in the night time. The Arabians cal them *essere, fere, or saire*, which words explaine the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *hidroa*, the Latins *sudamina*, and *Plinie papule sudorum*. *Auicenna planta noctis*, & *almanforus*, & *alhasaplum*: whereby it commeth to passe that *Epinyctis* doeth much differ from *Auicenna* his *planta noctis*, although the Greeke word *epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *sudamina* (as *Galen* sayth) *Lib. 4. Apho. Aphor. 21.* are reckoned among those kinde of pusses or whelkes which sticking in the very superficies of the body, do pricke and shoote, not much vnlike to our common vlcers, and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweates, which byteth the skinn and maketh it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and young men, and to those which are cholericke, but in the time of heate: but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe without any aide it will heale, ripening with a white toppie. But *Auicenna* thinketh that these desudations, by their description, agree rather with *Celsus* his *exanthemata*, the with *Galen* his *sudamina*. But he, who will obserue the nature of the wordes, will thinke that *Auicenna* his desudations may well be the Greeks *hidroa* which the Latins call *sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian and Arabian writers, but the genuine & sincere descriptions of the things themselves. *Psyraces* or *psyracia*, are pusses, which abiding in the very yttermost part of the skin, are resembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *phlyctene*. These rise specially in the head. *Psizacian* is not truly read in *Celsus* for *Psyracian*. Those pusses which grow in the skin first comming by thicke humours stuffed in the skinn, which are commonly called *morbili* and *variole* of *Galen*, because they swell and wake bigge, as it were the bud of a flower they are called *exanthemata*, but of *Hippocrates*, because they doe breake out of themselves, they are teamed *ecthymata*. For *ai des* whereof *exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a floure, and *iebu es* whereof *ecthyma* commeth, signifieth to burst out. *Plinie* calleth such pusses, whelkes, and the eruptions of fleume. But these are of two kinds: for some of them are steepe, and some go out into breadth: those which are steepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch. But those which are broad, do flow, and proceed from a more colde and thicke humour, and doe not a whit procure itche. The first sort, of the common Phisitions are knowne by the name *morbili*: the second by this name *variole*.

But the Frenchmen preposterously abusing the names, haue called the lowe and broad kind *rubeole*, but the higher sort *variole*. *Hippocrates Lib. 3. Epid.* doth deuide these kindes of pusshes into litle and great *ecthymata*, in calling the steeper kind *magni herpese*, either because (as *Galen* sayeth) they occupie a great place, or else because they happen with a vehement gnawing. For indeede these sometimes appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus Lib. 5. medicine sua* in his Treatise of

Papula Celsi. *impetigo* remembreth two kindes of wheelkes: the one somewhat small, which if it be daylie rubbed with fasting spittle, it waxeth whole, the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth verie vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He sayeth, that this is termed of the Greekes *αψία*, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kindes he confesseth that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth change and turne into *impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof,) do call both these kindes, but especially the first, *Dartre*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth

Dartre gallica. (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which wheelkes or pusshes doe agree in all things to be those which are sayed of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some doe constantly affirme that those wheelkes so named of *Celsus* doe nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that the onely Authour amongst the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papula*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning *Lib. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *impetigo*, and that it was farre aboue a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Phisicke he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes to be *impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra* he termeth also in the same

Plinie Lib. 26. place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italie in the raigne of *Tiberius Cesar*, which grieue in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italie. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that any death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof onely by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill began almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *mentagra*. This perhappes is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartre*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke

**Galen acknow-
ledgeth men-
tagra.**

de medicam. compos. secundum locos, he remembreth a most vile kind of *impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearseth out of *Criso*), prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (sayth he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the body almost that can be, which description of *impetigo*, doth consent in all things with the *mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene* called of *Plinie*, *mentagra* is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Galen*

lucum

licum malum; some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any hate or iniurie to their countries, do call it *venereum*. For this infection was altogether unknowne to the ancient Phisitions, and also of the former age, and first of all it crept into Neapolis in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. At which time Charles the eight, that most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes: going about also to inuade Italie: although not long before it had spread it selfe abroad through the countries of Spaine (as some report.) Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it beganne to be called *Hispanica lues*, the spanish pestilence, which plague being sent vpon the earth as it were by the iust reuengement of God (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whordome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and ouerthrown with the contagion thereof a great part of humaine kind. For the same sicknesse the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof from one to another, and now also it straieth and wandreth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italie, and all Europe, to the great annoiance of the people. There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen out of *Auicenn* *Lib. 4.* called *glandose*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicenn*, *Lib. 3.* of certaine whelkes, which he calleth in the same place, *bothores iuncturarum*, and in *lib. 4.* he calleth them *almatim*, which because he sheweth that they be blacke, and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *terminthi*, which a litle before we accounted among the *species of phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face, who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *helcodes*, that is, *ulcerose* full of scabbes or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicenn* *leuis bothor*, if their description be thoroughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelkes called of the Greekes *tonthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicenn* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephalide* (that is to say) for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto haue we intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie.

THESE are two causes of tumours chancing besides nature, agreed of among the later sort of Phisitions and Chyurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these; the flux, which the Greeks call *phyma*, and the congection or heaping together of humours. Again by the same writers there are appointed to be sixe causes in number of this flux, *se.*

Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venereus.

Pustule glandose.

Terminthi.

Pustula alba.

The causes of tumors besides nature.

Fluxionis causas.

*Pars propellens
Particula ex-
cipiens.
Humor fluens.*

Spatium.

*Causes of con-
gestion.*

*How a hote de-
fluxion pronou-
neth a tumour.*

that is to say .1. the strength of the repulsive member .2. the weaknesse of the retentive .3. the abundance and plentie of matter .4. the losenesse or fulnes of the pores of the body, through the which the fluxe happeneth .5. the straightnes of the repulsive partes .6. and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads, as vnto the repulsive member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked either by the meanes of the expulsive member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsive vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentive member, or because of the streitnes of the particular pores, but some part receiveth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hot, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base, or settled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humour, there is a defluxion or flowing down into some part of the bodie, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, & of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe by reason of the largenes of the passages, as of the veines, arteries, and pores. But of congestion, which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature, there are assigned two causes: (that is to say) the fault of the vertue nutritiue, & the imbecillitie of the vertue expulsive. By which things we gather, that hot tumors happen for the most part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hot fluxe excite the tumour, *Galen* doeth declare plainly and wittily, in that litle booke which he intituled *in equalis intemperies*, writing after this manner. A hote descending of a fluxe (sayeth he) as soone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a flux is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth out through the extreame parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth, and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betwene the best and chiefeest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour do waxe hote in euerie place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, & besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall are diuersly & many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out. and torne and pulled assunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hot, but also are suppressed and made heauie. But the other partes of the bodie, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kind of tumors chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humors, something alreadie (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioynd matter, which hath alreadie flowd, and is com-

pack

part in the aggrieuéd place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligē care of the Physition in such kinds of *phlegmone* which as yet remaine in generation (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in begetting, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen Lib. 13. meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreseeeth, & that which cureth: but these things pertain to another kind of study. But it is conuenient, that we set downe the speciall causes of tumors which are about nature, to the which these three are commonly appointed: Primatiue causes, which we call both *progressse* and *euidentes*, and causes antecedent, which we name *antecedentes*: and ioyned causes, which we terme *commiste* or *continentes*. These be called of the Greeks, *μεμιγτα καὶ συνεχόμενα καὶ συνειρημένα*. The primatiue causes are said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall, a stripe, a blow, a bruse, a tumor, or a solution, or that euill which is committed by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes are those which of themselues are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both naturall and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish the bodie, and haue their being with the bloods, and are comprehended vnder the name of blood. Which if they be sent out from the veines and arteries, they do suddenly congele & gather together, whether they flow without the bodie, or do remaine still in the place wherein they be contained. But they call those vnnaturall humours, which are found seuered frō the blood with the which the body is nourished, and by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do sometimes grow although they remaine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these as it were by a certen kind of prouidence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are demitted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the innermost parts of the bodie, and so engender vnkinde swellings called *abscessus*, or wheelkes, scabbes, defedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall sweats: or sometime by an insensible aire inwardly infused they doe excite sweatings. Sometime also they putrysie within, and beget feauers. But such like (say they) are improperly termed humours assuming to themselues the names of naturall humours. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of blood, and of nutrition and moisture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure blood, cholericke also, flegmaticke and melancholike, by the which foure kinds all the parts of the bodie are generally nourished and maintained: some partes with a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloudie humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholike, as the nature of euerie part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veynes and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed in *libro de acria bile*). Furthermore of those foure tumors which are called naturall, foure especiall tumors are engendred, which are commonly called *apostemata*. In the which are ingendred the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie foure lawfull then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *Phlegmone*, *erisypelas*, and especiall *adema*, *scirrhus*. Of tumors not naturall (as it pleaseth the latter Physitions) tumors.

There is a twofold declaration of all those euils which are yet in begetting. Speciall causes of tumors about nature. Progressse. Antecedents. which are said to be naturall humours.

which are said to be vnnaturall humours.

what inices are properly termed naturall humours.

Of the four naturall humours

what tumours
do come of vn-
naturall hu-
mours.

Coniuncta cau-
sa tumorum
prater naturā.

what it is
which is called
continens causa

Some thinke
that coniuncta
causa nothing
differeth from
the maladio is
selfe.

what abscessus
Galen thinketh
be.

do proceede *abscessus*, which they also call *exitura* and *pustule*, which they thinke cannot well be called apostemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kinds also, flatuous and waterie, which proceede of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apostemata ventosa* & *aqueosa*, that is, windie and waterish apostemes. There be therefore fixe titles attributed vnto simple tumours, that is, *phlegmonosi*, *eryspelatosi*, *edematosi*, *scirrholi*, *flatuosi*, & *aqueosi*. But the compound tumours are not all called according to the concurrence of humors, (because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humour especially, as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniuncta causa* or *continentes* of those tumours besides nature, which they commonly call *apostemata*, *pustule*, and *exitura*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumours also do greatly augment, and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished, and when their substance is vtterly spent and extinguished, the tumours also of themselves do fall away. And this cause called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundrie dispositions of the bodie, is after this manner by Auicene defined, that, when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanies him, and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Phisitions of our age, and those verie well learned, do contend that Galen would admit but two causes (that is to say) an externall, and an internall, or (as they say now) a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which that (he saith) doth happen to the bodie outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated, vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the byting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the bodie, and doth presently procure the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that, which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and duties of the bodie, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie, and that *coniuncta causa*, which Auicene and his sect haue inuented, according to their owne description, which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kind of affect letteth the execution of those duties pertaining to the bodie: which is the verie definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one and the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this later age, concerning this triple kind of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this treatise of mine, for plainnesse sake, shall diuide and distinguish these three causes, into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primitiua*, *antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumors happening besides nature. Now the course of our treatise doth exact, that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before, we shall intreate somewhat of the nature and generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks *apostemata*, and of the common Phisitions *exitura*, are called of Galen (*libro de tumoribus prater*

præter naturam, & secundum ad Glauconem) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumors, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith Galen, there must of necessitie be a place voyde in the midst; which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the partes, which in length of time is altered, into many and sundry substances. But there is a double kinde of these *abscessus*, one is, *Two kinds of abscessus Gal. lib. 14. Thera. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem.* when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it self is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour either vaporious, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected together, which also happeneth two wayes: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered partes, such like substance is engendred, or else it runneth into the partes themselues, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen, called *ἀποκρίματα*: which (saith Galen) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infested and grieved some one part, do thence remoue, and are inforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh him self a place betweene the skinn and the flesh. And in time it doth flea off all the skinn, either because it is verie vehement, or else because the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skinn. But if those humours, with the which the space situated betweene the seuered partes is filled, do continue any time: they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are changed into many substances, which do represent the properties not onely of humours, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall finde sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell and sand, some to wood, some to coales, some to durt, some to the foame of oyles, some to the dregs of wine: the varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceede from the force of incantation.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing together with the iudgements thereof.

TUMORS besides nature, being resyant in the extreamest partes of the body (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chyrurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the body there appeareth a certaine kinde of encreasing exceeding the natural state, and distending aboue the measure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the duties or actions thereof, because either some humour, or some such substance proceeding of the humour, or which do saour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporious spirite hath excyted it, there also must needs happen a tumor besides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apostemes, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heat, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are

General signes

of tumours a-

bove nature.

Particular
signes.

Indicia.

Lib. de diff.
morb. vum.

Four times of
tumors besides
nature.

Principium.

Augmentum.

Status.

not counted to be true Apostemes in deed, which we haue termed *pustula* and *abscessus*, besides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, & also in the greater or lesser sequestration, *determinata*. But the signes of euery particular difference, and of their matters whereof they be ingendred, shall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the simple differences of those tumours which are about nature, by the which the compound differences shall also be easily knowne. But we must not come vnto particular things, before we haue thoroughly discoursed of vniuersall, for that order is wont to be obserued in the institutions of the Artes, neither truly vnworthily, or without cause. For those vniuersall and common things are more manifest vnto vs then particular, because these particular things are more confused and more mixed one with another (as Aristotle teacheth lib. 1. *Physicorum* ca. 1.) Let no man therefore maruell, though euery where in this treatise of Chyrurgerie, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of those which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpose, and let vs prosecute the iudgements of tumours consisting about nature. In the which first of all we must note that all those tumors which they call true Apostemes (if we will credit Galen and Auicene) are greatly complicate and folded together, neither can any of them be easily iudged or found out to be pure and sincere: for (as Galene sayth) with *phlegmone* (that is) with an inflammation coming of bloud, there is something chiefly mingled which doth preserve the nature either of *erysipelas*, or *edema*, or *farrhus*, but *erysipelas*, because it representeth a kind of *phlegmone*, or *edema*, or *farrhus*: & so likewise consider & marke in all the rest of the tumors. But truly those tumours besides nature, which they terme not true Apostemes, are very often found sincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of simple & sincere tumours in those things which follow, by the which the remedies also of compound and intricate tumors shall manifestly appeare. For I thinke it good to discourse of all the kinds of tumors, and also to dispose a right that which shall seeme superfluous. For if a man shall know all the simple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he shall be furnished sufficiently to exercise him selfe particularly in the rest. But now let vs see other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themselves, *Periodi*, *paroxysmi*, and the *crises* of tumors besides nature do follow the analogia of the humors whereof they be conflated or engendred (Guido affirming the same) which analogia, we here declare to be a propertie, or proportion, a nature, or a likenesse of substance, which they call *forma specifica & occulta*, a speciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumors, especially they which be wholesome, and which are caused of the flowing of humours, are distinguished by four times (that is to say) by their beginning, by their increasing, by their state, and by their declination. The signe of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be stretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is present, but yet with small griefe. We may also iudge augmentation to be present, when we see the tumour to be raised like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the symptoms, which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifestly increased. But the token of their state is, when all the aforesaid things (that is to say)

the

the tumour, and the Symptomates of the differences of euerie tumour, hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increasing, but the matter causing the tumour doth degenerate and change it selfe into another kind of substance. But their declination is then knowne to be present, when the pyle of the tumour and the proper symptomates thereof are decreased and diminished, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another substance. Therefore such kind of times do receiue their differences from three kinds especially (that is to say) from the essence of the tumour it selfe (that is) from the greatnesse or smalnes, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents which do verie much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometimes do seeme to happen altogether, because of the short hardnes of euery one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kind of tumours, which do chiefly happen through the influxion of humors, except they be hindred by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause (the fluxe hauing recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrefaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which Galen doth insinuat in *libello de inaequali intemperie*, writing on this manner. Therefore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified & corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant, (that this putrefaction being resisted and ouercome) the muscle must return to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therfore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humors which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or loosing them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humors, these two things are specially required: viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it self. And a litle beneath he addeth also these words. But if that fluxion do make the partes as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinary action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted & putrified. Thus far Galen. The tokens of dissolution and loosning of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the litle throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, & of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the black and blew colour, to which also sometime happeneth an odious stinck. But the tokens of a stony hardnes of the tumor are, the immination of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnes thereof. The notes & signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are the sodaine diminution thereof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration & coldnes, sometime by reason of a secret

4
Declinatio.

The times of tumors do take their difference from three things chiefly.

Tumors above nature are contained vnder foure modes.

Gal. lib. de inaequali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrefaction.

Signes of induration.

*Signes of the
regression and
lurking of a tu-
mour.*

*Signes of Ab-
scission to come*

*Signes of Ab-
scission alrea-
die present.*

Apho. 47 lib. 2.

venim, which lurketh in the place. And this same sudden and often imminution of the tumor succedeth commonly some feuer, and also other euill symptoms. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of these tumours which our common Phisitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*. The tokens also of those tumors which we call *pustule*, shall not be forgotten, when we shall haue occasion to handle them. But the signes and tokens of the abscesses, commonly called *exitura*, either those which doe foreshew their comming, or else those which do manifest their presence alreadie, are these. When thou seekest (saith *Auicene*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to haue continued a great time, and also that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth is that the Aposteme will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an Abscession. But when thou findest that the place is soft, and that the griefe is somewhat asswaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is supereminent aboue the rest, and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a waterish inundation to subsist, and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it was verie well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that feuers did oftner happen, when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was already come to his maturitie. Moreouer the markes and tokens as well of the present Abscession, as also of the Abscession to come are comprehended in these common verses:

*Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor aucti,
Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,
Sub digitis vndans, albescens pars & acuta.*

Which may be thus Englished.

By hardnesse long, by pulse and griefe, and eke by heat encreased,
We know that matter doth approach: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeelds to finger weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
--and painfull be also.

Apho. 41 lib. 6.

*Iudicia absces-
sum.*

But you must be very attentiu and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter it selfe. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime withholden from the Phisition by reason of the thicknesse of the skin in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*.) Whosoeuer is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the bodie, his ignorance proceedeth of the thicknesse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of Abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them, these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicene* and his sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member or vnto any iuncture or ioynnt, and in those places where there are most veynes and sinewes, and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heat, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skinne, conteining also thicke matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a little hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected, and very hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euerie way by description opposite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable

laudable habite, for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine aiding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpnesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust forth the conceiued humour without any forcaine aide, vnlesse a man by making incision will anteuert and preuent his voluntarie opening. Such like abscessions are digested sometime by breathing or wind (no solution being made subiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is small in quantitie, good and thinne, and not sticking very deepe. But if there be any emissarie, or way made into the tumour either by nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake forth oftener then digest. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale safer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be so, that it must be mollified by Art, you shall safelyster do it by a sharpe penknife, or other cleare and bright instrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I sayd) euerie apertion, which is made and enforced by Art, is worse then that which nature affoordeth of it selfe, because such like manuell openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fistula*. But when necessitie vrgeth, & when we cannot vse a better remedie, we must boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you shall eschue those discommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter so requireth) you do seasonably make apertion, and by that meanes hasten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his last Oracle of his first booke of praedictions hath expressed the very notes and markes of the worst matter, and of the best, speaking after this manner. That matter is esteemed best, which is of colour white, and euerie way like it selfe, and soft, and gentle to the touch, and as litle vnpleasant to the nose as may be. And that which is euerie way contrarie to this, is the worst of all. But the tokens and signes of all the other humors and solide substances also which are included in these abscessions, shall be manifested and shewed in their particular Chapters, as they shall by consequence and order ensue.

what abscessions may easily be digested.

what abscessions may soonest be ended through resolution.

Abscessions are safelyster opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the best and worst matter, out of Hippoc.

CHAP. V.

Of the generall method of curing of all tumours besides nature, but of those especially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apostemes, and Abscessions commonly colled Exitura.

OF all Tumors aboue nature, as well those which are already engendred, *The common order of curing* as those which are not yet in generation, there is one common & principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen lib. 13. and 14. Method. medic.*) namely that of tumours. that which is aboue nature resident in any member, and raiseth the same into a tumour, should altogether be emptied out. But those which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obstruction of the humour that floweth to the

The common method of curing of tumors

doth change
according to
the difference
of the tumor,
and the mem-
ber affected.

The order of
curing of tu-
mors is chiefly
taken from two
things.

The essence of a
tumor doth
containe three
things in it.

Four things to
be considered
chiefly in the
nature of af-
fected members.

aggrieved place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and singular care of the Phisition, to declare the cure of them. But these common manifestations, according to the difference of the tumor it selfe, and the nature of the affected member, do verie much differ and alter. For truly in all tumors alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth, and infesteth, is in no case to be vsed and ministred, as *Galen* reacheth *libro 2. ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which also shall manifestly appeare in that which followeth. But we must not cure those tumors with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedie, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require. *Galen* therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumors aboue nature from these two things. viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand, or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort (that is) the quantitie, the qualitie, and the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumor. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a small tumor another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose.) And one way is a mightie *phlegmone*, and another way a litle *herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumor remedied, which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is alreadie ingendred & congeled. Also a hot tumor (as *Erysipelas* saith) is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *adema* and *scirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter therof is the humor, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered, viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficultie of the senses. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumor. These things therefore also doe much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kind of tumors aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumors which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmone*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the bodie, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinowy places: otherwise in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwise are the kernels in the throat cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation & the strength of the mem-

ber that is affected, and be set with the tumor, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and prooue in their cure: retayning still that generall intention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwaies taken from the disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and generall method of curing of tumours aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humors, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, whenas they shall degenerate & change into abscessions. Then moreouer we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion or Analogie, the cure of compound tumours shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, & as it were besieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed & considered, it shalbe easie for any reasonable Phisition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumors which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumors which are said to be aboue nature from the flowing of ingendred humors, & from the inuention of the cause of the verie euill, that so both the causes which excite the same, may be preuented, and that which is already in it may be taken away. Therefore by the example & analogie of one difference of tumors, which are caused through defluxion (for here we mind to intreat onely of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humors. And here we will set downe a brieue and compendious curing of one kind of *phlegmone*, which changeth verie often, and procureth feuers and other verie dangerous euils and symptomes. But in this place vnder the name of *phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euery hot & flaming disposition, which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the means of a bloudie fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine & rednesse appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heat, a stretching out, and a striuing or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sence of the pulses beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* & other Greeke writers, as *Paulus*, *Ætius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it selfe, these are the very words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euerie *phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it forth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *phlegmone*: but some time that member which is afflicted doth draw it vnto it selfe. But the partes which sendeth it forth do driue out the iuice, being either superfluous by reason of the plentie thereof, or grievous because of the quality, or else because of both. But they which are attractiue, do draw or pul with a sickly heat or griefe. But to these also are adioyned certaine helping causes, viz. the weakenesse and basenesse of the member, the fulnes of the conduits & passages through which

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling those which followeth.

The finding out of the cause is the beginning of the cure of tumors aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gallib. 13. meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery phlegmone.

The helping
causes of flux.
Three orde.s
are set downe
for the cure of
those tumours
which are cau-
sed through
the influxion
of humours.
Primus scopus.
Plethora
quid.

Eurochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

*Cases in which
we may not
use repelling or
repressing re-
medies.*

the flux passeth, the straitnesse also and narrownesse of the pores and ex-
pulsive partes, and the inferiour place; as we haue already declared. There-
fore of all these, there are three intentions of curing those tumours which
haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter sorte
of Chirurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and prevent it alto-
gether. 2. The second is, to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that
cause, for the which the member intertaineth or also draweth the flux vnto it.
3. The third is to emptie out all that humor that hath flowed to the aggrieved
place. But how the first intention should be finished, Galen hath fitly taught
li. 3. meth. med. where he declareth vnto vs all the wayes to auert & turne away
the flux, & the meanes to stop and inhibite *phlegmone*, which as yet remaineth
in generation, writing after this manner: when humours are equally augmen-
ted amongst themselves (which the Greekes call *plethora*) yea also when all
the body is voided of excrements and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicie hu-
mours, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *phlegmone* raigneth
raising the flux) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *phle-
mone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often ba-
thing and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Further-
more it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present,
and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although
the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie,
or choler, or flewme, or with other clammy and viscous humours (which state
of the bodie the Greekes call *eurochymia*) the euacuation thereof must be labou-
red by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humor that raigneth. But
of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Anti-
spasis* (that is) a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all
these kinde of tumours, while the flux doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the be-
ginning & increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, & in the declina-
tio thereof, while the flux now remaineth & sticketh in the member, and the
whole body is sufficiently emptied, the euacuation must be attempted & fetched
either first the affected part, or first that which is next adioyned thereunto. The
second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. vidz. which do mi-
tigate paine, & also bind & prevent the flux. Moreouer it teacheth remedies,
which are able to loosen & dissolue the naturall pores, by the which the af-
fected member is wont to be thoroughly purged. But the matter of all these shalbe
abundantly described hereafter. But we will handle the third intencion, which is
perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that excireth the tumour,
from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines
which do euaporate & dissolue, but also by such as do repel & repress such as
the Greekes call *ἀπορροια*. And therefore, in the beginning of these *phlegmo-
nous* tumours, & other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influ-
xion of humors, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do
euaporate: except in certain cases, of the which (saith Guido) Galen seemed to
haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, whe that such tumors be in cleane & pure
members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venomous. 3. The third
is when the matter is thicke, & not pliable to repulsion. The fourth, when it is
very

very vehemently packed together. *Auicē* excepteth only two causes, viz. when it happeneth in any clean or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one cause, other six, other ten, other nineteene, other twentie three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a cause, we must know that there be two kindes of repulsiues, both amongst the late Philosophers and also the Arabians (that is to say) common & proper. Common repulsiues are such as do inhibit all fluxe keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it (that is) by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores and wayes whereby it shall flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do repress fluxe by refrigeration & cold, singreen, lettuce, *psyllium*, *cotyledon* (that is to say) *ymblicus*, *venris*, *lenticula palustris*, *caphura*. And these also do stuffe and stop the passages *farina* called *volatilis*, the white of an egg, *amylum*, *gluten*, & the kinds of gums. To conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biring. But those things which do confirme & roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oile of roses, *oleum omphacinum*, oile of mirtles, oile of camomill, *absynthium*, horehound, *rux cypressi*, and such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, and so do free it and defend it from all imminent flux. But proper repulsiues are such as when the humours do slide into some other part, do meete with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applied to thin tumors. Of these manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hot, but both sorts, (that is) both hot and cold are in operation astringent & binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are these, vine leaues, plantaine, nightshade, *dispacos*, viz. *virga pastoris*, or *bursa pastoris*, *Glacium*, *halaustrum*, *omphacium*, *sumach*, *terra cinolia*, commonly so called, and *terra sigillata*, and others of that kind. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *oxycratum*, the ointment of bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hot repulsiues are alum, cypresse, nuttes called *galbule*, *iunens rotundus* or *odoratus*, called of the *Græcians* *χιν* *α* *β* *γ*, called also *blatta*, *bixantia*, *lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxions, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall prologues. In the beginning of all tumors, which proceed from the influx of humours, but specially of such humors as are *phlegmonous*, it wilbe auailable to vse repulsiues as they are called, these tenne causes onely excepted, that is to say, when the tumor is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimous matter, or a substance which is verie thicke, and so vnfit to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also, if the tumor be inclined to suppuration, or descending from a primatiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie and verie weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe, for in these cases, we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine

*Repellentia
communis.*

*Repellentia
proprie dicta.*

*Frigida repri-
mentia.*

*Calida repel-
lentia.*

*The first pro-
logue of Guido
in repressiue
things.*

*Gal. 2. ad
Glauconem.*

*The second
Prologue.**Si tumor iam
factus est.**Emplastrum.
Cucurbitula.
Artis canon
generalis.*

rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner. In the beginning of all tumors, but chiefly of those which are *phlegmonous*, common repulsiues are profitable: (three cases onely excepted,) that is, if the tumor happen in those partes which are called *glandulose*, if they be enclined to suppuration, or if they proceed of a venomous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then, when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumour, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place, *diaphoretica*, not biting or sharpe but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moist, but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeavour to attract and draw the matter which is dispearsed to the head, where the tumour most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can, and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humours. Which truely we may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplaisters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggruied place, (as *Auicenna* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule or canon of Arte. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a litle before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsiues, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumors, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiue: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies: to conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and drue it away: but if the fluxe doeth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dependeth vppon both, (that is to say) that partly something hath already flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place, and partly something may yet abound and flow: then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, (that is) partly those which can resolue and vnbind, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truely are to be vnderstood, as thus, if a tumor aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuerse matter that exciteth the tumour, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

CHAP. VI.

Of the abscessions generally.

DE CURATIONE ABSCESSVM IN VNIVERSVM.

*Of the cure of
tumors which
are turned in-
to abscessions,
which they call
Exiura.*

BUT if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abscessus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finished and ended (as saith *Galen* Libro. 2. ad *Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *chalastica*, (that is) by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen* *Tetrapharmacum*

pharmacum, being verie softe, and prouoking sleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the same *Galen*, *Lib. 13. Therap.* there must be commixed a litle honic. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euerie one a litle portion or quantitie (that is to say) of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the herbe *colophonia*, which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of bulles tallow. But in processe of time, we must passe ouer vnto those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to supuration. But those which are turned into another kinde, (that is) into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be removed and cured by the Arte of Chyrurgie. Moreouer in removing them according to the counsell of *Galen*, *14. Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes, whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choice of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Againe, that thou mayest cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefest is, that you thoroughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all those tumors before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgie in these chiefly which now we do entreat of, (that is) in those tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth make and tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare, after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transferre the euill, as we vse to do in those humors called *Hypochymata*, (that is to say) the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrefaction: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*: therefore whe the parts which are troubled with *phlegmone* do beat verie vehemently, so that now you begin to dispaire of their cure, (they being not yet mattered:) all the ancient Chyrurgians (sayeth *Galen*. *4. Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts which are annoied with *phlegmone*, be annointed with a cataplasme, which may both heat them & moisten them, & bring the to supuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedie and help of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth morouer a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *phlegmone* is quickly ended & dispatched, by remedies which are able to drie and vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remove the affect, or else, if they leaue behind them some litle relict, which may turne to supuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able

Tetrapharmacum.

The best order
of curing is declared three
wayes.

1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

Auiscn.

When abscessions are chiefly to be cut and opened.

A matterd tumor is more safely opened with a knife then with burning medicines. Lib. 13. Ther. A section imitating the oliue or mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cometh by wide incisions. Why matterd impostumes about the share must be cut ouerthwart. Seven things to be diligently marked in the asersion of an abscession already matterd.

to bring out the matter, or if the skin about the tumor be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auiscn* saith, namely, that the cure of an Aposteme, (as it is an Aposteme) is the extraction and drawing out of the strange matter which raiseth the Aposteme. But to declare the remedies of them wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also, which we spoke of a lile before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the Abscession being already come to Suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not discuffed and dissolued, or if in conuenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterprized, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to insue, or any other danger, yea if necessity commandeth, it ought straight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out, as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alleadged. But aperition is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicines if nothing do hinder it, and commonly such kind of *phlegmonous* tumors, being already turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer Aperition or the letting out of the matter ought to be done, by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the matterd member shall seeme to be putrified & rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likeness of an oliue or mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eschue alwayes any great incisions, who did heale such kind of matterd tumors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and also in the armeholes only by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need sometime required to cut off somewhat by reason of the plentie, not only of matter, but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the member is brought vnto a scar, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becommeth very weak and vnfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumours especially which do matter vnder the armeholes, & about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawn ouerthwart and not by the straightnesse or rightnes of the leg or body: for whē we bend the leg or the arm, the skin naturally doth apply itself with it. But in other places we alwaies almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this aperition or incision, seven things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgians. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The 2. that incision be made in the neather place of the tumor, that the matterd and corrupted filthinesse may the better be voided out. The 3. that it be made next the wrinkles and proceffe of the muscles. The 4. that you do auoid and eschue the sinowes, veines and arteries, as much as you can. The 5. that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessions, lest that by too much emptying out and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirites, there followe

weaknesse

Two things considered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumor.

I

2

Detergentia.

Ointments are to be applied above a tumor that is opened.

The use of Manna and Thus after the incision, & the vertue of them. The launced part must first be eased. What things are to be layed to an vlcere.

Auicenas in fine tracta. 1. Pen. 3. l. 6. 4.

weaknesse and faintnesse. The 6. that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The 7. that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with the flesh againe, and brought to a scarre after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to make two things in the incision of a suppurated abscession, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and overcommeth your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption: it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreouer in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe: and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is alreadie come to suppuration: and then apply some medicine thereto which can drie it vp without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scouring and cleansing nature, and fit to purge the filthy vlcere, as are soft flaxe or lint, and soft linnen, emplaisters and ointments, which shalbe spoken of in their particular chapters. At the first time, *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickned with alume *Zycccharinum*, which medicine *Guilielmus à Saliceto* did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of *mel rosatum*, & *mundificarium ex apio*: and last of all, to *unguentum Apostolorum*, and *Aegyptiacum*, if the matter so requirerh. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as *basilicon*, *diachylon*, & *diaphanicon*, so commonly called, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in those phlegmonous tumors which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *this purgamentum*. For this hath a light adfriction or binding. But you must also (sayth he) first assuage the launced member, (as much as you see cause) first with fomentis, then with cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie, (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vlcere.) For in the very vlcere, both of *Manna* (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are truly first to be layed on, which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those which do purge and cleanse: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister those things which may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. Moreouer if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife, by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the apertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose *Auicenas* praiserh the seed of line or flaxe, leauen and doues dounge, which you may make more excellent and forcible if you mingle them with a litle soft sope, or with the filthinesse that commeth of mustard seed. But that medicine which is called *ruptorium* or *causicum*, which is made of lime and sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

*Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors
ingendred of blood.*

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for phlogosis. 2.

Phlegmone also is taken for an inflammation comming of the best blood
Phlegmone. 2.

1. Vera.

2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid. Sanguis quadruplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies.

Four differences of tumors caused of blood

HAVING spoken generally of those tumors which consist about nature, it is convenient that we entreat particularly of the differences of euerie one of them, taking our exordium from *phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and excitheth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomes. Therefore *Galen* lib. 1. de morbis & symptomatis, taketh *phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time (that is) for euerie kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, (that is) for euerie hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call *exorsos*. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumor ingendred of blood, that is, the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thicknesse or grossenesse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latines it is called diuersly by reason of the kind *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, videlicet *Vera* & *non vera*. A true *phlegmone* is caused of good blood, which is the best both in qualitie and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true and lawfull *phlegmone*, is caused of naughtie and vnnaturall blood. For blood is a hote & moist humor proceeding from a more temperate part of the verie *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that commeth of the meat in the first digestion. And it is two waies, naturall and not naturall. Naturall blood is a hote and moist humor, slender and meane in substance, but of a very red colour, in fauor and taste it is sweet, gentle and good. But that blood is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of blood: yet notwithstanding containing it selfe within the bounds of his breadth & largenes, which if it doth once passe, it is no more to be called a blood, but some other humor. But blood doeth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kinde of wayes. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another: and yet it consisteth two wayes by it selfe, (that is to say) either because the substance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be: or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it, is turned into melancholy: but that which is thicke into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, blood becommeth not vnnaturall, whenas another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many wayes, according as the diuerse kinds of choler, fleume or melancholie may be commixed with blood. By which thing it is manifest, that of blood there are engendred foure kinds or differences of tumors about nature. First of naturall & good blood there is engendred a true *phlegmone*. But of blood, which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull: because that the three other humors (that is to say) fleume, choler & melancholy may

may be easily commixed with blood. Therefore if melancholic be mixed with blood, it is called *phlegmone Scirrhus*: if choler (which then is conflat of both kinds) it is called *phlegmone Erysipelatodes*: if fleume, it is termed *phlegmone Edematodes*. But of blood, which is filthie and corrupted through the aduſion and corruption of his owne proper ſubſtance, according to the manner of the thinneſſe or thickneſſe thereof, there are ingendred either Carbuncles, which are called of the Greekes *Anthraxes* or elſe *Gangrana* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancri. Of the which diſeaſes we will ſpeake of hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Cauſes, Signes, and indrèments of Phlegmone.

THERE are three cauſes of *phlegmone*: as there are alſo of all other tumors beſides nature, which do chaunce through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*. 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *pregreſſa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*. 3. & *Coniuñta*. Euidēt cauſes of inflammation are outward cauſes: as, beating or belking, diruption, conuulſion, breaking or burſting a wound, a voluntary vlcere, a looſeneſſe, and other of that ſort which do prouoke fluxe, by excyting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cauſe, is abundance of blood, which is good and faultleſſe, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is blood prouoked (as a certaine ſuperfluous thing,) to flow and deſcend to ſome member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thruſt, and abideth compact together, vnleſſe it be by and by repreſſed from the beginning, (as we haue ſayd before in our generall Chapter: to the which we muſt therefore haue continuall acceſſe, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumors, whereof we now entreate. The Coniuñct or continent cauſe, is the blood it ſelfe, which is alreadie ſtuffed in the affected place. The markes or tokens of *phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member about the naturall habite, vehement heate, ſo that the member ſeemeth to burne. There appeareth redneſſe in the outward parts, ſuch as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by ſome other meanes. There is extreame paine, vnleſſe the member hath altogether a dull ſenſe. There is alſo grieuous beating, and pulſation verie vehement inwardly. There is alſo extenſion or ſtretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but alſo the patient himſelfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore reſiſtance of the member if it be touched, after the manner of extenſion. There be alſo other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie that abundance of blood is preſent in ſome part of the bodie. *Phlegmone* hath foure times. 1. the beginning. 2. the increaſing. 3. the ſtate. and 4. the declination: except at the leaſt way, fluxe hath recourſe within, or it be ſtraight way repreſſed by repulſiue medicines. But when it ſhall lightly paſſe ouer theſe foure times, it is needfull either to reſolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to ſuppuratiō, or elſe to putriſie & rot it, or to turne it into a *ſcirrhus* and ſtony hardneſſe. And truly the ſignes of all theſe are to be ſought out of the chapter that increateth generally of them: where the markes of all times,

*The cauſes of
phlegmone.*

1. *Pregreſſa.*

2. *Antecedens.*

3. *Coniuñta.*

*Signes of a true
phlegmone.*

*Lib. de Tumor.
preter naturā
§ 13. method.*

*Foure times of
phlegmone.*

Iudicia.

*Symptomates
which hinder
the cure of
phlegmone.*

and the meanes to finish tumours about nature (which they commonly call *apostemata*) be declared and expressed. But *phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill symptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adens*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall partes. Also mortification of the affected member (which they call *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, and of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter, which did cause the inflammation. Also a stonie and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclerotica*, which proceedeth through a certen ouerthwart & vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist about nature, we must diligently oftentimes marke and consider, how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chauce vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist, and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of verie well, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and *13. Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases, whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared, least some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euerie resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euerie tumor whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily dry, doth leaue very hard knobs which are hard to remoue: hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

*The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion
of humours affecting the outward parts
of the bodie.*

*The method of
curing phleg-
mone which is
yet in genera-
tions.*

*By what means
fluxe is stayed.
1. Retractio.*

*2. Repulsio.
3. Cause sum-
motio.*

SEENING that *inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of blood, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten alreadie: there must needs truly be a double consideration in the cure of the *phlegmone* being yet but beginning (that is to say) to emptie out and auoid that which hath flowed alreadie, and to hinder and stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the flux. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloodletting, if strength and age will suffer it, but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those partes which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring back and repell flux, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the flux another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member alreadie infected with *phlegmone*, by consuming & strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if it be too hot,

as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, and by emptying the whole bodie with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, & if it sendeth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do emptye out, and auoid that which is flowed already, & hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse and dissolve, but also by those remedies which do bind together & refrigerate. And truly in *phlegmonous* tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (sayth *Galen*) cooling and astringent medicines, then those which do concoct and digest: and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick substance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *phlegmone* hath caught & taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussive remedies (as we said before) but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old & inueterat inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other some fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardness & blacknesse in the member: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to rake away the bloud by scarification. And these things haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greekes properly are wont to call *phlegmone*: which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Phisition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write those things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not only the ancient Phisitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore about the generall rule (as they terme it) the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *phlegmone*, into foure branches or particular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. the stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before. 3. the emptying out of the humor, which hath already entertained himselfe in the member (which they call *matteria coniuncta*), 4. and the correcting or amending of the symptomatics. The first intention therefore is made perfect by the due vsing or administration of fixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be annexed vnto them. And these things which are fixe in number, called of the Phisitions *res non naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleepe and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the mind or the accidents. All which things (because *phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feauers) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sick be in a pure and cleare aire, and that somewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moist. Let him drinke small ale, or beere, or other small drinks. But if a vehement feuer shall haue any accessse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise, or moue that member which is beset with *phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially if there be very great abundance of humors in the bodie. Let

Vacuacion of that which is flowed already Gal. I. lib. 13.

Scarificates.

Foure intentiones in the cure of phlegmone.

1. 2.

3

4

1. The first intention is an order in diet. Res non naturales.

Aer. Cibus. Potus

Motus. Quies.

Somnus.

Repletio.

Inanitio.

Animi pathemata.

Venus.

2. The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.

A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.

The choise of blood letting is declared of the afflicted part.

3 The third intention is the euacuation of the humor alreadie compact in the member.

him keepe a measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, especially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drunkennesse and gluttonic. Let the bellie be alwaies kept soft and soluble, and now and then let it be washed with clisters if need require. Let him shun anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous actes as a mortall foe.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of blood, if strength and age doth suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to reuell (that is) to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from that place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth (which is called in Greeke *κατὰ μέρος*) a veine must alwaies be cut, although there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answere to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therefore if *ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throat, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow either the outward or the middle vein, except you meane to scarifie the other legge, or breake the veine assunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therefore the election of the cutting any veine, & the inuention to turne the humor another way (which *Hippocrates* calleth *antispasis*) is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen*. 13. and 14. meth. med. and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, (though it be but meanely stuffed with humors) we must empty & euacuat by letting of blood, if we will follow the aduise of *Galen*, who lib. 13. meth. med. commandeth that it should be so, thus writing. Paine and truely, the heate of the member wherein *phlegmone* hath settled himselfe, (although the whole bodie be void of excrements) do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanely, (that is) to draw forth blood and to make euacuation, no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the blood that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of blood, as hath bene said. Therefore if *phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legges are to be exercised, bound and rubbed, if in the legs, the handes must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Phisition then the Chyrurgion.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *phlegmone*, only by applying repulsive things to that member which laboureth with the inflammation (excepting these cases before rehearsed.) For that which is filled with corrupted water (as *Galen* sayeth) is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do bind and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia* repulsives and restitues.

But

But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, (that is) to emperie that, which is flowed, and also to stoppe, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with repressiues: but yet so, that the abundaunce and strength of the one may yet preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, & somewhat more mild in mitigating remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuar by digestiues only that which is compact together, if that *phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussio. If truly it doth turne into abscession, and that it cannot be, that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vse medicines which can both matter, open & cleanse the vicer. Furthermore those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils (that is) of *phlegmone* and *abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humor, but when incision is made in the abscession which is already come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicin as may drie without erosion or gnawing, (as hereafter shall be said.) But in those phlegmonous tumors which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and drie backe, is *oxieraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *pusca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vinegar, so tempered together, that it may be drunke: and then (a sponge being wet and laied in this *oxieratum*, must be applied to that part, where *phlegmone* is. But in stead of *oxieratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*. In those members which are about the sinews, it shalbe sufficient in the beginning of *phlegmone*, to lay on a sponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a litle vinegar is mingled, or in water onely, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this caraplasme of the same *Galen* is verie effectually made of syngreene and the rindes of pomegranates sodden in wine of *rhu*, that is, *sumach*, and *pilema*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor, and both wayes it doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the later sort: of *Auisen* after this sort as followeth. R^y of the iuyce of syngreene. ℞. j. of wine that is thicke of substance, and sharpe in tast, ℞. ss. of barley meale, one quart, of the rind of pomegranates, and *sumach* powdered. ana. ʒ. ss. boile them and make a liniment. There is also another which greatly auaieth for the same purpose, inuented of *Haly Abbas*: R^y of *santalum* white and red, ana. ʒ. iij. of *memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*, ʒ. ij. of *terra cimolia*, and bole armoniack. ana. ʒ. j. ss. let all be brayed into verie fine floure or powder, and well searced, then dissolue them in the iuyce of syngreene, or purslaine, or lettuce, and make a liniment. Another also in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vsed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and bruises taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of roses, and of the distilled water of roses (that is) of rose water, wherein you must wet fine clothes & lay them to the inflamed member, & let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profite in the beginning of *phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought

Repressiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

If phlegmone doth turne into abscession.

Repulsiues are to be vsed in the beginning of phlegmone.
Oxycratum.

Lib. 13. Method. meden.

Galen. cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glau.

Fen. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

Remedies to be
vsed in the in-
creasing of
Phlegmone.

Lib. 3. de simp.
medic.

Oile of roses a
present remedy
in the increase
of phlegmone.

What things do
help in the state
of Phlegmone.

Emplastrum
Galen.

Amongst the remedies which in the increase of *phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of roses is maruellously effectuell, (the Greekes call it *rhodinon*.) For this doth partly draw back, and partly doth digest through the vapor: because it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oile and the roses, Therefore in oile of roses there is a certaine astringion, which cannot (sayth *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumor: but when they haue pierced somewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the strength, both to thrust together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly, wherby it commeth to passe that in the augmenting of *phlegmonous* tumors, oile of roses is a most excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *phlegmone* there is another in *Auicenn* verie profitable: *Rx.* of the leaues of mallowes *M. j.* of wormwood, roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of barley meale \mathfrak{z} . *j.* oile of cammomil, quart. β . seeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the fashion of a soft emplaister. Another of the same. *Rx.* of wine boiled either to the halfe or third part, (one we call *sapa*, the other *desrutum*) quart. *j.* rose water, and vineger ana. quart. β . saffron. \mathfrak{z} . *ij.* let them be a litle het ouer a soft fire, then straine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you must apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an epitheme. Morouer such kinds of remedies which are vsed in the increasing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repressiue and digestiue medicines, ought seldomer to be remoued and changed, then those which repell the matter, being ministred in the beginning of *phlegmone*.

Aërius, in the vigor or state of *phlegmone*, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath set downe these remedies: as mallowes mingled with a litle bread, & with oile of roses. Also melilot boiled in the liquor called *passum*, and applied with a litle bread: of the like vertue (saith he) are dates sodden in *passum*, and mingled with bread and oile of roses. Another also, which digesteth through breathing in the vigor of *phlegmone* very effectuell. *Rx.* pellitorie of the wall, mallowes ana. *M. j.* fine branne, the floure of meale ana. pug. *j.* fenugreeke, dill ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . oile of cammomill, quart. β . let them be boiled in wine, and wel braied together till they be well incorporated, and make an emplaister. Another taken out of *Galen*, *Lib. 13. Therap.* *Rx.* of the crummes of bread made of corne. \mathfrak{lb} . *j.* steepe it in hote water the space of one houre, then straine it; and commixe therewith of the best hony, quart. *j.* and make it to the forme of a cataplasme, This doth dissolue and mitigate paine. *Auicenn* counselleth to minister in the rigor of *phlegmon*, *unguentum basilicon*, and that which is made of the iuices thereof called *diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter: although notwithstanding both of them do carie with them a digesting qualitie. But these and other such remedies, which are ministred to dissolue that which is already flowd, and to ease paine, because they are of a verie moist nature, must be changed verie seldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humor which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *phlegmone*, is dissolued and discuffed, and the tumor together with the extention thereof is diminished, and the griefe somewhat asswaged,

then

then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you must vse onely discusseue things, as are wild mallowes bruised, *what reme-*
 annointed, raisons (the kernels being taken out) applied with bread and a litle *dies must be*
 honie, & barely meale vsed also with honie. Also moist wool, flaxe, a sponge, or *vs d in the de-*
 some such like thing, wet in hote wine, then streined or wringed, you must mi- *clination of*
 nister it for all these haue an excellent discusseue nature, & prouoke not paine. *phlegmone.*
 But if, by reason of the stubburnesse and hardnesse of the disease, the affected
 place doth containe too great plentie of matter and that such as resisteth re-
 solution, you must not by and by (as some do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgie,
 that is, to make incision, or to scald it and burne it, but you must labour by all
 meanes possible, that the humeur collected together may be digested and dis-
 solved by such medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to at-
 tempt the digestion of the humor by such medicines as can profit in that case,
 before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to
 digestive medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to dissolve that which
 is compact in it, but the matter seemeth rather to pertaine vnto suppuration,
 you must come vnto those things which can ripen and procure matter. And
 we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abscession) may through *what resolu-*
 the vapour be digested, if the matter which exciteth the same, be thinne and *tion is to be ho-*
 little, and fit to be resolved: or if it remaineth not any thing deeply within, and *ped for.*
 the skinne of the affected member be thinne: But if the humour be pleniifull,
 and thicke, and lurketh verie deepe, and the skinne also thicke, exhalation or
 resolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you must come vnto those helpes *Pus mouentia,*
 which can ripen & prouoke matter, of which force is this cataplasme, made of
 wheate meale, soddin moderately in water and oyle: for this (Galen being our *Lib. 2. ad*
 Author) doth speedily bring to suppuration those inflammations, which will *Glauco.*
 not yeeld to digestion, & it hath also a heate like vnto our heat, that is, tempe-
 rate and meane, and by reason of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine
 clammy and glewish propertie, whereby in stopping the pores, they hinder the
 naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an emplaistre, which two
 things are most required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There
 are some which do mingle with this cataplasme a litle saffron to colour it. But
 if a tumour, by reason of the thicke and viscous humours which are stuffed in
 it, be hardly brought vnto suppuration, this cataplasme doth notable helpe
 which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *althea*, and of figges that be
 sweet and fat, which do resemble the thicknesse of honie, comixed with wheat
 meale, as followeth, *Rx.* of the foresaid decoction, *℥*.j. of wheate meale, *℥*.*ss.* *Haly Abbas*
 boile them thoroughly together, & bring them into the forme of a cataplasme. *remembresth*
 But if in stead of wheate meale, you vse barely meale or crible bread, which *this cataplas-*
 the Greekes call *συσπικνιστος*, it more auaieth to discusse the inflammation the *me.*
 to bring it to suppuration (as Galene hath noted *lib. secundo ad Glauconē*. There *Aliud.*
 is another also excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of
phlegmone, which is commonly vsed of the common Chyrurgians, *Rx.* of the *A common*
 barked of the roote of Marsh mallowes, that is, of *althea*, of the roote of lillies, *caplasme.*
 grown swel, called in Greek *erigerō*, leaues of mallowes, ana. *M. j.* wheate meale,
quar. j. of the meale of the seed of flaxe. *℥*.j. fresh twines greace, *℥*.*ss.* seeth the

herbes in sufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a cataplasme. But if, (when the matter is gathered together and dispatched,) the abscession whereinto *phlegmone* is turned, doth not open of the owne accord: (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a penknife, or some such instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vicer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vicers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and ioyning it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke, which bringeth forth the tumor, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the fleshe (as is wont to be in continuall inflammation which be naughtely cured, the thinne part of the humor being resolued, & the thicke part remaining still in the passages, then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as Galen admonisheth *lib. 2. ad Glau.*) when hardnesse blewnesse or blacknesse do appeare.

*Symptomatum
correctio.*

The fourth intencion, which in the cure of *phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian and Phisition, is the correction and the removing of the symptomes, which do so sodeinly come vpon the inflammation, & those are paine, recourse of the matter, whereof the tumour is raised to the inward parts, putrefaction and corruption of the matterie member, and as it were a certain stony hardnesse remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and assuage the same, because, (besides that it weakneth the strength, and hindreth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe and draweth blood vnto it. If paine therefore doth grievously torment in *phlegmone*, straight way you must lay on those medicines, which can lenise and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of Galen, which was made of the licour called *passum*, of oile of roses, & a litle waxe melted with them both: but this is to be takē in moist wool, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in sommer, and hote in winter. Therefore such a medicine being tempered & applied (as is said before) doth rarefie, extenuate, digest & euacuate: it maketh the humor that is sharp, viscus, grosse, or plentifull, & which cleaueth to the aggrieved parts, to be equall, constant & moderate, & it discusseth the thicke vapour which can find no fit issue, & so it mitigateth paine: it bringeth no hurt with his heat, for it maketh dul or taketh away the heat of the oile of roses. Whereby it cometh to passe, that this remedy doth assuage paine without doing any hurt, & disprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, & wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine cannot be profitable (as Galen witnesseth.) For these do loosen & release through their heat & moisture, & do resolve the strength of the member, wherby it is made more weak, & more prone & apt to interteine fluxe. To the same vse (that is to alay the paine in *phlegmone*) you may apply effectually oile of roses, yolks of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, & then streine them, & commixe them with oile of roses. These also are a present remedy, mallowes sodden in water, & mingled with branne and oile of roses, or with oile of violets. But Auicene in mitigating euery paine vseth saffron,

Dolor.

*Lenifers of
paine in phleg-
mone.*

*Lib. 2 ad
Glau.*

Crocum.

which

which he profitably comixeth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great & vehement, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lenifie paine, (the succours of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica* (that is) promoters of sleepe & helpers of paine: you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *narcotica* (that is) stupefactiues. Amongst the which we haue tried by daily experience besides the authoritie of some writers, that henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whose leaues you must take, & bake them in the hote embers, then mingle with them fresh swines greace & apply them to the place. This doth pacifie vehemēt paine, & bringeth phlegmonous tumors vnto suppuration. But, while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligēt care least you apply to much moisture, because it is a thing, which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, is very pernicious (as we said a little before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter, that exciteth *phlegmone*, to the inward parts, & that chiefly toward the principall members: you must cause him to come forth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward partes. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the reliques of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*: you shall boile in water the rootes of wild cucumber (which is commonly called in herbaries and shops *cucumer asininus*) or of briony or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselves (as Galen commaundeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commixe meale with water, to the which also put a little suet, either of a goose or a cocke, but if there be not plentie of these at hand, adde swines greace and make a cataplasme. This doth notable heale that scirrhus affect which through mightie drying and digesting medicines in the member which *phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behinde. Also the aforesaid herbes together with the rootes of *Althea*, being, after a moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applied, do discusse and dissolue such hardened tumors: as Galen doth plainly teach *Lib. 2. ad Glaucomem*. Therefore if you feare, that phlegmonous tumors, which are scarcely digested through their vapour, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*: you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, & the lay on it an emplaister made of the meale of beanes or tares sodden in *oxymel*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of Gangrena. But now it shalbe more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such phlegmonous affectes in some short sentences. And first we wil begin to declare the sum of the cure of *phlegmone*, being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grievous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with cōueniēt purgations, & especially by letting of blood, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to washed and annointed with such things, as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the humor. 3. Let the humor, which is contained in the

*Nota de hye-
sciamo.*

*Recurfus ma-
teria ad inte-
riora.*

*Durities reli-
cia.*

*Galens cata-
plasma for
hard tumors.*

Putrefactio.

*Galen. lib. 2.
ad Glau.*

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.

4. The summe of
the cure of
phlegmone whe
it afflicteth
with much
paine.

1. 2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

aggrieved place, be emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and those also which are about it be strengthened and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the sayd *phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more greivous paine. 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluction of humors, doth vex with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemencie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things, which do strongly bind, or vnloosen through their heat and moisture, or resolute strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helpes, as by meanely binding, can repell that which floweth, and evacuate that which infesteth the affected member. 4. Apply to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *posca*, that so you may prevent the passage of the humour that floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft & gentle emplaisters, & those especially, which are made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Amongst those things, which are of power to drie, & repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolutio with oile of roses, which is made of the stone *chalcitis*: then lay vpon it pure wolle dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when water appeareth in the member, you must often apply the aforesaid cataplasme, or that rather, which is made of barely meale. 8. If the abondance of thick matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion in that place especially, where it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision, paine be vehement, you must first assuage it with fomentes, then with a cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the member, be still enflamed, lay on a cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called *chittes*, which doth empty out and drie backe.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named
Sphacelus, all which they call *sanguinea*
pustule, i. bloud pusshes.

De Carbunculo.

αἰσπᾶξ.
γὰρ παῖρα.
σφακελός.

Gangrena and
Sphacelus do
follow great
phlegmones.
The generatio
& description
of a Carbuncle.

SEeing that we haue intreated abundantly, as muchas pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, & most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke αἰσπᾶξ: next of *Gangrena*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*, (which with the expounder of Auicene they commonly call *esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *phlegmone* hath and doth prouoke a most sharpe feuer, but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as Galene libello de *Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in manie other places hath diligentlie noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote, with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours: there are raised vp on the out side of the skinne wheelkes or pusshes, like things that be burned or scalded, & then this inflammation is called *Carbunculus*.

Carbunculus in *postula*, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill truely doth happen verie often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken, the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but manie little and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the feedes of hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hote iron doth cause. But between their beginning, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthy colour, sometime blackenesse, and in that place the skinne cannot be eased, but it is, as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it, is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of lime or pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholie. And these truely are the signes & tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very affect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grievous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected do necessarily fall into a feauer, and that sooner then they which are vexed with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chaunceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbreacking & continuall vomiting, together with a want of appetite and lothing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, and an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Ambrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill (as they please.) When as in verie deede *Arbex* among the Greekes is the very same, that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latins. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish, and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes killing the people sodenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heede or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer although *Arbex* or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous & contagious: yet the worst of all and the most deadly is that of Auicene, which doth arise in the purest places and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, that this venomous matter which exciteh the Carbuncle, doth sodainly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is inough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chaunceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes or iawes, it sodainly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in Auicene, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of orange colour. But if it waxeth blew or black, it killeth almost euery man,

Carbunculus duplex.

Signes of a Carbuncle.

1. *Plexus crustosum.*

2. *Some great wheelkes, some small.*

3. *The colour of the crust either earthy or blacke.*

4. *The flesh blacke about it.*

5. *Griuous paine.*

6. *A vehement feauer.*

7. *Nausea.*

8. *Vomitus.*

9. *Want of stomacke.*

10. *Cordis tremor.*

11. *Animi deliquium.*

Carbuncles do follow alwayes

a pestilent

plague.

Iudicia.

1. *Whē a Carbuncle, is most*

deadly, (the iudgement thereof

being taken from the affected place.)

2. *Another iudgement taken from the*

affected place.

3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

4. Iudgement
of the acci-
dentes.

and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the own nature then it. If the Accidentes, which are wont to accompanie with this disease, be verie much remitted or releas'd, there is some hope of recouerie. But if they be still more and more continually stretched out, & made more vehement, then truely the matter is in great dispaire,

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a
carbuncle must
be begun by
bloud letting.

GALENE Lib. method. med. 14. & secundo ad Glauconem, commaundeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing set downe a conuenient order of diet) must be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning (if none of those things do let it, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who also wil- leth to drawe bloud euen to the fainting of the heart. For it profiteth much those that be troubled with this euill: and this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be stroken directly against the vicer. But the choise of the veyne is manifested vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue sayd in the cure of Phlegmone.) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phisition must take coun- sell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare, from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I sayd) do hinder you, it shall not be amisse to scarifie the sayd tumour, vsing somewhat deepe cuts or woundes by reason of the thick- nesse of the malicious humour, (that is) such cuttes as are somewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaseth Galene.) There are some, which would haue scarification made in the crustie or hard vicer onely, and then they straight- way sprinkle those incisions with hote salt water, that bloud might not meete together in them, or increase, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they also apply some gnawing medicine, as arsenicke, which in this case among the rest hath the greatest vertue, but some do minister to the scarified place horse leches or bloud suckers. But strong repulsives are in no wise to be vsed or ap- plied to the aggrieu'd member (although refrigeration be needefull, which indeede doth belong vnto the inflammation.) For you cannot so turne away the fluxe or preuent the malice hereof, because of the thicknesse of the hu- mour. And if at any time you shall do it, you shall finde some other naughtie humour (as Galene saith) which is settled in the depth or inward partes of the bodie: but this humour must not be suffered to flowe abundantly (the same Galene being our Authour.) Therefore such remedies are to be sought for, as by a moderate repressiō can digest or disperse the humour. Such truely is that cataplasme, both that which is made of plantaine, and also that which is made of lintels twise sodden. But with this you must commixe crummes of bread, which haue bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after Galens coun- sell) be neither altogether without branne, nor verie full of it. But this kinde of cataplasme is called of the latter sort *Emplastrum de Arnoglossa*, which they make after this sort, R^x. of plantaine, lintels, bread baked in the ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boyled in water. To these Auicene putteth gaules, who also for this purpose doth allow the cataplasme which is made of the two pomegranates sodden either in vineger, or in sharpe or tart water, and these they

Venaē directio
secunda.

Deepe scarifi-
cation.

Sprinkling of
hote salt water

Arsenicum.
Sanguisuga.

Fluxe in a car-
buncle can not
be turned a-
way, neither
ought it, Lib.
14. Ther.

A cataplasme
good for a car-
buncle.

Cataplasme de
Arnoglossa.

A cataplasme
of pomegra-
nates.

they applie both to the affected member, and also to the partes about it. Of *Paulus*.
 this minde also is *Paulus Aegineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and disseuer it from hauing anie societie with the partes about it, you must seeth in vineger a sharpe pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the fore is corrupted you must wipe it smoothe, and cleanse it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you must moisten it with vineger. Also the kernell of the olde silberd nut or of the young doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the partes lying about it, is the oyntment made of Bole armoniacke, of the oyle of roses or mirtles, and of vineger: which is vsed, because the humour, which hath flowed already, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which doe drawe and allure the poyson, and malicious humour in a Pestilent Carbuncle with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with Carbo. Which thing truly I would also counsell to doe, if *Arbex* doth occupie the arteries, and the partes about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and abundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately repress (as of late we recited out of Galene) least that there be caused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, and so the euill be made more painefull and angrie. But vpon this hard or crustie vlcere, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest) and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrification of the member,) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Pasi*, or *Polyda*: and it must be washed in some sweete wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thicknesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in Galene is made of the meale of Tares and oximell, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcere is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the oyntment called *Enguentum Aegyptiacum* is to be applied. But if these things doe little profite, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are these, the roote of *Dracuncul* or *Aristolochia* broken and layd in vineger, lime, arsenicke, yellow oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profit sufficiently, if they doe thoroughly resolute the corrupted member euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you must by and by pull away and plucke it vp by the rootes. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurfe or scarre, which is drawne euerie way from the quicke flesh, the wound truly, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in other sores that be burned. But being in extreame diseases (as Hippocrates saith) extreme remedies are perfectly the best, we are constrained sometime (our medicines not preuailling with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by a tuall or manuell instrumentes (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euery way, as *Celsus* hath taught verie well. After these things the crust or scabbe which is vpon the vlcers, must be resolved by

*Nux auellana.**Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.**What must be applied to a crustie vlcere.**A cataplasma of the meale of Tares and oximell.**Enguentum Aegyptiacum. Adurentia medicamenta.**When adustion must be vsed.**Finis adustio.*

P^hi.

such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sicke shall refuse to suffer a duction, the helpe of some poore and base fellow is to be vsed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth may quite extinguishe and pull vp the same. As were in time past certaine people in Italie named *P^hi*, who did sucke their wounds, which they receiued by the stinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreover the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or consumed any other way, the hollownesse thereof (the inflammation now ceasing) must first be cleansed, & afterward being made pure and cleane, it must be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Sinu-letica*.) Which when it is thoroughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is convenient to vse those things which can bring it to a scarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill doth not rage very much, but shall seeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as Auicene saith) by applying figges commixed well together with leauen and salt. And when this Cataplasme or the like is layd to twise or thrise, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke and full of chinckes or cliftes, and then the place is to be scoured and cleansed with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine also, which is made of the yolkes of egges and of salt, if it be often aplyed, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle. (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the same purpose we vse commonly at this day that medicine, which is made of honie, salt, wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Consolida maior*, (that is) comferie (which the Greekes call *symphyton*) being brayed betweene two stones, doth heale *Anthrax* verie maruellously (as they report) and within the space of one day it quite destroyeth it, so that it needeth no other curing after any more: besides also it is a common helpe for other woundes. Some also do declare wonderfull things of *Scabiosa* because that, (it being eaten or drunke in wine) it thrusteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth dissolue and discusse them without paine.

**What things
do resolueth the
crustes of vl-
cers.**

**Emplastrum
escharam re-
soluens.**

Theriaca.

In the vlcers of a carbuncle these do resolueth the crustes or scurfe, fresh butter, swines suet, and other fat things of that sort. For this purpose also this emplaister following doth maruellously profite: for besides that it resolueth the scarre, that is, the crust, more speedily then the aforesaid things, it also asswageth the paine that is caused either of the sharp and burning medicines, or of the bright instrument, and it mightily discusseth the malicious humour, which exciteh the Carbuncle. R^y of wheate and barley meale. ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. of the which make a solide emplaister with the decoction of mallowes, violetes, and the rootes of *Althea*, and put thereunto of butter, and swines suet melted. ana. \mathfrak{z} ij. the yolkes of two egges, which must be put in, when they are taken off the fire: and all these must be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforesaid rootes and herbes, which must be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then sifted throug a searce. As concerning their diet, epithemes, cordials, & other of that kind, which are made to strengthen the heart, also Euacuations, if they be needefull, they do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Physick which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in ministring the, you must aske the aduise or counsell of some learned Physicion. But comonly all me almost do vse *theriaca*, which is wot to be ministrad.

to the greatnesse of a beane, made of the water of scabios, or if a very sharpe and vehement feauer be present, you must make it of rose water, or water of buglosse: which the sicke must take sixe houres after meate. But because we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida* and *Musa* (which Galen so greatly vsed) it shall not be amisse to set downe here the description of them.

R^x of Cytines (that is) of the first flowers or buddes of a Pomegranate. $\mathfrak{z} . x .$ *Andron* of alume that may be cut. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ of coperous or vitrioll. $\mathfrak{z} . x i j .$ of mirrhe. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ of *Trochiskus*. frankensence, *Aristolochia*, and gaules. ana. $\mathfrak{z} . v i i j .$ of salt ammoniacke. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$

R^x of pomegranate rindes. $\mathfrak{z} . v j .$ of mirrhe. $\mathfrak{z} . v i i j .$ of Alume that may be cut. *Polyida* $\mathfrak{z} . v .$ of frankensence. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ of coperous. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ of the gall of a bul. $\mathfrak{z} . v j .$ let these *stillus*. be taken in sweete wine.

R^x of cut alume. $\mathfrak{z} . i i j .$ frankensence. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ of mirrhe as much, of coperous. *Polyida* $\mathfrak{z} . i j .$ of the floures of pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z} . x i j .$ of bulles gall. $\mathfrak{z} . v j .$ *Aloes*. $\mathfrak{z} . v i i j .$ Take *lus alius*. these in sharpe wine.

R^x of cut alume, *Aloes*, mirrhe, coperous. ana. $\mathfrak{z} . v j .$ of saffron, & of the dregs *Musa* $\mathfrak{z} . i i j .$ of the oyle of saffron. $\mathfrak{z} . i i j .$ of the floures of pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j .$ Let them be *hus*. taken in *mulsum* made of *Falerum*.

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.

GALENE Lib. 2. ad *Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reason of the greatnesse of the inflammation be made and changed into mortifications, yet they be not thoroughly engendred and already confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is so outrageous, that except it be remedied very speedily, the affected member doth easlie represent the habite of death (that is) it doth verie readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life sense and mouing. But when the member is so corrupted and so feeble, that it is altogether without sence, and as it were dead, so that whether it be stroken, or cut, or burned, the sicke feeleth it nor, then the Greekes call this euill no longer *Gangrena*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latins *Syderatio*, the latter sort call it *Esthiomenon*: which name also they giue vnto *Gangrena*. But Auicene calleth it *Esthiomenon*, when as the corruption therof doth passe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vse in an other order. Some call this affect sometime *Herpetatio*, sometime verie improperly, *Cancer ulceratus*. But this affect chanceth also to the bones, when as the flesh being beset & compassed about with them, bringing forth and engendring filthy and stinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poison, and consumeth them with most corruptible rottennesse. Therefore when as the member shall together appeare void of life, sence and mouing, you must by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the sound fleshe. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangrena*, because the one doth grow vp in the bones (as we haue declared) and not in the flesh and the vesselles of the bodie onely: but the other commeth nor to the bone. Notwithstanding it is one kinde of *Sphacelus* but it borroweth a proper and singular name beside the common terme. This kinde of corruption being

what a Cancer is, & where it hath begunning.

Gangrena pestis

Sphacelus

Syderatio ossium

The benumbed member must straightway be pared.

*Ignis Sancti
Antonij.*

*Three causes
of mortificatio.*

*What things
do dissolve the
mixture of the
member.*

perfect in the affected part, and altogether deprived of sense, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antonij*. In another place, *Ignis Sancti Marialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chaunceth three ways. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it fro the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissolving of the mixture and consent of the affected member.

1. Which mixture and harmonic of the member is dissolved and destroyed either because of too much cold, (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boysterous winters) or by reason of immoderate, rash, and vnadvised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else because of the exceeding, and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus* are caused, when as the life being gotten into the member is choaked & stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometime do close vp and stoppe the veines, Arteries, and pores of the skinne, that there the spirites, (the breathing forth of the vaporious streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindered) are strangled and choaked. The third way, these mortifications & destroyings of life are caused in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden, and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else because of some bruse receiued in these passages and pores,

Signes of Gangrena & Sphacelus.

through the which the breath is caried. To conclude, *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *necrosis* and *Sphacelus* do chaunce vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member, or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the bodie. But the signes of *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, Galen in his little treatise of tumors about nature declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations, then paine and beating of the pulses (that is) the moving of the Arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is verie soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a flikie sauour and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth verie deeply, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skinne appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member, (which the Grecians call *Gangrena*), is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now a beginning, it is not verie hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be found and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or small affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roore, and is turned already into *sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and very many do dye of a cold sweat.

Iudicia lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the cure of Gangrena caused of great inflammations, and
of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which
is ingendred of Gangrena.*

BECAUSE abundance of blood doth ingender a canker, the order of the
cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentifull and copious
euacuation of the corrupt blood, which is packed together in the affected
member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which
shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require)
and strengthening of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the
advice of some learned Physitian, who knoweth how to instruct him therein
(as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congea-
led blood (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part,
either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about
the same member, or in the whole skinne of the part affected, together with
his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by ma-
nie deepe scarifications. Some to this end do applye horse-leaches, and they
do open little the veins that be next the sore, but those deepe and often se-
ctions or scarifications are much more effectuell to cure that euill. But be-
cause of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse very great sections, or often in-
cisions (which we call Scarifications) the one, when the euill is neare rotten,
the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater
remedie, it requireth (as euerie man may know.) But when you haue
drawne out blood abundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash
the place with salt water, that the thick blood which otherwise would abound
there, may be brought forth. Then you must applie some medicine that can
ler and dissolue putrifaction, as is the meale of tares or darnell, (which the
French men call *yuraria*, because it doth prouoke drunkenness after the man-
ner of wine) or if there be scarcitie of them, you must vse the meale of beanes
with *oximell* and *syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified
place twice a day with hote vinegar, but especially with *mulsum*. For these by
reason of the driness, doe consume the filthinesse and corruption, and doe
clense it, but because of their coldnesse they doe chalenge of putrifaction
that, which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is
now abated, and the furie of the euill somewhat remitted and slaked, you must
lay aboue vpon the sore that oyntment which is commonly called *unguentum*
Aegyptiacum, made of verdigrease, alume, honie, and vinegar, of each a like
quantitie commixed and boyled together. This doth stop putrifaction and
resolue it: and it doth disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from
the sound and whole partes, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer
it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserueth and defendeth the whole partes
from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong & effectuell medicine,
mingle salt with the aforesaid things, or if the euill shall increase yet more and
more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being thoroughly

*Emptying of
corrupted
blood.*

*After scarifi-
cation you must
wash the place
with salt wa-
ter.*

*Medicines pu-
trifactiones.*

*Unguentum
Aegyptiacum.*

*Burning Tro-
chiskes.*

Arsenicon sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Gl. m.

When aduſion is to be uſed.

If the canker turneth into ſphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

Lib. 4. Remedies that can loſen the cruſts from the ſeared member.

brayed and beaten together, and then waſhed in vineger and wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyſida*, or *Muſa*: or one of thoſe which are called of the latter ſort *cal. dion*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Aſphodelus*, which by reaſon of the burning force do ſeparate the corruption from the ſound partes. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is prayſed and allowed of, which they call *ſublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which muſt be diſſolued either in ſome powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotten (which the French men call *Coton*.) And ſo applyed betweene the ſound and corrupted member. For this doth ſtraight way ſtay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if neceſſitie requireth, you muſt deuide the good from the euill with a certaine inſtrument called a probe, or ſkilſe. But in miniſtring ſuch medicines: that the matter may be handled more without care, you muſt be diligent to know the nature of the ſicke bodie, (as *Galene* hath well taught vs ſaying.) If the body be ruſticall and hard by nature, it requireth verie vehement medicines: but if it be tender and ſoft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infantes alſo or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleaſure in idleneſſe, muſt haue gentle medicines miniſtered to them. Moreover the nature of the partes which are euill affected muſt be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are ſome ſores, which very quickly do come to matter, and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and ſome verie ſlowly: ſome alſo do ſlowly feele the force and benefite of medicines applyed, and ſome verie ſoone.

Furthermore if (notwithſtanding theſe burning medicines) the euill ſhall yet remaine, you muſt burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all theſe remedies are wont ſometime to proſite nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, altho' (as *Ceſius* ſaith) it be a miſerable helpe (that is) to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that ſo the other partes of the body may be without daunger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and ſound after the manner of poyſon. But if at any time you ſhall cut off this putrified and dead member, or ſhall lance of that which is corrupted in any member euen to the ſound fleſhe, then by the counſell of *Galen* for more quietneſſe ſake, you muſt ſeare or burne with ſome bright inſtrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and ſound body, for ſo you ſhall quickly ſtay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now aduſion being done and ended, you muſt uſe the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* ſaith) you muſt applye ſalt with the leekes, or ſome of thoſe remedies, which we haue ſpoken of a litle before. For theſe do dry and bind the corruption, and do alſo ſtoppe the flux of humors. But when by uſing theſe remedies rottenneſſe or corruption ſhall ſeeme to ceaſe: that the cruſtes and ſcurfe may ſoone fall away, you muſt uſe a Cataplaſme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *hydraleon*. Alſo that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. Theſe through their cleaſing or ſcouring, do reſolue the cruſt from the fleſhe which lyeth vnder it. Moreover that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that alſo called *macedonicum*, by mouing

and

and mollifying the matter do bring the scurfs from the partes that lye vnder them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed with *apium*, or *ocinium*, thorough their cleansing doth mightly drawe the crustes from the whole partes without erosion or gnawing, of the like vertue also is *Iris*, or the roote of *panax*, or of *aristolochia*, or of *acorus* mixed with honic. But they are commonly wont to vse butter or some other anointing thing to resolue the crustes. But when

Butyrum.

the crust is fallen of, they wash the place with vineger, and then applie this plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Guilielmus de saliceto*. R^y. honic. ℞. ss. *Emplastrum* raw yolkes of egges iij. or iiij. of barley meale. ℞. ss. mingle these together and bring them into the forme of an amplaister. But two or three dayes after, *Saliceto.*

that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this emplaister, of chosen mirrhe. 3. x. But in tender and young bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthie corruption, the meale of *tares* mingled with honic, or frankensence (which was vsed of *Galene*) doth abundantly suffice. These things being rightlie ordered, such kinde of vlcers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, and procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *synulotica* and *epolotica*. 1. Emptie out abundantly the corrupted blood, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or secti-

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The summe of the cure of Gangrena and sphacellus.

ons, wash the affected place with salt water. Then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the furie of the euill is somewhat slaked, minister *unguentum Aegyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hoate yron that place which is betweene the filthie and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, and now *Gangrena* is chaunged into *sphacellus*, cut off that member verie speedily, which is so perished euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behinde. 6. When you haue cut off that which was putrified, you must vse some hoate burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the verie roote of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of leekes, and other such things, which do drie, bind, and stoppe fluxe. 8. Make no great speede to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hoate instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of blood.) 9. When rottennesse or corruption is ceased, and you feare no more the flowing of blood, apply those things which can draw of the crust. 10. When the crustes or scurfes be false from their places, you must vse the same cure, as in other places.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

34.

35.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangrena* and *sphacellus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting off blood: and draw it out abundantlie, if it floweth plentifullic. 3. Purifie the blood with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *amarindi*, of hoppes, and fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriac*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defende the heart, (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those cor-

Aphorismes.

1. pertaining

2. to a phisition.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

34.

35.

rupted and filthie smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified member.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of Choler.

*Fleume in the
generation of
humors is next
vnto blood.*

*Erysipelas
quid.*

*Erysipelas ex-
quisitum.
Spina.*

*Erysipelas cum
ulceratione.*

*Erysipelas non
logitimum.*

Mediū vitii.

Bili.

Although fleume in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto blood, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body next vnto blood, then of other humors, yet because tumours about nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly call cholerike apostemes) do in many things greatly conspire & agree with bloody humors, it followeth (after the determination of phlegmone, and of other tumours consisting about nature, which proceede of blood) that we now speake of those swellings, which are caused of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Erysipelata*, but of the auncient Latins *Ignes sacri*. *Erysipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholerike fluxe, most abiding about both the skinned (that is) both about that which outwardly couereth all the partes of the body, and also about that filthie and thin skin which inwardly compasseth the internall partes. But oftentimes also it occurieth some of the fleshe that lyeth vnder it, as phlegmone (which is the issue of bloody fluxe most incident to fleshy bodies) doth also possesse some of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler, or hote blood which is thin also in substance. (called of the latter sort *cholera naturalis*, but of Gal. *χολὴ εἰς αἷμα*) spread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing molesting the flesh vnder it, & yet somewhat raising the member into a tumor with a languishing inflammation & yellow rednesse, & altogether doth yeeld when it is touched. This affect is properly called of Galen, a true & exquisite *Erysipelas*. But this is for one consideration, or (as they say) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. Auicene calleth it *spina*. But when a humour of bitter choler shalbe more thicke & sharpe, then that it can returne again naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that litle outward skin, (which the Greeks call *Epidermida*) & sometime that exulceration of the skin in proceesse of time pierceth somewhat deeply, so that it toucheth the inner flesh vnder it, & then that affect is called also *Erysipelas* but with vlceration, which (as Galen saith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholerick fluxe, nor a bloody humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then called *Erysipelas* only, but Galen termeth it a disposition thoroughly commixed with *Erysipelas* & the inflammation. But of that which is predominant in the mixture, is the title given to the euill. For when blood ruleth, it is called *phlegmone erysipelatosa*: but when choler raigeth, we terme it *Erysipelas plegmonosum*. But when neither hath superiority, but the accidents of them both appeare equal together in power, then that euill shalbe called a meane betweene *phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*. Now also of other mixtures, there shalbe the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and small humor, either of fleume or melancholie, it shalbe called *Erysipelas edematosum* or *schirrhosum*. Moreouer when we speake simply of choler, or of a billious humour, after the manner of Galen and other Philosophers, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is soure & blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis* & *certa cholera*, hauing his generatio of blood that is thin & hote. But melancholie we me-

ner absolutely do terme choler, but alwayes with an adiection of the humour which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called of the Greekes $\chiολη$, & commonly *cholera*, is a hote & dry humour, proceeding of the thinner & hotter part of *chylus*, or thin and hote bloud (as we said a late.) And this is two manner of wayes according to the diuifio of the new Phisitions, that is to say, naturall and vnnaturall. Naturall choler is a humour of power hote & dry, in substance thin, of colour yellow or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like orange taunie, but in tast very bitter, & not sharp or soure (as some vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is sayd to be that, which doth degenerate from the aforefayd bilious humour, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limires of his liberty or circuite two wayes. 1. One way (as we may say) by it selfe, and in it selfe, 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it selfe & in it selfe it is also two fold, 1. one way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *adusta per putrefactionem*, i. burnt through putrification. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *vitellina*, is thoroughly concocted euen with a fierie heate in the liuer, or in the stomach, or in the veines, and it is made of the colour of leeks, which they also call *prassina*, or it is caused to be rusy or cankred, which truly are extreme griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is caused, whē as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin & watrish fleume be mixed with it, it is made yellow & like vnto saffrō, if thick & viscous fleume be cōmixed therewith, it is made like to the yolks of eggs: but if burned melancholie be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per admixtionē*. And so after Auicenes minde & iudgement, there are six kindes of naturall choler; with Haly abbas, foure onely, for he maketh no mention at all of two kinds of adusted choler. But Gal. lib. 2. de virtu. naturalibus saith that there is no choler besids nature, but that which is *vitellina*, verie like both in colour & thicknesse to the yolkes of eggs: for he saith that *porracea* and *eruginosa bilis* are engendred ofien times in the stomach, of naughty & corrupted humours, by reason of the cruditie or rawnesse of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called beete, onions, coolewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it is engēdred in the very veynes, by reason of sicknes, or some other euil disposition. By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflammations engendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes.) That is to say. Of true sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is engendred that kinde of inflammation, which Galene Lib. 2. ad Glauconem calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called $\epsilon\rho\rho\rho\rho\rho$. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, as *erysipelas phlegmonōdes*, *erysipelas adematōdes*, and *erysipelas scirrhomōdes*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of the thinnesse or thicknesse of the substance thereof there are engendred either *herpetes esthiomeni* (that is) *excedentes*, which are of the same

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth transgresse from his owne nature.

*Bilis vitellina.
Porracea.
Prassina.
Æruginosa.*

*Crocea.
Auicenes.
Haly.*

*Foure differences of inflammations concerning of choler.
Erysipelas.
Three vnlawfull erysipelas.
Herpes excedens.*

Phagedena.
*Cancri vlcera-
ti.*

*Causa veri
erysipelatis.*

kinde with those *erysipelata*, which do chaunce with vlceration, or there are engendred *phagedene*, which do somewhat deeply gnaw the fleshe together with the skinned, and there are caused exulcerat cankers, & other such gnawing euils, there are also engendred *cacoethe* (that is) malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *pustula corrosiua*. Therefore in such kinde of humours, that is truly the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated *herpes*: and that most thicke, which prouoketh the canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth engender *phagedene*, as Galene hath noted *Lib. 14 meth.med.* The causes of a true *erysipelas* as also of a true *phlegmone* are three. *Progressa*, which are called also *primatiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, 3. and *coniuncte*. But *erysipelas* is seldome caused of any primitiue cause; notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractive medicines do oftentimes excite or cause the same.

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true erysipelas.

*Signes of ery-
sipelas.*

*A yellowish
rednesse yeel-
ding to the fin-
ger, a small tu-
mour, vehement
heat.
Small pulse.
Pricking
paine.
Iudicia.*

*Erysipelas fol-
loweth the or-
der of a tertiu
feauer.*

THE marks and tokens of a true and exquisite *erysipelas* are gathered and known by conferring the same with *phlegmone* according to the doctrine of Galene 14. *Therap.* and 2. ad *Glaucanem*: whereby it plainly appeareth that a true and lawfull *erysipelas* is a certaine species of *phlegmone* (that is) of an inflammation, as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, (that is) by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it flydeth in againe, a small rumour rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heate causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *phlegmone*: for *erysipelas* is farre away more hote, then *phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper sumptomate of a great *phlegmone*. A byting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chaunceth in *phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgements hereof, *erysipelas* doth chiefly lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose, which is commonly called *lepus*, then straightway it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinnesse of the skinned, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *erysipelas* is a fodaine and maruellous discale, as Hippocrates writeth *Lib. 7. Aphorisme*, 19. that is to say, it is an euill symptomate, if the fleshy lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *erysipelas*, but this, as Galene witnesseth, chaunceth verie seldome. Again the same Hippocrates writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *erysipelas* there commeth corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith Galene) neuer doe chance vnto *erysipelata*, except it be to them, which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also aboue nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime

In *Erysipelas* certaine symptomes, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the verie cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do hinder the order of the cure (that is) they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene sayed before in *phlegmone*.) Moreouer also, *Erysipelas* followeth the moting of a Tertian feuer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion, for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *erysipelas* from the outward partes to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward partes, as *Hippocrates* hath written *lib. 6. Aphor. 25*. But those *erysipelas* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be helpen with some effectual remedie, they sometime strangle and choke the sicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *erysipelas* is verie mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with childe, for *erysipelas* being thus engendred in the wombe, the childe of necessitie dieth. For truly a sharp feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroyeth it without inflammation.

Erysipelas about the head are verie hard to be cured. Erysipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the childe.

CHAP. XVI. Of the cure of *Erysipelas*

SEING that *erysipelas* (as also *phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and engendred of the defluxion of humours: the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two fold: that is to say, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *phlegmone* the order of euacuation did surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration: so in *erysipelas*, refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation. For the one doth trouble and molest in quantitie, but the other (which is *erysipelas*) in qualitie. Therefore *erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and litle emptied; whereas contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and litle refrigerated. Although there be a common chapter and summe of curing both affectes, as *Galen* sayeth, that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therefore after that *erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicins which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue sayed to be two fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour:) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the consent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *antecedens materia*. The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed already into the diseased part, which they also call *materia consumpta*. The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomes that may happen thereunto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales* shall belong vnto moistnesse and to colde, as is a feuer tertian, seeing that *erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuse & prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In summer let the sicke be in a verie colde house

Two general orders in the cure of *erysipelas*.

Foure particular intentions of curing *erysipelas*.

1

2

3

4

Primus scopus.

Aire.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus.

Animi affectus.

Venus.

Secundus scopus.

Ad Glau.

In a phlegmonous erysipelas, it is good to let blood.

somewhat within the ground, that is, windie and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the ayre verie hote, make it readie for him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water very often out of one vessell into another: sprinkle the pavements of the house daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spread vppon the floore roses and violettes, vine leaues and branches, fallow boughes, and other floures and buddes, which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweete, soure, and hote meates. Let him eate lettuce, gourdes, purslaine, sorrell, (which they call *acetosa*) rice, and other things of that kind which do thicken & refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be prysan broath, or barley water. Let him keepe a temperate dyet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the minde as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleene and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first scope. But we shall also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *erysipelas*, if by convenient euacuation we take away that humiour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *erysipelas* not necessarily as in *phlegmone*, we must draw bloud out of a veine, but we must also purge the belly downward with some medicine which can expell choler (called of the Greekes *cholagogon*), if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feuers, and those more vehement then *phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceedingly hote, and the iuyce of *scammonium*, (called of the new Greekes *daerdyon*) and that also which is commonly called in the shoppes *electuarium de succo rosarum*, art. innē wise meete or convenient for this disease; and therefore you must vse either *rewbarbe*, or that potion which of Rasis is called *aqua tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. R². damaske prunes. 24. tamarinds that be new. 3. x. of broken sugar. quar. β. to the which things to make them more effectually, you may add *rewbarbe* that is well washed. But if the euill be verie litle & small, these medicines, called *cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall beginne the cure with bloodletting (if nothing doe let it.) For that kinde of *erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face, whereupon *Paulus* commaundeth that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbowe especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that doth not appeare, you must take that which is most object to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commaundeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to drive out choler, yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commaunded to cut a veine in that *erysipelas* which doth rise about the head or face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *erysipelas*, which verie often molesterh the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawefull *erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of bloud. But in *erysipelas edematosum* or *scirrhosum*,

sum.

sum, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled and manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleume, or a melancholic humour.

And truly in all these things the aduise of some learned and wise Physitian is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swarue or digresse. And let this be sufficient that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chirurgicalian ought not to attempt any thing at al in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physitian, except sometime necessitie shall

*In phlebotomy
& purging, the
Chyrurgicalian
must be taught
by the Physiti-
on.*

compell him, and when no Physitian is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our general discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remayning, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member and is compacted therein, by applying outwardlie digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sence.

But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting about nature, there is a double euacuation. *Galen Lib. 14. Therap.* one truly of repulsives to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing, which doth stie the sence. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantity, but also in the verie qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation: it doeth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *phlegmone* doeth.

*Hic Guido de-
prauate citat
Gal.*

Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a litle before, we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling it as it is conuenient) the afflicted member, or that parte which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendered without anie manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *erysipelas* doth by & by rest and cease with this, but that which is not pure, but after a sort phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew, but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged bodie: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no truly not with digesting medicins, but that some scirrhous tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigerating and moderating helps vnto their contraries (that is) vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwaies beware and take good heed, that those things which be annoynted, be verie liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applyed, be often washed with sponges dipped in some colde liquor. For the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth drie vp these things. But amongst those things whiche carie with them a refrigerating and repelling force; very conuenient for this affect, *Auicenna* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of nightshade,

*How much ery-
sipelas is to be
refrigerated.*

Lib. 14. Ther.

of syngreene, of purslaine, of *psillium*, of henbane, of lettuce, of *umbilicus Veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Coryledon*) of endiue and succorie, of fenne lintels, of gourdies, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of

*Materia refri-
geratum ex
Gal.
Ceratum.*

*A compound
medicines.*

*Evacuation of
the ioined mat-
ter by euapora-
tiones.
opandosis.*

*Hydroleum is
a mixture of
water & oyle.*

*Siliciorum lo-
cum occuparit.*

*Quarta inten-
tio.*

verie cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of roses with white waxe. *Rx.* oyle of roses with oyle of vnripe grapes made without salt, which being made verie soft and pliable in a mortar, sprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commix a litle vinegar that is thinne and very cleare, you shall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all these things must be ministred cold, and often chaunged, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth also very much and that presently to annoint the member annoyed with *Erysipelas*, with ceruse onely, or mingled with vinegar and *lycium*; or with *terra cimelia*, or with potters clay, with nightshade, or with *spuma argenti* with oyle of roses, and with *acacia* with vinegar. To this purpose also this compound following: helpeth much. *Rx.* iuice of plantaine. \mathfrak{z} .j. oyle of roses. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. *lithargyri nutriti*. \mathfrak{z} .j. *cerusa lota*. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. of womans milke. \mathfrak{z} .β. let all be commixed together and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a liniment. But *lythargyrum* and *cerusa* ought first to be beaten, and then the oyle and iuice aforesayd must be powred on them softly by litle and litle, vntill they be throughlie incorporate together the one with the other. But if you desire greater coolers, you may commix with these and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* minde) a litle *opium* or *cicuta*, or *mandrake*. But I thinke it good to abstaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a stupefactiue nature, except great necessitie doeth moue you therunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is somewhat abated, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, *Galene* (before that any blewnesse did appeare through refrigeration) did vse to dissolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a cataplasme of barley meale, or of *cruda polenta* (called in Greeke *αἰσχυρὸς*) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *phlegmone*. For euen as the signes of *Erysipelas* were desumed and knowen by the analogie of the tokens of *phlegmone*: so also the remedies of the cure of *Erysipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *phlegmone*. Furthermore of such kinde of medicines, which haue a dissolving and breathing qualitie verie necessarie in this euill, there are verie many, both simples and compounds, rehearsed of *Paulus Aegineta* *Lib. 4. cap. 22.* and of *Aetius* *Libro 14. de re medica*. But now it shall be sufficient to rehearse among so many, one onely remedie which of all the rest seemeth in my opinion to be most excellent. *Rx.* of the tender leaues of *althaea*. *lib. j.* boyle them in *hydroleum*, and being well boiled, bray them well together, putting therunto of oyle of roses. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. *argenti spuma*, and *cerusa*. *ana. ℥. ij.* β. againe plaine or smooth them with the iuice of coriander, of *lyngreene*, or nightshade, then put therunto a few crummes of bread and annoint them after the maner of ap in plaister. But if peraduenture blewnesse shall now occupie the place, (the skinne being cut before) you must lay a cataplasme about vpon it, and sprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galene* hath commaunded, with hote water: for it doth digest and wash the wound. Also warer and salt brine in the meane season shall auaille to nourish or cherish the place, when it is somewhat thicke and grosse, which things doe scoure and cleanse the thicknesse thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Erysipelas*, which is the correction of the accidentes, is perfected, (as we haue sayd in the

the cure of *phlegmone*) when as we shal returne and driue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the heat. For these symptomes are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedie to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues & rootes of henbane, which you must rowle vp in towe and seeth them with prunes: then commixe them with the oyntment commonly called *populeon*, or with swines greace (as is sayd before in the cure of *phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chaunce to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *unguentum album* or *unguentum de lythagro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our mindes and memories. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of Galene these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of blood. 2. If the bodie be full of choler and the affect be great, purge the bellie downward with the medicine *cholagogon*. 3. If the discale be litle and small and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole bodie (as you must) annoynt the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderately repress and abundantly refrigerate, cue to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heat of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceased, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be thoroughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries (that is) vnto digestiues or discussiues and drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelas* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes you must scarifie, and afterward apply a cataplasme of barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but *phlegmonous*: you may let blood without fearing any thing, especially if blood do abound in the bodie.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heat.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated.

Seuen Aphor. out of Galene concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2.
3.
4.
5.

6.
7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which doe associate Erysipelas as Herpes both Miliaris and exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

THESE tumours aboue nature, which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall, and hidden choler (that is) which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sorte of Phisitions and also of Chyrurgians do call *mala cholerica pustula*: but the Grecians, as Hippocrates, Galene & Paulus do call them *herpetes*, which word doth almost sounde *Pustula cholerica* and agree with the Latines, as *malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For *ἵππας* *vice vulgo* *ap- in Greeke* is all one with *serpo* in Latin, whereupon *ἵππας* is called *serpens*, yet *pellate herpes* doth perfectly signifie among the Phisitions *malum quod serpit*, but a cer- tes,

Formice Aui-
cene.

When herpes is
caused.

Two kinds of
Herpes.

I.
ἔρως ἰσθίος.
roc. 1. exedens
vel depascens.

2.
ἀγρία, ἢ
herpes miliaris

Lib 14. Ther-
rap.

Ex Paulo &
Gal.

Lib. de tumori-
bus præter na-
turam.

Lib. 4. Metho-
medendi.

The cholerike
humour, which
causeth herpes
is very thinne.

taine kinde of disease whereof we now entreate, therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then herpes, for Phagedena are also called serpentia vlcers, creeping vlcers. But Auicene called all these kinds of pushes Formice, and Galene numbred them among inflammations, but Celsus seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of sacroignis. Lib. 5. Cap. 28. herpes therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnaturall, alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth: whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skinnne euen to the flesh, which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of Hippocrates and other Grecians ἔρως ἰσθίος, but of the Latines herpes exedens or depascens, an eating or teeding herpes, and it is called 14. Therap. of Galen, by this absolute name, herpes. But if choler be somewhat thinne, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteth small wheelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinnne (for that it doth onely as it were burne and scald) like vnto the seedes of miller or hyrse: by reason of which similitude and likenesse the affect is then termed of the Latines miliaris herpes: but of certaine of the Grecians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the same reason ἀγρία: for ἀγρία in Greeke, is called milium with vs. And this kinde of species of herpes (Galene witnessing the same Libro secundo ad Glauconem) doeth borrow his name or title of the generall worde, seeing that the same Galene calleth it herpes simplicie and without addition. Notwithstanding in another place by the name of herpes, Galene calleth it herpes esthiomenos, that is, exedens, as afterward shalbe sayd. But this kinde doeth not altogether cause the vlcet, as the other doeth which is called exedens, but as it hath bene sayd, it exciteth little small pushes to the likenesse of milium, which pushes in processe of time, when they are broken out, doe turne vnto an vlcet. Therefore not without any great reason or cause did Oribasius and certaine other also before Galenes tyme, iudge and thinke, that in this kinde of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinne fleume, which did bring forth those little pushes, whereupon it was called of some pustulosus herpes. But the other which is called esthiomenos, is not so mixed with fleume, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skinnne, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For esthiomenos is all one with erodens or exedens. And truly this euill is of one & the same kinde with a pustulous & exulcerate Erysipelas, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them doe take their beginning.) That is that which Galene testifieth in these wordes: Iris (saith he) a verie thinne humour which raiseth herpes, and so thinne truly that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a fleshy substance, but also through the verie skinnne, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the Greekes Epidermida) which onely because it stayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it should also pierce through this, after the maner of a sweat, it should in no wise excite any vlcet, for that is a comon thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a byting humour, which vlcers they call Spontanea, because the humour which causeth them,

the, is stayed & tarieth still in their going out or issue: hither to Galen. When he nameth *herpes* simply & without any addition, he meaneth *herpes esthiomemos*, as it is easie to be knowe by the ioyning together therof, by the signes & cure, & so in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is simply and absolutely called *herpes*, as in that little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*, where the same Galen writeth thus of that same kinde of *herpes* word for word; *Herpes* also feedeth and gnaweth vpon those parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skinn onely. But almost all the barbarous sort of Chyrurgians, euē they of late time, do comprehend both these kinde of *herpes*, viz. *miliaris* & *exedens*, vnder this title of *formica*, to whō both in this thing, & in many other also, Auicene first gaue the occasiō of errour, who being deceived by the likenesse of the name, because the Greekes call *myrmecia*, that is, *formica*, a certaine kind of verruce, hath through a maruellous ouersight, euē in the same Chapter, confounded those verruce with *herpetes*. Guido notwithstanding maketh a difference between *herpes* & *formica*, & confoundeth the name of *formica* sometimes with verruce, which the Greeks call *myrmecia* and *achrochordone*, sometime with *herpes exedens*, which (I meane *herpes comedēs*) is sometime named of the same Guido *herpestes*, sometime absolutely *herpes*, who also thought this *herpes* to be nothing else but a pustulous and vlceraed *Erysipelas*, when this notwithstanding as we haue alleddged out of Galene, doth differ from the other, by reason of the thinnesse of the humor. For that choler which excieth *herpes* is thinner then that which causeth an vlceraed *Erysipelas*. Furthermore *Erysipelas*, which chanceth with vlceraed, doth not only occupy the skin, but with it also, it annoyeth some part of the flesh vnder it. But *herpes*, wherof we now in treat layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therefore although these euils are of one & the same kind, (as Galen thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Those wheelkes also, which the interpreter of Auicene and the vnlearned company of Phisitions, do terme *morbili*, Hippo, lib. 3. *Epidemiarū* hath comprehended vnder *herpes*. But these *morbili* are caused of a more thin & slender matter, then those pushes which are commonly called *Variolæ*. For these (as Auicene writeth) proceede of blood, but the other are caused through the admixtion of choler and blood. But if any man doth long or desire to know what name the auncient Phisitions did bequeath vnto these pustulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of Plinie *Papule*, and sometime *pituite eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of Hippocrates *Libro tertio Epidemiarum*, *Ecthymata*, of Galen *Epanthemata*. But the signes, and iudgements, and causes of both kindes of *herpes*, may sufficiently be known by those things which went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing these euilles called *herpetes*, (as in other such like voluntarie vlcers, which haue their originall of a byting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obserued and marked. The first is, that the confuxion of the humour vnto the affected part be stopped and letted. The second is, to make euacuation; of that, whatsoeuer is flowen already into the aggricued member, and sticketh fast in the same. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finish our first intēt, by purging the whole body with some medicine that can bring forth the humor wher of the euill doth grow, &

Herpes exulcerateth only the skinn.

Auicene confoundeth myrmecia with herpetes.

Herpes esthiomemos and Erysipelas vlceraed are not all one.

Morbili sunt ex herpetum genere. Variolæ.

Papularum eruptiones. Ecthymata. Epanthemata. Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of herpetes.

I. 2.

3.

Primum scopus

*Herpes requi-
reth the medi-
cine cholo-
gon.*

*Herpes milia-
ri requireth a
remedie which
can purge both
choler and
fleume.
Reprimendi
tempus.*

*Lib. 14. The-
rap.*

*Repressiues are
not to be vsed
if the humour
be plentifull.
Reprimendum
materia.*

*Those remedies
which do coole
& moisten are
not meete for
herpes exedens.*

*Repressiues
meete for her-
pes exedens.*

*Cataplasma.
Sumach.*

*These things do
accomplish our
second intencion.*

when the bodie is throughlie emptied, by repressing and driuing backe the humour that floweth. Therefore in *herpes exedens* we must vse some medicine, which can prouoke choler downward, seeing (as we haue sayd before) a pure and sincere bilious humour doth procreate this euill. It happeneth therefore that in respect of the emptying of the whole bodie, *comedentes herpes* must be cured like vnto *Erypelaia*. Therefore because it is a thin and waterish humour which causeth this euill, Galene hath sufficiently declared to mollifie and soften the bellie gentlie, or to prouoke vrine with those things, which can moderately cause the same. But in the other kinde of *herpes*, which by reason of the similitude which it hath with *miliun*, we haue sayd to be called in Greeke *miliaru* and *cenbria*, there is required some remedie which is of a mixed facultie (that is) which can purge forth both choler and fleume. For some haue thought and that not without great reason (as Galene sayth) that in this euill there is some fleume commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the bodie, and causeth the euill, beeing emptied out (as it is required) you must applie those medicines which can repress and keepe backe the flowing of the humour, for then ministring of them shall be more without daunger, and more conuenient also, seeing that (as Galene sayth) if one doe thrust backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging, remaineth yet in the bodie, to the bowelles and great veynes, yet will not cause any sensible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it sometime coucheth it selfe in some principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated either by purging downward, or by the vrine, or by the skinne, which includeth the whole bodie. But repressiues and repulsiues be not onely those which doe binde, but also those which can refrigerate without any adstriction. Of the which nature are these, as lettuce, knottegrasse, fenne or ponde lintels, purcelayne, endiue, sengreene, and other of that sorte, which were verie conuenient also for *Erysipelas*. But those medicines, which besides their cooling, are also apt by nature to moysten, *herpes* especially *depascentes*, do in no wise require, but they doe onely admitte those refrigeratiues, which can also greatly drie vp. For those remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and dry, as is nightshade, are not sufficient for them. Therefore by Galenes counsell you must in the beginning lay vpon them the young tender buddes of the vine, bramble leaues of *rubun caninum*, and plantaine. After applie also with these lintels, sometime honie and barley meale. Also minister that cataplasme *seae sempervino*, which is appointed for those pblegmonous tumors which proceede of fluxe, for it doth repell that which flowerh, and it drieth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it strengthneth the partes about it. The beginning of the being past, this remedie auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplasme of the rindes of pomegranates sodden in wine, and of *rbu* or *rhu* (that is) of the seedes of the shrub *coriariun* (which of the late Physicians is called *sumach*) and of the meale of barley. But by this cataplasme you shall very well accomplish the second intencion or scope of curing *herpes*, because it is of sufficient power to digest that, which is flowerh already into the affected place,

for it appeareth evidently, that those remedies which haue a repressing facultie, ought to exceede in the generation of the vlcer, but when the vicious humour doth cease to flow any more into the affected part, then those medicines are requisite which do digest. As concerning our third intet which declarereth the cure of the vlcer, it beloueth you briefly to know these things following: viz. That every vlcer whether it commeth of the owne accord, or be caused by some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as Hippocrates saith) that is not sharp, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except when the vlcers be malicious and full of corruption, for such euils (saith Galen) require more sharpe medicine, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is, *myos* and *chalcitis*, and *arsenicum*, and lime, and *sandaracha*, and other things of that kinde, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *herpes exedens*, must be tended with pilles, and trochiskes, written for the cure of *herpes* in those bookes, which are called *pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessitie compelleth vs to vse them, must be thoroughly washed in *passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweete wine be not ready at hand, in thinne and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is which for age hath no sharpe tast) or else in *posca aquosa* (which they call *oxycratum*.) Paulus in *herpes*, which annoieth vnder the skinne, vseth these remedies; the scourings of lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth reu, or a cerate of mirtles in stead of rect. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch. $\mathfrak{z}.$ xij. ss. of wax. $\mathfrak{z}.$ xxv. of the scourings of lead. $\mathfrak{z}.$ j. of goates tallow, trimmed and washed with water. $\mathfrak{z}.$ xxv. of mirtles. $\mathfrak{z}.$ v. But for those *herpetes*, which do gnaw and bite vehemently called *depasscentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie: $\mathfrak{R}.$ of the ryndes of sweete pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z}.$ vj. *argenti spume*. $\mathfrak{z}.$ vj. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, & that burnt. $\mathfrak{z}.$ iij. of waxe. $\mathfrak{z}.$ xij. of ceruse. $\mathfrak{z}.$ viij. of frakenfence, alume scissible. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.$ j. let them be steeped in wine or in oyle of mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long continuance, those trochiskes abovesaid, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweete wine, nor in *posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse whitewine. But those medicines which are more effectually and most meete at that time, when vlcers be inueterate, are the pilles of *musca*, and *ron*, and *polyida*, whose descriptions are set downe in the ende of the cure of *carbunculus*, and those trochiskes also, which of Auicene and the latter sort of Phisitians are called *calidicon* and *aldaron*. But those *herpetes*, which doe onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *miliaries*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we will credit Galen) for they be verie vehement, and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoever they be, which haue the nature and force of *glaucium* (that is) of *menysiba*, shall suffice these vlcers and you must washe them with this, but especially with water. But if these things shall nothing auaille, you must also commixe vinegar therewith. Also if you annoynt it with iuyce of nightshade, or plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hetherto haue we spoken of *herpes*. Now because in that which we haue said, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *formice*, which both the

The cure of the
vicer in herpes
is our third
scope.

Every vicer
must be dried
vp.

Lib. 2. ad

Glauc.

How exulcera-
ted places must
be looked to.

Posca.

Remedies take
out of Paulus.

Alind.

Ad herpetes
depasscentes.

For inueterate
vicers.

What is to be
done in pustula
miliaries if they
turne into an
vicer.

Lib. secundo ad
Glaucnem.

Arabians, and the latter sort of Phisitions do erroneously, as we haue said, found with *herpetes*: this present place doth require, that we set downe a few wordes both of them and of other tumours and increasings appearing in the skinne, which the Latins call *verruca*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the euils called *Formica*, and of other differences of *Verruce*.

Verruce.

Porra.

There be di-
uerse kindes of
verruce.

Myrmecia.

*Sessile verru-
ca.*

*Acrochordon
parvula verru-
ca.*

The difference
betweene *acro-
chordones* and
myrmecia.

Clavi.

Alui.

Almismar.

Thymion.

THOSE little tumours, or low swellings, which are scene to appeare in the skinne like little billockes, the Latines haue fittely called *verruca*, for *verruca* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *porra*, leekes, because sometime they haue certaine threads lying betwene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of leekes. The Greekes haue no name, wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *verruca*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, *μυρμηκία*, *ακροχόρδων*, *ἰλας*, *βυρμον*, *Verruca* therefore of them be called *myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painfull like vnto the byting or stinging of an ant, whereupon their name is giuen vnto them, for the Greekes do call *μυρμηκία*, *formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name therof to the Greek word, haue called *formica verruca*, and for their forme & fashion, *sessile verruca*. These euils saith Celsus *Lib. 5.* do grow either in the palmes of the handes or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower & harder then a wart, & do cause greater paine: and they send forth more store of bloud, & they scarce at any time exceede the bignes of a hop. But *acrochordon* is a *verruca* that is as it were hāging, & of a more narrow foundation (that is) a certaine round highnes or growing vp in the skin, which hath the foundation (that is) the neather part very straight to the skin. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therefore, *acrochordones* are distinguished frō *myrmecia*, because they are very smal at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large and broad: contrariwise *myrmecia*, (as hath bin said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equal together with the skin, and *acrochordones* do alwayes appeare about the skin, (as *Gal. 14 lib. de morbis curandis* hath manifestly declared.) Beside these things, *acrochordones* (as Celsus saith) do grow vp thicke and many together, & do most trouble children, & oftentimes they fall againe sodainely, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also, which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a beane. They be called of Auicene *clavi*, but the Latins do terme *clavi verruce albe*, because they be like to the round heades of nayles. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they doe cause great paine, the Greekes call them *ἰλας*. But *Almismar* or *thymen*, in English a wart, is called of Celsus and of the Greekes *verrucula*, a little billocke, appearing about the bodie, which at the neather part next the skinne

is verie small (as *acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is also somewhat hard, and very sharpe in the toppe, which doeth represent the colour of the floure time, wherupō the name is giuē vnto it, & also it is easily spread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth some bloud, and is almost as great as an Egyptian beane, seildome bigger, but sometime lesser: sometime there groweth vp one alone, sometime many together, either in the anckles of the feete, or in the handes, or in the soles of the feete. But the worst *thymia* of all are in the filthie partes of the bodie, where they doe commonly bleede. Auicene seemeth to haue named this kinde of verruca, *rufum*, or (as another translation hath) *carseum*. Of the kinde of verruca be those euilles also, which Auicene called *cornua*, not much differing from the other sortes, but that they be somewhat long and are turned crooked agayne like vnto hornes. The euils called *calli*, (called of the Greekes also *τῆλλοι*) do not much differ from the aforenamed *clavi*, but that they be of themselves without grieffe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skinne wherein they are resident, neither doe they ingender of themselves or of their owne accord, but of the hardnesse of the skinne caused by labour.

Thymij magnitudo.

Thymia in obsecris pessima.

Cornua.

Calli.
τῆλλοι.

CHAP. XX.

The iudgements and cure of verruca.

AMONG all these euilles *Acrochordon* and *Thymion*, are oftentimes (as Celsus reporteth) ended and doe heale of themselves, and the lesser they be, the sooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Clavi* doe scarce at any tyme cease without curing. If *acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind, and therefore it groweth not agayne. But where *thymion* and *clavi* be cutte off there riseth vp vnderneath a little rounde roote, which descendeth downe somewhat deepe into the fleshe, and there abyding, it doeth cause the aforeseyd euilles to growe agayne. *Myrmecia* doe holde fast with verie broade rootes, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is very profitable to cut off *clavi* and then sprinkle it ouer with hoate water, for so it doth waxe soft and tender without any more adoe, and if it doeth bleede, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaseth. It is also taken away, by clensing it round about, and by laying on it rosen mixed with the beaten powder of *lapis molaris*. But the other kinde (as the same Celsus affirmeth) must be cured with hoate medicines. Now the fittest remedie for the other euils is that, which is made of the dregges of wine, and that medicine is good for *myrmecia*, which is made of alume and yellow oaker. Paulus Aegineta Lib. 4. cap. 15. rehearseth verie many remedies, which doe take away and vterly abandon these verrucae, especially those which be sessile and pensile. Of the which kinde are *claterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde cucumbers) rubbed on with salt, the barke of franckensence with vineger, rathe rype figges, which are rype before their time, with vineger, meale and *nitrum*. Also the iuyce or liquor of the aforeseyd figge tree annointed doth greatly helpe, the iuyce of *thy-myalus*, in Englishe spurge, the head of the fish *smaras* salted and burnt, the

Acrochordon.

Thymion.

Lib. 5.

Myrmecia.

Clavi.

Myrmecia.

The cure of

verrucae out of

Paulus.

*Aquaes far-
mentis distil-
lans.*

*Stercus bubu-
lum.*

Lacerta caput.

*Other orders of
curing.*

*How verruca
are safely bur-
ned.*

*The cure of
myrmecia be-
ing equal with
the skinne.*

*A new cure of
myrmecia out
of Galene.*

*Another cure
of myrmecia
Lib. 14. metho.
med.*

Scalprum.

rust of some mettall with quicke brimstone (that is) which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *ecyminum* with shoemakers bleache, (which the Greekes call *chancalithum*;) the water of the greene twiggies of the vine burnt in the fire) sheepes doung with vineger, goates gall annoynted, the fruite of the great herbe *heliotropium* applyed by it selfe, or ministred with wine, rewe with *nitrum* and peper, *nitrum* with the vrine of a young boy not yet accustomed with venerous actes, oxes doung ministred in vineger. But these, which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *myrmecia* and *acrochordones*, are greatly also effectuell for those euilles called *clauis* and *thymia*. They doe vse also the head of a lysard to take away *myrmecia*, *acrochordones*, and *clauis*. There are some which doe boyle the heades of salted fishes in that water, which distilleth out of the greene braunches, while they be burning: which they doe declare to be a most excellent remedy for the aforesayd euils. Other some to extinguish these diseases doe make a linament of the rust of brasse (which of the late Physitions is called *virride aris* & *flas aris*) of brimstone, and of the distilled water of vine braunches. And this is the onely methode of curing, which they are wont to vse in rasing out of *verruca*, (that is) by gnawing and scalding medicines. But this one thing is most diligencie to be obserued in administering such kinde of medicines, which Celsus doth admonish vs of in his fift booke: namelie, that those partes, which are about the euilles, ought to be couered with leaues, least they also be exulcerate, for which cause some doe annoynt the places about the diseases, with oyntment of Bole armoniacke, with *terra sigillata*, with rose water and vineger. Furthermore we abolishe *acrochordones*, *myrmecia*, and *thymia*, not onely with these aforesayd burning medicines: but also with the flame of the fire, or with some hoate instrument rightlie applied to them. Oftentimes also we cutte them off. But sometyme we doe take them awaye and viterlie destroye them by a ligature cunninglie made and prepared for them, (as it happeneth in that true disease called *ficus*) or else by setting to the foreteeth, as some at Rome in Galenes tyme were wont to doe. But if you shall apply fire or some hoate instrument to *verruca*, you must prouide, that a plate of Iron or some such thing being bored through be made ready for the burnt fore, the hole whereof must so fittely comprehend the same, that none of the skinne about it may be seene. A dustion being now made, you must resolue the crust with butter, or with some other annoynting medicine. Afterward you must cure the sore like vnto other vlcers. But how *myrmecia*, which do not appeare out of the skinne, but altogether, equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off: Galene teacheth very well Lib. 14. method. med. where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuised a new order to cure these *verruca*, first he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them or by sucking them, and then (which did seeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote, afterward setting to his foreteeth he viterly destroyed the. But *acrochordones*, appearing about the skin, he straight way bitte off with his teeth, & so quickly dispatched them. Galen also setteth down another double maner to cure the euils, saying: but a Chyrurgian being somewhat exercised in manuell practise, may easily cut off these *verruca*, both

with

with that instrument made to the forme of a mirtle leafe, and with that also, *Scalprum.* which the Greekes call *scelopomacherion*: (this alwaies provided) that the fore *Schelopoma-* be kept and separated from the skinne or partes about it. We also bring forth *cherion.* *myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle *Another cure* therof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equal with the thicknesse of *myr-* *invented by* *meia*, that it may pinch it round about in euey place. Which being afterwarde *a quill.* turned about the fore and enforced downward, it will quickly bring forth the whole *myrmecia* together with the verie roore, but you must marke, that the verie end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not onely thin and slender, but also sharpe and strong. The quill therefore of an old cocke, or rather of an Eagle is verie fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off, onely towards the roore, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *myrmecia*. And truly by this abscession if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Arte. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vicer which remaineth, (*verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp & brought vnto a scarre, as other vlcers be. *Prima scite radicem versus abscondenda.*

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema and other cold flegmaticke and flatulose tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours: we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their originall of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *oedema*. For as *erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humor: *oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vn painfull tumor: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmaticke humour that floweth into some member of the bodie, so that the same *Galen* in lib. 14. The thought of *oedema*, that it was a disease and no symptome. For truly we know (sayeth he) that *ademata* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, (that is to witte) of a flegmaticke humour, or vaporous spirit gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feete which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euilles called *phloze*, and *cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the bodie. For in those dangerous dispositions, *oedema* is an accidentall symptome of that effect which oppresth the man (that is) an accident necessarily following, which requirerh no seuerall or proper cure, (as afterward it shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *phlegmone* and *erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences (that is) by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *oedema*. A true *oedema* commeth of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else, but a raw blood not thoroughly digested, which is found in a lump of blood, verie fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *oedema* proceedeth of vn naturall flume. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall choler is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour enclining to a certen whitenesse, but in tast,

*Oedema quid.**Oedema est symptoma.**Oedema duplex verum.**Illegitimum.**What flume is*

What & after
what sort
fleume doth
degenerate
from his owne
nature.

Galen ap-
pointeth two
kinds of fleume.

3. Differences
of tumours be-
sides nature
comming of
fleume.

and (if I may speake it) in smell it is sweete and pleasant: ynnaturall fleume is that which doeth degenerate and differ from that fleume before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the boundes of his circuit and libertie, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *phlegma* or fleume, but some other humor. But this fleume chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies. One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his own naturall and proper substance it is chaunged without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly happneth verie often, for it is turned either into a waterish substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a verie thin matter, & then it is called *phlegma aquosum*, *flatuosum* or *tenue*; or it is turned into a thick and viscous substance, which maketh the fleume verie grosse and clammy, and through a greater (or as we may say) through a further induration, it is caused to looke like a plaister, or like glasse, or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way ynnaturall fleume is caused through admixtion, that is, whenas some other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either blood, or choler, or melancholie. If blood be commixed with fleume it is made sweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melancholie, it is made sowre and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of ynnaturall fleume after the opinion of Auicenn. Haly Abbas appointeth foure onely. But Galen (sayth Guido) seemeth to assigne vnto it two onely kindes, that is, salt and sowre, although in his second booke of the differences of feuers: and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleume called *vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyn himselfe with sowre fleume, by reason of that affinity and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleume there are ingendred eight species or differences of tumours besides nature. For; first of fleume that is naturall commeth, a true and a lawfull *œdema*. Secondly of ynnaturall fleume by reason of admixtion there proceed three other differences of tumours, because that three other humours may be commixed therewith, and these be they: *œdema phlegmonodes*, *œdema erysipelatodes*, and *œdema scirrhiodes*. Thirdly of ynnaturall fleume, through the alteration of his proper substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windie and vaporous fleume doth come that tumour, which of the Latines is properly called *inflatio*, but commonly among the Physitions it is termed *apostema ventosum*, a windie aposteme. Secondly, of waterish fleume, there proceedeth a waterish Aposteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, and grosse fleume there are engendred these tumours which some do call *leues nodi*, & there are also ingendred flegmaticke abscessions, which they do com only call *exitura phlegmatica*. But these are called of the interpreter of Auicenn *dubeles frigida*, of which sort are these, *sciatomata*, *asbestosmata*, and *melicerides*, *ganglia* also which be called of Auicenn, *glandula*, & other of that kinde which shalbe spoken of in that which followeth. Nowe of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleume, there doe arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioyns, and those evils also called *struma*, which are commonly called *scrofula*. Fourthly of corrupted and putrified fleume, there do come *fistula* and other ycers which they call *scrofulosa*.

The

The causes of *adema*, as also of other tumours besides nature are threefold. *Three causes of adema.*
 First, primitive causes are these: a fall from some high place, a stripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmaticke humour running downe into some member of the bodie. Thirdly, *Coniunctio cause*, is the verie fleume which is already stuffed and heaped in the member that is beset with a tumour. The signes of *adema* are these; a loofe and soft tumour, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the manner of a caue or denne, it doth not rise vp againe at the remouing of the finger, but it doth reataine the verie footstep or marke of that which presseth it. There is felt verie small paine, or almost none at all. Verie litle heate, a verie white colour, or (as some will haue it) a meane betweene whitenesse and palenesse, and other such like signes, which do testifie the dominion & power of fleume. *Oedema* (as other tumours also) hath foure times, at the beginning, the augmenting, the state, and the declination of the tumour. This kinde of tumour is most cured by resolution, or exhalation, but seldome by suppuration, verie often by turning and changing them into knots or kernels called *Nodi*, or into other increasing (as they call them) which are termed of the Græcians *Apoflemmata*, but of the Latines *Abscessus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finishing of these kindes of tumours are handled before in our generall discourse of tumours. These *oedematous* tumours are rather excited in the winter time, then at other seasons, for then verie much fleume is gathered together in mens bodies. These tumours also do greatly and verie often trouble olde men, and them which be giuen to gluttonie.

Iudicia.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.

PECAUSE *adematous*, after the manner of other tumors, are raised through the fluxe of humors into some member, the scope and order of their cure shall also be two folde. 1. The one is to dissolue the substance of these humours which nowe do occupie the member. 2. The other is to withstand and restraine the flux. And as the one scope doth excell the other, so the remedies of their cure must be commixed together, the one with the other, either somewhat plentifully or somewhat sparingly. When therefore the order of restraining shall overcome that which counselleth vs to vse euacuating and digesting remedies, the force of restrictiues must be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of restriction, the nature and vertue of digesting or discussive and drying medicines, must of necessity excell in the mixture. Moreouer both the plentiful fluxe and the small deale of matter in the affected part doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of restrictiue medicins must be more effectual, & of greater force. Contrariwise you must vse a greater measure of drying & digesting remedies, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, & the fluxe very litle. But in an old and inueterat *adema*, & that which is already ingendred, you shall not vse any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you shall apply such things as can

Curandi oedematis scopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an olde adema.

*Oedemati ut
Symptoma est
curatio.*

disperse and deuide the matter. Which thing is also diligently to be obserued in all other continuall vlcers. But *oedema*, which is an euill symptomat following other dangerous affectes, as leanness of the body, the dropsie and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *cachexia*, doth desire no proper, peculiar or seuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect whereof it first groweth. Yet somewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the strength or increase the chief affect, or else hinder the cure. It shall therefore be sufficient (if it shall neede any cure) to rub diligently the swelling place, sometime with *oxyrhodinum*, sometime with oyle mingled with salt, or else with *Oxyrhodinum* with salt. For this kinde of friction doth flake the tumour, and doth mitigate paine, if it be prouoked too rough too much distention (as sometime it chanceth) *oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oyle with salt hath power to digest and empiric out that which is compact in the member. But *oxyrhodinum* with salt doeth partly digest and drie vp, and partly restraine and stop the affluetion of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawfull *oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thin fleume: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmoné* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say, 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the phlegmaticke humour, which they call *equatio*, an equal diuision, & in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissolving and drying vp the humour that is flowed already and now doeth occupie the member. 4. And last of all in correcting and removing the symptonates or accidents which doe follow *oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions by the which we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of sixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applied to the sicke bodie if they shall all decline vnto heate and driness with a certaine attenuation or diminishing. Therefore chuse and prepare a thinn and drie ayre. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined and cleane from dregges, cleare, white, or somewhat red, which they call claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and alayed a litle with water. Let his bread be verie well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheeps, or the flesh of the birdes of mountaines and of the plaines, and those rather roasted, then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbs, and other fat meates. Let him abstain from things that be vnleavened, raw, and verie yppist. Let him not eate of any kind of pulse or cheese, nor of vntimely and varipe fruites, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in grauelly places, and those also either roasted, or boiled in wine.) Roasted meates generally, are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the baker can prouide. Let him eate litle, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the belly be bound, loose it with figges, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore siue or sixe drie figges, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning or before dinner. Let the bodie be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt. Let his sleep be litle & short. Let him altogether avoid bathing, and

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull oedema.

Prima intentio.

Aer.
Potus.

Cibus.

Repletio.
Inanitio.
Motus.

Somnus.
Balneum.
Secunda intentio.

and all other moistening things. The second intention is accomplished by preparatiues, or by remedies equallie deuinding (which they commonly call digestiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter, wherewith the bodie of the sicke doeth abound. Therefore you must giue him some kinde of *Oximell*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleume that lurketh in the bodie. Afterwarde the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Physitian, must be empued out with some medicine, that can purge fleume called *phlegmagon*. But if sayth Guido out of *Cauliacus*)aboundaunce be present in the bodie, you may safelie open a veyne, but yet not without the aduise of some expert Physitian. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at anie time seene any *oedemata*, especially, these which be lawfull, for fleume doth not abounde in it more plentifully then other humours doe. Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with other humours, it can seldome flowe into anie part of a plentiful bodie, wherefore letting of blood especiallie in a lawfull *oedema* doeth seeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying reperculsiues, & not by those remedies, which by binding vehementlie with their naturall coldnesse doe repell and driue backe, but by those which haue power to drie greatlie, and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinesse and resolution. But in the increase, by vsing discussiue remedies somewhat more forcible. But in the state thereof, especially about the ende, the fluxe being already stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which doe verie strongly digest and resolue. But in the declination by consuming and drying helpes if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into Abscessions, which they call *Exitura*, it shalbe cured by ripening medicines and by other helpes, which are set downe for the cure of Abscessions. Moreouer repressing remedies endued with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *oedema* comming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galeno Libr. 14. Therapeut. & secundus ad Glauconem*, where he sayth, that if *Oedema* doeth consist of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, shall sometime abundantly suffice. But these must be so well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, & ending aboue. Let the sponge be very new, And if there be not a newe to be gotten, you shall cleanse and scoure the old verie diligently by washing it in *nitrum* and *aphorizum*, and in lye. *Auicene* commaundeth that in steade of a sponge, you sometime applie a double linnen cloth, or some like thing. The second rule is mentioned of *Auicene* himselfe. *R. Baurach* of the decoction of water (that is) of salt peter, or of the some of salt peter, of ashes, of vineger, of each as much as shall suffice. The third rule is described of *Razi* after this maner. *R. Alges*, *mirhe sicci*, *acatia*, *sies memitha* (that is) of *Glaucium*, of *Cyperus*, of *crocus orientalis*, of *Bolearmoniacke*, of each a litle quantitie: powder them, & comix the with the iuyce of coleworts called *Brassica*, and with vineger, & make an emplaister. Furthermore those remedies

Secunda intentio.

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be used in the beginning of oedema.

1.

Pesca aquosa.

2.

3.

Emplastrum Razi.

Remedies to be
used in the
time of increa-
sing.

Lib. 14. Ther.
& 2. ad Glau.

Remedies for
the state and
declination.

1.

Spongia aqua
lixiva imbuta.

2.

Linimentum.

3.

Emplastrum
Auicenne.

Vsnea quid.
Concoquensia
seu maturata.

This is given to
Theodoricus.

which were of late rehearsed, doe also helpe much the increasing of this cedematous tumour, if you doe put vnto them a good quantitie of vineger, and a little Alumc, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skinne, and when as *aquosor posca* shall not auayle. Therefore if *adema* doeth not cease or rest with these helpes mentioned a litle before, when you binde it to againe, you shall commixe a litle more vineger, that the *posca* may be the stronger: or you shall lay on a litle alumc, and applie a new sponge. For this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, and doth long continue very effectuell, and with his substance it doth dry vp the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges, it is better (sayth *Galene*) to vse that which the common sorte call *eychmion*. But aboue all things let it be soft, which kinde is vsed at *Tarsi*, whereof if there be any plentie, you may boldly vse: for you shall try it to be more profitable, then the vsing of sponges. But let it be wetted in *Posca*, & a litle alumc therewith. Then (as it is set downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather partes, and end aloft. Let the binding be meane and small, as in the setting of a bone. But truly the first casting about of the swathing band, which must begin beneath, ought to be tied somewhat strait, but all the rest, must be slacked by litle & litle, but yet not so, that any part of the binding be loose. Now the remedies which are to be ministred after the vigour of the state, when the fluxe is stayd, & in an vniuersall declination (if *adema* doeth require resolution) are wont also to be described & contained vnder a three fold rule. 1. The first is of *Auicene*, which is a sponge dipped in lye, of the ashes of the figge tree, of the vine, & of the holme, which is a kinde of oke; apply these to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to dry & to cleanse. 2. The second is of *Brunnus* which *Theodoricus* also vsed. Rx. of Alumc, brimstone, mirrhe and salt, of each a like quantitie. Commixe all these with oyle of roses, and with vineger, and make a linement, which yet doth dry more strongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicene* likewise, whose description is this as followeth. Rx. of cowes dung. ℞. of *olybanum*, of *styrax*, of *vsnea* (that is) of the mosse of trees, which is called of the Grecians *bryon*, of *calamus aromaticus*, of *spikenard*, of wormwood. ana. ℞. ss. apply all these with vineger, and with the decoction of colewortes, and make an emplaster. And this truly is the way to cure *adema*, which is finished by resolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digestion, but do come vnto suppuration, you may applie and that verie profitable *unguentum* è *succis* called *diachylon*, and that ointment especiallie which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the same purpose also this emplaster following is very effectuell. Rx. mallowes, branke vrsine, or *hirtina*, which is called *Achanta* and *achanta*, roote of *Althea*, roote of lillie, roasted onyons, inayles, leauen, linscede, sodden and kneaded, & mingled with swines greace, or with butter, bring them into the forme of an emplaster, or rather of a cataplasma. Another for the same purpose verie effectuell. Rx. of the iuyce of elder, of walwort, of sorrell) which our late writers do call *lapatium acutum*) of leuisticum or *ligusticum*, & of fennel. of each of them, as much as you thinke good; yet of an equall weight, boyle them with *dialthea*, with hony, oyle, & butter, & of the make a cataplasme. The Aposteme being ripe, do not tary till it open of the own accord, for that happeneth seldom, or peraduenture neuer, but let a

pertion

pertion be made with some hotte iron, or some burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the manner and forme before expressed. Then let the filthinesse be clenfed out and wiped away with that ointment commonly called *unguentum Apostolorum*, or with a mundificatiue of *apium*, and with the iuyce of wormwood, or with this ointment following which doth draw & cleanse the thicke and grosse matter. R^x. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of rosen, *terebinthina*, pitch, of bullocks tallow, of old oyle, ana. a like quantitie: dissolve the gummes in vinegar, and let them melt or boile vpon the fire with the rest, & make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthie vlcers. But we dispatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and qualitie of the accidents that chaunce very sodenly, as if paine doth happen, it must most especially be mitigated, by applying moist oyle of wooll, after the doctrine of *Auicene* or by boiled wine, or by a cerate made of the oyle of chamomill, of the oyle of wormewood, of the oyle of spike and of wax. But if hardnesse be present it must be dissolved & mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with harts marrow, or with some such like thing, as hereafter shalbe sayd. But *Galene* in an inueterate *oedema* did annoynt the fore with oyle, and then ministrated a sponge dipped in lye, and binding it somewhat iust or strait did perfectly cure the euill.

Now it remaineth that we set down the summe of the cure of *oedema*. 1. First therefore vnto an *oedema*, which is a symptomatic happening & comming sodenly with other diseases (as the dropie, leanness of the body, and that euill called *cachexia*) apply such medicines as ca^d discusse & dry vp without grief. 2. Therefore rub the swolne place diligently with *oximell*, or with *oxyrhodiniū*, or with oyle & salt, or else with *oxyrhodinum* & salt: for by this frictioⁿ you shall both mitigate the paine (if any be caused through distention) & remit the tumour also. But to an *oedema* which commeth of the influxion of thin sleume, if flux doth not yet cease, apply those medicines, which partly digest, & partly constraîne and restrain. 4. Therefore bind a new sponge, or some other dipped in lye, or wetted first in alayed, *Pisca*, especially in soft and tender bodies, & (if the tumour doth possesse the members of the body) bind about them softly some swadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vse to do in setting of bones. 5. But if by these remedies, the tumour doth not flake or yeeld, put a litle alum with *posca*. vidz. with *oxycratū*. 6. But if the affect shalbe of any continuance you must not vse any more these remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to say digesting and restraining) but rather digestiues. 7. Therefore, the member being first annoynted with oyle, you must minister a sponge (as we said) dipped in lye, and bind it with swathing bandes somewhat iust and strait.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumors aboue nature, which the Latins call *inflations* but they are commonly called *vrindie Apostemes*, *apostemata ventosa*.

IT is now verie requisite for vs to dispute of the Tumours called *Inflationes* whose cure is diuerse from the cure of *oedemata*. For they (as *Galene* saith *Lib. 14. Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore doe

Y ij

Aperio.

A mundificatiue ointment, which is attributed to *Diuus*

Quarta intentio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemate disturno.

Capita curatio nis oedematis.

1. Oedema moribus.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6. Oedema inueteratum.

7.

The difference betweene inflation & oedema.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum

causa.

Lib. 6. de mor-
bis & sympto-
mat.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum
notae.Inflationum
prognostica.Inflationum
curatio.

yeeld vnto touching and handling, & our fingers being layed thereon do descend somewhat deeply into them. But *Inflationes* do come of a flatuous spirite gathered together, breeding sometime vnder the skinne, sometime vnder the thinne filmes, which are compassed about with the bones, or they do shut in & include the muscles, or else some part of the bowels. Furthermore sometime there is also not a litle of this humor gathered together in the belly & in the inward parts, & also in the middle space of them, & of the *Peritoneum*, as in that kinde of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne (which euill we call a Tympany.) These also differ frō *œdemati*, because they being touched with the fingers do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime, they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes very great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weaknesse of the naturall heat, which is placed in a flegmaticke matter to prouoke windines. For truly heat may take vp such a vapour of a moyst substance, but it cannot deuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the North wind bloweth) doeth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the ayre pure & cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause cloudes, so it happeneth in liuing creatures. For heat, neither by extreme weaknesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane betweene these affecti-
ons. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Auicene* saith) either because of the thicknesse of the member, or for the grossenesse of the vaporous spirite. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thicknesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour doth cause, that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

The signes of inflation are these, a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling, it appeareth very cleare and bright, & when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a bottle, or Tympanic. Moreover there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole body, sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensive paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirit, which is not dissolued & dispersed, doth procure many discomforts. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and down within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawē frō some venomous matter. But now seeing these three things, vidz. the moyst matter, the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thicknesse of the pores of the body, do concur together to the generation of *inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this, first to strengthen the substance of the heat, to extenuate the vapour & flatuous matter, & to preuent or open the thicknesse of the pores of the body (wherin this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained.) Now we make perfect and we finishe the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, & the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one and the same kinde of medicines, which is by vsing those remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members & by applying those helpes, which can heat either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members according to the thicknesse or thinnesse thereof, & according

also

also to the grosseesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or facultie of those medicines which are ministred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not verie thicke, are but meanly to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which containeth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate and heate them. But if the substance of naturall heate shall perishe or diminish, it must be repaired againe, regarding the greatnesse of the losse thereof. But if it shalbe altered, you must bring it vnto a certaine mediocritie. But if grieffe there shall vex or molest the sicke, you must hasten vnto those helps which can mitigate paine. Verie well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of Inflations (which they call *Apossemata ventosa*) is dispatched by three intentions. The first consisteth of a iust and due obseruation of diet. The second of a good concoction or digestion, and the third dependeth of the discussing and dispersing of the windie spirite, which is assembled in the member. Therefore let the institution of diet be after this manner. First of all you must abstaine from all grosse, viscos, rawe, flegmaticke and windie meates: as are sweete meates, all kind of pulse, rawe fruit, rape roots, Chest-nuts, and other things of that sort which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You must vse hote and drie things, and those remedies also which can attenuate and dissolue windiness, as is, bread made of barley with a litle salt and commin seed. Let the patient his drinke be, small ale or beere. Let him vse the decoction of Cicers mixed with onyons: let him take *apium hortense* (which is commonly called *petroselinum* parcely) calamint, rewe, commin. Let the flesh which he eateth on, be rather roasted than sodden, and especially the flesh of birdes (as hath bene sayed in the former Chapter.) But now that you may dispatch the second intention, you must strengthen & corroborate the vertue concoctiue with some sweet and odoriferous sauiours, and by confections, and by electuaries appointed for this purpose, as be these, *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthe*, *Aromaticum*: *rosatum*, and this decoction following, which they call *Drageta*. R^y. of annise, of fennell, *Carnus daucus*, commin, of laurell berries beaten together .ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of liquorice, galingale, white ginger .ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of cloues, cubeb, of long pepper, seede of rew, .ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of annise seede couered ouer with sugar . \mathfrak{z} . iij. of sugar \mathfrak{lb} . β . make a powder. But outwardly let the stomacke be annointed with oyle of spike, of *Costum*, and oile of rew: or make an Epitheme of those things which can discusse winde, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applyed to the stomacke. But these things do rather appertaine vnto Phisicke than vnto Chyrurgerie. The third intention is accomplished by applying some medicine which hath a double vertue, (that is) which can both concoct, digest, and moderately binde, neither will increase paine. But to the perfecting of these things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in libro 14. *Therapeut*. The first is mentioned of *Galen* in these words. In the arteries (saith he) and in the muscles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is risen, if it be without grieffe, some liqour applyed to the thinnest members shall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye ministred with a newesponge. But if grieffe doth also trouble

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta bel-
peth digestion.

Tertia intentio.

*Inflation com-
meth of a bruse
in the arteries,
muscles, and
filmes which
cover the bones.*

Sapa.

Lana succida.

*Oleispu.
Ceratum etc
resipe.*

*Pro lixiu
Aphronitrum.
Formula tertia*

*How an old
inflation must
be handled.*

him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the same. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruse, when as either the muscle, or the filme which compasseth the bone, is brused or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforecleyd sponge must be layed. 2. The second rule is described also in the same place after this sort: but vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must applie some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must applie not onely lie alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, and also a litle oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to applie lie, but to vse *Sapa* with wine, and a litle vineger, and to put to them a litle oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heare them, and lay on vnwalshed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plentie of such wooll, then the oile of wooll is to be vsed with the former mixture: but if oyle of wooll be at hand neither, you shall commixe verie well some Cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the brused muscles must needs be lenised with some medicine which hath a double strength (that is) which can both concoct, digest, and inoderately binde. But if the medicine containeth no astriction, it encreaseth sometime *phlegmone*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therefore of these three indications already declared (that is, of concoction, digestion, and moderate astriction) in the muscles which are inflated by means of some bruse or stripe, when great paine dorth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating remedie, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more oyle and wine, whose force I knowe to be mightie, when as paine together with the inflation doeth speedily hasten to an end. And truly the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mightie effect, as are these, lie and vineger, and next after them wine hath a mightie operation. As often therefore as you mind not to assuage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantitie of lie and vineger. Again when you intend to repell and driue backe, you must put in more of wine then of other things, which wine shalbe the more effectuell for this purpose if it be black and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantitie of lie. But if you shall mingle vineger with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that vineger hath a double and mingled facultie. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of lie vse *Aphronitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather fomic. The third rule is an emplaister made of the filthinesse which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, and of vnslaked lime, boyled together in water and wine. These are the wordes of *Galen lib. 1. 4. Therap.* But those inflations (saith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquitie, you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of lie (as hath bene saied before:) and secondly you shall minister some emplaister. But I will declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First the filthinesse that commeth of mens bodies must be heat and thoroughly strained that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinkle it in the vessel where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thicknesse of clay.

That

That medicine also is verie good for these inflations which is made of *Sycomor* If the windie
rum, & other remedies of that sort do greatly helpe also. But if this flatuous spi-
 rit, which causeth the inflation shall be smokie, wicked, corrupt, & excited of a
 venomous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehemēt heate, running vp
 and downe in the members of the bodie, no more safe or better counsell can
 be giuen then that (when it is resident in some particular member) that mem-
 ber be straightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the middest the tumor be
 opened with a rasor, or with some hore instrument, so that the venomous va-
 pour may easily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound must be filled with
 aloës, and with bole armoniacke dissolued in oyle of roses and vineger. But
 within three or foure dayes after, you must fill vp the wound with flesh, and
 bring it to a scarre. But in such venomous inflations, a verie thin diet must be
 obserued, and the body must be emptyed with some purging medicine. And if
 you minister *Theriaca* to the sick, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth
 the summe of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in these
 wordes following. First, confirme and strengthen the weake substance of heat
 that is in the affected member, restore the same againe, and when it is altered
 bring it into some mediocrinie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporos and windie
 humor which raiseth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skinne,
 and of the whole affected member with medicines that are effectuell for the
 thinnesse of the members, afterward seeke to discusse the flatuous vapour.
 Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according
 to the thicknesse of the flatuous vapor, or thinnesse of the medicins which are
 applied,) intend and remit as well the matter as the facultie & vertue of them.
 5. Furthermore, if such a vaporos tumor shall chance with griefe and with in-
 flammation (as it happeneth in the muscles which through some bruse are
 stuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in
 proceſse of time, vse such remedies as haue power to dissolue, increasing by
 litle and litle the plentie thereof. Sixtly Inflation, which through negligence
 are inueterate, first annoint them with lie, and then lay to some plaister, which
 can mollifie, dissolue and discusse them.

*Vitruatio
 Theriaca.
 The summe of
 curing of a fla-
 tuous tumour;*

1

2

3

4

5

6

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of a Tumor caused of a thin substance, which they call aquosum
 Apostema (that is) a waterish Aposteme.*

IF fleume doth vniuersally abound throughout the whole bodie, that kind of
 disease (which is a waterish humour running betweene the skinne and the
 flesh, called *Leucophlegmatia*) doth accompanie the same, as Galen hath no-
 ted in his sixth booke de *symptomatum causis*. But when this flegmaticke hu-
 mour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendred *oedema*: for so they
 call a loose tumour, which is without paine. But if waterish excrements do
 abound, they are wont to bring the dropſie (which they call *ascites*) which if
 they shall couch themselues in one onely member, they do raise in it *Phlyctene*
 (that is to say) pushes or wheelkes. Furthermore the latter sort of Physitions

*Leucophleg-
 matia.*

*Serosum in-
 crementum.*

Phlyctena.

haue bene accustomed to all this kinde of waterish tumors; *Aquosum phlegma*, as also they do terme that humour to be flegme which floweth in the feet and legges of them that are troubled with the dropie, and aboundeth in the leane partes of the bodie, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habit, (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And these kindes of tumors which do proceede of waterish flegme, or of the aforesayd serous increasing, they doe also call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in those dangerous dispositions or diseases they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deserue the name of a disease, but of a symptome, for that it truly needeth no particular or seuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *oxyrrhodinum*, or sometime with salt and oyle, or with salt and *oxyrrhodinum* doth stop it, and many other things of that kind do worke the like effect. But the causes of these tumors are these, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtinesse of nourishment declining to aquositie, as you may easily gather out of the sixth booke of *symptomatum causis*. The signes and iudgements are almost all one with a true *œdema*. Yet they differ in this, because in the waterish tumors the tumor is more loose then in a lawfull *œdema*: and therefore it doth not so resist touching, neither doth it sound like winde, but rather as water; and it doth seeme to shine after a sort, when one beholdeth it against the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumor, there is no doubt but that a waterish tumor proceedeth of a greater coldnesse then a flatuous tumor doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphorismes. But it seemeth (saith he) that a waterish *Hydrops*, which they call *Ascites*, is engendred of great coldnesse, but a *Tympanie* of lesse cold; which disease is named of *Hippocrates* a drie water running betweene the skin. For a moist substance cannot be chaunged into a flatuous vapour without some heate. Moreover waterish tumors do happen oftener in the feet, in the stones & cods, in the head, and in the ioynts, then in any other partes of the bodie, both because such a kinde of humour doth readily rush into those partes, and also because heate is verie meane and litle in them: for because they be farre off from the hottest members. And as a flatuous vapour is seldome found without a waterish humor: so a waterish or serous humor is scarce contained at any time in any member without a windy spirit. Hitherto haue we spoken of the generation, the causes, signes, and iudgements of a waterish tumor: now we will set downe the cure thereof. Seeing that these waterish tumors are caused (as we haue sayd already) of the flowing of a serous humour, there needeth no other meanes, especially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expressed already in the cure of other tumors, which are engendred of the influxion of humors into some member. The order therefore of remedying such kind of tumors in the beginning shall consist of two pointes, (that is to say) 1. to emptie out that which is flowd 2. and to stoppe and inhibire the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diseases, which are yet but in begetting, so also in these affects, the Physicion must be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreseeing the danger following: (that is) both to remedie the disease, and prouide

Lib. 2. ad
Glaucōnem
14. Therap.

Causa.
Signa.

Iudicia.
Ascites is cau-
sed of more
cold then Tym-
panites.
whas parts
these tumors
do most occupy.

Aquosum
curatio.

Curatio du-
plex.

prouide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Physicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may profit & dispatch this doubt and generall method, it is necessarie to recite five other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* for the cure of a waterish tumor, in this manner and order as followeth. The first consisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out of the waterish humor through the passages of the vrine. The fifth and last consisteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and conrined in the aggrieved member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine to the Physicion then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profite we haue taken this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those things which went before: I haue set downe the cure in the 33 Chap. of my 3. booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention onely, which requireth some new intended remedies. The fift intention therefore is ended with those medicines which can drie vp, and resoluē those waterish and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of these remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first out of *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucanem*, and *lib. 14. method. medendi*, which is made of *oxyrrhodinum* and salt (as hath bene before declared.) The second is out of the same author, which is a new sponge dipped in lie, and to this purpose serueth those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *oedemata*: with the which helps (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strongly) you must commix *Aphronitrum*, alumē, and brimstone. The third rule is a certaine emplaister described of *Auicē* for the cure of *serofula*, which emplaister he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum c. 27. v. 6*. But this emplaister (as he sayeth) within one weeke at the most, and often times within three dayes doth resoluē all the hardnesse of the cuill. But although this emplaister cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to belong vnto *Galen*: notwithstanding we may vie the same verie fitly to the dissolution of a waterish and flatusous hardnesse: whose description out of *Auicē* is this that followeth. *R. of mustard seed, of Auicēsementle seed, brimstone, spuma maris, aristolochia rotunda, and bdellium, ana. ʒ. j. of plaster to dis-* ammoniacke, old oile and waxe, *ana. ʒ. iij.* But if the hardnesse of the tumor be cusse waterish more present remedie, then to open with some instrument, and then to clense it and scoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The summe of curing a waterish tumor is this. 1. Appoint such a dyet to the sicke as can attenuate heate, and drie vp. 2. Let him vie a moderate exercise of his bodie, let him eate and drinke little, let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digesteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the waterish humor, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by the bellie, and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp, and digest through breathing that serous humor which is included in the affected mem-

Five particular intentions in curing a waterish tumor.

1 2
3
4
5

1

2

3

Capita curati-
onis aquosi tu-
moris.

1 2 3
4
5

- 6 ber. 6. But if it cannot thus be discussed, put some penknife, or some other hoc
instrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that
place where it is most inclined downward, that so the humour may the more
easily come forth. 7. Euacuate the humor which did cause the tumour by some
emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertain
vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

*Of the diseases called Glandula, Nodi and Struma, together
with other Abscessions, which they call Phleg-
matica Excrecentie.*

*Enumeratio
abscessuum pi-
nitisorum.*

*Simplicia sunt
regula compo-
sitorum.*

*Glandula
Gnidoia.*

*Auicennas glan-
dulae are all one
with Ganglia.*

GANGLIA so called of the Græcians, *Charades* (that is) *Struma*, which they
also call *Scrofulæ*, *Bronchocèle*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gutturi*,
Melicerides, *Stearomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Tessudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*,
which names giuen to tumors were inuenred of the late Physicians, and are
not to be found among auncient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicennas*
calleth *Fugilla*, also *Nodi*, and *vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumors of
that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do growe, they haue their ge-
neration of fleume, and for that cause they are iustly referred vnto phlegma-
tike tumors. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do dege-
nerate into a stonie hardnesse and into schirrhous diseases: yet the roote and
the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleume, (as *Auicennas* de-
clareth) yet we will not denie, but that some other humor may sometime be
commixed with fleume, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so
there do growe vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of an o-
ther kind. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by
whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumors shall ap-
peare most evidently: for the one must alwayes be referred vnto the other as
it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said else where.) Therefore
all the aforesaid tumors are comprehended vnder the kind of phlegmaticke
Abscessions or (that I may speake after the maner of the comon Chirurgicalians)
vnder the *Genus* of phlegmaticke increasings, which diseases haue certaine spe-
ciall differences among themsekues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandu-
la*, (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which
forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula*, saith he, is
euerie where soft, one alone, moueable, & disseuered from the other partes ly-
ing about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane & pure parts of the body. But
Glandule in *Auicennas* doth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some
other place ioined to the sinewes and cords of the bodie, and these *Glandule* he
would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmus*, the
crampe. They do hapen also in the palme of the hand, & in the forehead, as
Auicennas sayth, who also calleth them sometime *Glandula* *Apostemata*, sometime
Nodi: for he doth intreat of those euils verie rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in
his Chapter de *Nodu* euen vnto the end, & in his treatise de *Glandula*. Therefore
Auicennas *Glandule* do seeme to be diuerse from *Guido* his *Glandula*, and *Ganglia*
among

among the Græcians to be all one with *Auicē* his *Glandula*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie. *Ganglium* (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes which is caused of some stripe or of wearinesse, & that in many parts of the bodie especially in those which are alwaies mouing, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Aetius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib. 6. ca. 39.* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompany it, confirmeth those verie words which we spake before saying: *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hands, & of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feete, although also it ariseth in other parts of the bodie. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumor is al of one color, resisting touching or handling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfully, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the verie skin next the sides: but againe, if you prouoke it by force it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglij*, now we will discourse of other flegmatike tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else, but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, *videlicet, Glandule* chiefly, appearing in the neck, the armeholes, and in the parts about the priuie members, where *Glandule* are placed by the vessels of the bodie that lie vnder them: yet sometime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinitie is turned into the nature of *Struma*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latines call them *Struma*, but the Greeks *Chæradæ*, either truly because of the stones called *Chæradæ* growing in the Sea, or else because of those beastes called *Sowes* that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euilles do rise vp many together) which beastes are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofa*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke & glandulous necks, and commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith that *Struma* is a tumor, wherein vnder the congeled place there do arise certen things like *glandule* of matter & bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nofethrills, the priuie parts of the body, & the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Struma* saith he, do arise in the fore part of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Seatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Melicerides*. *Lupia* saith *Guido*, is soft & round like vnto a hop, & chiefly chuseth his place in hard & dry places of the body, as in the eie-lids & in other sinowy members: the Frenchmen call it commonly *une Loupe*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shalbe afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongst the Greekes: the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *lupia*, to be alone with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignant vicer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs; & it is very hūgry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue this title) eating vp the flesh that

Cap. 16. lib. 4.
Ganglium
quid.

Signa Ganglij.

Scrofulæ.

Chæradæ
Græcorum.

Sues.
Struma Celsi.

Lib. 6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

*Nodi.**Anicene nodi.**Atheroma.**Meliceris.**Steatoma.**Tessudo.*

lie next vnto it, which cuill without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedane*. Diseases therefore are farre diuerse among themselues the one from the other, although in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus*, (as the knot of a rope) is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same place, growing especially about the sinowy places of the bodie. But *Anicene* in a certaine place defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adiposi* & *adipini nodi*, fat kernels, and with *Meliceride*, which are called *mellurij nodi*, and with *Atheromata*, which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greeks call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abscessions, that is to say, *Steatoma*, *Meliceris*, & *Atheroma* are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* also maketh mention of them in verie many places: we thinke it conuenient (hauing here gotten so fit oportunitie) to intreat of them plainly to declare their nature and their markes whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do differ and dissent, and in what things they doe also conspire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumor of one and the same colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or sinowy tunicle a soft humor like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulse which is made of boiled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata* together with a soft humor, there are found certaine stonie and hard substances, and other things like vnto small peeces of brimstone, oftentimes there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a herne, and like vnto haire wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure verie long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being pressed with the fingers, by reason of the clammishnesse and thicknesse of the humor, it doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued, it doth slowly also returne again. But *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of pain also, but yet it is round, wherein the humor, which is also included in some sinowy tunicle, (which they call *Cystu*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance of honie: whereupon some of the Latins do call it *Mellifanum*, a hony comb. *Meliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in the substance of the humor: for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the humor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former place. But *Steatoma* is a tumor also besides nature, all of one colour, and verie gentle to be handled, in the beginning truly it is verie small, but in proceesse of time it increaseth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humor verie like vnto tallowe, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes of the bodie. This is distinguished from *Meliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reason of the hardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull, and it doth resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinds of Apostemes which are almost reduced vnto these three whereof we haue now entreated. *Tessudo* (sayth *Guido*) is a great Abscession, verie humerall, soft, and of a broad fashion, after the manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euil if it groweth (saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called

Bocium:

Bocium: ifin the stones, *Hernia*. but sometime it is found with matter, or with certaine scales, or with a *fistula* accompanying it. But *Tesudinis* & *Talpe*, amongst the ancient Philistions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once entreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Tesudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet somewhat big, in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certain tunicle, which doth so cleave vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incidēt to the skin of the head) that it oftentimes corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, & cōprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*, but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*; but *Talpe*, because it containeth a white matter, is rather referred vnto *Atheroma*, then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth that it is a kind of *Tesudo*, yea also that it is *Tesudo* it selfe (as we sayd a late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affectes haue borrowed there diuerse names according to the varietie of the places, wherein they are found. But that which the common sorte call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) doe properly call *Brouchocèle*: we call it *Hernia in gutturo*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturiosi*, which doe labour of that disease. *Brouchocèle* is a great tumour chauncing in the necke, very round betwene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead fleshe, sometime a certaine humour like vnto honie, or far, or sodden meale, or water. Sometime also (as *elsus* sayth) there are found in such tumours certaine haire mingled with little bones. *Nafsa* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumour, full of fleshe, like vnto the flesh of a mans buttockes, of diuerse formes and greaunesses as are melons and gourdes, and therefore it borroweth sundrie names according to the varietie of the fashion and member wherein it is placed. Moreouer this tumor which of the latter sort is called *Nafsa* or *Napta*, is voyde of paine, except peraduenture it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the partes of that member, it bringeth some griefe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abscessions, and doth pertain vnto *Steatomata* (as we sayd before in the enumeration of tumours besides nature. *Bubo* (sayth *Galene*) is a disease of the loose members, or of *Glandulae*, (which the Greekes call *Adene*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vntruly here rehearsed it among the number of flegmaticke abscessions: or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galene* doth. But *Bubones*, which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vicers and diseases, are without any danger. but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nosegthrills, or the necke. *Fugilla* (saith the interpreter of *Avicene*) is of the kinde of glandulous Apostemes, and this terme (saith he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chauncing behind the eares. By the which description it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugilla*, so called of *Avicene*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greeks *Parotis*, that is, a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the eares, But some do thinke *Fugilla* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of the, then of *Galene* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skinn or filme, it is very hard also after the manner of

Talpa.

Bocium.

Brouchocèle.

Nafsa.

Nafsa or
Napta is re-
ferred vnto
Steatomata.

Bubo.

Fugilla.

παρωτις.
What Bubo is
with Guido &
other late Phy-
sicians.

The differences
of flegmaticke
abscessions.

Of the causes,
signes & iudgements
of the
aforesaid tumours.

Causes of tumours which
pertaine vnto
fleume.

The matter of
flegmaticke
abscessions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Note abscessus
relamento
inclusi.

Iudicia abscessuum
pituitosorum.

Arnaldus à
villa nova.

the euils called *Scrofule*, and in that signification (as Iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doeth register *Fugilinus Bubo* amongst the number of flegmaticke abscessions. But there are now found out verie manie titles giuen to these kindes of phlegmaticke abscessions. But we ought not greatly to stand vpon the names of them, so that we know and vnderstand the onely differences of them, because it falleth so out, that according to the diuersitie of their names, their cures and iudgements do varie. Therefore of such kinde of abscessions, some truly are included within a certain skin or tunicle (which they call *Cystis*) and some are deeply planted in the flesh: some haue a slender foundation, or small roote, & some againe are verie large and brode. Also some are easie to be resolued, and some are farre otherwise: some great and some little. Some also do come vnto suppuration, and some do not. To conclude, some tumours are scalic, fistulous and cancerous, but some do admit or suffer none of these things. The causes of these kindes of tumours are threefold, videlicet. 1. Primitive causes, as a fall, a stripe, excessiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent causes, as are vnnaturall humours, especially those which be flegmaticke, and true *adema*, which do degenerate into abscessions. 3. Coniuncte cause, which are the diuerse substances, and properly the matters of euerie abscession, contained in the affected member. But in these kindes of tumors there are contained certaine humours, which be either serous or waterish as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthie, or dirtie, or else humours like vnto honie, or sodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are sometime found within these abscessions, phlegmaticke, and waterish, and glandulous flesh, sometime also stones, sand, shelles, wood, coales, and other such like solide substances. Notwithstanding these three kindes of tumours do most frequent mens bodies (as we haue sayd before) whereof euerie one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Meliceris*, which are thus called by reason of the similitude of the substances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongst these, like vnto rallow, or some other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Asibera*. The signes and iudgements of such kindes of tumours, which belong vnto fleume, may easly be found out by their descriptions and differences before declared. But the marke wherby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this, there is moueablenesse and inconstancie of the filme or skinne, called *Cystis*, which the auncient Phisitians haue named *tunica*, and there is a separation of the skinne: but when they be surely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue fast to the flesh, it is an euident token, that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, those tumours which are new and tractable, may easly be discussed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wise be resolued. Rednesse, paine, & increasing of heate do declare that those abscessions will either come to suppuration, or else degenerate into a fistula or a cancre, *Struma numerosa*, which do affect the outward members, & do often change their place, wandering here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinary heat, do testifie & declare verie plainly, that they will beget and breed those inward diseases called *Cherades*, as Arnaldus hath noted in a certaine place. Those remedies therefore, which are

out-

outwardly applied to the, do profit little or nothing. But these diseases (as *Auicene* thought) are increased and doe multiply by some fall, or by some hurt or bruise in the body. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing purging medicines, diureticall potions, & electuaries, (as they call the) which can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auail in young children. But children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the scelerdenesse of body, are very ofte annoyed with *Strume*. But old men by reason of the contrary causes, are seldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead, & straight temples, & great cheekes, are subiect to *Strume*. For in such, the matter is readily brought downe to the necke, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Physicians, hath noted very well. But *Strume* (as *Celsus* sayth) are wont commonly to wearie Physicians, because they procure feauers also, neither doe they at any time ripen easilie, and they are cured either with some hotte instrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they doe rise vp againe beside their scarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe, and moreover it so cometh to passe that they remaine in the flesh a long season. The incision, & corrosiuing of such tumors is greatly to be feared about the belly, the necke, & the ioints, by reason of the affinitie and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and also of the internall capacitie. In the incision also of great Glandule, it behooueth greatly to eschew that veine, which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nourishment vnto the. For oftentimes it causeth great profusio of blood, wherupō there ensueth straight way no small danger. These euils called *Strume*, do greatly differ amōgst theselues both in greatnesse, nature, place, beginning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Aetius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*). Therefore litle *Strume* are sooner & more easily cured then the great, euen as the gentle tumors are more tractable then those which are inflamed. Nay some *Strume* cannot be remedied. For seeing all such diseases called *Strume* are cancerous, and do stuffe vp the vessels of the body, while they are curing, they must needs bring the daunger of profusion of blood, besides that also, they are found verie deepe in the flesh and therefore they cannot any way be cut off. For a malicious & hurtfull *Struma* doth possesse the best vessels, (that is) the greatest veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it should hold by certain rootes. The superficiall *Strume* are more easie to be cured then the internall by reason of their place, & those also are curable which doe happen in the necke, where yet you must be verie diligent to eschew the loude and great sinewes: for many by cutting *Strume* about the windpipe, and by cutting other loude sinewes haue caused the sicke all the time of his life, after to remaine speechlesse. For beside the excision of that sinew, the great vessels being layd bare, & cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of the tongue. For the multitude of *Strume*, it appeareth, that one alone may easilier be cured then many together. And concerning the manner of their rising, it is manifest also, that they which hang downward are a great deale sooner healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus much of *Struma*, which *Aetius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these kinds of Abscessions, which haue their originall of fleume, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be two

In what ages
and bodies
Strume doe
raigne.

Celsus.

Magnitude
Strume.

Nature.

Loco.

Multitude or
tus.

Duplex abscess,
sum pituitosum
strum curandi
ratio.

I. Vniuersalis. fould (that is to say, 1. Generall, and vniuersally common at all, 2. and particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shalbe, to appoint such an ordinarie and convenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter, which causeth such abscessions, be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, least at the length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto that matter, which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one thing excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that, which is more conuenient to diuide thicke and clammy humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicene*, let them eschew all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie & immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meats. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoyde a moyst house, that is either situated in lowe valleys, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of alume, or of brimstone. For such kinde of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward Strumours and flegmaticke abscessions: but those also which doe outwardly affect the superficiall partes of the body (as *Arnoldus* affirmeth.) But we doe perfect the other part of our former proceeding (that is to say) to turne away the antecedent matter, least it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kindes of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge flemme downward, and sometime by letting of blood, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolu and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inwarde partes of the body. To purge the body downward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicene*: *Rz. of Turbith, ginger, and sugar, of each a like portion, but he taketh thereof two drammes, and he affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolu grosse flemme) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But Razes, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter de doloribus ventris ad Almanforem, of twentie parts of Turbith, of ten of ginger, & thirty of sugar, and mixteth of it at one time, ʒ. iij. Benedictus also and Hierapicra, and pillule de agarico, and pillule maiores de Hermodactylis do greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, Guido out of *Cauliacus* was wont vse this potion following, which (he sayth) he gathered out of the writings of many Philosophers. *Rz. of Scrophularia, partes iij. of phlypendula partes ij. of pimpernell, mouleare, Tenacetum, of red coleworts (which of some are thought to be Brassica maritima) of rubia maior, ana, parte j. of the roote of Aristolochia, of spachula fetida, of the roote of radish, ana, parte ʒ. put them altogether, and boyle them in white wine and honic, vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and**

Vltima ratio.

Aque aluminosa vni.

Antecedentis materię euacuatio.

Vacuantia per alium.

Puluis Turbith.

Razes.

Hierapicra.

Prouokers of vrine.

Potio Guidonis a Cauliac.

let it be drunk hot. But in the applying of all these remedies, (as also for bloud-letting, if at any time it be required) the counsel of some learned phisition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the quality, quantity & vse of them. But to resolve through breathing, and to digest the humor, which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib. 14. Therap. willet vs to minister Theriaca, Athanasia, Ambrosia,* and that medicine also which is made of *cretica calaminthe*: the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*: whose composition is to be sought out in *lib. 4. de sanit. tuen.* Many other helps are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described & celebrated of the ancient Phisitions, the vse whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermitt the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christiā king of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderful a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Struma* or *Serofula* to their perfect health againe. *King Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure *Strumous* persons only by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Struma*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euerie difference: which method is made not only diuerse, but also it is changed, both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, & by the quantitie of them, whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, & of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the qualitie of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib. 4. de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered & learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6. points, which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this maner: inprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small; (which are commonly called *Eupte*, and of the interpreter of *Auicenn*, *Glandule*) if they be seated in the strong partes of the bodie, and because they are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystis*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse, and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the maner of oedematous tumors whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcereous Apostemes, which do pertainē vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Struma* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, & obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the the root within; corrosiue them about, and cleanse them thoroughly. 6. Those

Qua per habitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Strume by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmaticke.
Tempus quid insinuet.

1

2

3

4

5

6

*Compresso &
attritis.*

Lupiacuratio.

*Lamina plum-
bea.*

*Vnguentum
Rogerij.*

*Gangliacuratio
ex Philagrio.*

*Lupia & gan-
glion is all one
euill.
Archigenes
lib. 4.*

*Oribasius his
medicine to
mollifie Gan-
glia.*

which are fastned but to a thin & slender root, bind them about and pluck the out. The first canon, according to *Auicenn* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and suppress vehemently these soft and little abscessions (which *Auicenn* doth call *Glandula*, and the new Phisitions *Lupia*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumor, & bind it very strongly in the midst lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kinds of tumors. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it wax somewhat hote, and vntill it be after a sort softer, then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, and so vehemently stricken with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be disseuered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and so the matter therein contained may be disperfed: Which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound verie strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment made of burnt lead, of the bark of the elder tree, or of the figge tree, with oyle and vineger. Other do first vse an emplaster made of aloës, *acatia*, mirrhe, *alibanum*, *scarcocolla* putting to them a litle vineger, or the white of an eg, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them litle flakes (as he and other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe dipped in the white liquor of an egge with salt and a litle *Zuccharium* vnshicked. Moreover *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Ganglia* (as it is in *Aetius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We denie (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgian, that is bloudlettring in *Ganglia*, especially if they chaunce in the handes or in the feete, but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with ammoniacke which must be made pliant to the thicknesse of an emplaster: afterward we applye a plate of lead equall for the tumor, and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the midst with straight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglion* is mollified, we take away the bands, & (not saying any thing to the sick) while the place is yet hot, we fasten the thumb of our right hand vpon *Ganglion*, and laying fast hold on the member with our other foure fingers, we violently breake it, and so *Ganglion* is presently dissolved. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Phisitions, *Auicenn* his *Glandula*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease, which the former description of the do also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commendeth to lay our lime with the fat of a goose, and with rosin *Terebintina*, which is the right tynpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed verie often this medicine. R. of ceruce, resine *picce*, old oyle ana. ʒ. j. of ammoniacke *Tlymiama*, and *Galbanum* ana. a like quantitie, of waxe ʒ. iij. The same medicine is to be scene in *Aetius*, but the quantiry doth varie in certain things,

as thus. R^x. of ceruse, old oile, and *resina picea*. ana. ℥. j. of waxe. ℥. ij. of *ammoniacum* *Thimiama*, and of *Galbanum*. ana. ℥. j. boile the ceruse with oile till it lose his staining facultie; then bray the ammoniac, and cast it into the ceruse with the oile, afterward cast in the *resina picea* and the waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made verie soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Phisition of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicē*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thick round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which do hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large & ample for the disease. For truly saith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and discussing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian, (with excision of the tumors) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the bodie. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupie the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off, or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore diuide the outward skin with a penknife, and then (if the tumors be small) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinsets, or some such like instrument, and cut them off fro the root. But if they be great, thrust them through with a hooke, and lift them vp, and winde them round about vntill you haue plucked and drawne them forth: last of all, sow vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I wil be silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmatick and cedematous tumors which we haue described alreadie, and yet together with these remedies following, they be verie profitable and expedient for these Abscessions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum* *libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum* *libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum*: which emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuell against the diseases called *Struma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*; it is auailable also against the goutte, and it beneficeth many other diseases. The emplaister is this. R^x. of old oile. ℥. 100. *spuma argenti picea* ana. ℥. 50. of *Ladanum*. ℥. 25. of *araga rasa*. ℥. 3. of *Galbanum*. ℥. 4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Lithargirum* be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the pitch & the rust of the scourings of brasse commonly called *verdigreese*, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a mortar and bray them and mollifie them, and reserue them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat browne, do commixe with them also the offall of brasse. ℥. viij. for otherwise it would be very blacke. This emplaister is found otherwise described in *Guido* his commentaries vnder this forme, R^x. of olde oyle. ℥. xij. of the scourings of brasse. ℥. xiiij. of drie pitch. ℥. vj. of *Ladanum*. ℥. iij. of *Lithargirum*. ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*. ℥. iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *Commune* & *creatam* doth profite much, where of you must take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the root of

*Verticillum
plumbum.*

*Gangliorum
per Chyrurgie
curatio.*

*Secundus
canon.*

*Discussio
per digestiones.*

Emplastrum.

Diachylon

*Sceruus capril-
lum vetus.*

*Haly Abbas
emplastrum.*

*Emplastrum
Alicena.*

*Brunnus
Theodorici
emplastrum
ad strumas.
Rogerij empla-
strum.*

*Emplastrum
peaceptoris
Guidonis ex
limacibus.*

ireos. ʒ. j. The same effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Mefner*, whose description shall afterward insue. Some counsellvs, for the digestion of these abscessions, to apply vnto the grieved place, the old dounge of a goat with hony & vinegar, which must be het ouer the fire vntil they be wel incorporat together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaister: also an emplaister made of fenugreeke, of the seed of flaxe, & of coleworts, with the scrapings of the roote of *Althea*, which medicine, (if there be any hope of suppuration) doth ripen it notably. Haly Abbas also for the same purpose doth greatly commend this emplaister following. R^x. of beane meale, and of barley meale. ana. ʒ. v. of the roote of liquorice, of the roote of *Althea*, and of pitch. ana. ʒ. x. of white waxe, goose suet. ana. ʒ. x. bray them, and mingle them together with old oyle, and with the vrine of a child that hath nor yet tried Venus sports, and ouer a soft fire make an emplaister. Another out of *Auicenn* which *Guido* vsed. R^x. of oxes dounge. ʒ. ij. of the roote of coleworts, of the roote of capers, of the fish called a shrimpe, of fat figges. ana. ʒ. β. of hops and *bdellium*. ana. ʒ. ij. of vinegar, hony, sowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of ech as much as is sufficient, whereof make an emplaister. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie following, whose opinion *Theodoricus* also doth confirme. R^x. of ammoniacke, *bdellium*, *galbanum* of ech a like quantitie: steepe them three daies in vinegar, wherto (when they be dissolved) you may adde of small bran as much as shall suffice, and make an emplaister. *Rogerius* was wont to vse this remedie for *Strume* (which they commonly call *Serofula*). R^x. of the roote of brakes of daffadill, or of walwort (if you please) of ech as much as you thinke good, let them be boiled in the best wine, and then braied in a mortar, and ad to them a litle quicke brimstone, and make an emplaister. *Guido* his maister in *monte Pessulano*, hath often tried this emplaister to be most effectually, which is made of xij snails (which they also call *Limace*.) boyled in wine, or in lie made of ashes, commonly called *clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did minister euerie day to the sick to be eaten one snail, either drie or otherwise prepared, and as they terme it, made readie to chew. *Paulus* also was wont notably to discusse *Strume* with vnslaked lime, steeped in hony, or in the filthinesse of mens bodies that do arise either in exercising the selues, or in baches, or else in oile, or sowes greace. The like vertue saith *Auicenn*, hath the filthinesse of exercising places scraped from the walles, which must be well beaten together and spred vpon a linnen cloth, and applied after the manner of an emplaister. For the same purpose this helpeth effectually. R^x. of lime & *nitrum*. ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaister. Also the meale of bitter hops boiled and annointed with *oxime* doth discusse *Strume*. For the same purpose also oxes dounge boiled in vinegar and annointed, doth notably auaille, which being applied after the manner of a cataplasme, doth maruellously dissolue all hard and scirrhus tumors: Rathe ripe figs also, especially of the wild fig tree, applied with hogs greace, do discusse all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our method of curing, you shall heale all kind of *Strume* which are but newly begun, and not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuell practise, euen by the applying of such medicines as can dissolue, digest, & discusse, But first you must labor to mollifie, and afterward to discusse

discusse, or else vse some medicine of a double qualitie, which can worke both these effectes together, of which kind are all those remedies almost, which are before described. Nowe if digestiue medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter.) But here we must not omit that thing, which is recorded of some verie diligently: namely, that they which are diseased with *Struma*, and with any leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of vipers and serpents, and by the drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euerie day fasting to the quantitie of a chiche pease. Therefore cast the dead serpent into a pot, & stop the mouth therof verie iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned serpent and mingle them with the like quantitie of fenugreeke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Struma*, you must prouide that the bellie be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must daily prouoke vomiting, & endeuour to purge fleume vpward: you must also drie the head, and apply cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise litle pushes in the skin, as is the roote of capers, with *polenta*, and other such like things. And you must also vse purging medicines, and fine powders that be of the like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resolving medicines, if they find any place or matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doublelesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration: especially if the said matter be gentle & tractable, or commixed with blood. But Haly Abbas, that he might bring these kinds of abscessions vnto maturitie, ministred a plaister made of barley meale, pitch, and *olibanum*, and of the vrine of a young child all well incorporat together. But *Auicenna*, to repress the vehemencie of the heate, willet to commixe the decoction of coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things doe nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuell remedie: take of mirrhe, part. j. of *oslicium*, parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Struma* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Aegineta Lib. 4.* R. of mirrhe, *℥. x.* of *ammoniacum* *℥. iij.* of *thymiana*, *℥. viij.* of *viscus quercinum* *℥. viij.* of *Galbanum*, *℥. iij.* of *propolis*, *℥. j.* beate them in a mortar. But when these abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by the tokens of the matter) they must be opened and clenfed with in, which you shall do very well, if you do clenfe them after their apertion with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacie in malignant and vlcerrated *Struma*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum* is verie profitable, and the *Emplastrum de succis* (which they call *Diachylon*) & *Diapalma*, which the Greekes call *καυινιον*, whose descriptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisteth any putrefaction, and corruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them: they must be cured after the maner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinitie & acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shal cure gentle, obediẽr, superficial, and curable *Struma*, very cunningly and shortly after this sorte,

The vsing of
vipers and ser-
pents doth
maruellously
helpe them
which are
strumous.

3
Terrij Canonis
declaratio.

Suppurantia,
seu maturan-
tia.

Pauli medica-
mentum ad
strumas suppu-
randas.
Detergentia.

Vnguentum
Apostolorum.
Vnguentum
Aegyptiacum
Diachylon.
Diapalma.

4.
The way to
cure and de-
stroy Struma,
out of Albuc-
sis and Leoni-
das.

what is to be
done, if a veine
be annexed
vnto struma.

First, commaund the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth, his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus layd, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedsted, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour either with a right, or a litle ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vesselles and sinewes are extended right foorth. But you shall not cut the whole thickeesse of the skin hastily at one time without ceasing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in litle tumours, that is, in small *struma*, make but a simple incision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a myrtle leafe: then those vessells which are vncouered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin, with pinfers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *struma*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the runicles. But if *struma* shall be wound about the vessells, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence, there followeth a copious profusion of blood. Therefore in dispatching this cure, draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinfers, and so by litle and litle separate it with the poynnt of a penknife from the other partes thereunto adioyned, and when you haue drawne and loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or ground worke, because of the sinewes and vesselles lying vnderneath. But in those *struma* which do chaunce about the arme-holes, and about the priuie members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skinne. Moreouer, in that section, which is made in *struma* that possesse the neck, you must haue a singular care, least either the arteries, which they call *carotides*, or the quivering sinewes, be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make incision, the profusion of blood doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not verie great) cut it quite off (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the blood. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterpised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *struma*, is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *struma* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw foorth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily repress a meane fluxe of blood by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotten, infused in cold water, or in vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *oxyerators*) and afterward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without blood-shead, fill it vppe with the powder of frankensence, and applie linimentes, and for the longer preferuation of the liniments, bind to wooll dipped in wine. But if any full veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome

of *Glandula* or *struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and binde it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without any danger. In which fall the cure must be followed with linimentes: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Servica*, or small lute strings: for those bandes which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But, if when the worke is finished, some of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other strange thing shall remaine behind: *Albucasis* willet it to be drawne out, first by filling the wound with cotten, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those reliques which remaine behinde, did fill vp the gaping vicer, first with the white of an egge, and with Alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiue medicines which are described in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all these operations, you must applie such medicines as can lenifie paine: but among all other things, we do commonly lay on flax dipped in the white of an egge, and in oyle of roses. You shall finish the scope of our fifth rule after this sort: breake the skin with some burning hore medicine according to the greatnesse of the Abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, least that the scalding medicine do touch the other partes lying about the tumours. You shall notablie dispatch this labour, by applying some hore medicine made of lyme, or sope, which things do happily execute their effectes within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will ensue no daunger, or discommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and crust procured in the place thereof, you shall diuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the midst of the crust: but you must make incision somewhat deeply, almost to the verie quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Asphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in these abscessions: yet Arsenicke in this case obtaineth the preheminance, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therefore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symptomes. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantitie doth performe a marvellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding, the comon measure or quantitie thereof, is the medietie of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall partes: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principal members, a lesse quantity must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and more safe, to minister a litle at once and often, then at one time to apply an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of Arsenicke remaineth three whole daies, in all which time, the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne

Cordes made of silke.

Albucasis,

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Casticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas arsenici.

Quando crusta
à vino resolu-
enda.

6
Ligatura &
cunfio.

Curatio Athe-
romatis, Stea-
tomatis & me-
liceridis.

How many
waies these
Abscessions
may be cured.
Lib. 4.
Curatio per
digerentia.

defence, and to stop the fluxe, (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annointed and all to washed with the ointment called *populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of nightshade, and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainly assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardness and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolved euen from the quick by washing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and vnctuous thing that is not salted, as swines greace and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumor, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *lupia*, or *struma* do yet remaine behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with the powder of *Asphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth no thing behind it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixth canon: these abscessions which haue verie narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a cord of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound daily more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cordes, vntill they appeare verie dry, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue sayed of those Abscessions which are deeply planted, and folded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming and drying medicine. The paine also must be asswaged with the white of an egge, with oile of roses, with *unguentum populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cordes shall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour must be cured after that manner, which we haue before expressed. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist about nature, especially of them that haue their originall of fleume. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper and peculiar method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, & *Theromata*, which diseases are alwaies and often incident to mens bodies, & do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes and differences of tumours besides nature, called of the late Physicians after certaine new titles and names, which among the auncient sorte were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Tostudo*, *Natla*, and others of that kind; which we haue expressed in our former chapters. In those three kinds of Abscessions which do most frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in that tunicle which they call *Cystis* may be dissolued, or that the whole tumour together with the verie tunicle may be consumed by medicines, or taken away by section. But some of those tumors require a three fold method of curing, as those, which containe a more liquide humour, as is, *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two wayes, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be dissolued, nor consumed: but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand (that is) by section onely. Moreouer of medicines, which in these affectes haue power to dissolue and disperse, you shal find plentie among those remedies which we before haue set downe for the cure of *Struma*: But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly dissolue *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth, of pressed grapes

grapes (the kernels being taken out) xx. of the scourings of brasfe .℥.iiij. which medicin must not be applied before the member be nourished with fomentis. Another emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Aetius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. R^x. of pressed grapes (the kernels being detracted) ℥b.j. of commin seed beaten verie small .℥.vj. of nitrum .℥.ij. bray all together in a mortar, & bind the to the tumour. Another discusse medicine expressed of the same writer, verie profitable against *Melicerides*. R^x. *salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse. ana. ℥b.j. of waxe *Terebinthina*, *chalbana*, *opoponax*. ana. .℥.j. of *rubrica sinopica* .℥.vj. of vinegar .℥.vij. β. boile the scourings of siluer, ceruse, and salt beaten verie small altogether, then cast in the *rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in vinegar and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *opoponax* and *chalbana*, both dissolved in vinegar, and conferue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to wast the humor by applying of gnawing medcins (which the Grecians call *Septica*) it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *struma*) by hote burning medicines applied to the skin, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that, which consisteth of quicke lime (that is) which is not yet quenched with water of sope, and of the athes of lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. R^x. of vnslaked lime .℥.iiij. of *spechele*, (that is) of the burnt dregs of wine, of liquide nitrum parched in the fire. ana. .℥.ij. of *nimum* or *rubrica sinopica*. .℥.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled athes of lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of liquide honie, heate them thrice ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *pixis plumbea*, with the distilled lye aboute, least it drie vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedie following doth notably waste without gnawing and byting. R^x. of the offall of brasfe .℥.iiij. of *Sandaracha* (that is) of red arsenicke, and of *Helleborus niger*. ana. .℥.ij. apply them with oyle of roses. Another remedie verie effectuell for the same purpose. R^x. of a burnt hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of orpine or arsenicke. ana. an equall portion: commixe them with oyle of roses. But the partes which lie about the tumour, and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kindes of Abscessions by making incision (that is) by Chyrurgerie: truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony, or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the humour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be verie attentue and warie (as we haue sayd before of *struma*) that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein, gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation, and some portion thereof also remaineth still behinde. For if (when the tunicle is diuided, and the humor issued) the tumor shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared, that the disease will grow againe (as doth *struma*) when as any portion thereof

Lib. 15.

Curatio per ex-
cedentia.

Lib. 4.

A medicine to
wast without
byting.Curatio per
Chyrurgiam.

sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happen, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the reliques thereof either with those consuming medicins which we haue before expresse, or by some such like remedies. Now if *seatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a verie narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous remedies) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very root, for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shall quickly be ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other partes, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Aetius lib. 15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and Scirrhus tumours, engendred of melancholie.

WE haue hitherto discoursed of those tumors which are caused of blood, choler and flume: of *Verruce* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a waterish humor, and a statuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a phlegmaticke substance, and of other tumors generally consisting about nature. Now it remaineth that we entreate of those Abscessions which doe proceed of a melancholike humour, as are scirrhus, indurated and cancerous tumors, which they call *Cancerossi*, *Apostemossi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *oedema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, videlicet: *Scirrhus verus*, & *Scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is sayed to proceede of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie, is the dregges of good blood, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluitie, and verie grosse blood, whose colour is blacke, but the taste thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humors are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that, which differeth from the former description of the naturall humor, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergreffe (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a colde and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* sayeth) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour, which is called naturall, and doeth daylie engender in the bodie, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that (as *Galen* sayeth) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glisteth like vnto lime and pitch. But this is fowre, and being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also verie vnpleasant to all creatures living, so that neither mice nor flies will tast thereof. It sheweth likewise, like vnto abundance of salt, wherein no living thing

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentia 4. non naturalis melancholia.

Bili atræ exquisita.

Gal. com. 21.

can vpholde his life, as the sea which is sayed to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that slime bloud, (which we haue said to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any sensible nor secret effluxion: but is transformed, corrupted, and rotten. For truly this humour (sayeth *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feuer, it causeth melancholie: which truly is cold because it resembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not voide of heate, as is, ashes and vineger, and when it is purged downward (as it happeneth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud, which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second species or difference of vnnaturall melancholie is that which commeth through the adustion of other humors, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raseth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholie. But the flies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud also or fleume shall be vehemently heated in the bodie, and burnt, there is also caused a melancholicke humour, which *Auicenna* because of the adustion, tearmed to be vnnaturall. But these two last kindes, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleume, *Auicenna* hath thought to be verie milde and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that that kinde of melancholie which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of wine in the bottome of a vessell, or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile, for this is more gentle and milde, yea and especially when as it tarieth not long within the bodie with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholie, it passeth first into a yeallowish forme, secondly into a leekie substance, and thirdly into a rustie colour. 3. The third species of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stonie concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskilfull Physitians or Chyrurgians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Grecians call *phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinarie remedies: or else when those medicines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was verie small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholie, which thing while it happeneth, it is made sweet, and doth waxe milde, vntill such time as: one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith, for then it waxeth sharpe, and bitter, and is made partaker of immoderat gnawing. We may gather therfore by our former words, that the 4. differēces of tumors about nature do proceed of melancholy: for first of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in sound bodies) there is caused a true & lawfull *scirrhus*, called of the Arabians *scirrhus*, but of the Greekes *σκιρρῶς* & *σκιρρῶς* in *ἀνθρώποις* (that is) *scirrhus* or *scirrhus* non exquisitus

Lib. 4. Apho.
Lib. 14. Therap.
pentices.

2
Melancholie
commeth by the
adustion of o-
ther humors.

Com. 29. lib. 3.
predic. Hyp.

3
Bilis atra per
congelationem
(ut vocant) &
indurationem.

4
Melancholie
through ad-
mixtion of o-
ther humors.
Four differē-
ces of tumors
caused of me-
lancholy.
Verus scirrhus
non exquisitus

*Scirrhus phleg-
monodes, æde-
matodes.
Erysipelatodes.*

*Scirrhus ex-
quisitus.*

*Scirrhus can-
crosus.*

*Scirrhus pro-
prie quid.*

*Cause 3. scirrhi
legitimi.*

Signa.

14. meth. med.

*Guido not as
Cancer tribuit
scirrho.*

Iudicia Scirrhi

non exactus seu non exquisitus, which kind of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Avicen* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib. 14. meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumors, calleth it a tumor constated of a melancholious humor, & then properly *scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense, but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a *scirrhous tumor*, then *scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtio of other humors there do grow three other differences of tumors (that is to say) *scirrhus phlegmonodes, ædematodes, & Erysipelatodes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly of vnnaturall melancholie caused through a certaine stonie hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine, it is called of *Avicen*, *purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholy through deuotion, are all the kinds of Cankers ingendred, as well vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kind is *scirrhus cancerosus*. *Scirrhus* therefore properly is a tumor verie hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a natural melancholie, and vncorrupt humor, which definition the late Chirurgicalians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature are three. First primitiue, as is an euill diet, ingendring & gathering grosse and melancholike blood. Second antecedent, as a melancholike humor collected in the bodie, which is drawne from the spleene (whose dutie it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy blood) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be.) Third, *Coniuncta causa* is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *scirrhus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mightily resisting, a middle colour between a red and a blacke, which is a brown colour. This *scirrhus* when it happeneth in the partes of the bodie, many of the Phisitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *pelidon*, that is to say, black & blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meanes of thicke and blacke blood, such as is sometime purged downward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *scirrhus impurus & cancerosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *scirrhus*, do properly agree with the signes of Cancer (as *Galen* writeth 14. meth. med. And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *scirrhus* hath not such swelling and full veines, as Cancer hath, except *scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancerosus*, for *scirrhus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter (that is) of a melancholike humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *scirrhus* are these: present a very dull sense. There do also appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholie humor in the body. Such tumors as are truly *scirrhous* in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare verie small, but in proesse of time, they do growe and encrease by little and little, and become great and mightie, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the sayed tumors do leaue that member which they did

first

first infect, and afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Auicenna* calleth the euill *serinos*. Furthermore these kinds of melancholious tumors if they be rightly handled, they are commonly cured by resolution; often times they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*.

Farinos.

The cure of a true & lawfull scirrhus, yet not exquisite, & growne in to a stony hardness, altogether inextinguishable. Three intentions.

Victus ratio.

Euchyma.

Panis.

Potus.

Oua.

Carnes.

Olera.

Carnes.

Limaces.

Pisces.

Olera.

Oxalmeis

made of vine.

ger and salte.

Leguminum.

panis.

Typha.

Vinum.

Cafcus.

Sanguinem

adurentia

Animi pathe-

ma.

But now we will prosecute the absolute cure of these kinds of hard tumors about nature, which are called true *Scirrh*, and not *Exquisiti*, by three special intentions. The first prescribeth a convenient order of dyet. The second admonisheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is readie to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniuinct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrh*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things (which they call *res non naturales*) as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good blood. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an oven with a soft fire, and let it haue some leaue, and salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small Ale or Beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of partridges, pheasants, quails, young kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeaer olde. For potherbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it spinach: also lettice, hops, borrage, buglosse, and other herbs of that nature which can purge forth blood, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him bide and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike blood, which things *Galen* in libro tertio de affectu capite sexto hath described vnto vs, as are, the flesh of Goates, and of oxen, and of bulles, but especially the flesh of Ases, and of cammels, of foxes and of dogs, of hares also and of bores. Furthermore, snayles, (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with sale. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balan*, the sea calfe, the Dolphin, the dogfish, & of all kind of Whales. But of potherbes, coléworts, is wont onely to engender this kinde of blood. The buddes also of trees, when they are seasoned either with brine or with *Oxalmeis*, especially of the tree called a mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the brier, and of the wilde eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynobatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted amongst the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of brahne, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughtie seedes, which other Countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreover, thicke and blacke wines are verie fit to engender a melancholious humor: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his bodie in great heat. Finally old cheefe when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the bodie, doth easily breed this kind of humbur. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, roasted, and fried, which do vehemently drie vp, of salt meates also, and of those which are sharpe and fowrey as onions, garlicke, pepper, mustard, and of other things of that kinde which do burne the blood. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadness,

Exercitatio.

watchings, beaulnesse, carefulnesse, and immoderate exercises. Quietnesse and tranquillitie of minde, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeavour euerie day to emprise the bellie. Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth propound: let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicenna*, who willerh vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloudletting, if too blacke and grosse bloud thall at pease, and also by some purging medicine, which can expell melancholie, as are those which follow, out of *Mesua*; *Epithymum*, *Sena*, *polypodye*, *fusius terra* (which of the Gracians is called *Carpus* or *Carpus*, of the Latines *fumaria*) *lupulus*, and the herbe called *volubilis*. Also *Casia fistula*, *myrabalan*, *ladi*, *sapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyaneus*, the Romanes *Ceruleus*, *Diacene*, *diacatholicon*, *hiera*, *Ruphi*, all which things do purge forth melancholike humors. But these things which pertaine vnto phisicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the Art of Phisicke, we will hasten vnto the third scope, which we shall verie speedily dispatch, if we labour to emprise out all that matter, which vnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principal indication of all tumours which consist about nature: in which that leekie matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be verie circumspect & attentiu. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborn, that it will turne into a stonie hardnesse if it be rashly resolved. Againe, if it be mollified more then is exquisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicenna*.) Namely, that in such scirrhus affects, we must not applie any vehement, hot, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power only to mollifie and moisten. For that tumor which hath a superfluous humor, it doth nothing at all dissolve: but that which hath a small fluxe, it doth more drie vp then need requireth. Hereupon *Auicenna* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifying, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was verie tedious, and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euilles, such medicines as had a mixed and double facultie, which deuise was more safe and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderately repress. For this purpose, *Auicenna* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for those *Scirrhi* which proceed of *phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we will omit them making choice of that medicine which *Razis* in *Libro septimo ad Almansorem* hath described: vsing notwithstanding at the beginning some equall repression of the flowing of humours (by applying some moderate repelling remedie.) The forme of the medicine is this. *R.* of *Bellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantitie: beate them in a morter with oyle *deben*, which the Greekes call *balanum myrsissae*, the Latines,

Glans

2
Vacuatio materiae antecedens.

3
Vacuatio materiae continens.

Materia scirrhorum caute tractanda. Gal. 2. ad Glauco.

Medicines good for scirrhus.

Razis medicamentum ad scirrhus emolliendos & discutiendos.

Glam ynguettaria, or with oyle of lillies. Then take of the filth of fenugreece, of linseed, and of figges the weight of all the former things: bray them altogether till they be thoroughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barks of the roote of *Althea*, which the common sort (sayth he) doth call *Enaden dramalade*, as though one would say, *arborescens malua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cocke, and then bearen together, and brought into the forme of a cataplasme. But if the tumor doth belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, least the affected member be incended or stirred with hot medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured. But if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof alreadie turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that oile, hence which is called *diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straight way repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapter following.

Galen cataplasma,
Ther. par. 4.

If Scirrhus will
matur.

Scirrhus illegitimus & non exquisitus.
Quomodo generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the partes of the bodie.

But now when as through the vnskillfulnesse and ignorance of Physicians, those inflammations which the Grecians call *phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolved through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour; then all that substance which is any thing, thinne and slender in them, is dissolved, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together, and marvellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stonie hardnesse, and at the last cometh to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime that some member is hardened through extension of the flesh, which cometh by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue layed before in our Treatise of stony and waterish tumours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stonie hardnesse, caused of the priuation of the moisture of the bodie, and through too much drynesse, as it happeneth in the hardnesse of the ioynts, and in the pores of the bodie when the growe or such like diseases do raigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Scirrhus*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *phlegmone* or *Erysipelas* or else from *edema*, when as they be greatly refrigerate and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati* (that is) *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnitie, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, which is not exquisite, or perfect are these: a hard tumour scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine perfectly representing the colour of the bodie, drawing his beginning from vnnatural melancholie. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is clammy, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* sayth) a partaker of both kinds, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humiditie thereof is thoroughly resolved, then that which remaineth behind, is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue anie cure. But if it may be holpen anie way, it must be done by some moistening medicine. That hardnesse also which cometh through

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.
The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrhus.

Iudicia.

Scirrhus exquisitus curationem non admittit.

*Scirrhii dicitur
rabiles.*

*Summa curan-
dorum scirrho-
rum.*

Melulle sennae.

Adipes.

*Gal. 14. meth.
med.*

*Anadendro-
malashe.*

Oleum recinus.

*14. Meth. mid.
P. sus Aceti.*

too much exciccation, and when the moisture of the bodie is cleane extinguiſhed, is also incurable, for it is sufficient if you stop it, that the drincesse may proceed no further. But those *scirrhii* also, wherein there do grow certain haire, and which are great and verie hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Anticen* hath declared.

The common and general declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 14. meth. med.*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption, which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently drawe and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying & moistning remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within few dayes greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is verie thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behind, is turned into a certaine stonie concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and scirrhous affects, but such remedies onely, which can hidly both mollifie, and also digest; as are these things following: the marrow of a hart and of a calfe, also gores suet, bulles suet, the tallow of a lybard and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, gooses greace is greatly commended, next that the fat of a epeke and of a pheasant. Also *ammoniacum thymianum*, viz. *sessifolium*, perfume *galbanum*, and *bdellium* of both kindes, but rather that which is called *scirrhicum*, because it is somewhat moist: *Syrax* also, which is something moist and fat. Moreover the roote of *althaea*, and of the wild mallow, which groweth almost euery where, the leaues whereof must be moderately boyled with gooses or cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse swines greace; these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Anticen* warneth vs not to commixe any hogges tallow, that is salted with the former things, and to vse *Mastiche*, *ladanum*, oyle of wooll, *strymenta gymnastorum*, (which they call the stinnesse of bathes) asses dung, and the dregs of oyle of lillies, of oyle of *athamnia* which they call *cyprinum*, and of *chernia*, which of the Greeks is called *xirix*, but of the Latines *recinum*. But that cure which is administered by vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *scirrhus* which is full grown, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of vineger, if it be used moderately & in due time, is verie wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resolueth the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applied immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner partes, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become verie hard, also if it be used long, it will diminish and corrupt the verie substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore, we must not verie often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of vineger. Wherefore *Galen*

did

did cure the childe of one Cercilius, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrhus tumour remaining in his thigh, after this manner. First he annointed his thigh, with *oleum sabinum*, which of alioyles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these daies *oleum sambucinum*, oile of elder, which the common sort call *iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the member, he applied *ammoniacum thiniama*, which must be grosse and not very olde, commixed with the aforesaide suettes and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with very fat *ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe vinegar, and commanded the childe to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderat and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the childe. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawn together and couered with *scirrhus*, you must vse vinegar after this sort, as *Galen* counselleth vs. Take a stone, and heate it very hote in the fire, and quench it in very sharpe vinegar, if it be possible, let the stone be that, which we call *pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *lapis molaris*, which the Greekes call *mylites*, then let the affected member bee holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the vinegar, that it may receiue the steeming vapour, which doth dissolue *scirrhus*: and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day euēd from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oile must not be adstrictiue in any case, but of a thinne substance, as is oile of sauin. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *althea*, and of the wilde cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this methode of curing, many men truely haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainely appeare, that with that cure, which is accomplished by mollifying remedies, as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and diuide, among which number vinegar is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnesse of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *scirrhus* tumor, which we haue drawn into a compendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kinde of *scirrhus*, which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growen into a stony hardnesse, and is altogether destitute of sence (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus scirrhus*) of such a *scirrhus*, I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an euill incurable. 2. To *scirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feeleth any thing) apply such medicines as cary with them a maruellous heat, and a meane moisture (that is to say) which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *scirrhus*, minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, & immoderately dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abiderh still be hinde, is dried vp and turned into a stony hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members,

Historia.
Lib. 2. ad
Glauconem.
Oleum sabinum.

Suffimentum.

The cure of
scirrhus, si-
newes, and
veines, out of
Galen and
Paulus.
Lapis ylitres.
Lapis pyrites.

Oleū sabinum

2. ad Glau-
conem.

Lib. 5.

The summe of
curing scir-
rhus tumours.

1

2

3

4

- which are annoied with *scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and diuide, as is vineger, with those remedies
- 5 which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also command, that this *scirrhus* member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *scirrhus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *lapis molaris* burnt in the fire,
 - 6 and quenched in vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggriued member be euery day annointed with some thinne oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde cucumber, or of *althæa*, or greene and fresh dill,
 - 7 or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the afore-saide *scirrhus* members such medicines as can dry, diuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately (that is to say) neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to
 - 8 preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such *scirrhus* tumours, as are nor indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be cured with
 - 9 such medicines as can fully digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a *scirrhus* splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisdom of the Physition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a cancerous Tumour, which they commonly call Cancer *Apossematosus*.

Cancer pertai-
neth vnto two
kinds of di-
seases.

I

Of what hu-
mour cancer is
engendred.
Cancer sine
ulcere.
Cancer cum
ulcere.

Cancerosi tumo-
ris descriptio.

Canceri nomen
à cancro aqua-
tico.

THE name and title of the disease called Cancer, among the Physitions and Chirurgeons hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases (that is to say) vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call cancer *Apossematosus* as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body; as in the hips, the rouse of the mouth and in the pappes of a woman) the other signification pertaineth vnto an ulcerate cancer. But both these euils are engendred of melancholy (that is to say) of such a humour, as resembleth the dregges of wine; and the filthines of oile, which thing *Galen libro decimo quarto therapeutices*, and in his little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam* doth plainly testifie. Now this afore-sayd humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward cancer without any vicer. But if it happeneth to be sharpe, fierce, and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne; and causeth a cancre with an vicer. But here we will onely discourse of that kinde of cancre which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuy cancre. That cancre therefore, whereof we here intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it, swollen and puffed vp, it is blue or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then in an inflammation, it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are, it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefer. in Greeke it is called *καρκίος*, and *καρκίνος*, which title as well the Latines as the Grecians haue assigned to this disease of the fishe called a crabbe, because

the

the veines about this euill are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members, which it doth lay hold on, as the sea crabbe doth, who obstinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth also represent the colour of a crabbe, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these cancrs are sometime so confused and so smal, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do beginne, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruaile (saith *Galen*) though the common sort doe not know them, for they be like vnto the little moates that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skillfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into such a huge greatnes, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest *symptomates*, that a childe may easily discern them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent doe terme this kinde of disease *cancer*, because (as wee haue saide) the veines in this euill do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they doe represent the forme and likenesse of a crabbe. A cancerous tumour (as we haue sayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it deth plainly appeare. It hath a blue or browne colour, which is a meane betweene red and blacke, called of the Greekes *melas por*. About the place where cancre is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking: sometime also (as *Celsus* saith) the tumour is a sleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the cancre in the armes. Often times also in some they are secretly hidden, & when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in other some it is contrary. This tumour also is maruellously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange, and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grossnes of the humour, neither can it be repressed or discussed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them (as the prouerbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we wont to doe in the euill called *crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts about the face, the nofethrills, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and of those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis. But cancrs do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundamente: for by them, that grosse & thicke bloud (whereupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, resembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth descend & flow into any member, and there abideth compact together: it causeth sometime the disease called *varices*, and sometime it breedeth a cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skinne, it causeth that euill, which they calleth *pharus*. *Cancer* therefore

Cancris nota per initia com- fusa, & ob- scura.
Lib. 14. Therap.

Note cancri euidentis nota ulcerati.

Iudicia.
Lib. 14. Therap.

Celsus lib. 5.

Gal. lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

is a certaine particular *elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *lepra*, the leproy. But the thicker and the blacker the blood is, whereof cancre proceedeth, the more daungerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growen, as they say, and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vpy by the roots, either by section or by aduulsion: but those cancre, which haue their constitution in the inward partes of the body, doe not desire any such kind of cure, as that aunient *Hippocrates* simply the Prince of Physicians hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward cancre: for when they are cured, they doe soone perishe againe, but when they are not cured, they remain a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these cancre either by section or vlsion, doe rather encrease their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those cancre therefore are only curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and doe so weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chirurgicalian: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancre*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veins which are full of melancholicke blood, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate cancre, there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumor, when as in proceffe of time the humor doth putrefie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred.

Apho. 38. lib. 6.

What cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate cancre worse of all.

What things doe foretell exulceration. Curatio cancri non vlcerati.

Primus scopus.

What ratio ten is sit & probi succi.

This exulcerate cancre of all others is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist that true cure, which attempteth and worketh all things to bring the sicke member vnto health, for this tumour, to cure it perfectly & absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked & stirred to anger, and therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by the. It shall therefore be sufficient to hinder the encreasing of vnulcerate cancre, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also hath admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumors which doe weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward cancre, wherein both their vehement heat, and their great pulse or beating doe threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a cancre which is not yet vlcerat, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholike humour. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen, & confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust & due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before prescribed in the chapter *de scirrhus legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly & principally to be obserued, (namely) that such nourishment be given to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which doe engender good and slender iuice: as are these, the iuice of barley steeped in water and pressed,

pressed, fishes of grauelly places, birds of all kindes, saue those which lue in fenny grounds, the yolkes of eggs, but specially of rere eggs, (which the Grecians call *πρωτα*) and other things of that sort. But if any extreame heat shall infect the aggriued place, and yet without a feauer, you may safely giue him bullocks milke, from the which the butter is taken, or else the whey of milke. Pot herbes also, which haue a coole and moist nature, as mallowes, orage, spinach, & when time serueth gourdes: citrons also and borage may be giuen him in meate. The second scope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accomplished by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholy, whereof you may finde plenty in the Chapter of *scirrhus*: among the which *epithimum* (which the Romaines call *inuolucrum*) as a present remedy doth obtaine the preheminance, whereof you must take foure drams steeped in the whey of milke, or in *mulsa*, (as *Galen* commaundeth *lib. 14. meth. med.*) But this quantity of *epithimum*, or somewhat more, must be offered every third day, that the melancholicke humour, which is gathered together in the veines, & causeth the generation of cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, because it is impossible to euacuat all at one time. But we cannot alwaies prohibit the fluxe, least afterward the like humour be engendred in the body, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter must be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of some simple medicine: afterward (if the matter so requireth and the ministering of simples doth little auaille) you may vse the help of some compound remedies, as is that medicin of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholy, which consisteth of two and thirty simples, or *hiera Russi*, or *hiera Auienne*, which is made of blacke *hellaborus*. But you must not desist from those former rehearsed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is stuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beset with this cancrus tumour, be thoroughly reduced to his naturall state. But if nothing do let it, as age and strength, it shall not be amisse in these cancre to let blood; and then to purge (as we haue said before:) and if they be women, you must labour to purge menstuis, if they be not aboue fifty years old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib. 2. ad Glauconem.*) This second indication (saith *Galen*) is the first and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the first place, doth rightly challenge the second degree. The generall manifestation therefore (saith he) of the cure of a cancre, consisteth in the speedy emptying out of that humor whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and stopping thereof, and to forsee, (if it be possible) that this melancholious humor be not collected in the veins by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to passe, you must euacuate the humour by turnes, now some and then some, and you must also endeouour to strengthen the member, least the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all such diseases comming of the flowing of humors, doth will vs to digest the humor, which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the same, least the humors abundantly haue at cesse therunto: moreouer you must appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowen, and that truely in the beginning.

Secundus scopus.

Humoris melancholici vacuatio.

Epithimum.

Hiera Russi

Hiera Auienne.

Sanguinis missio.

Lib. 14. meth. medendi.

Tertius scopus.

*Quod aptum
medicamentum
canceris.*

Lib. 14. Ther.

*Succus solani.
Diapompholygos.
Diaphenicon
seu diapalma.
Unguentum
diapompholygos
Theodoritici.
Appollonij
medicamentum.*

*The force of
lead is mar-
velous in car-
red tumours.
Pantus lib. 4.
ex archigene.*

aswell in the very time of purging, as before, but now, when the whole body is thoroughly purged, then may you lawfully endeavour to digest, and if there went before but a small and meane purging, then you must apply some remedy which hath a mixed faculty, that is to say, which can both repress and digest. Now, that we may iustly accomplish these intentions, we must make choise of those medicines, which are of a meane force, and of a gentle quality, for such remedies are most conuenient for these diseases. For those which cary with them a weake and feeble power do worke no effect (as *Galen* saith) but are easily ouercome: but such remedies as are strong and mighty, doe vehemently either digest or thrust backe the thinne blood which lieth in the veines: but the grosse and melancholicke partes, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge forth nor repress: but rather doe make them more obstinate and more hard to be dissolued and discussed. Therefore to cure these cancrs, but yet beginning, you must vse medicines of a meane and moderat strength, which neither their imbecillity can be vanquished, nor for the vehemency can mightily thicken the blood. Furthermore you must apply (as it is said) such medicines as are gentle and which doe not gnaw or bite: because the malignity of the euill through such vehement medicines is stirred and prouoked, and made more fierce and sauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter, whereof these cancrs doe come, is for the most part grosse and thicke and disobedient to resolution, and partener also with many other vicious humours, we shall deale sufficiently in this case (especially, when we feare the daunger of Chyrurgery, and that the euill cannot otherwise be cured) if we by the vse of the former remedies, which are made of burnt and washed metals (as *Galen* counselleth) shall stop and hinder their growing and encreasing, especially, if they be great tumors: or else after the opinion of *Auicenna*, if wee seeke to defend them from vlcération. For the which intentions, *Galen* lib. 2. ad *Glaucon*. doth greatly commend the iuice of nightshade, and that medicine which is made of pompholygos, or that which consisteth of *chaleites* commonly called *diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoriticus* also for the same purpose, appointed the ointment named *diapompholygos*, which is made of oile of roses, of white waxe. ana. \mathfrak{z} .v. of the iuice of red pomgranats, and of nightshade. ana. \mathfrak{z} .iiij. of ceruse washed. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of lead burnt and washed, of pompholygos, which is commonly called *tuthia*. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. of frankensence. \mathfrak{z} .ss. *Galen* also reporteth libro primo de compositione pharmacorum secundum locos, which booke is entituled of the auncient interpreter *myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Appollonius* for vlcers appearing in the head, which the Greekes call *acboris*, which ointment hee affirmeth to be very effectuell against these cancerous tumors. The medicine is this. R^y. of oile of roses, or of vnripe oliues, *hemina*, which the Greekes call *cotyle* viz. \mathfrak{z} .vij. ss. which must bee infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it waxe thicke and blacke, resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it selfe alone, of *lythargirum*. lib. i. of ceruse as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such cancerous dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed: all men may sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof,

thereof, and which haue studiously perused those things which *Galen libro nono de simplicium medicamentorum facultate* doth write of lead, which hee him selfe calleth in Greeke *molybdos*. For this cancrus disease *Paulus* and *Auicenna*, doe greatly commend the emplaster made of sea crabbes, especially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the scourings of brasfe. Take therefore of sea crabbs burned, and of the offall of brasfe an euen portion, beat them to flower, and straw them vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the crabbes with a searce cloth or cerat. But the same *Auicenna* willethe to plucke vp these litle cancrus hard by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crouse out the thicke blood on euery side, and afterward seare the place with some hote instrument. For this doth dissipate the reliques of the matter, and consumeth them, it strengthneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of blood. *Galen* also before *Auicenna* his time, did allow that cancrus might sometime be cured by Chirurgery. But truly although *Galen* and *Auicenna* doe permit this manuell cure by Chirurgery: yet to auoide the daunger of immoderate fluxe of blood, and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omitting those things, we ought to follow that prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and to content our selues with that onely methode: because that if such a cancrus tumour, which is growen to a mighty bignesse, should be cut round about in those places, which are ioyned to the whole partes, the daunger of immoderate profusion of blood woulde straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of the vessels and widenesse of the arteries, which partes (saith *Galen*) if you should take vp and binde them with cordes, the other members by reason of their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieved. Moreouer *Celsus* saith, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to seare off the rootes of this euill, yet truly you cannot doe this neither without hurting of the next parts, especially if you make exustion neare vnto the principall members. Great cancrus therefore, and those which are inueterat, must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cutte off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue sayd before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicins to take away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies, which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindred these tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet but beginning, and doth occupy the outward partes of the body, briefly in these wordes. 1. Inprimis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which consisteth of no very thicke humour, nor causeth the veines to swell greatly: purge out the melancholicke humour which causeth this euill vniuersally throughout the whole body. 2. If age and strength doth suffer it, cutte a veine in the elbow, and draw out as much blood as neede requireth. 3. Afterward minister to the sicke such medicines as can purge melancholy downward: in the beginning let them be gentle and easie, but afterward somewhat vehement encreasing their force by litle and litle. 4. If the purging of menstruis in women before fifty yeares of

Lib. 14. Meth. med.

Chirurgery not rashly to be vsed in cancrus.

Lib. 5.

Capita curationis Cancris non vlcerati.

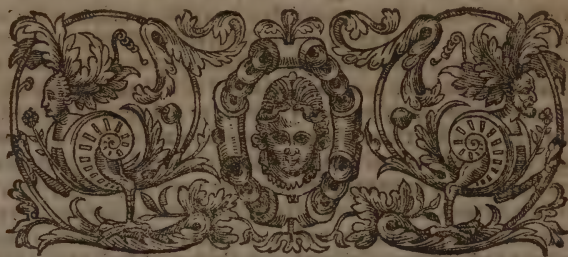
1


2

3

age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be so suppressed, that blood
 aboundeth not at times now and then, you must prouoke them by all means
 5 possible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the sicke a thinne diet, which can
 6 engender good iuice, and cause no melancholicke blood. 6. If you cannot a-
 uoide it, but that a grosse and melancholious humour be gathered together in
 the veines: you must euacuate the same by turnes, both with simple and com-
 7 pound medicines. But these former Aphorismes do pertaine vnto the Phisiti-
 on: now we will declare the duty of the Chyrurgian. 7. Apply vnto the affe-
 cted member both before purging, & in the very time of purging, such medi-
 cines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuersally purged,
 8 then vse digestiue remedies, but let them be such as are of a moderat strength
 and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore minister to the aggriued place iuice of
 nightshade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of
Calcites, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that sort. 9. But if
 9 by the art of Chirurgery you dare enterprise the cure of *Cancer*, you must first
 (taking the Phisicians counsell) purge forth the melancholicke humour,
 and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and suffer a
 good quantity of blood to come forth, and wring
 the thicke blood out of the adioyned parts,
 and afterward cure the disease af-
 ter the maner of other
 vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.





THE SIXT BOOKE

CONTAINING THE CVRE

OF THE DISEASE CALLED

MORBUS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

*Of the diuerse names of the grieve which I minde to speake of.
and where it had beginning.*



Having promised to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now spying many faults in the first Print and in the second, I will performe my promise, and amend the faults escaped in all the booke, for the benefit of my country: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth raigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: insomuch that it spareth none of what degree or calling soeuer they be of; (if they seeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it searcheth them. This grieve hath gotten many names, and so many as come to my memory I will rehearse, and where they were first begotten. First, the Spaniards borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in stead of their gold, and afterward Charles the first Emperour of Rome, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in shedding of bloud, spared neither man, woman, nor child; insomuch that he spoiled a great part of Italy, and subdued the dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and spoile, to all the commonwealth of Florence: and at the last he came to Rome and Naples, with his whole host, spoyling all as he went with great cruelty: and for his hire, this disease began first to shew it selfe plentifully among his people, and specially because his soldiers were much giuen to venery. The frenchmen at that siege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the first finding of this grieuous sicknesse, was brought into Spaine, by Columbus at his coming home, so that all Christendome may curse the Emperour and Columbus: This grieve at the first was so extreame, cruell, and so mercilesse, that it molested those which were infected therewith, even the head, eyes, nose, palate of the mouth, skinn, flesh, bones, ligaments, and all

the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* travelled againe, and brought with him little gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: in so much that the Physicians in those daies did not knowe what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their currizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian country. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fell in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beauty) dealt with them, to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, and for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*, why they should so terme it, I know not well, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*, the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patnyssa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interpret it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule, and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendendagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy partes both of men and women: and we in our country call it, the French disease. But howsoeuer it bee called it skilleth not, so that we knowe how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

But first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those which are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease, as by the effects following it may appeare; and after, the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion. It resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sicknesse, or also of some symptomes or consequents thereof. And because it chiefly beginneth in the liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signes as *Analogia morbi*; for all signes that can giue certaine testimony and shew thereof, are containd vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, som are *symptomata*, other som be *morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these falling of hairs, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I called *morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other partes of the body, with pustules, &c: which followeth this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vpon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, encrease, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kinde of long disease, great reason there is, why it should haue his distinct times; and according to the diuersity of those times, there

there happeneth diuerse *Symptomata*: For one kinde of *Symptomata* happen at the beginning of this disease, another kind to the state or vigor, &c. And therefore I will diuide all *Symptomata* into two sorts, to wit, those which follow and properly belong vnto this grief, beginning at those which follow the same being inueterat & confirmed; and these next ensuing be of the first sort. Straight waies after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himself a certaine lassitude or wearines come vpon all his members without any outward occasion, as walking, or mouing, &c: which foresheweth this cruell disease, and happeneth vnto them which are most strong & lusty before. There is perceiued also a lumpish heauines in the whole body, a dulnesse, faintnesse, luhernesse, or slownes to moue in all the members. The occasion of this, is the infection of the naturall spirits, which are the immediat instruments of the faculty sustaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whose infection, the body waxeth more heauy, and wearisome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this lassitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by & by it leaueth the head, and goeth into the shoulders, and from the one shoulder into the other. Out of the shoulder it fleeteth into the legs, the one of them or the other, & in like sort may it be sayd of all other members. The cause of this, is a certaine vapor which beginneth to rise vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotten: but by reason of that feruent heat of the liuer caused by infection, there is engendred a certaine smal vapor, whereof do grow these wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly, whe the disease hath begun, & hath a litle preuailed, the color of the face is changed; yee shall see the most beautifull, liuely, and cleane complexion of the skin, in three or foure daies space changed into a much worse course then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely spirits in the eies be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheeks sometimes are changed from their natural comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein) there is vnder their eies a wan coloured or blewish circle, such as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding these things in him, consider with your self whether he passed measure in drinking, in watching, or sleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care: & if it happed not through one of these, then may you iudge he is taken with this disease. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the handes, and the soles of the feete, yea euén in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporious spirits, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face also is affected, and the extreame partes or vttermost members are sore distempered with heate. Fifthly, you may adde a drowinesse, or disposition to sleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is caused through a turbulent vapour, which is increased through the infection and heate. Sixtly, you may adde heauines, and sadnesse of the minde: for though a plesant and merry nature shoulde be infected with this disease, yet he shall straight way be sadde, and giuen to pensiuenesse, and euén grown therewith. This infection increasing, burneth the blood, which sendeth vp troublous and noysome vapours vnto the head,

- 7 and seat of the minde. Seuenthly, the patient sometime hath a feauer, because of the heat which is about the distempered parts: but this seldome chanceth.
- 8 The eight is the appearaunce of some putrified matter, and this is *signum pathognomicum*, a signe to discouer the malady. Therefore as often times as you shall see this putrified matter, yet small in quantity about the priuy place, and know no occasiō to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the french disease. And what is the reason? This Caries or matter cannot happen but of two causes: either because the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten and gnawen the fine skinne of the yarde; or else because the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the liuer by the naturall spirites, and the liuer expelleth those infected spirites & sanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this Caries, how it may be knownen when it commeth of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when it is caused otherwise, I will speake afterwards. In the ninth place succedeth *Bubo*, and those not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heavinesse of his members, and a sadnesse of the mind, and after two or three daies there appeareth *Bubo parvus*, that is to say, a small tumour in the arine holes or share, which is painefull, not growen to any greatnesse: this signifieth that the disease is yet gentle; and in the beginning, but the cause of this is the greatnesse by the purging places of the liuer, and therefore the liuer disburdeneth him selfe by sending the disease vnto them, and hereof commeth *Bubo*. The later signe of this disease at the beginning is *Gonorrhoea Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Proteus. After the first comming in of this disease, for the space of forty yeares, there was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*; but the nature of the disease, is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoea Gallica* hath not bin seene about these fife and thirty years. Therefore we may looke for new and strange *symptomates*, I pray God they be light and easie to be holpen. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoea* is to be discerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to auoid tediousnesse in this place. The cause of this *Gonorrhoea* is *labefactio spirituum*, weakning and subuersion of the spirites, which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the testicles & spermaticke vessels, by reason whereof the strength of those parts is dissolued: so that they cannot keepe their seed but it continually droppeth forth. But now let vs speake of those signes which are appropriated to the disease in this progresse or confirmation: and first, of hard pustules in the whole body, and the same gricuous and deformed in the head and beard, sometimes with sanious matter, sometimes without it. And know yee, the disease cannot be about the age of fife or fixe moneths at the most when these *symptomates* appeare. And if the disease beginneth in the winter, it shall bring forth his crusts in the beginning of Sommer: if it beginne in the spring time, his crusts appeare in Autumne, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.

- 1 AND the chiefe causes of this breaking out of pustules are these: First, because the matter infected is sent thither from the liuer. Secondly because the parts affected do not digest and expell (by way of transpiration) his excrements,

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still, and grow vnto crusts. The third
 signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy partes, which
 either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and there-
 fore as often as you see the *Caries* in the priuy parts healed, and that there re-
 maine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place, where it was, be yee assured that
 this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wishe that you remember this,
 when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesse be most manifest & cer-
 taine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *v-
 uula*; the *vula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so,
 much moisture commeth to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *rancedo
 vocis*, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth when you
 shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vula* full of
 moisture, and (if the patient haue no catrich) say that it is *Morbus gallicus* con-
 firmed. The cause of this humectation or moistnesse of the *vula*, is the natu-
 rall spirits infected and chaunged, which is caried with the bloud of the veins,
 throughout the whole body, and because it is so infected and weakned, there-
 fore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomach, and maketh euill
 digestion. Therefore the same stomach aboundeth with sleume in the braine,
 and it dorth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mu-
 cus*, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by the reason of weakenesse
 of the spirites, engendred of flegmaticke bloud, with vnnaturall humours.
 If they bee afterward by excesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very
 grievous and vehement. No meruaile therefore, if this abundance of moist
 humors fall to the *vula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the bloud
 be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haire
 be consumed: so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the
 nose: it periseth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other
symptomates. The cause of hoarsenesse of the voice, is humidity and excrements
 which doe stop and let the waies of the voice. Fifthly, you may adde the tu-
 mors of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this,
 be yee out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For
 the infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emmu-
 tory* places, that is, glandules. And sixthly, adde thereunto the corruption of the
 palate of the mouth, and of the teeth; and when you see these, looke not to a-
 ny greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seuenth place I put
 outrageous and continuall paine, making the patient euen to cry out: this be-
 ginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth
 not fully vntill midnight; and these most orgueilous and extreame paines are
 caused of a very moist and maligne vapour, which riseth vppe from the liuer;
 and from the excrements be acquired and gathered by euill nourishment in
 euery part, and especially about the *periostion*, that is, the rims which couer the
 bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remēber corruption of the bones
 in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcē. How you may
 know the bone to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and sound, I will
 hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromacui*, that
 is, tumors which yeeld a tough slimy matter. These of some writers are called

10 *Bubata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude taken of trees. For in *morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth, either because the party him selfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, malignant vlcers in all the partes of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensue matter. To conclude, they succeed this disease, sometime their affects as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declarcth him to bee past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes; for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in proceſſe of time following, the waies how to assuage and cure all the said *symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without all daunger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOW after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceede and declare also the cure. And vnderstand ye, that the waies of curing therof are manifold and diuerſe, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any methode of curing; but was alwaies opened by the experiments of Emperickes, for *Hap. & Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerſe medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerſe waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which in yong men strong and lusty able to endure sweat, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedy for this euill in the beginning, for by it the heat so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renewed and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes, the liuer sometimes purgeth him selfe when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *febris putrida* cease & take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the found parts of the body. But in *febris helica*, the patients are healed by medicines alwaies which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the found parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts, it is possible that the spirits may be restored of them selues; for this affect is in the spirites. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweat haue bene cured but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

HERE is another way that Emperickes haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is per *Suffumigia*. The auncients vsed indeed diuerſe affects by suffumigations.

migrations. But the Emperickes trying alwaies to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex euabari*, yet this often times hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, wee will now come vnto the first (cope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present in *substantia*, wherewith is ioyned feruor, out of the which groweth a hoate distempure and excrementous matter. First therefore naturall, and that when so euer you goe about to cure this disease: for the very Emperickes doe that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantity onely: first, we must giue him a lenitiue medicine either of *cassia*, or *serup. ros. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of blood in the liuer may be so tempred and asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse; it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward partes vnto the outward, as in blood letting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth *Phlebotomy*: but the three first onely we take as indications of blood letting, and the veine that is to be opened is *hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease, for the most part, the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his excretory place, if wee should cut the veine, the patient hauing them vpon him, we might happily thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, least the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawn againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humours.

AFTER the patient hath bene let blood, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours, and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwaies the same mixture of humours, that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*. This *pituita* ought to be prepared first, by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines, you shall finde plenty in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmaticke and melancholike humors, and mixt humours, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.

IN the cure of this disease, after euacuation is made, the state and tempera-
ture of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the body prepared
by the medicens before sufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and
comforted againe as before we haue declared; if we see the disease continue
still, and not yeeld to all this ministrat[i]on, we ought then to come vnto that
which maketh the true & certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of
it selfe hath knowen vertue, both to alter and restore the liuer to his naturall
estate; and this is the decoction of *lignum guaiacum*, otherwise called *lignum in-*
dicum and *lignum sanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and con-
firmed by great experience to cure this disease, the patient obseruing a very
s slender diet, & drinking the decoction in which there is a vertue to attenuate,
and power to overcome this disease.

CHAP. IX.

What sort of that wood is to be chosen as best for this purpose.

NOW si thece it is determined that for this purpose to vse this wood is best,
it is necessary to shew also the maner of vsing this wood, concerning which
you ought to obserue these things. First what maner wood, and what manner
rinde is to be chosen for the best. Secondly the preparation. Thirdly the way of
giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vsed in ministring it. First concern-
ing the election or choise of the wood, I say it is not to be doubted, alwaies to
choose that which is of most vertue, and that is *lignum sanctum*, which is yel-
lowish and fatte, hauing no blacknesse in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs
vse *guaiacum*, whereof there is more plenty. Moreouer, in both kindes of this
wood, the meane sort is best; we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong
tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane sort which is not altoge-
ther blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither slender, nor grosse. I choose
this middle sort, because it hath more vntuositye or oyliness in it, then the
other which is grown vnto age. For if the same vntuosity doth more abound
in the younger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we
ought to choose that which is best in respect of the disease; to wit, in a confir-
med disease, the most vertuful and efficacious, as is *lignum sanctum* of middle
age, but if the disease be not so greatly confirmed, but light and easie, we may
vse that which is of more weaker operation both in genere & in specie. Further-
more, regard must be had also of the patient his age, for in an old body, the
old plant is most conuenient: for one that is yong and strong, the middle sort
is to be chosen. Fifthly, in choosing this wood, we must consider of the time
of the yeare: for in a cold season, as in the winter, we ought to vse the hotter,
sharper, and bitterer kinde, which we may iudge by our sences; in the sommer
time, that which is lesse sharpe, and least of all bitter, either of an old or yong
tree. And the markes, whereby we may discerne the best from the other, of
the wood of the old tree, which hath in it great quantity of blacknes, are these:
it is very bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the
wood,

wood, that vnnneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wishe you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choosethis wood by is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fifthly, take & rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worst sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixtly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous and heauy. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last prooofe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, very bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these; First, that it be taken of a tree which is olde, or of middle age, for that which commeth of a small bough is naught, and we know when it commeth of a middle aged or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinkled with an ashe colour; and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking, it appeareth blacke, but not like vnto *Ebenu*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaiacum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call Decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euery ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or a stripling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in sommer season, wee must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue poundes of the water, except in the sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept; and then we take *liquum* 3. vj. of water lb. vj. Also in the winter time we take of the wood raped lb. j. lb. of water eighteene poundes. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, and twelue poundes of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the woode twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water, but I like not that way, for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of colde water, and that which is

made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shall finde the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water, which is made euen seething hote. Moreouer, I wish that you stop your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the said branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompass it round about with linnen clothes, that it may bee perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requisite strength, and to be boyled in a vessell of stone, or of earth well glased within, those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse waies, to witte, by dry fire, or in *balneo marie*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be far better, & worke better effect and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopped, and keepe it in boiling continually, let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is, some will boile it till three parts be consumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, sometime is suffered to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boiling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I thinke it no matter whether it be clenfed hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise, we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) & boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is) that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to encrease the quantity of this water: for sometime we adde eightene pounds of water, sometime fiftene: and this we are accustomed to doe, when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly we encrease the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunk at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuerthelesse ye shall vnderstand, some Physicians doe giue the first decoction euen at dinner & supper also: and so they make but one decoction only, but this vse is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of veale, of a chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fatte. It is boiled after the manner aforesaide: and this I thought necessary to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of the making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded therewith diuersely. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly. Afterwardes others which because they haue moe things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction, is made of the rind of the wood, and pure water only. And this simple decoction the best Physicians do vse, when they will

make

make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this: We take the same quantity of the wood of *guaicum*, & the some of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke, or rind of *guaicum*, which hath no determinat quantities, for sometime we put 2. sometime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, & for halfe an ounce of the rind, we adde 4 pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. pound, the quantity of the rind 3. ij. the quantity of the water shall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rind vj. 3. of water lb. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, and afterward steepe it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the consumption of the 3. part, in such wise, as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places, they prepare & make this decoction with wine. The forme of preparing it is this: *Guaic*. j. pound *corrich eim*, halfe a pound water lb. 18. let these be infused together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2. 3. parts, so that 6. pounds only of the decoction do remain. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it hapneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his stomach) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pearce the sooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue & retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: *R. ligni guaici*. lb. j. *corrich eim*. lb. 8. *aqua* lb. 18. these be infused according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Carduus benedictus*, which is much vsed, *Chamedrios Betonice*, of ech of these herbes a handfull. Again they boile it euen til the one halfe be wasted. So that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pintes, and after 1. whalme or 2. boiling we clense or straine it. *R. the same wood*, the same rinde, and the same water in quantity, infuse & boile them after the same maner: then adde of rosemary, *feniculi*, *stachadis*, betony. ana. M. j. *seine*, annise 3. j. let these boile to the consumption of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pintes of wine, after the maner aforesaide. Lastly, we make yet another way as thus. *R. the same quantity of the wood and rinde*, whereof we spake before, we adde of the roots of *emula campans*, of the roots of *althaa*, of the dry rootes of *ireos*. ana. 3. j. of maidenhaire, of liquorice, *seitiados*. ana. 3. 3. These boile together to the consumption of halfe, then theris put vnto it 3. pints of wine, and so the decoction made perfect by boiling, as is aforesaide. And these be the formes & descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with appraitioners and others. They which vse to minister these maner of decoctions, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their decoction. I my selfe haue bin wont in this decoction to put in purging medicines, & specially to those which haue such stomachs as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwaies, but especially in cold griefes, as *Asthma*, and coldnes of the stomach, *sciatica* & palsey in fistulaes, and other foule sores & paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet comming of cold distempure, in these causes I haue vsed the said decoctions with good successe. But

the most simple decoction, I say doth best against *Morbū Gallicū*, so that there be no compound disease ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vsed according to the direction of them which do practise.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BUt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? certes the most meete time is the spring time, for although we require in the working therof, heat, sweat, and much digestion of excrements, yet the heate of sommer is too great, the bodies are therby resolued & made faint. Therefore the mid spring, and the beginning of sommer is most conuenient. Next vnto the spring is the autumn; as for the sommer and winter they be seasons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his excesse of cold. And if of these two I must needes choose one, yet would I rather choose the winter, for in the winter season we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made close and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwaies the spring is best, the autumn next, the winter next, and the sommer worst of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

WE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our ancestors the Phisitions that liued before these last 40. years, were wont to keepe their patients in darkenes, as it were, in a dungeon for the space of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones, and they did well, so cruell, so fierce and outragious was then this disease. But now sithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Phisitions ought not to deale so hardly withall. Therefore wee keepe our patients in a chamber, where is somewhat drier ground, not open vnto the windes, the windowes closed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept close.

CHAP. XIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN measuring the quantity we obserue these things. First, how great the affect is, for if it be great & rebellious, then must a great quantity of this potion be giuen; if the affect be not great, the quantity should be lesse. Vnto a child we minister a smaller quantity then to one of full growth. Also consideration ought to be had of the complexion, for the patient if his temperament be hot, a litle quantity, if it be cold a great quantity is to be giuen. If the stomacke be weake we giue a very small quantity; if the stomack be strong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. sirupes, but when it is litle by one sirupe only, our limits are frō 3. iij. vnto 3. x. In a child frō 4. vnto 6. 3. if he be strong and valiant of stomack, you may proceed to 3. viij. In the strongest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceede not aboue 3. x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreouer you must obserue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwaies of the sirupe in the morning, then in the evening, because in the morning the stomack is empty: & in the night because of sleepe, the force therof is greater. Again, this is to be obserued, in the 1. and 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and

and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twice a day, (to wit) morning and euening, at a certaine without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THE question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum*, the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erraticus*, a long disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction til the thirtieth day, or the five and twentieth day, but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *retro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *symptomata* be ceased and gone, and if they be ceased at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke, if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty daies, the *symptomata* cease not, yet thereby leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still prescribing to the patient *viētus nobilium*, and let him till a hundred daies be expired, drinke of the decoction, least the disease reurne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *symptomata*, which if they remaine, hope ye not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeede vnto Buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease wil againe return. The other rebellious *symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoea gallica*, which if it ceaseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing this decoction and things to be obserued therein.

NOW comming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say, that the Physicians giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or four houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe onely, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreover, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweat: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to doe, that it may the better be digested, and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiveth this decoction.

Chiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the dore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure haue

failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled and dealt withall, who will beautifie them selues, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your company, and thrust them out of the dores and house, let none of that hew be seene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the minde, which to auoide, flee cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nourish fraud, and couetousnesse, which doth inflame the blood, & sturre cholericke humors.

CHAP. XVIII.

*Of things to be corrected or symptomes to be op-
pugned in this cure.*

Certaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine lothing of the stomach, or disposition to vomit, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This comming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasaunt things, with the decoction, as is some pleasant lulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cause therof: some hauing a hot stomach do abhor it, therefore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *cichorri*, and such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them, good common bread made of the best floure, of the best wheat. Moreouer sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past, which we endeuour to qualife and lighten two waies. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commodity and much comfort. Secondly by fomenting the partes, and annointing them, wherof I will speake more at large, when I treat *de dolorib.* Another inconuenience that followeth this cure is Costiuenesse, and the patient commeth into lassitude, or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters, giuen euery third day. Again some do abhor clisters, vnto such we giue once in the day, of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus, or mellis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as will not be scoured by common *mell rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *rosifolius* $\frac{3}{4}$ j. Some vse to giue pills of *Aloes*, but *mell rosifolius* in my iudgement is best. Also other whiles it hapneth that the patient fainteth or swooneth, and this happneth after foure and twenty daies, through the slendernesse of the diet. Then graunt him a larger diet, as an egge euery day morning & euening, or some other thing at your discretion. And other whiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swooning commeth for that they are not nourished, or because they take litle of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reere. But if their stomackes will nor digest bisket, let them haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weaknesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes. When either the said solutive sirupe, or clisters be giuen them (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish, somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye

may

may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedy for it berimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a larger diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some Iulep, it is the better. These be the *symptomata* and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOW am I come to that parte of my treatise, wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter: first you shal vnderstand, there be two kinds of Excrements which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure wherof I haue spoken. The other kinde of Excrements, whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine, very good it were indeede, but no Phisition hath attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matters vnto the reins: especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoea*, for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated and more hurt, then commodity will thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Phisitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of this disease. Some therfore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient wel with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hot bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke, (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that wil do hurt or nay.) I can comend it in such patients, as haue not the head very hot and sweating already: also in such as haue pustules, & do fear the shedding of their hair. Others take bread hot out of the oven, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heat thereof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuise, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme brick sprinkled with wine or veriuice, and wrapped vp in cloths, and this is a good comendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feete: in such you must lay no bricke to their feet in no wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the siege. And the *guaicum* potion is wont sometime to worke that effect, but sometime it doth it not. The most part of Phisitions doth (in this case) comend euacuation made with conuenient distance of time, by purgatiue medicines, wherefore if very great euacuation be made by sweats, let them euery eight day be purged, if they sweat not pléteously, then purge them oftner euery 3. or 4. day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this case do vse, be according to the humours which doth most abound, as sometime with pilles, with *Sena Epithymo*, *Hermadaclilus*, and sometime with *Helluaris*, as *confectio Hamel*, *Diabolicon*, and such other like, as you may find plenty in the first and second bookes. if you looke carefully in them for the medicins for the purpose which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of diet to be obserued in this cure.

NOW are we come to speake of the diet to be vsed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwaies, slender touching the quantity and drying; and it consisteth in bisket which we giue vnto the patient first and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after, it might the lesse moisten, (and so it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours, which belong to this disease) and also because this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is somewhat staied: and if the stomach be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very best. His meat must be roasted and excellent good: chickens, rabbits, mutton, partridges, and such like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twice, or thrise in the weeke lette him haue to his supper breade and great raisons, as you like his strength. Some doe minister corants which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by abundance of sweate, so that we may hope the patient shall that way be perfectly purged: then I thinke best to giue no purging medicines, for nature her selfe expelleth them to the skinne to be euacuated that way by sweate, whose worke should by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered. If his sweate be not sufficient, then it is best to vse purging, of what kinde you thinke best (as before.) His ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vse the second decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeeue, the more they drinke the sooner they shall be cured of this disease: and if they cannot drinke the second decoction we must suffer them to take some ale or beere, but let it not be very strong in no case. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obserue whether the liuer be too hoate yea or no, if it be so, then prescribe a medicine to qualifie the distempere as thus. Take conserues of roses, borage, or of violets, or such like, which you may finde plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOW haue we to treat of the roote of China, whereof some Phisitions doe make very great account, not onely for *Morbus gallicus*, but also for the cure of *pyxis*, vlcers of the lungs, consumption of the members. In *Lepra Grecorum*. i. *scabbes Elephantiasie*. i. leproie proceeding of the melancholicke humour, *podagra*, in all which affects they vse it, the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to try the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the dropsie: also to repressse and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eies comming of a hote distempere: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distempere of the stomach and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe, for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise, we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥.ij. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water, we heate the water, & infuse the China in it, for a whole night space, or foure and twenty houres. Afterwardes we set it to the fire and boile it, to the consumption of halfe, so that fixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction which forthwith we cleanse, and spread out the saide thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coles, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sower. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth, and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction, we giue in manner of a sirupe in the morning. ℥. x. or xij. in the euening as much. The stomach liketh well therof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wipe, or else to common ale at his meat, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common *Diet* bread of the best, and flesh both foddren and roasted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made; for of two pound (which as we told you in the end of the last Chapter, is the full *Dosis* of this roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward, we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day ℥. iij. & so it lasteth six daies more, till the space of eightene daies be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if neede be, we doe as before.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you wil choose the best *China*, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not worme eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vnneath you shall finde foure good, for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongeous and light, another that they be corrupt or worme eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeede to be found) rather choose those that be eaten with wormes, so that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongeous rootes soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or manner, whereby some Physicians endeouour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke.

IHaue alwaies obserued and followed this rule, I take of *salsa periglia*. ℥. iij. of water, x. pintes, I cut the *salsa periglia* into small parts: afterwardes infuse.

it in hote water, by the space of foure and twenty houres. When it is infused, it is boyled to the consumption of the one halfe, afterward it is strained, and this decoction kept for the sirupe. Then we take the same *salsa* againe, & put thereto of water fifteene pintes, and without any more infusion, we boile it vnto the consumption of the third part, and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and supper. Truth it is, I sometime make this decoction with wine, in this wise. The first decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene poundes or pintes, and the same quantity of *salsa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be wasted, then before I take the vessell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine not strong, but pleasaunt in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanse it out, and this wine I vse to put vnto it, when I see the patient not much infected, and so he may walke abroad if it please the patient, or else when his stomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, sometime I vse to mixe the wood, and sometime the rinde, and then I take of *salsa* \mathfrak{z} . ij. of the *Guaicke* wood as much, and sometime of his rinde. \mathfrak{z} . ij. (but not both at once, very seldome.) Sometime I vse the one, and sometime the other, after this forme. *Re. salsa* \mathfrak{z} . iij. *ligni guaiaci* \mathfrak{z} . iij. β . or else of the rinde \mathfrak{z} . ij. To which I put of water thirteene pintes, and let them boile together till halfe be wasted. Again to make their drinke for dinner and supper, I take of water eighteene pintes, and boile it to the consumption of the third part; when I vse the barke, I take even the same quantity of water, although there be of it but \mathfrak{z} . ij. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him these decoctions; in this case I boile the *salsa* in thirteene pintes of water, vnto the consumption of halfe, and when it is thus boyled, I haue a vessell either of the raped *guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I best like of, and into it I cleanse the decoction of *salsa*, as hote as is possible, and so it is infused for thirteene houres, and then I straine it, and thus I prepare this sirupe. At dinner and supper, I giue onely the second decoction of *salsa*. The reason why I thus admixe them, is because the decoction of *salsa* doth little offend the stomach, but sometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *guaicum* therewith. An other cause why I mixe them, is to eradicate the disease, wherefore *salsa* is needefull. Thirdly, when I hath one that haue hadde this disease long time, I vse both *guaicum* and *salsa*, yea and sometime the rinde, but that I doe very seldome, and I vse this decoction in all pointes as the other in quantity and time. And sometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vse this decoction following: I take *guaicum* \mathfrak{z} . vij. of *salsa* \mathfrak{z} . iij. and infuse them in fourteene pintes of warme water, foure and twenty houres, then boile them vntill there be left seuen pintes, and towards the end of the boiling, adde to of licorise. \mathfrak{z} . j. raisons of the sunne, the stones picked out. \mathfrak{z} . ij. the rootes of *consolida maior*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . of the seedes of *Carydus benedictus*. \mathfrak{z} . β . and when it is colde, straine it. This decoction take for the first morning and evening. \mathfrak{z} . vij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to sweat if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which was strained, and adde thereto of fre she *guaicum*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. of *salsa*. \mathfrak{z} . j. put of water sixteene pintes, let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pintes, and adde in the end

of the boyling barley. \mathfrak{z} . ij. licorise and railons of the sunne, the stones taken out. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. violet floures. \mathfrak{z} . ss. and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure daies, if there be neede. And let him take this decoction thirty daies, or fve and twenty daies at the least, as you see cause, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to wash or bath the places grieued, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this salsa bath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *salsa* doeth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other affectes, as in a catarhe, or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in cancrs not vlcerate, and in tumors which are hard to be resolued; and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *scrophulæ*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise for the space of forty daies, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Rus. us*, called of some *Bruschn*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder. \mathfrak{z} . j. with white wine, or ale as I see cause, and it commeth well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the body as I see cause, and let the patient goe abroad at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the splene, but I adde thereto the iust quantity of *T amarisus* which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THIS disease sometime is cured of appraitioners by Suffumigation, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongest those waies before named. The cause is this, often and many times fore inconueniences come thereuppon, and it cureth not with so small daunger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwaies held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hoate and dry temperament, also in those which haue straightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreouer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted blood: furthermore such persons as haue *peripneumonia*, if they vse these suffumigations, it costs the their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *desentery*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbear these Suffumigations: I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most, and maruell ye not thereat, for I vtterly mislike of them. But I will speake a litle of Suffumigations, they haue in them these faculties & strengths: First they open al the cōduits of the body, for their nature is such, that immediately they pearce the body, in pearcing they alter it, they

mundifie or seoure the inward parts, and first the hart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nose-thrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience, for *suffumens* alwaies loosen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needs be that they pearce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.

First there is none so ignorant, or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body, before the vse of those Suffumigations, by one, two, or three purgations with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sicknesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong, which rules of euacuation you may finde before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the sunne riseth, they giue the patient a couple of ree eggs, and straight after he hath eaten them, a soppe of bread infused in Malmesey, then they let him drinke a little quantity. Lastly after all these, they let him take . ℥ . j. of *saccharum ros.* and lie still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a little chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pavilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth, within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient him selfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a little seat for the purpose. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by litle and litle they strow vpon the coales, and the smoke thereof being closely kept in, stieeth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, the strow on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue if hee can the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre as he can abide it. But let them alwaies take heed, that so long as he is vnder the pavilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth, for sometime they swoond and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous, and if he answereth very faintly, take him out in all the hast you can, then wrappe him vp in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him a bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space. And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three daies together, and rest one day, and then other three daies, and so to nine daies. Sometime we vse this suffumigation moe daies, euen as the disease requireth, for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exacerated or sore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off, or if a lax commeth vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth day. If once in the day we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweat, and let him eate his meat & drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large and at his pleasure to his best liking.

*A good signe
to know the
time to leaue
off.*

Diet.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the Symptomata which sometime happeneth in
this way of curing.*

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euill *symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roose of the mounth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the anointing with Quicke siluer, and where we shall come to treat of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

*Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne
and harmelesse.*

ITold you before that there is two sorts of Suffumigations, one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venomous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort) *R. Theriacis masculi, aloes, n. yrrha. ana. ʒ. j. cinamomi, storacis sicca, spicacardi, moschata. ana. ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. ambra vel charabe, ʒ. j. moschi gra. ij.* These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hore burning coales. Another is described thus: *Santal alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum. ana. ʒ. j. nucis moschata, ymaceris squinanthi, gariophyllorum, camphore, assari. ana. ʒ. ʒ. corticum mali apii, siccatorem ambra. ana. ʒ. ʒ.* They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with terebintine made into a past, which past is afterward deduced into round bals, which by litle and litle are laid vpon the fiery coales. The third composition being yet more strong is this: *R. storacis sicca, belzeni, ligni aloes, galie moschate. ana. ʒ. ʒ. gummi hedere. ʒ. j. ladan. ʒ. ij. squinanthi, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. albianime, carabe. ana. ʒ. ʒ. misce.* These are beaten, & with *storaq. liquida* made into a past, which past also is made into litle round bals, *vt supra.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

Morbus Gallicus is ouercome by Suffumigations, which pearcing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole habite: these be of two sorts. The one sort particular, the other commo. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they bee that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former chap; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which doe consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are nowe in vse, and the principall thinges in them be *cinaberis artificialis, sandaracha grecorum, and auripigmentum*; and these be those, which (for as much as they be poisons) of there owne nature, doe inspire a certaine venomous vapour into the body. But to bee bricfe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effecte consisteth in *hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum, sandaracha, and cinaberis artificialis, or precipitatum*. These things be mixed with

- aromaticke to strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these aromaticke things, be *Resina* and diuerse kinds of gummes. The first forme of this sort is this: *R. cinaberu. 3. iij. myrrhe. thuris mastiches. ana. 3. j. aloes hepaticæ, sandaraca arabum, siracis sicæ belzini. ana. 3. iij.* These be beaten grosly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinkled vpon the fiery coles. The second forme is this: *R. cinaberu. 3. iij. sandarache grecorum. 3. j. myrrhe, thuris lignialos, cadani ammoniaci. ana. 3. j.* These are beaten in grosse wise, and wixed with terebinthine, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this: *R. cinaberu. 3. iij. Auripigmenti, sandarache grecorum. ana. 3. j. precipitati. 3. iij. thuris, aloes hepaticæ, mastiches, myrræ, electæ, belzoni, storacis sicæ, cadani, ammoniaci. ana. 3. j. miscentur.* Of these make a grosse powder which is stiewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations, which haue a venemous faculty; and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by anointing with Quicke siluer.

Harmes following the use thereof.

THE first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that country, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quick siluer should be of great veertu against an old rebellious scab (and at the first comming in of this disease, it had alwaies vlcers ioyned therewith, they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus*: by this anointing, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still, one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it helaceth not, it driueth the hore channell of vicious humours into the head. I haue taken in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before, and when they haue had sores (called *gumata*) vpon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bin discouered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medicine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing called *Regie*. I saw once a young stripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforesayd *Regie curatiōes* had bene practised, and hee neuer the better therefore, yet he afterwarde was cured by the waies of annointing. Wherefore in such as haue rebellious affects, and are to be despaired of, I vie it, when I haue proued all waies, and all sorts of medicines before. And when I vnderstand it, I obserue this order. First to purge the humour that doeth abound, and if the humours be mixt then all the body, I giue the *detraclum guaiaci*, by the space often or twelue daies, to strengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer, and then the venemous medicine hurterh nor so much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this sort. First three daies if the *symptomates* doe not appeare, then to foure, fve, sixe, yea ten daies, till I see the *symptomates* doe appeare, then I annoint no more. Of these *symptomata*,

some

some happen commonly very much, other some very little, it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled, and raw, their tongue growen bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore, by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vpon it, all their teeth are loose in their head, and doe shake, sometime they loose some of them. Finally, such a quantity of corrupt matter, is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth, and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a Diet. of things easie to be digested, as some *cullaxe* of delicate flesh. Let the drink which he drinketh be pleasaunt, and if hee hath vsed to drinke wine, let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully, for the euacuation which hee sustaineth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *cephalica* veine for the swelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the *symptomata* which happeneth in the mouth in this way of curing.

And amongst other things this also is to be obserued as much as is possible, to draw out the *Hydragiron* which lieth soaked in the palate, and the teeth. The way to doe it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twise or thrise, and if it chaunce to looke white, lay it on the coales and it will come to his colour as before, and then put it in, and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to washe his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse barley water and sirupe *myrtillis*, or *Diamoron*, or *Memphar*, and sometime wee vse *aqua solani*, or plantaine. Sometime wee vse of repercussive iuices, as *sucus foliorum rubi*, *foliorum plantaginis*, some of the iuice of vine leaues. Sometime we vse barley water, with *mel. ros.* sirupe *myrti* *diamoron simplex*, to scoure with all the mouth. Another *symptomata* yett followeth vpon this way of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the belly, for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure bloud, or strings of bloud, as we see in *dyssenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe but moderate it, and cause that the excoiation of the bowels do not thereby encrease. First by ministring clisters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hore gaddes of steale, or little blacke flint stones, or by the iniection of the iuice of *prysan*, pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum myrtinum*, or *oleum empliacinum in clisteris*, also the iuice of plantaine, or of the hip brier. Sometime we put in our clisters also *bolus armenus*, or *lapis hematidis*. Moreover, we vse astringent waters, sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other means, or waies of reuulsion: now if none of these *symptomata* shall come vpon them, we nourish them with good meats (as is said) and so end the cure.

*Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be used
in this way of curing.*

THere be diuerse kindes of vnguents; I will set forth but two of them. *Rx.*
oleum petrolium. ℥. β. olei lumbricorum, olei spicanardi, olei tartari albi, olei turpen-
tini. ana. ℥. j. vnguentum dialtheæ, vngu. merciaton, axungia toxifon, storax liquide, tur-
pentini ana. ℥. ij. axungia porcine. lb. β. armoniace, opoponacis, bdelij, elemij, ladanij, sty-
racis, calaminthe, belzoni ana. ℥. j. Tartari albi combustæ, aluminis combustæ. ana. ℥. iiij. vi-
triole romani combustæ. ℥. j. quicke siluer. lb. j. minium. ℥. β. mixe all, and beate
them in a mortar 2. hours at the least, if it be three it is the better, without cea-
sing. *Rx.* pinguedinis galline, axungie perçine, axungie vrsine. ana. ℥. iiij. olei liliorum
albi, olei laurini. ana. ℥. ij. quicke siluer. ℥. viij. In this composition, the fats are
not melted at the fire, but the filmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a
mortar very diligently, then by little and little the quicke siluer is put into the
mortar, & the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the space of two or three
houres at the least. Afterward put in these pouders; Thuris, mastiches, myrrhe,
ammoniaci, styracis, pulueris saluie, pulueris stachados, lythargij, cerussæ. ana. ℥. β.
Of thes is made a very fine powder, which by little and little is put into the
mortar, continually beating till all be well incorporated. Thus these two oint-
ments be made, the first is strongest and best. If there be many vlcers, and at
the fourth or fifth annointing, commonly the *symptomata* will appeare, they vse
no more annointing.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.

Dosis.

*The dosis of
Turbitih mine-
ralis.*

Furthermore you shall vnderstand, that some practitioners vse to cure this
disease, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue spoken before) but by
giuing precipitatum by the mouth. Some giue the common precipitatum so pre-
pared: It is giuen in waight, gr. seuen or tenne at the vttermost: they mixe this
quantity with medicine to alter the colour that it may not be known. Some
mixe it with aloes, myrrhe, mastiches. gr. iij. Some mixe it with conferues of roses,
some with Mithridatum, and such like. But there is a more safe curing then this
by Turbitih mineralis, which the *Chymists* haue inuented in stead of precipitatum,
which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better sort of men: of
the which I minde to speake hereafter as followeth. First, the vse of Turbitih
mineralis is betwixt graines. xvij. and xx. graines, or xxv. graines at the most,
after the strength of the patient; they vse it in this manner. First they take the
dose as they themselues best like, and mixe it with Mithridatum one part or two
as they will, some mixe it with conferue of roses, so that there be not in all past
℥. j. or ℥. j. β. at the most. They make it into a ball: some make three or
four pils and gild them, other some roule it in powder of Diambre or such like.
The patientes body must be prepared by some easie meane, and eate a light
supper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning, after he hath receiued
it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the least, and sleepe after it, if it be
possible,

possible: then let him arise and apparell him selfe warme, and sit by the fire. Let his chamber be verie warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the saydbole, cause him to eate of some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be thoroughly whole or cured. Let his diet be verie good warme meate. Two mornings next following giue him a litle *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the Turbith as before, and let him keepe the same order aforesayd; and if his mouth growe not sore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the second time; doe so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapters to heale his mouth, as is taught there. Thus haue you all the wayes and meanes to helpe this pernitiuous griefe.

Libri Sexti finis.

—Cc





THE VII. BOOKE TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND

MEDICINES WHICH OVR PHISITIONS DO
commonly vse at this day, and to knowe after what sort their
proportion and quantitie is distributed and noted,
with the names of eech medicine.

CHAP. I. Of Suppositaries.



Suppositarie is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which
is put into the fundament, that it may auoyd the pricking,
and moue & prouoke the vertue expulsive to the auoiding
of the excrements compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries
especially for three causes: the first is for bringing
out of ordure, which when it lyeth in the right bowell, it
requireth no clyster. The second is, when one or two cly-

sters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundam-
ment, as it doth chaunce in passions of the cholicke, then it is verie perillous
to put in other clysters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake
that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clyster. A Suppositarie is made
of honie that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes
quicke, take salt gemme, the dounge of a mouse, agaricke, or else *hiera simplex*.
℞. a Suppositarie made of honie, which if you thinke so weake that it will not
moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. ℞. to make a common
Suppositarie of sharpe honie, *sal armoniac*. ʒ. ʒ. or of salt gemme. ʒ. ʒ. or of
mouse dounge. ʒ. ʒ. or ʒ. 1. or of *hiera simplex*. ʒ. ʒ. Also make suppositaries of
white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of beets or mer-
curie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or honie, & strewed with powder of
salt specially for children & sucking babes, for whom one corne of salt put in is
sufficient. ℞. time, or *cyclaminum*, or wormewood, or sothernwood, stamped in
a morter. ʒ. j. or ʒ. of boyled honie so much as sufficeth, and make a supposita-
rie. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey made of pellitory, pepper, napy,
(that is, a kind of rapes called a nauew) centorie, bitumen (that is, a kinde of
lime) the root of *panax*, hysope, *galbanum*, mixed with drie rosin, or pitch & wax.
Let a suppositarie be round, & 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no supposita-
ries to the w^h haue the hemorrhoids, or any other swellings in the fundam^{en}t.

CHAP.

A Suppositarie
to bring soorth
the ordure.

A Suppositarie
against the
wormes called
Lumbrici.

CHAP. II.

Of making Nodulus.

NODULI be those which are called of *Actus* in Greeke *μενδύρα*, they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoyd and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steads: their matter is the same that suppositaries be. *Rx.* flockes mingled or beaten with honie, and put into the tuell; and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a beane, and put into the tuell with a thread hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.

Of making Pessaries.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the wombe. It is made of waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward winde them in silke, and hang a thread thereon, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuell & into the wombe to cease the inflammations & vlcers of them both. Priuarily it is put into the womb to prouoke the menstruis & the secudine, or to stop immoderat flux of menstruis, or to mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. *Rx.* a pessarie dipped and wet in *unguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh assoned, therefore his quantitie ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a litle time, least through his coldnesse the partes which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. *Rx.* a pessarie dipped and wet in *unguentum pompholygor*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieved. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as findall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his power, as thus. *Rx.* *herapicra composita*. \mathfrak{z} . j. of *euthorbium*, and the apple of *coloquintida*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ss. mixe them and make a pessarie. Anoint it with *oleum nardinum*, or with the iuyce of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes, prouoking menstruis, as, *Rx.* mercurie, neppe, or mugwort, or sothern wood, *M. ss.* bray them, and roule them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist, the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloaden, because the matrice is in the midst betwene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouer much straightnesse, may be retained, and made slowe in coming out. If immoderate menstruis doe flowe, doe thus: *Rx.* a pessarie wet in *unguentum comitisse*, and put it into the matrice; or thus. *Rx.* of

To cease inflammation.

To drie vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

To mollifie the
hardnesse of the
wombe.

plantaine or knotgrasse, or brier, of mirdle, or other that can stop menstruis. *M. β.* bray them, and roll them in silke, and make a pessarie. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a calfe, and a hart, of rosin, terebinthine, faimelle of a goose, or porke, and of gumme armoniacke dissolved in water.

CHAP. IIII. Of Clysters or Enema.

A Clyster mol-
lificatiue.

A Clyster pro-
uoking & ma-
king voyde the
violence as-
mied.

A clyster away-
ding humours.

A Clyster or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquid and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse. 2. To prouoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoyd any kinde of humours. 4. To put away ventosities. 5. To cease colours and paines. 6. To bind and reſtraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guttes or bowels. 8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter or chaunge, as here followeth. *Rx.* of lettuce, scarioll, *rastrum porcinum*, leaues of fallow. ana. *M. j.* floures of violets, and nenuphar, of each a litle handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the straining, let one ounce of *Cassia fistula* bee dissolved, oyle of violettes, and of nenuphar, ana. *℥. j. β.* camphire, *℥. j.* and make a clyster. *Rx.* the foure kindes of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, pellitorie of the wall. ana. *M. β.* the rootes of the mallowes called *althaea*, and white lillies. ana. *℥. j.* seede of flaxe, fenugreeke, and anise. ana. *℥. β.* of fat figges. *iiij.* make a decoction of *℔. j.* in weight. In the straining thereof dissolve therein of *Cassia fistula*, *mel violatum*, and fresh butter. ana. *℥. j.* oyle of violettes. *℥. iiij.* and make a clyster. If you will make a clyster mollificatiue lacking the things aforesayd, doe thus. *Rx.* of oyle made warme. *℔. j.* and make thereof a clyster, or thus. *Rx.* oyle and fresh butter. ana. *℔. β.* and make a clyster. *Rx.* the foure remollitiues. ana. *M. j.* seede of *Carthamum* *℥. j.* of anise, fenell, and *careum*. ana. *℥. iiij.* and make a decoction of *℔. j.* and in the straining dissolve *hiera simplex*, or *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium de succo*, or *electuarium indi maioris*. *℥. β.* of clarified honic, or iuyce of squill. *℥. j.* or common salt. *℥. ij.* or salt gemme. *℥. j.* or *℥. β.* Manie do ad to clysters *℥. j.* of the iuyce of beetes, which doe moue and grieue the belly, or iuyce of beetes and colewortes. ana. *℥. β.* of common salt. *℥. ij.* or *℥. j.* which bite and gnaw the bellie, or lesse, but the iust weight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clyster expulsiue the detestable facultie or matter, may verie well be made onely of honic, or hony with iuyce of squilla, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulsiue be astonied & dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, then make a clyster partly of mollificatiues, & partly of expulsiues aforesaid. Clysters which auoid humors are made so, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus: *Rx.* the foure remollitiues. ana. *M. j.* cammomil, the tops of dill, organ, calamint, fotherwood. ana. *M. β.* anise, *careum*, comin, ameos, seseleos. ana. *℥. β.* berries of lawrell, seed of rewe. ana. *℥. ij.* make a decoction. In the straining dissolve *calholicon*, and *diaphenicon*. ana. *℥. β.* or *diaphenicon*, or *benedicta*. *℥. vj.* or of both. *℥. β.* of red sugar, and *mel anthor*. ana. *℥. iiij.* or *℥. β.* oyle of dill and

cam-

cammomill. ana. quar. β . or oyle of rewe. \mathfrak{z} . j. oyle of dill. \mathfrak{z} . ij. or oyle of lillies \mathfrak{z} ij. make a clister. If ventositie be present, adde calmatiuus, if paine be present, take a medicine releasing grieve by prouoking sleepe, as hereafter shall appeare by examples. If a cholericke & gnawing humor must be brought out with a clister, then let the clister be made of such things as will auoyd that humour, and mixe it partly with such helpes as doe cease inflammation, as thus. \mathcal{R} . mallowes, bismallowes, violets, pellitorie of the wall, endiue, succorie, lettuce, purslaine. ana. M. j. and if there be so much neede of coldnesse, take the foure great cold seeds brused. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . of whole barley. p. j. make a decoction of one pound. In the straining dissolue *casta fistula* and common sugar. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of roses, or of violets, or common oile quar. j. make a clister. If such a passion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. \mathcal{R} . the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of buglosse and borage, the tops of dill, *lupuli*, and fumitorie. ana. M. j. melilot and cammomill. ana. M. j. seede of *charthamum*, and polipodie of the oke. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. annise, and fennell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *hierarussii*, which is not in vse, or *confectio hamech*. \mathfrak{z} . β . or *catholicon*. \mathfrak{z} . j. red sugar, or *mel rosarum*, or violets. \mathfrak{z} . j. oyle of dill, lillies, and violets. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. make a clister. \mathcal{R} . mallowes, bismallowes, pellitorie of the wall, organic, calamint, cammomill, the tops of dill. ana. M. j. annise, *careum*, comin and fennell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . or \mathfrak{z} . vj. of lawrell berries. \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . seede of rewe. \mathfrak{z} . ij. or iij. and make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium indi maioris* which we do not vse here. \mathfrak{z} . β . confection of lawrell berries. \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . red sugar. \mathfrak{z} . j. oyle of dill, cammomill and rewe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. make a clister. Into these clisters which put away ventosities, oyle of nuts is wholesome to put in, and also (as Galen saith) *vinum maluanicum cretense* may well be mixed with such a clister as is aforesaid. The signes of ventosities and winde contained in the bowels, be often farting and noise in the guttes, because it chaunceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as Galene teacheth *Particula 2. Aphorism. strangulati nondū mortui &c.*) be caused of aire shut and enclosed with the humour. Clisters to cease paines are made many wayes, for if the cause be a hore gnawing humour, the example is shewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a clister to auoyde humours; if the paine be of a cold cause, take the same that is given against ventositie last before; if the paine doe come of moe causes, make a clister of manie of those things, which are meete for the causes: and when the cause of the paine is not knowne, make it thus; \mathcal{R} . floures of cammomill, melilot, the toppes of dill, ana. pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the straining dissolue therein white sugar, because the red is byting and pricking. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . whites of egges. ij. oyle of dill and cammomill. ana. quar β . and make a clister. Or thus, \mathcal{R} . oyle of cammomill, dill and violets. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. cast it in with a clister, and when we want such oyle, we make it of quar. iij. or \mathfrak{f} . j. of oyle oliue. \mathcal{R} . milke foddren quar. iij. or \mathfrak{f} . j. *amylum siue amydam*, halfe a dramme, or a dramme at the most, gumme arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a litle burnt. ana. halfe a dramme, or a dramme, or two drammes, bole armoniacke, and *Sanguis draconis*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. oyle of roses and cammomill. ana. one ounce and a halfe: make

A clister to
drive away
ventosities.

A clister to
cease paines.

A clister
restraining.

A clyster profitable against a hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a clyster. *Rx.* the iuyces of plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, (that is) a kinde of plantaine, knotgrasse and purslaine: let these iuyces be cleansed either by seething or residence, take of all these, or of one of these as much as sufficeth for a clyster, adding of the powder aforesaid, and with those oyles make a clyster. Note, that when there is need, then you may make clysters of those herbes sodden, or of the waters distilled out of them, adding rose water, as: *Rx.* the water of *Arnoglossa*, of plantaine, of roses, of purslaine, of knotgrasse, as much as sufficeth, and dissolue some of the aforesaid things therein. It is to be noted that sometime there are put into the afore sayed decoctions, seedes and fruites that be stypticke to make hard, and to binde, so that they lacke sharpnesse, because else they would pricke, prouoke and expulse, therefore we can mixe together the seedes of mirre, sorrell, of purslaine, plantaine, cypresse, *cauda equina*, horse-taile, and such like. Moreouer, note, that oyle must neuer be put into clysters, if the bowels be vlcerate as they be in *Dysenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the bodie) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemy to vlcers, (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi*.) Truly wine is a speciall friend, the cream or curde of a hare or of a goate, in weight *℥. iij.* *Sorbus*, proynes, medlars, quinees. *ana. ℥. ij.* more or lesse do restraine and binde. *Rx.* of whole barley *p. ij.* of red roses and cammomill, and of plantaine if paine be present. *ana. p. j.* make a decoction. In the straining dissolue therein *Mel rosatum. ℥. j.* the white of one egge or two, make a clyster. Such a clyster is to be giuen alwayes befor clysters restraining, binding and consolidating, by meanes where of the thing is made prompt and easie. A clyster consolidating is made when the filthinesse of the bowels is not purged and tryed out, because that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clyster, but that prognostication is sufficient. *Rx.* of the iuyce of plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, and purslaine. *ana.* ounces three: of bole armoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum. ana.* dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme or one ounce and a halfe, and make a clyster. And because goates tallow cannot well dissolue, but almost alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the sick. Therefore it may be and ought to be dissolued with a litle oyle of roses, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Also ointments consolidating (as is *unguentum album*) sometime are made liquid and mixed, and specially, when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the steade of iuyces may clysters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which doth restraine and consolidate. Oftentimes both in these and in restraining clysters, the whites of egges hard sodden are dissolued. And thus finisheth the making and vse of clysters or Enema.

A clyster to scoure and cleanse vlcers in the guttes.

A clyster consolidating (that is) making solid of vlcers.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines, a iuyce with sugar or honie molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the measure of that sugar. Practitioners do put a double

double vnderstanding in sirupes, (that is) *simplex*, which is called vsuall, and *compositum*, which is called magistrall. Simples or vsualls be these, sirupes of violets, of roses, of endiue, of nenuphar, of mayden haire, of wormewood, of mynts, *Oximel squilliticum*, sirupe of eupatorie, of *Epithimum*, and of *byzantijs*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sicknesse and one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuerse medicines, being good for sundrie diseases, as in example: if any man compound together sirupe of wormewood and *stachados* being taken in euen portion or quantitie, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomach, because of the wormewood, and good for the head because of the *stachados*. A Sirupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vsed of many Physicians to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obserue it, but they did commit the digestion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment. *Aphorism. 9. Lib. 2.* when anie man will purge the bodie it behoueth to make it flowing. Truly *Hippocrates* would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed & moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, speaking of the cure of *Tertianæ Nothæ*, would not haue wormewood to be giuen till the seuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth, that sirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many do obserue and vse, that humours being grosse and clammy, and viscous, may by sirupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be prepareate and made easie to auoyding and purging, they call this digesting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are prepareate with sirupes that be hote, cutting and scouring, as to digest rheumie matter, such as is a feuer Quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging. R. the five rootes apperitiue, made cleane and tempered in vineger foure houres. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.$ ss. or $\mathfrak{z}.$ iiij. or the tyndes of the five roots, organ, calamint, hysope, betonic, and germander. ana. \mathcal{M} .ss. of annise and fennell. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.$ ss. of raysons the stones pulled out, $\mathfrak{z}.$ iiij. both the *stachados*. ana. p.j. make a decoction. In the straying, dissolue of good honie quartes. iij. of white sugar. $\mathfrak{z}.$ iiij. make a sirupe perfectly soddén. Minister three spoonfull with double as much of water of liquorice, or with prysan, or with water of raysons or annise. Humours that be moueable and thin, must be prepareate to the auoyding and purging by sirupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be caried to the wayes of expulsion, or be kept & contained in the wayes and conduites by which an apt and readie expulsion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if those humours be restrained and kept out of the places aforesayed, then they shall be rectified and remedied with colde sirupes, the making whereof doth followe.

*A sirupe dig-
esting of rheumy
matter.*

*A sirupe a-
gainst thinne
and moueable
humours.*

*A sirupe to
make humours
grosse and
thicke.*

R. sirupes of purcelaine, sorrell, endiue, nenupharis, of rybes, of barberries, of *agresta*, of quinces, of roses, take of one of these or mo. $\mathfrak{z}.$ vj. minister it with double as much of well water soddén: there may also conueniently be made a iulep in this wise. R. sirupes of roses, purslaine and sorrell. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.$ j. ss. or

Note.

.ij. water of roses; *Arnoglossa*, succorie or endiue, or purslaine; or sorrell, ana. .ij. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be present. ℞. .vj. make a iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℞. .ij. of cinamon elect. Furthermore if those humeurs do not make and cause fluxe of the bellie, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither syrups stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold syrups lacking stipticitie, as be syrups of endiue, purslaine, violets, of *nymphaea* called water lillies, of maidenhaire. But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse colde sharpe syrups, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold. Also *oxisaccharum simplex*, and *Syrupus de acetositate citri*, and of lymons, which if the fluxe *diarhea* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then syrups that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and slay, but syrups of ribes, barberries, quinces, and iuyce of sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpnesse and acetositie. But against hote humours, make potions or syrups magistral in this wise. ℞. Endiue that is young, or new set, and not growen long, wash it nor, *adiantum*, maidenhaire, succorie, purslaine, lettuce, singreen, scarioll, plantaine, of all, or of some of them two or three, ana. M. .ij. the foure great cold feedes. ana. ℞. .iij. the roote of succorie, the roote of sorrell, of gramen and nightshade (that is) the lesse morrell, called *Solatrum*, ana. halfe an ounce, or ℞. .iij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the straining dissolue sugar taberzet. ℞. .vj. of wine of pomegranates ℞. .j. β. of vineger. ℞. .β. make a syrupe clarified and aromatized with ℞. .ij. of white saunders, or red, or both. ana. ℞. .j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde to sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor as water sodden, water of liquorace, or the water of some of the herbes afore said distilled, yet I do not much praise and allow the vse of distilled waters. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuyces be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of syrups, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, sirupe of fumitorie, which is made two waies: one way is of the only decoction or iuyce of fumitorie, and then it is *Sirupus defumitterre simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesua*, and such a sirupe hath mirabolanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound, for that cause, sirupe of buglosse, sirupe of borage, sirupe of harts-tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of violets, because it moisteneth verie much.

A sirupe for
melancholy
humors.

The simple medicines wherewith these syrups are compounded be these: Borage and buglosse, fumitorie, *Lupulus*, *Epithimum* and such like, that do helpe and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the afore said things may be made syrups, potions, and iuleps, decoct and boyled to the satisfying of these intentions

intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of matter that is rheumie and filthie, and also melancholike matter, when long continuing diseases be bred of them, partly to the digestion of raw matter or humors, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humors, which be rotten or halfe rotten, as is in long feuers.

R^x. the roote of *Apium*, fennell and percelly scraped and made cleane. ana. *A sirupe laxatiue against reumie matters and feuers Neph.*
 ʒ. iij. of hysope, origan and calamint. ana. M. ʒ. of seede of *Carthamum*. ʒ. iij. greene polipodie of the oke. ʒ. ij. of annise, fennell, and dill. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. of liquorice scraped. ʒ. iij. of raisons, the stones pulled out. ʒ. ʒ. of the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction strained to ʒ. j. or ʒ. j. ʒ. in the which infuse new trochiskes of agaricke. ʒ. j. ʒ. leaues of seane clenfed. ʒ. ij. after ten houres make a straining, wringing it strongly, whereto adde sirupe of violets, *Syrupi de Bizantijs*, and white sugar. ana. ʒ. iij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden and aromizate with ʒ. j. of cinnamon elect, and with one sirupe. ʒ. j. *Chilocaloes*. The drosse of this sirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ʒ. j. ʒ. which also the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromell (that is) water and honie sodden together, or *aqua muisa*, or of some other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this present sirupe be encreased or diminished by reason of the quantitie making of the sirupe, for this present sirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or mo doses, therefore the forme & fashion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or mo doses. Moreouer by like reason, a sirupe laxatiue is made: for matter cholericke and filthie (as one would say) vitelline, the which causeth feuers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

R^x. the roots of *Apium*, and offennell clenfed and scraped and tempered in vineger one nights space. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of hysope, mayden haire, *Adiantum*, *Politricum*, some call it wall-ferne, harts-tongue, endiue, succorie. ana. M. ʒ. or M. j. filthie cholerik matter.
 the 4. great cold seedes brused. ana. ʒ. ij. or ʒ. iij. Raisons the stones pulled out. ʒ. ʒ. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction in the which infuse agaricke newly made in trochiskes. ʒ. vj. the leaues of seane made cleane ʒ. j. in the straining dissolue sirupe of maydenhaire and violets. ana. ʒ. iij. of white sugar. ʒ. iij. make a sirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the straining of it. ʒ. ʒ. of rewbarbe elect infused as it ought to be, which thing after it be strained, let it boyle on a soft fire without flame or smoke vnto the perfection of the decoction: the dose of it is. ʒ. ij. or ʒ. j. ʒ. with double as much of the decoction of endiue, and succorie, or liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of goates milke. This sirupe is for fiue or sixe doses. And if the first dose will not satisfie your intent, then you must dissolue somewhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldest haue brought out: as in example. R^x. of the sirupes aforesaid. ʒ. j. ʒ. of whey made of goates milke. ʒ. iij. make a dose. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *casia fistula*. ʒ. ʒ. or of *diapruni laxatiue*. ʒ. j. or ʒ. ij. or *diaplenicon*. ʒ. j. ʒ. or also some rewbarbe. You may also do the same in the example of the sirupe made to auoid rheume.

R^x. of the iuyces of *tupuli* (that is) hops, and of fumitorie, but it is vnpleasant, *A sirupe against melan-*
 of buglosse, of borage, and of sweet apples clenfed. ana. ʒ. ij. or iij. let them be abolie.

twise clesed eyther by decoction and clarifying, or by residence of greene polipodie of the oke ℥.ij. or. ℥.iiij. of fat Tamarindes ℥.j. *Epithimum Cretensis* put in the ende of the decoction. ℥.ij. of *adiantum*, harts-tongue and the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction strayned to quarts. iij. in the which infuse the leaues of sene made cleane. ℥.iiij. make a straying, and mixe it with the asoresayd iuyces: afterward adde therto, syrupe of violets. ℥. vj. syrups of buglosse, and sugar taberzer. ana. ℥. iiij. make a syrupe perfectly sodden, and aromatizate with ℥.j. of cinnamon, and. ℥.j. of white ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of buglosse, or hoppes, or fumitorie, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making syrups.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

AIULEP doeth not much differ from a syrupe, but that it is lesse boyled then a syrupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as syrups are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuyce of some simple medicine, as thus. R. of the water of infusion of roses, or the water of infusion of violets. ℥. v. suger. ℥. iiij. boyle it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus, R. water of roses ℥. viij. of suger. ℥. iiij. boyle them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus: R. the iuyce of roses, or the iuyce of violets. ℥. vi. suger. ℥. iiij. boyle them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things, that do either make warme or hore, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and binde. But yet Physitions commonly doe call a syrupe, dissolued in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, R. syrupe of roses, or the syrupe of violets, or syrupe of mayden haire, or of any other syrupe. ℥. iij. of sodden water. ℥. ss. mixe them together, and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dosis, sine Potio.

DOLIS, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue dissolued in some kinde of liquor and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voyde and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring foorth rheume or flewme, as be these, Agaricke, Turbyth, *Carthamus*, *colocyntidis*, and other often sought out by *Mesua*. The compounds be *Diaphemcon*, in forma opiate, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera composita*, and such like. But these be compounded, not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humour, as choler mixt with flewme or melancholie. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions. As first in the forme of a Potio, for one onely Dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof shall be spoken hereafter, in the forme of an electuarie liquide, as opiate, whole in forme, as lozenges

zenges, in the forme of Syrupes or Iuleppes. Also in the forme of powder and pilles. *Rx.* diaphanicon. \mathfrak{z} . β . or. \mathfrak{z} . vj if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with water of the decoction of liquorice, raysons and annise, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with syrupe of violettes. \mathfrak{z} . vj . or \mathfrak{z} . ij . or dissolue it with common straying, and make a dose, or dissolue it with hydromell, or dissolue it with certaine distilled waters, as waters of hoppes, Buglosse, succorie, or such like, or dissolue it with the decoction or broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: *Rx.* the three cordiall flowres .ana. one handfull, of proynes damascene, *Inubarum* and *Sebesten* .ana. foure in number, liquorice scraped \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . anise \mathfrak{z} . ij . make a decoction strayned for one dose: in the which dissolue *Diaphanicon*. \mathfrak{z} . β . or. \mathfrak{z} . vj . syrupe of violettes \mathfrak{z} . ij . and make a dose. If you will adde to it another electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantitie away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is layde, take of *Diaphenicon* drammes . vj . you may say, take of *Diaphenicon* and *Carthamum* .ana. three drammes and so likewise of other.

The forme of a
potion.

Rx. Raysons the stones pulled out. \mathfrak{z} . β . seede of *Carthamum* and polypodie of the oke .ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . or. \mathfrak{z} . vj . of annise, fennell, and liquorice scraped .ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . leaues of hyslope, \mathfrak{z} . ij . make a decoction, in the which infuse Agaricke newly trochiscate \mathfrak{z} . ij . or. \mathfrak{z} . iiij . or. \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . In the straying dissolue *Diacarthamum*, or *diaphenicon*, or *Benedicta* . \mathfrak{z} . iiij . or \mathfrak{z} . β . syrupe of violettes. \mathfrak{z} . ij . and make a dose. These things auoide choler: iuyce of roses, violets, Tamarindes, manna, *diagredion*, (that is, scammonie preparate, *Psilium*, reubarbe and myrabolanes. *Casia fistula* purgeth as well choler as rheume, iuyce of roses and Ireos do bring forth thinne choler and yeallow water. Compounds to auoide choler are these, *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, *diaprunis laxatum*, *diaprunis simplex*, trochiskes of violets which be seldome in vse.

The forme of a
potion or dose,
whose decoction
doth auoide cer-
taine rheume
and steume.
Simples to a-
uoide choler.

Compounds.

Rx. of fat Tamarinds \mathfrak{z} . ij . the three cordiall flowres .ana. p . β . liquorice scraped. \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . of prunes damascene, number. vj . make a decoction in a litle quantitie of water, in the which let the Tamarindes be strongly wrung out. In the straying dissolue *Casia fistula* that is new. \mathfrak{z} . ij . or. \mathfrak{z} . x . make a dose. In the like decoction you may dissolue. \mathfrak{z} . β . or. \mathfrak{z} . vj . of *diaprunis simplex* with \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . or \mathfrak{z} . ij . of *diaprunis laxatiue*. If it be feared that *diagredion* will do hurt, and if the sicke be rich, in the stead of *Diaprunis laxatiue* may be dissolved. \mathfrak{z} . ij . or. \mathfrak{z} . iiij . or \mathfrak{z} . ij . β . of reubarbe. Take heed and note, that such a potion is good in cholericke feuers, and in those feuers, in which the frensie is feared, and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eschued the auersion, and also the refrigeration and cooling. In the stead of this present decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be dissolved in a common decoction, or with water of fruites, or with hydromell, or with waters distilled, either with endiue, succorie, hoppes, or with the broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke. *Rx.* raysons the stones picked out. \mathfrak{z} . iiij . liquorice scraped, and annise seeds .ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij . proynes damascene. number. vj . Tamarindes. \mathfrak{z} . β . the three cordiall flowres, succorie, young set endiue .ana. M . ij . make a decoction boiled for one dose, in the which dissolue new *Casia fistula*. \mathfrak{z} . ij . or. \mathfrak{z} . vj . after the straying, infuse \mathfrak{z} . ij . or. \mathfrak{z} . iiij . or \mathfrak{z} . ij . of reubarbe electas it ought to be, of syrupe of violets. \mathfrak{z} . β . or \mathfrak{z} . ij . make a dose. Giue in the morning before dinner \mathfrak{s} . or 6. houres, on that day he is lest

The forme of a
potion lording
and resolving
choler.

The forme of a
common dose
in the begin-
ning of chole-
ricke feuers
especially in
tertian feuers.

A dose vnder
the forme of a
sirupe for deli-
cate folke.

afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleume, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do loosen choler, and such things as dissolve rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with reubarbe, is vnpleasant to the bellie, for it loosneth oppilations and stopping vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child, it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with rubarbe in medicines, that are given to women with childe, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed 3. or 4. graines are sufficient for. 3. j. of rubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, specially for Tertians exquisite and deintie. R^e. endiue young set, and succory. ana. M. ss. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. ss. liquorice scraped. 3. j. ss. proynes damascene vj. in number, fat Tamarindes. 3. 6. annise. 3. ss. make a decoction boyled to. 3. iij. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolve sirupe of violets, and endiue. ana. 3. vj. or 3. ss. of white sugar 3. j. the wringing and strayingning of 3. ij. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apothema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes.) Let it be boyled vpon the coles without any smoke long time together, wringing the rubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatize it, and make a dose of. 3. j. ss. it may be multiplied for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will make a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister. 3. j. ss. or 3. ij. with whey of milk, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some Scene in the infusion, specially if you thinke choler aduult doth raigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine. R^e. of young set endiue, of succorie, of *Adiantum*, and of harts-tongue. ana. M. j. the foure great cold seeds. ana. 3. iij. the seed of *Carthamus*. 3. j. ss. polipodie of the oke. 3. ij. fat Tamarindes. 3. j. ss. seede of endiue, scarioll, and liquorice scraped. ana. 3. ij. of raisons the stones plucked out. 3. ij. proynes damascene. 12. in number, the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. make a decoction of. ss. j. or 3. viij. in the which infuse the leaues of scene cleaned. 3. j. ss. agaricke newly trochischate. 3. j. In the straining of the decoction dissolve sirupe of violets, and maydenhaire sirupe. ana. 3. iij. white sugar. 3. ij. make a sirupe boyled vpon a leate fire, without smoke, putting into it the strayingning of. 3. vj. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be, make a sirupe perfectly boyled and aromatize with. 3. ss. of cinamon, and 3. ij. of red saunders, reserue it in an earthen or glassen vessell. The dose of the aforesaid sirupe shall be the fourth part of it (that is to say. 3. ij.) the which may be dissolved with whey of goates milke, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctions of distillations of succory or endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow distilled waters. And if the aforesaid dose do not sufficiently moue the bellie and cause it to be soluble enough: an infusion may conueniently be added to the second dose. 3. ij. or. 3. j. of rubarbe elect, or some *Diapruni laxative*, or *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, as in example. R^e. of the aforesaid sirupe. 3. ij. the strayingning of two scruples of rubarbe elect, or *Diapruni laxative*. 3. j. ss. or 3. ij. of

A dose against
bastardly fe-
uers, especially
Tertians.

℥ ij. of whey made of milke. ℥. ij. or as much as is sufficient, and make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministered to those that haue *Tertian* Nothe (that is bastardly Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feuers exquisite daintie, and lawfull, for these be of fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feuers Nothe and bastardly do come of filthie and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge reume, the leaues of *Scene* which do purge melancholie, and also *rewbarbe*, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feuers Nothe of long continuance is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more dayes must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicē de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholie: *Hoppes*, *fumitorie*, *Epithimum Cretense*, *polipodie* of the oke, the leaues of *scene*, *lapis lazuli*, *myrabolan* nigri or Indi, *lapis armenius*, blacke hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesusa*. The compounds that do purge melancholie be, *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *diasene*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Rusi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *pillule de fumitoria*, *pillules of lapis lazulus*, *pillules of the five kinds of myrabolanes*, of *Epithimum*, of hellebore pillules, whereof the dose is ℥. j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: all electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, & therefore they are confect and made in forme of potions. R. *fumitorie*, and the tops of hops. ana. *M. j. β.* the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. of raisons, the stones picked out. ℥. iij. or ℥. β. of greene *polipodie* of the oke. ℥. iij. of *cuscuta*, & *Epithimum*. ana. ℥. iij. of anise & liquorise scraped. ana. ℥. j. β. make a decoction, in which infuse the leaues of *Scene* made cleane. ℥. ij. or ℥. iij. In the straying of the decoction, dissolve *diacatholicon*. ℥. j. or ℥. x. sirupe of violets. ℥. j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the drynesse of *Scene* and *Epithimum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie, we do put in *hierapicra rusi*, whose dose is ℥. β. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris. Or else take *confectio hamech*. ℥. β. the which is exceeding bitter, for the plentie of *colequintida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines loosening and purging choler, or rather melancholie, may conueniently be dissolved with the whey of goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written as in example: R. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesayed, afterward make a decoction in the whey of goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of *Scene*, &c. And with some of the aforesaid electuaries confect and make a dose, according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. R. the leaues of *Scene* made cleane. ℥. iij. infuse them in the whey of goates milke all one night, and in the straying of the decoction dissolve *Catholicon*. ℥. j. or ℥. x. or ℥. i. β. and make a potion. Note that *Epithimum* doeth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus. R. *Epithimum cretense*. ℥. j.

Simples to
purge the melancholic
lunmour.

The forme of a
dose against
melancholie.

The decoction
of an old cocke.

let it boyle with whey of goates milke, afterward straine it, and wring it out strongly, and with ℥.j. of syrupe of violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, adde to it some *catholicon*. Galene doth counsell to take this portion, *lib. 13. Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that cankers, and all melancholicke diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, & to be eschued: but he puttech in but ℥.iiij. which drammes do shew to be of none effect, because (as I thinke) we haue not the good *spithium*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantitie, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All authours do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is commonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Manie do thinke and iudge, that the decoction of an old cocke is verie good & wholesome for diseases growen and begun, as well of melancholie, as also of reume and scume. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholicke, caused of reume, and partly of wind, and also against diseases of the breast, as difficultie in breathing, and moreouer against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of reume, and partly of ventositie and winde. It is thus, as followeth. R^x. of hysope, calamint, ana. M. j. raisins the stones picked out. ℥.j. ℞. of anise, fenell, and carui. ana. ℥.vj. of the seed of *carthaimum*. ℥.ij. of Greene polipodie of the oke. ℥.j. ℞. the three cordiall flowers. ana. p. j. of the flowers of cammomill. p. ℞. and make a decoction, putting all together into the bellie of an old cocke prepareate as it ought to be, infuse in the ende of the decoction, the leaues of *denma* made cleane. ℥.ij. ℞. of agaricke newly trochiscate. ℥.x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserve it to your vse. R^x. of the aforesaid decoction. ℥.iiij. syrupe of violets. ℥.j. ℞. make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and stubborn, there may be put in the dissolving some *diaphenicon*, as ℥.j. ℞. or ℥.ij. or as much *benedicta*. Take heede also: for agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtful to those that haue the cholicke: because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clyster, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricketh them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long on the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre partes of the bodie, and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witnesse) called it *Medicinam familie*, the medicine of his familie or household. Therefore it may not well be giuen to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe, that would not be except that caused it, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away agaricke. Furthermore note, that cammomill may aptly and well be put into these decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seene among Physitions, yet it is manifest, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a chicken or capon, is excellent profitable against all inward griefes, and specially for those which haue the cholicke and the frensie, (as manie haue proued it, to the great preservation of their health.) The water of the distillation of cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more & better effect then the distillation of it. The bitterness of the decoction may be mitigated with su-

gar,

gar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a cocke may conueniently bee giuen for diseases in the breast and of *dispuras*, if medicines peccatorall be decoct with it: as, *R.* of hyslope, of *Enula campana*, of each, the third part of a handfull, of Sauorie the fourth part of a handfull, horschoofe, called *ungula caballina*, which is an herbe called of some, little clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; seede of *Carthamum*, and greene polipodie of the oke. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of anise and liquorice scraped. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . rootes of ireos, and rootes of *Enula*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . of fat figges not putrified foure or fixe in number, of fat dates, the skinnes and filmes taken away, foure in number, of luybes and sebesten. ana. twelue in number, of raisins the stones picked out. \mathfrak{z} . j. the three cordiall flowers, ana. p. j. make a decoction in the bellie of an old cocke, that is hunted, preparate and dressed as it ought to be, putting into it at the ende, of Agaricke and of the leaues of senna, as much as you thinke will bee sufficient for your purpose: but note, that here agaricke may conueniently be vsed and ministred. There are other medicines also which be made against all superfluities in other formes (that is to say) in the forme of liquide electuaries: that is, *ad formam opiate*: or in forme whole, that is, like an electuarie made in lozenges or tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in English is called a morsell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and fashion it is meanelly whole, and it is swallowed by little gobbers. It is made of diuerse things, by reason of auoyding and purging diuers humours: but the plainest and simplest way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Cassia fistula*, newe drawne out of a fat cane or reede, fixe drammes or an ounce, of sugar so much as sufficeth: and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Cassia* will doe hurt, as if great paine be in the bowelles, whereby manie times is prouoked swounding, as some do that haue but weake and tender bowelles: to such *Cassia* is not to be ministred, neither by bole nor by clysters. And for that cause the sicke person must be asked howe he feeleth him selfe before *Cassia* be ministred vnto him. Truly manie authours doe thinke that this hurt which *Cassia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it some graines of barberies, or sugar roset: for they are of this minde, that through their stipiticitie the bellie and the bowelles are strengthened, and the paine impeded and letted, which *Cassia* doeth cause by his clamminesse and mollifying softnesse. There be others that do mixe some laxatiue with *Cassia*, that it may quicken the slownesse of his operation, and that it descending may the sooner slide away and be auoyded. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being verie profitable remedies against the diseases of the reynes. *R.* *medulla cassie fistule* newly drawne \mathfrak{z} . j. or \mathfrak{z} . x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of barberies, \mathfrak{z} . β . and with sugar roset make a bole. Other do adde \mathfrak{z} . iij. or \mathfrak{z} . ii. or \mathfrak{z} . ii. of *diaprunis laxatiue*, or *electuarium de succo rosarum*, as in example following. *R.* *medulla cassie fistule* newly drawne. \mathfrak{z} . vi. of *diaprunis laxatiue*. \mathfrak{z} . ii. of sugar roset

The forme of a
bole purging
choler.

The forme of a
bole against
melancholie.

tabulare as much as sufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, because of the ventositie which casia doeth ingender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of anise. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ which auaieth much. *R. casie fistule* newly drawn out of a fat cane or reede $\mathfrak{z} . iij .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ the soft matter of fat *Tamarindes*. $\mathfrak{z} . j . \beta .$ of chosen reubarbe. $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ sugar as much as suffiseth, make a bole. If the sicke person be poore, in steed of reubarbe, make a bole with $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . vj .$ of casia, and $\mathfrak{z} . ij .$ of *diapruni laxative*, and with sugar. *R. catholicon*. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . x .$ and with white sugar make a bole: or thus, *R. catholicon*. $\mathfrak{z} . \beta .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . vi .$ of *confectio Hamech*. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . j . \beta .$ and with sugar make a bole.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pilles.

PILLES are ministred for the auoyding of euerie humour: vidz. against reume or fleume raigning, and also against *Cholera Notha*, which is vile and filthie choler hauing dominion in man. *Pillule aggregatiue* after the description of Mesua, de *agarico*, de *rhubarbaro stomachice*, de *hiera simplici*, de *hiera composta*, which respecteth the head. *Coccia* or *cocchie*, which is so called of *granis coci*, and not of the head, as some thinke. *Pillule auree*, *Elephantine*, *sine quibus*, de *Hermodactilis maior* & *minor*, de *Serapina*, de *Sarcocolla*. Truly the foure kinds of pilles last recited, are most appropriate and agreeing against corrupt and stinking humors: of the which vertue also be *Arthretica maiores* & *minores* when reume raigneth, but these when choler raigneth in the diseases of the ioynts: then also the pilles of *Hermodactilis maior* and *minor* are dedicated & ministred. Pilles that do onely voyd pure choler and purge it, there are a thousand to be found, but many of them haue more respect to the auoyding of filthie and bastardly choler, or that which is greatly mixt with reume: as, *Pillule de Rhubarbaro*, de *Hiera simplici*, *Aggregatiue*, de *Agarico*, *Ante cibum*, *Imperiales*. In a manner the chiefe dose of pilles is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pilles, and with some conuenient syrupe, as syrupe of Endiue, syrupe of maidenhaire, syrupe of stachados, or also with *Oximel* or *Hydromel*, or with some other licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digestion of humours, or for preparation of them, and sometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerse, and for diuerse intents and purposes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moist, and to make drie, to loosen and open, to restraine and binde, to attenuate and make thinne, to make grosse and thicke, to prouoke menstruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fructs, seeds, (and other, as it shall seeme meete and expedient for your purpose.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a syrupe, but in boyling: for syrups are wont to be boyled long, and

and to the perfection, but an *ApoZema* is boyled easily and litle. Therefore syrups may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. *R.* of *Succorie*, *endiue*, *Cuscuta* and *Adiantum*. ana. *M.* of the roots of *sorrell*, and of *gramen*. ana. *℥.℥.* the foure great cold seeds made cleane. ana. *℥.j.* of the three cordiall flowers. ana. *p.j.* make a decoction of *℥℥.℥.* In the straying dissolue syrupe of violets, or *Syrupus acerosus*, or syrupe of limmons, or also white sugar. *℥.iiij.* and make an *ApoZema*, clarifie it, and aromatizate it with *℥.ij.* or *℥.j.* of cinnamon elect for two doses. Likewise *ApoZema* may be made against other humors, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the syrups. Note that in the confection and making of *ApoZema*: for *℥.ij.* or at the most for *℥.iiij.* of the decoction it is sufficient to adde *℥.j.* of sugar or syrupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be syrups laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Look in the title of syrups for the example, for they be like them, (this onely excepted, as we said before) that an *ApoZema* after the dissolving of the sugar or syrupe in it, ought not to be boyled any longer.

The forme of
an ApoZeme
against chole-
ricke humors.

CHAP. XI

Of making *Mulso*.

MULSO is made of seeds cleansed or off fruites, or of both sometime to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lounge, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria* (that is) retention and withholding of vrine, and for the stranguerie, (that is) the voiding of humours by causing the vrine to issue out by dropes with burning in the yard. *R.* of the foure great cold seeds & new cleane. ana. *℥.iiij.* or *℥.℥.* of sweet almonds blanchd in cold water. *℥.j.* beate all together in a stone mortar with well water first sodden, and make a decoction of *℥℥.j.* and reserue it and keepe it in a glassen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulso* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the stranguerie; if *℥.iiij.* or *vj.* be giuen in the morning three or foure houres before dinner, and two or three houres before supper, the same quantitie of the premisses; or a litle lesse with one Lozenge of *Diarragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesayd seedes, and gummes, and many other things. But if in the aforesayd cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling: mixe with your *Mulso* the seedes of purcelaine, of lettuce, and of white poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde to new pine apples, sweete almonds, and fresh figges that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diarrhæ simplicis*, or *Uris Solomonis*, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulso*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantitie of Sugar, or some syrupe apt and meet for the purpose: (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt blood in the vrine of man:) as thus: *R.* the seed of white poppie and the foure great cold seedes, or sweete almonds ana. *℥.℥.* stampe all these in a mortar with as much water of the decoction of liquorice as sufficeth. In the straying dissolue of syrupe of violets, of maydan harts, and of mirtles, ana. *℥.j.*

The forme of
Mulso.

make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieved person take it in the morning
four hours before dinner.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

*A powder to
helpe digestion.*

A POWDER is made of seedes, rootes and minerals powdered and beaten finely, and sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stoppe and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine; or else for both causes as it often chanceth. *R.* the seedes of annise, and fennell. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. the seede of cittron, cinnamon, liquidice, and roses. ana. one scruple, of chosen pearles and the scraping of yuorie. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonfull: and looke what powder is so made to stoppe and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion: as is this that followeth. *R.* Coriander preparate. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . the scraping of yuorie, red corall, the horne of a Hart burned. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. of cinnamon. \mathfrak{z} . β . of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the bellie, and for strength, and against the plague comming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feuers, and in great imbecillitie and weakenesse of strength. *R.* the scraping of an vnicornes horne grained foure, fiue, or sixe; the scraping of yuorie, of chosen pearles, and of Harts horne. ana. grained sixe, seede of cittron, and *Carduus Benedictus*. ana. gr. 4., and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquour, as with white wine, distillation restorative, water of Scabious, of Buglosse, or of some other such like. And such powders for the most parte are ministred about mid-night, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue (as is) *Diascenc*, and *Diaturbith*, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacanthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much sugar, and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a chicken, or of liquorice or of ptyfan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practicioners.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: Of Lozenges, and Mannus Christi.

AN Electuarie is ordained and made two wayes, (that is) either liquide, as in *Forma opiata*, or whole as in tables or lozenges, or in fashion four square, and long which they call *mannus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to cor-
robore.

roborate and strengthen, and for that cause they be called *Tonica*, as affording strength to the members (that is to say) they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomack. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholsome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them verie well in a manner at all houres. But if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide electuarie which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse & moistnesse. *Rx.* of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which Gabriel describeth) \mathfrak{z} .ij. powder of *Electuarium Aromaticum Diacalaminthi*. \mathfrak{z} .j. of Diatrion piperon. \mathfrak{z} .ij. of *Conserua Anthos* (that is) of flowres of rosemarie, and of Roses, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of sugar taberzet \mathfrak{z} .j. β . of syrupe of mintes as much as sufficeth & make a liquide electuarie in *Forma Opiate*, and minister it before dinner or breakfast an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the dose is. \mathfrak{z} . β . or rather \mathfrak{z} .ij. *Electuarium Aromaticum Rosatum*, being ministred fasting taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being ministred after meate, it strengtheneth the vertue digestiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or fashioned like *Manus Christi*, against hote distemper of the liuer, and against obstructions of the same, as thus, *Rx.* of the powder of *Tria Sandalorum*. \mathfrak{z} .ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatie*. \mathfrak{z} .j. of Conserues of succorie and roses. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . of sugar taberzet or white sugar dissolued in water of succorie, or endiue, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges of the weight of \mathfrak{z} .ij. or \mathfrak{z} .ij. β . or \mathfrak{z} .ij. minister one before meate. Many times conserues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euerie draghme of powder, to put to. \mathfrak{z} .j. of sugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more strong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for \mathfrak{z} .j. of sugar. If the stomach be troubled with the presence of Melancholie abounding & flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplieth it, or by diseases of the spleene, as be stoppings which hinder the receipt therof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *Forma Opiate* with things following, as in example. *Rx.* of the powder of *Electuarium laticians Galeni*. \mathfrak{z} .ij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*. \mathfrak{z} .j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemma*, or *Dirmuschi dulcis*, or *Diambre* may be put in, seeing that they haue the same vertue: of conserues of buglosse, and Borage, and Violets. ana. \mathfrak{z} .j. β . the barke of Cirron. seasoned \mathfrak{z} .j. of as much white sugar dissolued in water of Buglosse or Borage as sufficeth: make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or in litle gobbets, or like *Manus Christi*: in weight \mathfrak{z} .ij. or \mathfrak{z} . β . And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuarie, put to it twise or thrise as much more of the conserues, and some powder of white sugar, or sugar rosate (that is to say). \mathfrak{z} .ij. as is shewed in the example aforesaid, with some syrupe hauing respect to the melancholike humor (as is) syrupe

*An Electuarie
strengthening
the naturall
vertue.*

*An Electuarie
against hote
distempere of
the liuer.*

*An Electuarie
against Melan-
cholie.*

of Buglosse, of Borage, of roses, of Hartes-tongue, of *Epithimum*, of Fumitorie, of which adde to as much as sufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An electuarie for the strong stopping of the liuer or the spleene, wherein there is danger of the dropie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, (that is) a spice of consumption: such an Electuarie (I say) is made of the powders of the Electuaries *Digalange*, *Dianum*, *Diaparru*, *Dialace*, and of conserues, which if you will commixe together, conserues of suctorie may conveniently be mixed with them. Note also that electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder of Trochiskes, having respect to the disease, as in a hote cause take Trochiskes *Diatribidon*, Trochiskes of *Carolin*, Trochiskes of *Bol armoniacke*, of *Terra sigillata* (specially if we would restraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would stop the fluxe of blood: But if we would open or loosen the obstructions of the liuer or spleene, we must bring this to passe with Trochiskes of *rewbarbe*, or of *Capparu*. Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambre*, *Diamusci dulcis*, *Electuarium de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muscatum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *major Gabrielis*, *Latificans Galeni* or *Rasis*, *Electuarium Consolitoris*, of *Alkermes* confection and making. Conserues for the same intent be these: Conserues of Roses, Buglosse, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, ginger condite, oranges condite, and other of that sort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and labourereth of heate, take the Electuarie *Rosata nouella*, *Electuarium tritum Sandalbrum*, and *Diatribodon abbatu*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vse them often. These be the Conserues that be good, Conserues of Roses, of Violets, of Buglosse, and of borage, and also of *Nimphae* or *Nemphar* (that is) water lillies. If the cough be present, and if the humour contained in the breast be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cause it to auoid and come forth, minister *Diatragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammy and thicke, minister *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diatri simplex*, or *Diatri Salomonis*. And if there be suspicion of venomous substance, then with the powders of Electuaries colde or hote, which doe resist poyson, wee doe commixe traces, and muske, *Zedoaria*, saffron, Cinnamon, and *Xilotoos* in colde causes. But in hote causes there may conveniently be mixed pearles, corall, cristall, roses and *Camphora*. In causes mingled one with another either hote or colde, by a certaine propertie, these doe corroborate and strengthen, and defend, pearles, seede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Distamus*, the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, or if you will, weigh it .ij. or .3. *℞* as in this example following against a pestilentiall feauer. *℞* the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*. *℞* .ij. or white shining pearles elect and powdered in a marble morter. *℞* .ij. of *Camphora*. *℞* .ij. or else Trochiskes of *camphora*. *℞* .ij. or .3. the rootes of *Distamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barkes of Citron and .ij. of Conserues of Buglosse, Borage, *Nimphae*, and Roses, take of these, either one, two, or three, or all, to the quantitie of two or three dragmes: of white sugar dissolved in water of Roses, or of Buglosse, or Borage as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquide Electuarie in the forme aforesaid. *℞* the three kinds of saunders, and *Diatribodon*.

An electuarie
for the vertue
vitall.

An electuarie
against a pesti-
lent feuer.

Rhodon Abbatis. ana. ℥. j. the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, sugar ro-
sate tabulate, or white sugar dissolued in rose water as much as sufficeth, make
 an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure golde in weight ℥. ℔. Also there be
 made Electuaries laxatiue against all superfluities and diseases, that together
 with the purging we may also strengthen, as in example, against long diseases
 comming of rheume, or of some clammyish humour breeding the cough. R.
Cassia that is new. ℥. ij. ℔. *Diacarthami*. ℥. vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diarris simplex*. ana.
 ℥. ℔. of conseruues of violets. ℥. iij. of sweete anise powdred, and powder of
 liquorice. ana. ℥. ℔. syrupe of violets as much as sufficeth: make a liquide E-
 lectuarie, in *forma Opiata*. The dose is. ℥. j. or. ℥. x. or at the most. ℥. j. ℔. the
 which may be ministred an houre, or an houre and a halfe, swallowing it, or
 he may take it foure houres before dinner, because it may not conueniently be
 giuen a litle before meate, because of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagredi-*
um in it. Also you may dissolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in pryfan, or in a
 common pectorall decoction, and make a potion, and minister it foure or fve
 houres before meate. And this note, that you must appoint the wayes and
 meanes of the ministration of Physicke, according as you see the nature and
 condition of the sick person. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a
 powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be plea-
 sant in taste, the forme and fashon whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacar-*
thamum, and *Electuarium de Succo Rosarum*, after which fashon you may make
 other verie meete and seruing for your purpose.

An Electuarie
 for the verue
 animall, in a
 hot cause.

An Electuarie
 against disea-
 ses of the brests,
 and against
 the cough.

CHAP. XIII.

Of making *Conditum*, and *Conserua*.

CONDITION to be made as Electuaries be made, to strengthen the might and
 the primitive and worthiest members. They rather haue respect to the
 substance and matter of breathing, then to the beautie and soundnesse of the
 flesh. But forasmuch as the weakenesse of strength, causeth sores and diseases
 to grow in their instruments, therefore it is ministred to them that begin to
 recouer and waxe strong. R. *Conserua Anthos* (that is) of rosemarie, conserue of
 Borage, Buglosse, maidenhaire, and succorie. ana. ℥. ij. the barke of citron con-
 dited. ℥. j. ℔. the powder of *Electuarium plirisarcoticon*, the powder of *Electuarium*
ducis, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triasandali*. ana. ℥. ℔. the leaues of golde in num-
 ber vj. of white sugar as much as sufficeth, make a *Conditum*. Of the same
 powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *conditum*, as thus. R. the
 powder of *Electuarium plirisarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Du-*
cis, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triasandali*. ana. ℥. ij. conseruues of roses and succo-
 ric. ana. ℥. j. ℔. white sugar dissolued in rose water as much as sufficeth, make an
 Electuarie in lozenges or morsels like vnto *manus christi*, of the weight of. ℥. ij.
 In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to strengthen all kind
 of vertues: as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Ele-
 ctuaries and conseruues either hot or cold, hauing respect to the vertue, accord-
 ing as the owne distempure or the cause of it desireth: now there followeth

A conditum to
 strengthen all
 vertues and
 powers.

Hote Electuaries respecting the vertues vitall.
Cold Electuaries.
Condites respecting the vertue vitall.
Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.
Hot conserues.
Hote Electuaries for the vertue natural.
Hote conserues respecting the vertue natural.
Cold Electu.
Cold conserues.
A Conditum against the hot distemper of all kindes of veines.
Another for the same distemper.

these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: as *Electuarium humbre*, *Diamargariton calidum*, *Diamyscum amarum*, *Diamyscum dulce*, & *Gemmis*, letificans *Galen*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis* which be temperate, *Tria sandali*. Conserues respecting both the distempures (that is) hote and colde: as *Conserua Rosarum*, *Boraginis*, *Buglosse*, *Violarum*. Cold conserues, *Conserua Nymphae*, *Violarum*. Hote Conditas respecting the vertue vitall, as *cortex citri conditus*, which may be ministred in both causes, *confectio de cinamomo*, *confectio de Xiloaloe*, *confectio Alheruces*, which is common to the Physitions: of *Montispeffulari*, ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, and so of other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall be these: *Plirisarcoticon*, *dianthos*, *Diamyscum dulce* and *amarum*, *Mithridatum* and *Triacle*, which be opiate (that is) liquid. Hot conserues respecting the vertue animall be these, *conserua Anthos*, *Acori*, *Rosarum*, which is temperate, almost all Opiate (that is) liquid things, as *Mithridatum*, *Triacle*, and *aurea Alexandrina*. Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be these, *Diacalaminum*, *Diacuminum*, *Diatriopipereon*, *Aromaticum rosatum maioris* (which Gabriel describeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which is temperate, and necessarie in both causes, *Diatriu Salomonis*, or *simplex Dialacca*, and *Diacucurma*, the which are good against opilations in the liuer, and against the dropsie. Hote conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall, be these: *Conserua Eringiorum*, *conserua Satyrj*, *Zinziber conditum*, *cortex citri conditus*, meate of quinces condite, peares condite, and such like. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali*, *Diarragacanthum frigidum*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*. Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum*, *cichoree*, *Nymphae*, &c.

R. The powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum*. ℞.ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*. ana. ℞.ij. conserues of succorie, & violets. ana. ℞.j. β. white sugar dissolued in water of endiue, or succorie, or roses as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in lozenges in weight. ℞.ij. or. ℞.iij. or thus: R. conserues of succorie, of violets, of *Nymphae*, and of Buglosse. ana. ℞.ij. β. conserue of Roses. ℞.j. β. powder of *Tria sandali*, and of *Diamargariton frigidum*. ana. ℞.iij. the leaues of gold. vii.j. numb. white sugar as much as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one sluer spoonefull. Many in these condites, where there is suspicion of some venemous matter: as in pestilent feauers, or inswoinding, they do adde to the seed of citron, the seed of *Carduus Benedictus*, the roote of *Dictamnus* and *Tormentill*. And for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it) but onely the opinion of the common people: as in example, in the aforeseyd *conditum* take away some portion of the aforeseyd Electuaries (that is to say) the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. R. of the seed of *Carduus Benedictus*, of the seed of Citron, of the roote of *Dictamnus* and *Tormentill*. ana. ℞.j. or. ℞.β. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and condites, as in example: to stoppe the fluxe, take Trochiskes or *Diacorallus*, *Diarrhodon*, of *Terra sigillata*, of bole Armoniacke, and of *curabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the heare, take Trochiskes of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantitie, as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no sugar put into them.

CHAP. XV.

Of making *Pasta Regia* or *Maxapane*.

PASTA REGIA is a confection, so called by the Physicians of late time, which is specially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to drive away the causes of leanness: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being verie effectually against both the causes: (that is) the diseases of the breast and the lungs, and against leanness: as thus, *Rx.* sweete almonds blanched. *℥. iij.* of new pines cleansed, and tempered tenne houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula Campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose. *℥. ℔.* of *Pistacium*, (that is) a kind of nuttes, let them be new, cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesayed waters. *℥. j.* *Amylum*, *Diarragacanthum*, and of gumme Arabicke. *ana. ℥. ℔.* of the meate of dates, prunes damascene, and sebesten, and raisons, one or else more of these to the quantitie of one ounce, white sugar dissolued in well water, or in rose water, or in water of *Enula* as much as sufficeth, make a *Pasta Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer, or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great cold seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a *Lohoch* or *Ecligma*.

ALOHOCOR *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomach by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lungs, (as is) *Dyspnea*, *Apnea*, short and hard breathings, sighings, and coughes whether it commeth by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarrhes, and rhumes, which chance oftentimes.) *Rx.* *Electuarium Diarris Salomonis*, and *Diarris simplex. ana. ℥. vj.* *Lohoch de pino. ℥. j.* conserue of *Enula campana. ℥. ℔.* *Oxymel Scilliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a *Lohoch* and let the sicke vse it with a liquorice stick, licking or swallowing a litle at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment & increase the quantitie of the scouring receipts, and in stead of *Oxymel Scilliticum* put to syrupe of liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassum*, or of iuiubes, or else of hysope: many do thinke syrupe of hysope to be abstersiue, onely for the saying of *Auicenna*, which (*Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. *Lohoch Compositum*, *Lohoch de Pino*, *Lohoch de caulis sanum* and *expertum*, *Lohoch de Scilla*, these may conueniently be ministered by themselves. But when a feuer is present (as in the *Pleurisie*) then to auoide and bring out from the breast, the matieriall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a *Lohoch* after this sorte and fashion. *Rx.* of *Electuarium diarragacanthi frigidi. ℥. x.* new penidies, and white pilles. *ana. ℥. iij.* syrups of violets, or of iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a *Lohoch* and vse it with a liquorice stick, swallowing it by litle and litle. If the matter be partly flowe, and partly flowing, you shall make a *Lohoch* to correct both after this fashion. *Rx.* *Electuarium Diarris simplex. ℥. j.* *Diarragacanthum frigidum. ℥. vj.* new penidies, *℥. iij.* syrupe of iuiubes,

A Lohoch against rheume congeled together, clammy, hard & thicke.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

of Iulibes, or Hyslope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against defluxions and flowings of humours that be hore and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtiltie thereof may be made thicke and grosse, and the partes to the which the fluxe cometh being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any nocument or hurt (as in example). *Rx. Electuarium Diatrachacanthi frigidi. ℥j.* Bole armoniack washed in rose water. *℥ij.* Trochiskes of *Terra sigillata. ℥ij.* Syrupe of poppy as much as sufficeth and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatrachacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each alike quantitie. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in the which is put sonie opium may be added to them, if there be no cause that opium be suspected to do hurt. These Lohoches are given against the Pricke in the houre of sleepe, *Electuarium Diapaueris*, Lohoch of poppie. All the pilles of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Catarre and Rheume, may be mixed & giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making *Balneum*, and *Semicupium*.

BAINEVM is a baine: the vse whereof was common and often among olde practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall gowte, in the palsey and in consuming feuers. But against the gowt and the palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared with boyling together in water, herbes, rootes, seedes, flowres, and also many mettalles, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Incessum*, is a particular Bath, which is applyed for paines of the nefresie, for the cholicke, and for the Iliacke; so that they come not by reason of an impostume: It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distempere of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the bodie enlarged and made soft and plyant, and also to cease the paine, as thus. *Rx.* the rootes of *Althea. ℥.iiij.* the leaues of *malua, Bismalua*, and *Parietarie*, the flowres of cammomill and melilote, the toppes of dill. ana. *M. ij.* of origan, calamint, betonic & sothernwood. ana. *M. j.* seedes of flaxe and fennell. ana. *℥. ij.* of leane bran. p. *iiij.* boile all these in a bag in sufficient water, for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one that hath the Nefresie may enter a Bathe before he hath receiued a Clyster. If the paine of the cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue neede of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse with incision and cutting, make a *Semicupium* thus. *Rx.* origan, calamint, toppes of dill, and of cammomill. ana. *M. iiij.* fenugrecke, carawayes, anise and fennell. ana. *℥. ij.* laurell berries. *℥. ss.* And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforesayed griefes

The forme of
Semicupium.

Alina Semicupium.

griefes, you may adde to such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any neede of mollifying and making soft, the leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, *Parietarie*, and violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessarie to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the bodie, adde to, of the roote of spinach, *Bruscus* and *Apium*, knit them in a litle bagge and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Incessus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as *Mugwort*, *Sauien*, *Horehound*, *Nex*, *Cypresse* and *luniper berries*, of all these there may be put in two handfulls.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Epithema or Fetus.

EPI^TH^EM^A is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it: and *Fetus* is a medicine norishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hot distemper of the liuer, the making wherof is this as ensueth. R^e the waters of endiue, succorie, roses, & petymorrell and nightshade. ana. ʒ. iij. of vinegar. ʒ. j. the powder of *Electuarium triasandali*. ʒ. ij. or ʒ. j. ʒ. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or wollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and layd against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbs, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. R^e succorie, both the roote and the herbe, young set endiue, agrimonie (which is) eupatorie. ana. M. j. flowres of succorie. p. j. the foure great cold seeds, and litle cold seed. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of cypresse ʒ. ij. of lupines. ʒ. iij. all the saunders. ana. ʒ. j. of squinant. ʒ. ʒ. the toppes of wormewood. M. ʒ. make a litle bagge, and boyle it in foure parts of water, and one of wine, and a litle vinegar, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessel, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesayd, such an Epitheme is verie good for diseases depending vpon opilation or stopping, and misfortune comming by opilation and stopping, as is a fluxe, and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and goe by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempures and stoppings of the liuer. Moreover against the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applyed mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbinde. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomach: first to strengthen the stomach that it receiue not the superfluities comming from other places, & then the Epithema is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distempure of the stomach: And thirdly they serue to cease the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that griefe: ministring duely to the contrarie of the matter as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomach may be deliuered from flowings of humours, to it, and may be preferred safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. R^e red roses. p. ij. of Arnoglossa and plantaine. ana. M. ʒ. the tops of wormewood.

Epitheme.

℞.j. the third part, all the saunders. ana. *℥.ij.* red corall. *℥.iij.* put all these in a litle bagge, and make a decoction in sufficient quantitie of water with a litle Vineger, to which may be added a litle rhenish wine and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Aethyrum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause, for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomach, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intentes and purposes may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomach made of oile, as oyle of roses, cammomill, wormwood, masticke and mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be ministred, you must mixe some thing with them that may preserue and keepe the essence and strength of the member, that the Epitheme is layd to, as *Galen* commaundeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is onely that, which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes and roots.

CHAP. XIX.

Of making *Sacculus*.

SACCULVS videlicet, a litle bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Fotus* be vsed for. It is made, of herbes, flowres, seedes, and other such like things. They belayed to either drie, or else wet in some liquour. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must first be pressed before it be laid to the place. *℞. milij vsulati. p. iij.* of *orobum*, (which some think to be tares) and of leane branne. ana. *p. ij.* flowres of cammomill, and the tops of dill. ana. *p. j.* of commin and caraway. ana. *℥. ij.* of laurell berries. *℥. iij.* make thereof two litle bags, and sew them in, into two linnen clothes of a competent bignesse, and bast them thoroughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly and let one after another be layed hote to the bellie againe and againe. Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifying and dissolving of raw humors as thus: *℞.* the flowres of cammomill. *p. ij.* the tops of dill, melilote and origan. ana. *p. j.* fenugreeke and flaxe seed. ana. *℥. j.* the leaues of *malua*, *bismalua*, and violers. ana. *℥. ss.* make a litle bagge, or make two bags, and boyle them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a sponge, or a felt, or wollen clothes, or two bagges, let them be layed to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make & apply bags, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and dilusse, and lay them to knobbes, kernelles, and hardness of the flesh. But if the person be strong, take other remollitiues, or dissoluiues, euen as you shall find the matter, that causeth the hardnes to require.

CHAP. XX.

Of making *Scutum*.

SCUTVM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomach, and made for the same causes that ointments & Epithemes be. They

are

A drie bagge,
against the
windy cholicke
or *Timpanites*.

A moist bagge.

are often made of the drie powder of medicines, to correct some distempure of the stomach, and to adde strenght to it. Furthermore they serue in steed of ointments or emplaisters, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. *Rx.* mints, maioram and wormewood dried, ana. p. j. or \mathfrak{z} . j. β . of cloues, galingale, and Xilaloes, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. of comin and red corall, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a little cotton, sewed in betweene two little clothes, with stitchings betweene, & bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomach. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and a halfe at the most, manie times an ounce or sixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum against the cold distempure of the stomach, with rentositie and other substance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, rootes, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oyle added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to cease paines, sometime to resolue and vnbind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, sometime to consume, & sometime to drier vp humours and vapours. In commixed affects and causes, diuerse intents and purposes are mixed together in *cataplasma*, as remollitiues with discussiuues, and discussiuues with such things as cease paine, as the example following shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *oedema* (which is a botch of flegmatick matter, or an impostem without grief,) in the which euill it is necessarie to haue remollition with discussion, or (as they say) resoluing, loosening and ceassing of paine, as thus, *Rx.* the leaues of *malua*, *bismalua*, and violers, ana. \mathcal{M} . j. or \mathcal{M} . β . the roote of *Althea*, the roote of white lillies, & the roote of ireos, that is, floure de luce. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . or \mathfrak{z} . j. floures of cammomill, melilot, and tops of dill, ana. p. j. seede of flaxe, and of fenugreeke, or rather, meale of flaxe seede, meale of fenugreeke, and meale of barley, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . or \mathfrak{z} . j. or you may measure it by litle handfuls, comin. \mathfrak{z} . j. laurell berries, \mathfrak{z} . ij. saffron. \mathfrak{z} . j. or \mathfrak{z} . β . of duckes greace, goose greace, the marrow of calues shancks, fresh butter, oile of lillies, and oile of ireos. ana. as much as sufficeth; make a Cataplasme. In this plaister are contained three intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceassing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantitie of mollificatiues ought to be most, if there be greatest neede of mollifying, and the quantitie of dissoluers ought to be most, if there neede to be great dissoluing, and so likewise of ceassing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humors, you must commixe together with mollificatiues some repercussiuue remedie, wherewith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remollitiues, and fewest discussiuues. In the end of the augmenting and state of the diseale, take of both a like much. In the declination, take and apply onely dissoluers and looseners. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into it no stipτικe thing: but if you do put in anie, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue stipτικe vertue, and

which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue, you must seeke them in the tables of Authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sawanorolla*, and such like. Also there be plaisters made without oyle or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread steeped in cowes milke, & a litle sodden together, with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle saffron, as tenne or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the gowt.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplastrum.

EMPLASTERS are ordained & made for diuerse purposes, and the making of them is common as well to Physicians as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and drie medicines, commixed with some sufficient quantitie of waxe, or without waxe, if that the materiales can thicken, and gather together of themselves. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the bodie, but chiefly to the stomach, for the same cause that ointments, Cataplasmes, and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the stomach when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing of some cold substance, as thus. *Rx. Ceratū stomachi confortatiū Galeni. ℥.ij.* of galingale, cloues, and red coral, ana. *℥.℥.* of wax dissolved, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of masticke, or of wormwood as much as sufficeth. Commixte them and make a plaister spread vpon leather like a buckler with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. *Rx. pure Lapidanum. ℥.vj.* masticke. *℥.ij.* frankencense. *℥.j.* coriander preparete, red coral, drie mintes and galingale. ana. *℥.ij.* *Xiloloez*, and maces, ana. *℥.ij.* turpentine. *℥.ij.* waxe dissolved with oile of spikenard, or wormwood, or masticke, or roses, or of two or three of these as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bandes, and lay it to the stomach as it is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the gummes with wine and oile, afterward let him commixte the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratū stomachi confortatiū Galeni* is made of roses, wormewood, masticke, spikenard, waxe and oile of roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as in mirtles, coriander, coral, mastick, which is temperat, *Psidia*, *balaustia*, also oiles, as of roses, mirtles, quinces, and of mastick. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the alaying of euerie distempure of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. *Rx. Ceratū sandalinum. ℥.ij.* meate of quinces. *℥.j.* of masticke. *℥.℥.* of coral. *℥.j.* of waxe dissolved with oyle of roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe, and spread it vpon leather, like a Moone when she is beginning to encrease, with a double linnen cloth, and with bandes, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to cease paines, and partly to ripen Apotemes, and partly to resolute them, as in example. *Rx. Mucilaginis*, of the seede of *Althea*, fenugreeke, and seed of flaxe. ana. *℥.iii.* barley meale. *℥.iii.* oile of white lillies, and the fatnesse of a henne, ana. *℥.ij.* *℥.* butter. *℥.j.* saffron. *℥.j.*

A plaister for
the hote di-
stempure of the
liuer.

the

the whites of egges in number ij. boyle the *Muscadagins* with a soft bre, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soothe and ripen all Apoptemes congealed of a hote and colde matter, and it ceaseth their paine, in what part soeuer of the bodie they be incident. All you will appropriate to this Emplasticke to all kinds of bodie Apoptemes, but add to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bedemum*, *Stenit*, *liquidum*, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} j. and it will worke marvellous and profitable effects. And so, as to the making of ointments, bid you what brow

CHAP. XX. I.

Of making Ointments.

VNIVERSAL in English ointments: And those which appertaine to Physitions, are made to lenifie and assuage paine, to represse inflammation, to assuage alteration and chaunging, to mollifie and dissolve knobbs and kernels, specially in the liver, in the spleene, and in the stomach. The vertues of ointmentes for other purposes, and for other members belongeth to surgerie, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an ointment to mitigate the paine of the stomach chased of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. *Rx*. oile of mastick, spike and wormwood, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} ss. cloves, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} ss. maces, and *Calamus aromaticus*, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} j. or \mathfrak{z} ij. if he be rich, because of the dearenesse thereof, of new wake as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomach, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it upon the stomach after the anointing. But to cease the paine in the stomach coming of a hote cause, as of the flowing of cholet, which often chanceth in fevers, use this ointment. *Rx*. oile of roses, \mathfrak{z} j. oile of mirtles, or oile of quinces, \mathfrak{z} ss. white sanders and red, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} ij. or \mathfrak{z} ss. new waxe washed in endue water, or in rose water as much as sufficeth, and make an ointment for the stomach. Also make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the stomach after the anointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantitie of \mathfrak{z} j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbes in a hote cause, or in hote iuyces in a cold cause or disease. Moreover note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor rectific applied to the stomach without galingale, neither to the heart without mace or saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica aratica*, nor to the liver without *Spodium*, or sanders, or wormwood, or other such like things, thinking verily, the nature of the member to be preserved with restraint; but yet not aware, in the fore named medicines. For the law and method is to be kept in all causes of contumacie, which should be broken in medicines, if galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because galingale is hote. For truly the nature of the stomach is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperat in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobbs of the liver or spleene, wherewith these two members are most in danger, in this forme. *Rx*. the roots of *Alibea*, and the roots of white lillies, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} j. leaves of *Malva*, *Bismalva*, *3* violets, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} ij. of the flowres of cammillo, melilot, and the tops of dill, *ana*. \mathfrak{z} ss. meale of fo

An ointment
for the stomach

Alind.

Ointment.

of flax seed. ana. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$. gumme ammoniaci, called *Serapini*. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{j}$. *Bellium* that is soft and whitish. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ss}$. turpentine. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$. gumme of pine tree. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ss}$. *Siorac liquida*. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$. or $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$. the marrowe of calves or Harts-shankes, if you can get it, hennes greace, and duckes greace, oyles of sweet almonds and of lico. ana. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{j}$. \mathfrak{ss} . or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolve the gummes with wine and a litle vinegar, and to the aforesaid oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth, then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes first sodden and brayed, and mixe them altogether, and make an ointment: in this sayd ointment there be more things that doe mollifie, then there be that dissolve, because the matter of scirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liver, you may adde to it of the branches of wormwood, of roses, of squinace, or of spikenard to preserve the strength and nature of the member. If you will minister it to the spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of capers, or such like. If you minister to the hardnesse of the stomach, adde to wormwood, red roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, mintes and galingale.

to apply to belon, the most soft to be used in the most tender parts of the body.

CHAP. XXV. Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquid, which hath in it litle waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same use that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to cease paine, (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. *Rx*. oile of cammommill, and capons greace. ana. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ss}$. fresh new butter without salt. $\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$. a litle waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to cease paine in the fore part of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to cease paine in the head caused of a hot distemper, as it oftentimes changeth in feuers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red roses steeped and soaked in vinegar, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. *Rx*. red roses. p. j. \mathfrak{ss} . flowres of water lillies and violets. ana. p. j. betonic and melilote. ana. p. \mathfrak{ss} . put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two coarse linnen clothes, if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead, and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale*, the leaues of lettuce, or of new white poppie, or of *mandragoras* in the places & times, that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these colde things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white poppie, or the barks of the heades of white poppie, or lettuce seed, or lettuce seedes, as in example. *Rx*. flowres of water lillies, violets, and melilote. ana. p. j. flowres of lettuce, or white poppie. ana. the 3. part of. *M. j.* or of each of them *M. j.* \mathfrak{ss} . seed of white poppie

$\mathfrak{z} \cdot \text{ij}$.

℞.ij. lettuce seed, dill seed, and white henbane seed. ana. ʒ.℥. bray all together and make a *Frontale* betweene the course or fine linnen clothes well sewed and basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* melilote and dill seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the diseases called *Cephalalgia* comming of a cold cause, make *Frontalia* of hote herbs and flowres, as sage, rosemarie, camomill, bettonie, briony, melilote and such like. *Frontalia* before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some liquor powred vpon them, or to be ayred with some vapour, as in example. ℞. the waters of roses, bettonie and balmie. ana. ʒ. j. of vinegar. ʒ.℥. commix them, and of the afore sayd waters, powre a litle portion vpon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, and hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the steeme & smoke of the sayd waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments, serving for the same vse and purpose, that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *unguentum populeon, rubea trochiscata* dissolved in water is verie meet for this purpose, & yet it is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physitions in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mithridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, and such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. libro *Therapeutices*) you may conveniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of roses, and sixe times so much vinegar, as in example: ℞. oyle of roses. ʒ. j. vinegar. ʒ. ij. commix them, stirring them in a plate; or else thus in hotter causes, when as without foresight the frensie will breed, then we commix cold things, as thus. ℞. oyle of roses. ʒ. j. oyle of nenuphar. ʒ. ℥. oyle of poppie. ʒ. iij. iuyce of Solairum, or lettuce, or white poppie, water of roses and of vinegar. ana. halfe an ounce, commix them together, stirring them verie long in some peece of plate; and annoint the fore part of the head therewith, yea all the head, if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making *Cucufa*, and *Semicucufa*.

CUCUFA is made for the cure of the euill, called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine in the head comming of cold, and many times also to stop reumes, as in example. ℞. *Sampucus*, (that is) marioran, rosemarie, stechados both of Araby, and yealow. ana. p. j. of redde roses. p. j. drie citron barks, graines of Alkermes. ana. ʒ. iij. maces, long pepper, quibibes and cloues. ana. ʒ. ℥. Make a powder, and make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a litle cotton basted betweene, or with flax, or scarlet scraped, and giue it according to the measure. And if the paine lyeth most in the fore part of the head, put most of the powders or spices in that place; likewise if it be in the hinder part, do so also, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commix them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we provide but for one part of the head. If we will stoppe reumes, then we mixe with it stipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of stipticke things, either cold or hote, as the cause requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, mirtles, cipresse nuts, and *Sandaracha* (commonly called yernice) y^e. yealow oker, the barks of frankensence, and such like stipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII

Of making Suffitue.

Suffitue (in English a perfuming) is made of drie things, to stop distillations which fall from the braine into the lower partes, and it is made of restraining medicines, as thus for example. *R.* red roses. *p.* i. masticke. *℥.* i. vernice, that is, yellow vker. *℥.* i. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head; or thus. *R.* *Millum* *p.* i. red roses. *p.* i. of vernice and *Olibanum* ana. *℥.* i. Commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the distillation falleth to the lounge, and thereof cometh spittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, because it shal increase the breath, and lettesth the spitting, and maketh the lounge grosser & thicker, but you must perfume the covering of the head, or else perfume some wooll, and apply it to the head, wch is the best way.

CHAP. XXVIII

Of making Collirium.

Collirium is a medicine that is ministered in a liquid forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore, because there be diuerse euils in the eyes, the Colliries are made of diuerse fashions: for you must vse diuers kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the state of it, and another in the declination thereof; as it is also commonly vsed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercussives, as the whites of egges, the sappe of quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applyed, as in this example following: *R.* the white of one egge, and stirre it with rose water, or plantaine water, or with water of balme, or with all these waters, make a Collirie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus: *R.* the sappe of quince seede drawne out with plantaine water, or rose water. *℥.* i. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stir it a long time with a spater, and make a *Collirium*. But if there be no paine nor rednesse in the eyes, but a certaine uncleannesse which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Colliries of crutty prepare, and of Aloes washed, & *delepan* *delepan*, & other such like things, which ought to be raken with some conuenient liquor, except rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them for so they dry vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

CHAP. XXIX

Of making Nasale or Errhinum.

Nasale and *Errhinum* be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stoppe bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneezing, to cause child birth, or to bring forth the Secundane which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowed vp into the nose, or it may be made liquide, and then you must annoint the nostrilles within, or you may make it whole & hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. *R.* the haire that be in a Hares belley p. i. the saw dust, or iron dust, or willow.

A Collirium in
the beginning
of Ophthalmia.

A Nasale to
branch bleeding
at the Nose.

willow. p. β . bole armoniacke and *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. cut the haire very smal and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them al with some stipticke water, or with the iuice of some hearb, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*; or the rindes of pomegranates, or *Acacia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath, make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. *A Nasale to Sneeings* are prouoked by dry powders, snuffed or blowne into the Nose, *provoke snee* which be sharpe and biting, as be these, pepper, pellitory, stauisacre, and root *sing* of floure deluce powdred. You may commixe the said things with some liquor, annoint the nosethils, or take cloth or silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, and put it into one nosethrill, or into both.

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatismus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp fleume; it pronoketh reume out of the braine into the mouth, & it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth reume and fleume. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth doe likewise purge reume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of pellitory, pepper, stauisacre, roote of Ireos, and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roefe of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heat and tartnesse, doe draw fleume and reume into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making Distillations Restorative.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake, that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kind, (that is to say) they are partly food, and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to restraine, as in the fluxe of the belly, some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feauers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some doe resist poyson and malignant humors, as in pestilent feauers, and they are made after this manner. *Rx.* conserues of succory, of roses, of *Simphytum* (that is) cumfrey, of *Cornelus*, of *Mina*, and of quinces, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Tria Sandali*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. trochiskes of *Carabe*, of *Barberies*, and of *Terra sigillata*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . of red corall, and *Lapis hematit*, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. water of the decoction of one capon or of two, altered with plantaine, knot grasse, molyne lettuce, seede of *Barberies*, *Sumach*, and *Omphacium*. lb . viij. put all together in a Lembecke with the flesh of two chickens, or of two partriches, or of two turtle doues, or of one capon, or of mo of these, and with the crummes of one white loafe, or of two wet in rose water, and make a distillation in *balneo Marie* with a soft fire. *Rx.* of the aforesaid distillation. lb β iuice of pomgrats. *Another.* \mathfrak{z} . j. or \mathfrak{z} . j. β . sugar roset. \mathfrak{z} . j. cinnamon elect. \mathfrak{z} . straine them (as *Hippocrates* *Ec*

A distillation restorative restraining.

*A distillation
restorative cooling.*

*Against ma-
lignant & pe-
stilent feavers.*

teacheth) through a streave, and let the sicke vse it every houre. But if you will make a distillation, to haue a cooling vertue, alwaies obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as do coole, as conserues of water lillies, of violets, of roses, succory, and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, also alter the decoction of the flesh with lettuce, sorrell, purcelaine, scarioll, and such like. Moreover you shall make a distillation restorative against malignant and pestilent feavers in this sort, R. conserues of violets, water lillies, balme, borage, and buglosse. ana. ℥.ij. barke of citron condite. ℥.j. roote of *Diellamus* and Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of gentian. ana. ℥.℞. powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, all the Sanders, bole Armoniacke, trochiskes of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes. ana. ℥.ij. scraping of yuory, and harts horne, maces, cinnamon, cloues, and seed of *Carduus benedictus*. ana. ℥.j. of old Triacle. ℥.iij. the water of the decoction of two chickens, or of capons altered with sotrell, scabious, lettuce, borage, buglosse, quar. iij. put all together in a glasse Limbecke, with the flesh of some thinges, and with the crummes of two white loaves infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lentre and soft fire, in conuenient order as is required, or thus R. of the foresayd distillation. ℞. B. Syrupus *de acetosaria citri*. ℥.ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it every houre.

Another.

The end of the seventh Booke.

THE





THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

THE PREFACE.



*E*haue found by experience, that notable men in times past which haue become famous in the practise & exercise of Physicke and Chyrurgery, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vpp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard malady, both to encrease and preserue the worthinesse and renownednes of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them provided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets, yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or entreaty, or for money, or through change, or other manifold meanes, they haue bene made knownen and published. Whereuppon others the rather minding the publicke utility of men, thought good to gather together the disperfed compositions of medicines then euery where knownen, and endenoured them selues to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Physicke. And by these means truely did Seribonius Largus, Aëtarius, Nicolaus Nerepsus, and Nicolaus Präpositus, make their workes. By this industry it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authors many receptes not much unlike were taken tending to one end, as syrups of like effect, and many medicines of Aloe, nor fewer of Scammonie or Colocynthide, or Turpetho, all which differ onely in way of composition, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries, also there be many, whose chieftest force is of Aëugo, and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out

THE PREFACE.

the best, the other unprofitable and unnecessary omitted. But even in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases remaine void of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were invented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible grieffe ioyned to the sicknesse, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersity of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no use, neither pleasant or vsuall, but receiveth and alloweth for the most part such receipts as haue bene used of vnclearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerterd and depraued, euery man according to his iudgement, so that now there remaineth scantily any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not ratified and establisht) which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: & whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endenour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to art, as the simples haue bin in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were neither redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection incident thereto and cause thereof. Therefore I doe not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best only: and oftentimes I put to new, to fill my worke with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heap: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and dosis euery where, for as much as certaine in many thinges were to bee changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasaunt for the cure of the malady: and at length, to doe the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in an other the Electuaries, in an other the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may bee easily taken againe, and applied to the practise and use of curing.

of

Of Sirupes.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hot as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withholde or restrain the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and aswage the burning of agues and thirst, letteth at liberty, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all partes, as also after a puration it moueth sweat and vrine. *R. aqua purissima*. lb. iij. *Sacchari albi*. lb. v. Boile them so long as they cast out some skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*. lb. iij. Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

In *Syrupum acidum* Scholia Gul. Plantij.

THE barbarous titles and names, doe apparantly argue, that Sirupes and Tuleps and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Grecians had of the same matter, and for the same vse their *Apozema*, (that is, decoction of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were sily applied, as well to prepare the bodies as humours to purging, were of them termed *propotismata*, as if you would say, potions before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen* in *mulse*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oxymelle*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, hysope, pennyroyall, and calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Musa*, and many other auncient Physicians did make such like sweete confections of potions for sicke folke of the iuice of cicory, dill, floured eluce, and celidony, and such like herbes, rempred together with wine and hony by decoction, for diuerse diseases of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the rootes, leaues, and toppes of plantes, and did straine the liquor boiled, and then ministred it either alone, or else sweetned with *mulse* or hony, or to bring it out of knowledge did decoct it to the thicknesse of hony. So that these three *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Tulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasaunt to the taste. For in *Apozema*, because that vpon occasion sodainely and out of hand, for the most part it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweetenesse, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuice. But the sirupes, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuice. But because the tulep is more thinner, penetrating and pleasaunt then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixth part of sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe so that there be somewhat more then two parts of the sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuice of plants, and frutes, sugar, and hony

be mingled, not onely for their preseruatiō, or for their sweetenesse and pleasauntnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and sugar, which they impart vpon these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both waies the potions to which these shall bee mingled, doe quicken and stirre vpp the naturall strength, astonied, or dulled and languishing in the sickenesse, and doe comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diseases, and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimy, and making a riddaunce of obstruction, they cause easie purgations: and these faculties come to the decoctions or potions of the sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of them selues doe much auaille to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing eache of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doeth require, and the methode of curing doth prescribe. For simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be propounded and to bee vsed before an other. We beginne this Booke of more simple medicines, and of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others, minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with the sharpe simple syrupe; for in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and luleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries; and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called conserues, and of herbes and frutes certaine well seasoned iuices, called of the Grecians *επιχολια*, be more simple then syrupses, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before, yet because for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the partes, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the methode of curing so requiring: and syrupses were inuented to haue in a readinesse so oft as occasion chaunceth, because that herbes and other rootes, and frutes alwaies be not ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessity so vrgeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata*, and luleps. In the first place the composition of syrupses is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging, then after, such as be meet to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of syrupses. Particularly the sharpe simple syrupe was not to be made only of vineger and sugar, as other sharpe syrupses bee, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpnesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heed likewise must be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in for this measure was thought meet and equall. But if any suspect the sharpnesse of the vineger (least through his piercing cold bodies of tender constitution, as children and women, and in women chiefly, their wombe should bee harmed, for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noisome to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweete or distilled water, or some meet decoction, make the syrupe more delaided, or in stead of that vse *Oxy. sacchara*, a syrupe of vineger and sugar. The sharpe

sharpe compound syrupe is not here described, least I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse, for by putting to a portion of syrups to rootes, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was my purpose, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kinde of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedy. But to heape together a vain friuolous heape of medicines euery where, after the fashion which doe fill vnconsiderately papers, with vnknownen and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too much a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo limonum.

THe syrupe of the iuice of Limons, doth lesse then the sharpe syrupe extenuate and pierce, and yet the vehemency of choler and heat of the bodie and thirst, it more asswageth and doth more restrain the corruption of hoate feuers, and the malady of pestilent agues, it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomach, and heart, and principall partes, it expelleth lothesomnesse, vomiting, defection of the minde, and swooning for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. *Rx. succi Limonum purificed, and going through a wollen streiner without compulsion freely. ℞. viij. sacchari albi fined. ℞. v.* Boile these with a soft fire into a syrupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrup of Limons of the sharpnes of oranges or citrós, of tart pomgranats, of *aurantius*, of vnripe grapes, of the iuice of sorrell, of the iuice of barbaries and of *ribes*, & al other tart or sharpe syrups be made of iuices, which either by settling or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuices is added like quantity of sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water, because the sharpe tartnes of the syrupe, is nothing noisome but pleasant, & comfortable to the heart, and it should be delaid likewise with lesse sugar (as in luleps) if the iuices could be long preserued. There be some which purify the iuices by setting, or by setting them in the heat of the sun, and fining them with the forming whites of eggs, or else only by wringing them out lightly, as in wine comming of the grapes before they be pressed, called in latine *vinum protopum*. And then with fined sugar. i. boiled with the like quantity of water, & after clarified, and at the last concocted to a lulep, mixing by little and little the one with the other, they stir the with a spatter vntill they come together, & become as one, or they boile it a litle with sugar throughly and wel lod, or els with the best sugar, such as the *maderan* is, they boile it so long, vntill the sugar be melted and dissolued altogether. And hereof the syrupe of the iuice of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple syrupe, and the rosate lulep become very white. As for the simple syrupe of pomegranats, barbaries, of *ribes*, of red vineger to keepe the finenes of their natural colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestel. And this order of cōposition in the iuices, chiefly of tart frutes taketh place, for other iuices of herbs, of roots, &c. require more perparatiō to the making of a syrupe, for they must be boiled twise, once by theselues almost to the consumption of the 3. part, after when they haue beene purified with streining & setting, they must be concocted with the best sugar to a syrupe otherwise they doe soone corrupt and become filthy. The syrups that follow

made of sharpe iuices are in force like the former, as the sirupe of the Tarr, iuice of Citrons, the sirupe of sharpe pomegranates, the sirupe of *Aur incijs*, the sirupe of *Omphacio*. i. vniripe grapes, the sirupe of the iuice of sorrell. But peculiarly the sirupe of sharpe citrons doeth quench the heate of a ague, and restraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The sirupe of pomegranates doth corroborate the stomach, and the chiefe entrals of a man, as the spleene, the liuer, the loong, &c. it restraineth vomiting and mitigateth lwoining. The sirupe (*de aurantijs*) doth more comfort the heart, and is more pleasant. The sirupe (*de Omphacio*) doth more quench thirst. The sirupe of the iuice of sorrell doth allay choler and open obstruction. The sirupe of *Rines* is more sweete in tast and more astringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for if the iuice of every one of them purged, a litle lesse sugar must be dissolved, and these two put in a tinne vessel, must be set on the fire, and boiled by litle and litle to a sirupe.

Oxysaccharum simplex.

O*xysaccharum simplex*, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good against a diuerse mixture of humours, and vnstable agues arising thereof. *R. Succi mali punici acidi*. i. sowre pomegranates. \mathfrak{z} . viij. *Aceti*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *Sacchari albi & puri*. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Boile them to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Oxysaccharum hath the same vertue that the sowre sirupe hath, but not in like force, sauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vse thereof is more safer in diseases chauncing in sommer and tender bodies, then of the sharp sirupe. Least so great variety of sirupes should be retained in vain, I omit, *Oxyaccharum compesitum*, *Oxymeli compesitum*, and *Oxymeli Scylliticum*. i. made of *Scylla*, for when they are thought good to be v^{ed}, the Phisition may make and prescribe them speedily and fitly, *Oxysacchari*. \mathfrak{z} . j. *simpli maioris radicibus*. \mathfrak{z} . ii. *vel sirupi adianti*. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{lb} .

Oxymell simplex.

O*xymell simplex*, doth extenuate grosse humours, and doth scoure out slimy matter, doth open old obstructions, doth expell from the chest thicke matter, and is good against *Asthma*. i. obstructions of the lungs with fleumes, whereof ariseth shortnesse of winde, and rebellions agues. *R. aqua purissima, mellis optimi*. ana. \mathfrak{lb} . iij. Boile them vntill with exhaling halfe the water bee consumed, and then poure in of *Aceti Aceruini*. i. very sharpe vineger \mathfrak{lb} . ij. and let them be boiled againe by euaporation to a meet consistaunce. That which is made more liquide, hath *aqua purissima*. \mathfrak{lb} . j. *mellis optimi*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *aceti*. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{lb} . Let these be boiled by foming out easily their corruption.

Oxymell Scylliticum.

O*xymell Scylliticum*, doeth more forceably attenuate grosse matter, and is good for all things we haue spoken of, and it is made of vineger of *Scylla*, which

which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foaming and sodde as the other, both become compound by putting to double portion of the *sirupe à radicibus maioris*.

PLANTIVS.

We haue lesse vse of *Oximell*, that is, sweete vinegar, then the auncient Physicians had le, who then hadde not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the power of cleansing onely excepted wherein hony excelleth) sugar hath other vertues not much inferior to *Oximell*, and besides other effects, is very good against agues. But sweet vinegar which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shoppes, is very vsuauery, whether it be full of the too much grosse, comming of fouer seething thereof, or of the too much sharpentise which is not so much qualified and dilled with the mixture of our hony as of sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oximell*, with sweete water, or some fer decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleasaunt to drinke as the sower sirupe. That which is made of many more thinner for present occasions, and is called *Oxymell Galeni*, is more pearcing into euery part, and more pleasaunt. For whereas for the litle boiling it doth not thicken, but the thinnesse of the water is therein retained, which the thinnesse of the vinegar doth further, and all the slithinnesse of the hony partly by skimming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becommeth most thinne and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vinegar and white hony: and with the litle sharpenesse of vinegar, it becommeth nothing vnpleasaunt to the taster but it is found by experience, that by too much vse, & too great a draught, thereof, the stomach is annoied chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomach is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sower or sweeter. Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thine, most sweete and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweet taste and biting the tongue (as it were) with pulling, in colour pale or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his cammy humour is not disseuered or pulled into parts, heavy in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessel is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp litle skum in boiling. But in our daies there hath bene brought the white and sweetest hony, and *aromaticke* indeede most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it out of *Lusitania*, and *Gedano* to Andwerpe, hony as good as either the *Atticke*, or *Siculun*: but they counterfaite that hony (as many other things else) and forge another in stead thereof, by often washing and whiting, which deccit of theirs you may easily find out by the vnswetnes of smelling, and vnlaourinnesse of tasting, then heare this both in goodnesse and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony, and in those regions also our country hony, that which commeth out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is best. The worser hony by boyling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the stomach it swell it, and become vehement hote and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, and stirreth vp and preserueth naturall heat, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and young men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus e Cichorio.

Syrupus e Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the viscera, that is, principall partes within, as the heart, liuer, and loong, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening, it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation, in the beginning of hot pestilent and vehement feuers, it is meete and holefome. *Rx.* totius intubi agrestis. i. of the whole Cichory. \mathfrak{z} . iiij. radicum oxalides graminis, & asparagi, brused. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. lichenis, eupat. \mathfrak{v} . j. intubi satini, commonly called Endiue, se-riole, cicerbite, lactuce, satine & agrestis, adianti albi, adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, sa-nisfragi, luporum cassute. ana. *M. j.* Boile them in x. \mathfrak{lb} . of water, vntill it come to \mathfrak{v} . j. in the streined decoction, dissolve sacchari albi \mathfrak{ssimi} . \mathfrak{lb} . \mathfrak{v} . j. and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of Cichory, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus* is oft in vse, and both their sirupes do consist of a confused heape of simples as well cold as hote without order, and of reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here chaged & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot rootes. If it be desired to be somewhat tart or sharpe, there may be mixed to it the third part of *acetosus sirupus*, or *oxy. saccharum*, or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or half so much of the sirupe of roots, if reubarbe must bee at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put thereto in, at the time of vsing then making therof, because the vertue of reubarbe to purge, both by boiling & long keeping, vaniseth away, and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue porion. But neither in the time of ministring reubarb can comodiously be intermixed, viz. the grossnesse of the sirupe hindring the operation of purging, either by making it very lile or else none at all: and for the same thicknesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectuall for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolved and made more sweeter with some conuenient decoction, therefore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but onely of losse which to every pound of the sirupe doe employ \mathfrak{z} . j. of Rewbarbe, and do not only double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all bookes which for every pound do bid and will only \mathfrak{z} . iiij. to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which doe affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuice of Cichory, no otherwise then the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin, for although therein they haue the trueth, when they account a heape of compound simples contrary one to another, to be reiected in the composition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositions of *Chuilhel. placenti* & *Nicola. floren.* of Cichory as contrary, and made rashly, and without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuice of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auail, for whether

whether when choler must bee prepared to purgation or the stopping of the liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderately roborate, as in the beginning of vehement and pestilent agues; which of these I pray you can this sirupe doe or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard straining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with sugar to the grosseesse of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost becommed as meere sugar? It is farre otherwise in the decoction and iuice of fruites, especially sharpe, as the iuice of Orenge, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like, for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas neither by pressing their tenuity, neither by concoction, they leese their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, and for the water be more thin and fluxible doe not thicken, and leese their vertue in boyling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging, but they which be made of their iuices after purgation (the body being now open pliant) be better adiudged to those vses, (which I thinke) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

Syrupus Intubi domestici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the iaundies & diseases comming of the obstructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: and when the matter of an ague and other diseases is after a sort well and thoroughly digested, *R. Endiue recentis, seriole, lachenis, lactuce, agrimonij, eicerbite, hieracij. ana. M. j. lb. quatuor seminum frigidiorum maiorum. ana. 3. j. sandali albi & rubri, confusarum rosarum rubrarum ana. 3. ij.* Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe, to the strained liquor put of white sugar iiij. pound. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuice of Endiue purged by setling lb. j. afterward of the pure iuice of pomegranats without dregs 3. iij. Boile them all together to the hight of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meete to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, and therefore will be more effectual, then if it were made of the sole iuice of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body be purged, it auaieth all the diseases of the liuer, and to purge the residents of cholericke malladies, and chiefly necessary for the scab and the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to adresse and purge the liuer and splene, and that after purgation. For the yellow and blacke laundies, and the remnants of agues especially good. *R. Succu intubi satini & apij. ana. lb. ij. succi lupi salictarij & buglossi. ana. lb. j.* In seething cleanse them till they waxe cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pound of sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The Interpreter of *Mefua* denieth the vse of the sirupe *Byzantine* in agues, before the seventh day, for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoud agues, the Physicians vse *Syrupus acerosus simplex*, with the decoction of fennell, and the third part of hony rosat, but after purgation, because it mightly scoureth the reliques of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Spleneticke*. This sirupe *Byzantine* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow jaundies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*, the compound is omitted because it doth deprave the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Syrupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent, grosse, and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the splene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is special good for melancholy quartanes, and continuall agues. *R.* Polipodi *è quercu* radicem virisq; buglossi, corticis radicis capfari, corticis thamarisci, singu. \mathfrak{z} ij. *Scolopendrij veri*. *M.* iij. lupi saliclarij, castube, capilli veneti, melissaphilli, singula. *M.* ij. Coquantur in aqua. \mathfrak{lb} . ix. vntill there remaine v. put to the strained decoction of white sugar. \mathfrak{lb} iij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Scolopendrij, the author here to this place hath referred well and for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Physicians description meete to prepare earthy and massie melancholy. The true harts tongue is *Asplenium Disseo*, & officinarum ceterache.

Syrupus è radicibus.

Syrupus è radicibus doth scoure, extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse flegme, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, and all the other entrals, it aswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued and olde diseases. *R.* rad. cumapij, feniculi, rusci & asparagi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. radicis capparis & rubie. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Coquantur in \mathfrak{lb} . x. hydromethus diluti, that is, dissolued vntill they become to \mathfrak{lb} . vj. & cum sacchari \mathfrak{lb} . v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of rootes two sirupes, one of the two rootes pearcelly and fennell, he omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall and easie to be come by, if neede require, and thought meete to retain the other as of greater vertue: To which he hath vpon good consideration added the rootes of *Capparis* & *rubie*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of the sharpe sirupe may easly by prescript be mingled thereto, and somewhat likewise it may be temperated with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Syrupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heat easily and gently deuide and scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be agreeable to euery disease beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with childe. *R. Adianti albi. M. iij. Adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, saxifragi, betonicae, pimpinellae, asplenij. ana. M. ij. Coquantur in aqua. lb. viij. vntill they consume to v. And in the pressed decoction, dissolue or melt sacchari albi lb. iij, mellis optimi expurgati. lb. β.*

PLANTVS.

Sith there is no artificiall description extant of maidenhaire, there is commodiously intermingled amongst the other which is composed of chosen simples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherefore this sirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerse vse, is of most operation, *polichrestum*. i. very good for the diseases of all parts, especially of the breast, the liuer, the splene, the kidneis, and al diseases of the wombe in all ages & natures. And the prerogatiue also therof is such, that it doth make soluble whosoever vseth it any space, and it doth not only prepare humors, but also purge them wher they be prepared, and especially grosse sleum and choler, as certaine new Philosophitions and we also haue obserued in practise oftentimes: the which effect likewise the decoction *omnium adiantorum*, but especially the white hath, although contrariwise *Dios.* teacheth that it bindeth, but they which doe mingle either raisons or liquorice *cum adiantis* into the sirupe, do restrain the large & ample nature there for diuers vses to some peculiar effect, and by mixture doe dull the force therof in extenuating and scouring. They should therefore more fitly make this sirupe of the sole decoction of *adiantinorum* which might be reserued as a common matter for euery kinde of griefe, and then the might apply it as need required to the diseases of this or that part. As for example, to the breast affected with raisons and liquorice decocted, for the liuer with the decoction of *agrimony* or *cichory*, for the splene *asplenij* aut *tamaracii*, for the kidneis such things as prouoke vrine and breake the stone, for so by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the sirupe may likewise be applied to some one part, and his strength augmented with the sole sirupe described is very much effectual. These compositions of sirupes haue bene meet to prepare bodies to purgation: now we must teach what sirupes be good to purge the reliques of euery part.

Syrupus escacade.

Syrupus escacade is good against the cold diseases of the braine, and nerues or sinewes, as *Paralysis*, the palsey, *Epilepsia*, the falling euill, *Convulsio*, the crampe, *tremor*. i. quaking and distilling out of the head when it lieth. *R. florum scacados. ℥. iij. thymi, calamynthos, origani. ana. M. j. β. saluie, betonicae, florum roris marini. an. ℥. β. semini rutae, peome, feniculi an. ℥. iij.* Boile the in x lb. of water till the halfe be consumed: when the decoction is strained, boile it againe with hony & sugar, of ech ij. pound, and condite it with cinnamon, ginger, *calamus aromaticus*

of each ℥. ij. which being bound vp in a course cloth with open threads, must be hanged in the sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus è stœache, because it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cause put other certaine things, as sage, betony, rosemary, the seedes of rue, piony, and fennell, very profitable for sundry diseases of the braine and sinewes, other wise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *stœachos* which is the chiefe in this discription, and is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the spleene, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head, for it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrals, the which with his thinne and hot substance, it doth easily open and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweete in taste, instead thereof may be vsed *nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus rosarum succarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doeth mitigate the hotte diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengthneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thinne defluxions, R. *aque simplicis*. ℥b. iij. in the which being made blood warme, soke xxiiij. houres red roses dried ℥b. j. and after this be strained, dissolve therein white sugar ℥b. ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Phisitions thincke good to renew the infusion of dry roses twise or thrise, to the intent as they suppose, the force of the sirupe might bee augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectually, for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of roses, viij. pound of water, otherwise with manifold maceration the water will either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke, and as for the vertue and strength of the roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp, by one infusion as by many, as it chaunceth by salt when it is dissolved in water. This sirupe is anaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthning the partes of the body, in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nimpheæ.

THis sirupe of *Nimpheæ* mitigateth the heate of the head, frensies, & watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpenesse of distillations, R. *Florum Nimpheæ recentium*. ℥b. ℥. *florum violarum* ℥. ij. *foliorum lactuce*. M. ij. *semi lactuce*. ℥. ℥. Adde these before the boiling, *portulacæ*. ℥. ℥. & *cucurbitæ*. Boile them in iij. pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled rose water ℥b. ℥. white sugar ℥b. iij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nimpha* is omitted as nothing commodious, and as for the compound sirupe, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedomontanus*, by reason of sundry seedes, vineger, and the iuice of pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these thinges, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vses which are compounded in the inscription. The floures of that *Nimpha* which hath yellow floures and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Syrupus de papauere.

SYrupe of poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimpha* hath, but peculiarly it staierh a grieuous cough and such distillation as doe exasperate the iawes and throte, *R. caput papaueris albi* not thoroughly riped and new. \mathfrak{z} . viij. *Capitum papaueris nigri recentium*. \mathfrak{z} . vj. *Aqua celestis*. \mathfrak{lb} . iij. Boile them to the consumption of halfe, and put therinto *Sacchari & penidiorum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . viij. Boile them to the consistance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be foure heades of the blacke poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessity requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting to this sirupe, of the sirupe of *imbebino* or *violacco*.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procurerh sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillations of the braine whither soeuer it presseth, it staierh the disenterie and other fluxe of the belly. *R. Capita papaueris albi* meanelly great and meanelly ripe numero xij. *Aqua celestis*. \mathfrak{lb} . ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is strained, put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine. \mathfrak{z} . iij. boiled to the third part, *mellis optimi*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Boile all these together, put in the end of the decoction, *rosarum rubrarum*, *valanastiorum*, *acatie*, *rois culinari tritorum*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *seminis portulacae coralli albi & rubri*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, seruing to stay distillations by rejecting certaine vnecessary and vnpleasant things, *Dios.* to the same purpose boileth the heades of poppy alone in water, to the consumption of halfe, and putting thereto hony and the iuice of *Hypocistis*, hee reduceth it to the consistance of an *aglegma*. As for the heads of the poppy, they must neither be too Greene, nor through driness too much voide of iuice, but when they beginne through a Greene kinde of ripeness to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereuppon they be tearmed of the Grecians *Kaduris* & *Kaduris*.

that is, the whiskling heades of the poppy, for that this composition through too much thicknesse may be vnpleasant to some: when it is to be taken, it may be delayed with the decoction of barley, or some other thing of like conueniency: and also if sleepe must bee procured or daunger be imminent of a sharpe and thinne fluxion of exasperation both, to stay and assuage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *diacodion* with a fresh decoction of the seeds of poppy, or with the thicke iuice strained out of the decoction of barley. Neither is it to bee dredlest harme should betide to the body by poppy, notwithstanding it be recorded by authors to be cold in the fourth degree, sith that sundry nations do vse with meats after the fashion of herbes the tender springs of poppy, and doe feede of an oile pressed out of the seeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they sprinkle the seeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to please the tast without any annoyaunce or heauinesse through sleepe. And in such like order the Egyptians vse to make the taste pleasaunt, *Oleum sesaminum* & *sesamum* and *petronius*, grounding vppon that custome vsed in the latine tongue, for an eloquent and pleasaunt oration composition of wordes, All his sayings and doings are as it were sprinkled with poppy and *Sesamus*, for both the liquor of poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuice wrung out of the leaues, and heades tearmed in Greeke *meconium* consist not of an vniforme, but of manifold substance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and sweet smelling. The first is more apparant in greene and tender poppies, the two last in dry. As for the *opium* or rather *meconium* which is brought to vie, it is altogether counterfaite, and through a secrete quality is noisome, and therefore in no case to be vsed, though it be neuer so artificially corrected. For whereas *opium* is by great labour in like quantity confected of the milke of the seedes of wilde poppy and *meconium*, without any trouble is abundantly pressed out of the leaues. The factors which seek after gaine and lucre, may easily counterfaite *opium*, or in stead thereof bring out of *Apulia* and *Spaine*, *meconium*.

Syrupus violarum.

THe compound sirupe of violets doth mitigate a sharpe distillation, doeth assuage horfenesse, grieuous cough and roughnes of the arteries, the plurisie, and doth quench thirst. *R. florum violarum recentium. ℥. ij. Seminis Cydoniorum, & malue. ana. ℥. j. Zexipha, mixaria. ana. ℥. x. decocti cucurbitae vel seminis eius. lb. v.* Boile them to the halfe, and with lb. ij. of sugar, compound them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVE.

In this compound sirupe there is nothing chaunged, because hee thought it compounded artificially, seruing commodiously by smoothing, cooling, moistening, against all the heate and roughnesse of the arteries, as also it appeaseth the vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the raines, for the herbe and leaues of the violet boiled, haue a piping faculty in them, the seede is good to purge choler in such wise as reubarbe doeth: in the midst of the flowre there is a thing somewhat yellowish, which is recorded

to be helpfull for the *Anguia* and the *Epilepsia* in children if it be drunke with water. The flowre of violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twice, doeth mitigate, assuage, and scour, and therefore is very necessary in a *Pleurisie*, and bringeth vnder blacke burnt choler, and the noysome vapours arising thereof, and thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauinesse of the heart, it temperateth hotter and drier medicines by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confect of the infusion of fresh violettes, may bee iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vses. This infusion wrung out of pleasaunt or well smelling violettes dried somewhat in the shadow as it behoueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boiled to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vses before repeated, and is to be taken both before & after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of the violettes and roses nine times in the confectiō of the sirupe of violets and roses, they labor in vaine, for they cannot become lesse effectually in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as wee will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the sirupe of liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of hysope; and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Ziziphorum.

S*yrupus Ziziphori*, accomplisheth the same which the sirupe of violets doth, but with more efficacy: both of the are conuenient in the beginning of the disease. *R.* *Ziziphorum* nume. lx. *mixaria* nume. xx. *florum violarum*, *adanthi albi*, *hordei à cortice liberi*, *glycyrrhizæ*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . vj. *semi. maluæ*, *cydoniorum*, *semi. papauæ*, *albi*, *melonum & lactuce*, *tragacanthæ*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. The seedes of *cydoniorum*, of mallowes, and *tragacanth* bound vp in a course cloth, must be boiled with the rest in. \mathfrak{lb} . v. of water, to the consumption of halfe with. \mathfrak{lb} . ii. of white sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

S*yrupus de Hyssopo* by a gentle and light mitigation, doeth purge and aridde the breast and lungs of all hot and cold maladies, doth concoct the spittle or fleame, and maketh it more easie to be auoided, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly, is good as well for the aggreuances, as approaching or inclination of *peripneumonia à pluvitis*. *R.* *Hyssopi arefacti*. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{lb} . *radicum polypodij quercini*, *feniculi*, *glycyrrhizæ*, *semi. carthami*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *hordei expurgati*, *adanthi albi*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{lb} . *passularum purgatarum*. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{lb} . *sicus siccis*, *palmulas pingues*. ana. x. nume. Boile them in. \mathfrak{lb} . vi. of water to the consumption of halfe, and boile the strained iuice thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony and *sacchari*. \mathfrak{lb} . j. \mathfrak{lb} . make a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The description of the sirupe of hysope, remaineth vnuaied, saue that in stead of the roote of smallage, there is substituted the roote of *polypodii*, and for the roote of percelly, the seed of garden fasson, which be much more fitte and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abstracted which be sufficient enough in the sirupe of violettes and *inibes*, the rather to make the force of the sirupe more scouring.

Syrupus de praffio.

SYRUPE of horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, scoureth, and purgeth the diseases of the breast and the liuer, it is excellent good against inueterate diseases of grosse and slimy fleume, as for *asthma*, *tussis vetus*, *emphyrema*, and also is auailable for *peripneumonia* and *pleuritis*, already inclined. *Rx. Prassii albi recentis*. ℥. ij. *glycyrrhizæ*, *polipodii quercini*, *radicum apii & feniculi*. ana. ℥. ℞. *adyanthi albi*, *lyssopi*, *origani*, *calaminthæ*, *stæves*, *satureiæ*, *tussilaginis*. an. ℥. vj. *semi. amisi*, & *bombacis*. ana. ℥. iij. *nuarum passarum expurgatarum*. ℥. ij. *ficus passas pingues*. x. nume. Boile them in viij. pound of *Hydromel* delaied, to the consumption of the halfe, boile the strained iuice into a sirupe with hony ℔. ij. and whit sugar. ℔. ij. Scasen and sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the root of the Florentine Flowredeluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of horehound seemed confused of so great a mixture of lenitiue, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficile to declare to what vse it serueth, which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which bee gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore sith before hath bene propunded the sirupe of violets and *inibes*, for moistning and sufficient lenitiue, and the sirupe of hysope for scouring moderately, cutting and purging the diseases of the breast, the Author thought it necessary ypon good ground, to annex this sirupe of Horehound being of a very good deuinding and scouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreame and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who so will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Syrupus Symphriti.

SYRUPUS *Symphriti*, doth purge mildely and easily the quittance and filthinesse of consuming and vlceraed lungs, without feare of any issue out of bloud, and doth also corroborate the lungs. *Rx. radicum & cymarum symphriti maioris & minoris*. ana. M. iij. *rosarum rubrarum*, *betonice*, *plantaginis*, *pimpinelle*, *poligoni*, *scabiosæ*, *tussilaginis*. ana. M. ij. All being bruised freshe, you must streane out a iuice, which must be boiled and skummed to. ℔. ij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white sugar. ℔. ij. ℞.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed and purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of Cumfrey was vppon good ground of Art here to be placed.

Syrupus è succo Buglossi.

SYrupe of the iuice of Buglosse, doth especially comfort and chere the hart, and maketh a riddance of the quivering and swowning thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. *R.* *Succi Buglossi defecati*, that is, purified. *℞. iij. Sacchari albi. ij.* Boile them to the consistaunce of a sirupe. The sirupe of the iuice of garden Buglosse, of the iuice of violettes, of the iuice of Peaches, be all cordyall and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden Buglosse, or in the sirupe of the iuice of violettes, or in the iuice of Peaches, or of the barke of Orenge, but there was great occasion to adde the sirupe of Balmemint, because there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take awaye the annoyaunce of pestilent and of venomous diseases.

Syrupus è cortico Cytrij.

THe sirupe of the barke of the Orenge, doeth reuiue and exhilarate the heart being heavy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and drieth away sorrow. *R.* *Corticum cytriorum malorum recentium*, infused or prepared in. *℞. j.* of water. Boile them in *vj. ℞.* of water till *iiij.* be consumed, and with *iiij. ℞.* of white sugar, make a sirupe, and condite it with *Gr. vj.* of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemynt is of all other the best, for the trembling and ouercasting of the heart, and of a peculiar power, it abateth the malignity of pestilent and venomous diseases, and maketh a riddance thereof. *R.* *radicum di-Etamni, pentaphylli, betonica, doronici romani. ana. ʒ. ℞. foliorum melissophylli, steues, & morsus, florum Buglossi vtriusque & roris marini. ana. M. j.* Semi. *oxalydis, cytrij mali, feniculi, atrachylidis*, that is, *cardui benedicti & oymi. ana. ʒ. iij.* Boile them in. *℞. iij.* of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto. *℞. iij.* of white sugar, of the iuice of balme and rose water. *an. ℞. ℞.* Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of Cinnamon and red Saunders. *ana. ʒ. ℞.*

Syrupus è menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heat the stomach moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easy adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth lothsomnes, vomit, chincough, and lyentery. *R.* *Succi cydoniorum dulcium, succi cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarry-sweet, *succi granatorum acidorum, succi granatorum acidodulcium. ana. ℞. j. ℞.* Mixe these together and infuse. *℞. j. ℞.* of dry mint in them *xxiij.*

Ff ij

houres, of red roses. ℥. ij. Boile them to the halfe, and when they bee strained, put to them. ℔. iiii. of white sugar, and to condice the sirupe, boile ℥. iij. of gallia moschata bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied, neither was the other lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater, and in the sirupe of wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absinthij.

THE sirupe of wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the reliques in the stomach, and doth recover a chearfull colour, and get a stomach to those that be recovered of a disease: it riddeth the liuer of weaknes, & expelleth the iaundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. *R. absinthij roma. ℔. ℔. rosarum rubrarum. ℥. ij. spice nards. ℥. iij.* Bruse them and infuse them xxiiij. houres in old & well smelling white wine, and the iuice of quincepeares ℔. ij. ℔. Boile them with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, then boile them againe with. ℔. ij. of white sugar to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

Cydoniorum Miba, that is, the iuice distilled to thicknesse.

Cydoniorum Miba, doth roborate the stomach and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, staieth vomit and lientery. *R. succi cydoniorum defecati ℔. vi.* Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by foming little and little, then poure in of olde and good red wine. ℔. iij. and boile them againe to the thicknesse of hony, condite it with one dramme and a halfe of cinamon, of cloues, and ginger. ana. ℥. ij.

PLANTIVS.

This *Miba cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the simple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus mirtinus, that is, of the mirtle.

Syrupus mirtinus corroborateth the stomach and the intrals, staieth an old issue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery distillation of the braine. *R. Baccarum mirti. ℥. ij. ℔. samali albi, rhois culinarij, balaustiorum, baccarum oxian- te, rosarum rubrarum. ana. ℥. j. ℔. mespilorum. ℥. ℔.* Bruse them all, and boile them in viij ℔. of water to the third part, and to the strained decoction, put of the iuice of quincepeares and pomegranates. ana. ℔. ij. sugar. ℔. v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus mirtinus retaineth the old composition: and the sirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation, it scoureth all the reliques of the hepauke diseases, may commodiously be referred to this place.

Syrupus

Syrupus fumariæ.

Syrup of Fumitory, scoureth from blood, salt and exust humours, it taketh away itch, skabbe, tetters, leprosie, and all the diseases of the skin, asswageth maligne and fistulous vlcers, the canker and Elephantiasis. *Rx. Endiuæ, Absinthij roma, lupuli, cassiæ, Scalopendrij veri.* ana. *M. j. Epithimi.* \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . Boile them in \mathfrak{lb} . iiij. of water to the consumption of halfe, and put to the strained decoction, of the purified iuice of Fumitory. \mathfrak{lb} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . *Succi viriusq; Buglossi.* ana. \mathfrak{lb} . \mathfrak{ss} . *Sacchari albi.* \mathfrak{lb} . iiij. Boile this sirupe to a good substance.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many descriptions of the sirupe of Fumitory, there seemeth none more fitter or more easy to be practised then this to purge impure blood. The sirupe of the iuice of both the Buglosses, of the iuice of violets, and the sirupe of balmemint do also appertaine to the splene.

Syrupus è malis odoriferis.

The sirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noysome vapours of melancholy, pacifieth and asswageth feare, sorrowe, and madnesse, and exhilarateth the patient. *Rx. Succi malorum acidodulcium, & fragrantium.* \mathfrak{lb} . iiij. *Succorum violarum, buglossi domestici & siluestri, aque rosarum stillatitie.* ana. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Boile them together, skumme them and straine them, and adde thereto white sugar. \mathfrak{lb} . vj. boile them vnto a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the sirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuices seruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althææ.

The sirupe of the water mallow, doth cleanse mildly and gently the grosse obstructing fleume of the kidneis, the slimy and purulent quitture, and their sandy grauell without sensible heate: further it asswageth the insensible heate of the vrine. *Rx. Radicum althææ.* \mathfrak{z} . ij. *Cicerum rubri.* \mathfrak{z} . j. *passarum vuarum expurgatarum, radicum graminis & asparagi, glycyrrhizæ mundatæ.* ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . *Cymarum,* that is the tender croppes, *Althææ, maluæ, helxines, pimpinelle, plantaginis, adianti viriusque.* ana. *M. j. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum.* ana. \mathfrak{z} . iiij. Boile them in \mathfrak{vj} . \mathfrak{lb} . of water till \mathfrak{lb} . ij. be consumed, and with \mathfrak{lb} . iiij. of sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of water mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vses for which it is propounded.

Syrupus Raphani.

The sirupe of Radish, doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine sup-
Ff iiij

pressed. *R. raphani domestici & silvestris. ana. ℥i. radicum saxifragi, ruscii, leuistici, Eryngij, asonis, petroselini, seniculi. ana. ℥. β. foliorum beconice, pimpinellæ, pulegij, Osmarum vrtice, nasturtij, crithmi, calytrichi. ana. M. j. fructus balyacabi, Zexibæ. ana. n. m. xx. semi. o. ymi, bardane, petroselini macedonici, fescios, carui, dauci, lithosfermi, corticum radici lauri. ana. ℥. ii. ruarum p. ssarum expurgatarum, chycrithy. ana. ℥. vi.* Boile them in a decent order in x. lb. of water, till the consumption of foure, of the which with sugar. lb. iij. purified hony. lb. ij. a cleare sirupe must be made, conduit it with cinnamon. ℥. j. and *nux muscata. ℥. β.*

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no sirupe is founde described to breake the stone and expell grauell, this sirupe of Radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of these simples, which haue great faculty to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Syrupus Artemisæ.

THe sirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightely the suppressed floures, or auoyding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of *Adiantum* doeth but more mildely, this sirupe asswageth the strangling and overcasting of the wombe. *R. Artemisæ M. ij. radicum iridi, belleni, rubie, peonie, leuistici, seniculi. ana. ℥. β. pulegij, origani, calaminthes, nepite, methisophilli, sambine, sambuci, bissoji, prassij, chamædrii, camepitheos, hiperici, parthenij, beconice. ana. M. j. semi. anisi, petroselini, seniculi, o. ymi, dauci, ruta nigelle. ana. ℥. iij.* Bruise them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel* till three bee consumed, and then after boile it with sugar lb. v. into a sirupe, condie it with ℥. j. of cinnamon and ℥. iij. of *spica*.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the sirupe of Mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be gotte, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the author cut off such simples as vnnecessary and vnprofitable, leauing onely the chiefe and best.

Purging receiptes.

Medicines prescribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerse formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place, orderly beginning at those which bee most gentle.

Electuarium è prunis

THe Electuary of prunes is marvellous lenitiue, mollifying the costive belly, purging mildly and gently sundry humours, very commodious in ex-

treame

treame heat of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirst. *R. radicū altheæ, polypodij è quercu, passarum expurgatarum, ana. ʒ. ij. glij cyrri. ʒe munda. ʒe, semi. cnisi. ana. ʒ. j. malua. ʒ. violæ, helxines, mercurialis. ana. M. ij.* Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the strained decoction boile sweet prunes, iuiubes, sebesten. ana. nume. xx. sicus passe pingues nume. x. Then let the pulpe passe through a siue. In the other halfe of the strained decoction, boile *foliorum senne mundatorum. lb. j. ʒ.* & this being strained, mixe it with the pulpe with *sacchari & mellis exspumati. ana. lb. ʒ.* then boile them to the consistance of an Electuary, sprinckling in the end *cinamomi tenuissime triti. ʒ. j. Zinziberis. ʒ. iij.* The Dose is ʒ. j. the whole composition is lb. iij. The Doses be about xxvij. or xxx. The solid Electuary of prunes hath the same vertue *R. pruna dolcia n-* *Solide Electu-*
me. x. malua. ʒ. violæ, mercurialis, helxines. ana. M. j. polypodij è quercu, semi. carthami, radi- *ary.*
cis altheæ, passarum purgatarum, glij cyrri. ana. ʒ. ʒ. foliorum senne mundatorum. ʒ. x. Boile them in v lb. of water till ij. remaine, then presse it in a presse, put *sac-*
chari rubri. lb. j. ʒ. Boile them againe with a lente fire to the consistaunce of a solide Electuary, in the end sprinckling powder *aromatici electuarij rosati maioris. ana. ʒ. iij.* make tabelle in weight. ʒ. ʒ. The whole composition is about ʒ. xx. the Doses be about xxx. Compound both these Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furthest parts of the body all humors especially both the cholers in this order. *R. Electuarij è prunis simplicis & recentis, & adhuc calentis.* In the which dissolue *diagredi. ʒ. iij.* The Dose is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. ʒ. In one pound of the composition, the Doses be about xxxij.

Plantij scholia in purgantes compositiones.

AS the sirupes of the compositions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all Art, and put in bookes of Phisicke, so that you may find two, three, or mo of like effect, nothing aptly applied to the cure of diseases: whereof it is that the Author vpon good consideration, hath very much altered the compositions of purging medicins, the rather thereby to afford a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much those receipts which he hath set downe, retaining the auncient names of antiquity, do differ from the ancient receipts? for how much they be more auailable for the proposed diseases, euery man may vnderstand by estimation had of the faculty of the simples. For whereas *Diaprunis* both simple and compound described à *Nicola*, should greatly haue refrigerated and beene appliable vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hote *Aromates*, which also in the compound doth exasperate the sharpnesse of scammony.

Catholicum simplex.

Catholicum simplex doth deduce and purge frō euery part of the body mildly and gently all humors alike, nothing noysome eyther to children, olde folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. *R. radicū hellenij, buglossi, cicchorij, altheæ, polypodij quercini, semi. cnici contusorum. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒe cadoci, hisopi, melissophilli, eupatorij veri, asplenij, betonica, artemisse, ana. M. ij. ruiarum passarum expurgatarum. ʒ. iij. quatuor semi. frigidiorum maiorum, semi. anisi.*

glycyrrhizæ. ana. ℥. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. lb. of *Hydromel* till vij. be remanent, in the strained decoction macerate vij. houres *foliorum sennæ mundatorum*. lb. j. β. *Agarici albi*. lb. β. *Zinziberis*. ℥. j. Boile them a little in the pressed liquor, dissolve of the pulpe of *sebestens*. lb. β. *Foliorum sennæ mundatorum tenuissime tritorum*. ℥. iij. *Syrupi infusionis rosarum pallidarum*. lb. j. *mellis optimi expumati*. lb. ij. Boile them with a lente fire to the thicknesse of hony, in sparging in the end, *rheubarbari electi*, *cinamomi electi*. ana. ℥. j. *Sandali citrini*. ℥. j. *muschi muschate*. ℥. ij. the dose is. ℥. j. the whole composition is. lb. iij. the doses bee about 50. This may be truely rearmed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humors and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreame partes. But the greater *Catholicum* doeth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines, which draw as well from the nigher as further celses aply confused and repressed. In the auncient *Catholicum*, the reubarbe is not fiery boiled, neither the *castia* which is put in with the *thamaryndes*, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw all the humors vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbance of the body or losse of strength. *R. quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, semi. papaueris albi*. ana. ℥. j. *tragacantha*. ℥. iij. *rosarum rubrarum, sandali citrini, cinamomi*. ana. ℥. ij. *Zinziberis*. ℥. j. *rheubarbari electi, dyadacrydis*. ana. ℥. β. *agarici, turpethi*. ana. ℥. vj. *sacchari albi, soluti in aqua rosarum*, in the which ℥. ij. of the leaues of *sene* hath bene incosted. lb. j. let tables bee compounded of weight. ℥. iij. the dose is one table, the whole composition is lb. j. β. the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.

Syrupus of infusion of white roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler & scirrhus humors, conuenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. *R. aque infusionis rosarum pallidarum*. lb. β. *Sacchari expurgati*. lb. iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe. Soke lb. ij. *rosarum pallidarum recentium* in lb. vj. of Tepide water twelue houres and couer the vessell, and in stead of this likewise, substitute other fresh roses and these cast away, put in the water other new roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the roses, in the which the sugar must be dissolved. Neither truely the sirupe of bruised roses, or of their iuice, will be so effectuell as this. There is also made a sirupe, which draweth and purgeth likewise choler and water, and killeth wormes, of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVE.

The sirupe *rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of roses and *dyadacrydis*.

tion, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Eleſtuary of *diacarthamus*: for that the adiection of *manne granate*, *mellis roſati*, and *sacchari geminati* prouerted the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good consideration omitted.

Eleſtarium è ſucco roſarum.

Eleſtarium è *ſucco roſarum* doth draw forcibly from places far diſtaunt, cho-
ler, thinne and aquous humors, very commodious and eaſie to be vſed of
thoſe which be troubled with the gout, in caſe they haue not a vehemēt ague.
R. *Succi roſarum ſecarum recentium*, *sacchari albi*, an. ℥. j. . Boile them into a ſolid
Eleſtuary with a lente fire, and in the end ſprinkle *trium ſantalorum*, *maſtiche*,
cinamomi *exquiſitè tritorum*, ana. ʒ. ij. . *dyadagery dij.* ʒ. j. . *caphure*. ʒ. j. . make ta-
bles in weight. ʒ. ij. . The Doſe is one table, the whole compoſition is xxij.
 ʒ. . The Doſe is about 70.

Dyacodonion.

DYACODONION worketh the ſame that the Eleſtuary of the iuice of roſes doth,
but more moderately and eaſily. *R.* *Pulpa cydoniorum expurgata cocta & cri-*
bretanſmiſſe. ℥. j. . *Succi cydoniorum*, ℥. j. . *Sacchari albiſſimi*, ℥. ij. . Boile them
to the thickeneſſe of hony, ſprinkling in the end *cinamomi triti*. ʒ. j. . *Zinziberis*,
maceriſ, *charophyllorum*, ana. ʒ. ij. . *dyadacry dij.* ʒ. ij. . The Doſe is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. j. .
the whole compoſition is ℥. iij. . the Doſes be about 90.

Eleſtarium dyacnicu.

Eleſtarium dyacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furtheſt places, phlegme
and ſcirrhus, & alſo choler, and is eſpecially good for paine of the heade,
finewes and ioyntes. *R.* *Pulueris eleſtarij dyatranganthe frigidi medulle*, *ſemi. cnici*,
hermodactyllorum, ana. ʒ. j. . *roſarum rubrarum*, *succi glycyrrizę*, *cinamomi*, ana. ʒ. j. .
turpethi. ʒ. j. . *dyadacry dij.* ʒ. j. . *sacchari albi*, *agua roſarum ſolui*, ℥. j. . make ta-
bles thereof the weight of ʒ. iij. . the Doſe is one table.

Diaphanicon.

DIAPHANICON doth mildly purge choler, crude, and ſimy ſleume, agreeable
and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diſeaſes ariſing
of crudity, and alſo for the cholericke and flatulent paine. *R.* *pulpa palmarum*
mundatarum boiled in *Hydromel*, and ſined in a ſiue, *penidiorum recentium*, an. ℥. j. .
amigdalorum expurgatarum. ʒ. iij. . ʒ. . when they be bruſed and mingled alto-
gether, put into them *mellis expumati*. ℥. ij. . Boile them a little, and then ſprin-
kle, *Zinziberis*, *piperis*, *maceriſ*, *cinamomi*, *ſoliorum rutę ſecorum*, *ſemi. ſeniculi & dau-*
ci, ana. ʒ. ij. . *turpethi tenuiſſimè triti*. ʒ. iij. . *dyadacry dij.* ʒ. j. . The Doſe is from ʒ. j.
to ʒ. j. . the whole compoſition is about ℥. iij. . the Doſes about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphanicon*, *palmule* be rightly ſoaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the

ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauer, many things also be subtracted, as the seed of slouage, pinei nuclei, galanga, xylaboe, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation, and the quantity of dates, penydaies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta, draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humors, and also schirrous from any part, it reuclleth the matter of the stone, and displaceth the stones themselves, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. *R.* turbitli. \mathfrak{z} . x. dyadacrydy, hermodactylorum, rosarum rubra, ana. \mathfrak{z} . v. charisphillorum, \mathfrak{z} . iij. beru, sacifragi, semi. apy, salu gemmi, galange, maceris, carni, senicali, sen erum, asparagi & rusci, semi, milij soli, quatuor semi, frigidorum mai, glycyrrhyze. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. mellis optimi expumati. \mathfrak{lb} j. \mathfrak{ss} . confect them according to Art. The Dose is from \mathfrak{z} . iij. to \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} the whole composition is almost. \mathfrak{lb} . ii. the Doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath vppon good occasion subtracted out of Benedicta, because it was too hot, and could not be easly & safely vsed in an ague, spicam nardi, macropiper, cardamomum & crocum, and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and liquorice.

Confectio hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleum, it is a peculiar remedy for the leprosie, the cancre, the tetter, the Elephantie & psora. *R.* corticis myralolanorum cyrinorum. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ceularum, & nigrarum violarum, colocynthidi, polypodij quercini. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . absinthij, thimi. an. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . anisi, feniculi, rosarum rubra. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Bruise them all and soake them in whey \mathfrak{lb} . ij. then boile them to a pound, rubbe them in your hand and wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuice of fumitory, the pulpe of prunes and raisons, ana. \mathfrak{lb} . \mathfrak{ss} . sacchari albi, mellis expumati. ana. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinkling in the end azarici, senne tritorum. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. rheibarbari triti \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{ss} . epithimi. \mathfrak{z} . j. dyadacrydii. \mathfrak{z} . vi. cinamomi. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . \mathfrak{z} . iij. beru, \mathfrak{z} . ij. semi. fumania & anisi, spice nardi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. The Dose is from \mathfrak{z} . iij. to halfe an ounce, the whole composition is \mathfrak{lb} . iii. and \mathfrak{z} . viij. The Doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of Hamech, the mirabolanes be twise put into one effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised, reubarb leeseeth his strength and vertue being boiled, Cassia, manna & thamarindus being boiled, do turne to putrefaction. The force of scammony being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more conuenient, commodious and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best, and the most safest, for that in them the sharpenes and feruency of turbitli & scammony, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of the pulpe of prunes or raisons,

or by *hermodactilis* and *amygdalis*, or with roses and their iuice, or *myrobalmes*. There be other receipts extant not so safe to be vsed: as *Electuarium in dum vris* and *electuarium clehof*, *electuarium de psilli*, *diacurbit*. In the which the sharpnes of *scammony*, and other stronger medicins is litle abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing which here described, other receipts doe not bring to passe with successe. Wherefore to take away the causes of all affectes, these receipts be auailable enough.

Hiera simplex.

H*iera simplex* by purging choler and fleume from the stomach, intrals, *Lypochondrium*, and mesintery veines impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundancy, doeth mildly helpe all diseases proceeding of crudity and obstruction of veines. *R. cinamomi, maceris, asiri, spice nardi, cymastiches ana. ʒ. vi. aloes non lora. ʒ. 100 or lb. j. ʒ. mellis optimi expumati. lb. iiij.* confect them according to Art, the powder alone is ministrd from. ʒ. ij. to ʒ. iij. but being receiued in hony from ʒ. j. to ʒ. j. ʒ.

Hiera diacolocynthidos.

H*iera diacolocynthidos* which hath beene in stead of all other described of the Ancient Phisitions, by purging safely and gently all grosse and viscous humours, especially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is especiall good against the palsey, quivering, crampe, gout, and inueterate diseases of the nerues, and also for the dropsie. Secondly, for melancholy, *mannia*, *epilepsie*, scabbe, leprosy, maligne vlcers, cancre, and *Elephantiasis* which diseases do expugne gentle medicines. *R. stecados, marubii, chamedyros, inferci, scylla assata, puli, calamynthes montanae, cinamomi, spice nardi, epithimi, polypodii quercini aridi, quatuor sesinium frigidum, maio, mundatorum. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. pulpa colocynthidis, scamonii, hellebori nigri preparatorum. ana. ʒ. ij.* *Euphorbie preparati, aloes, myrrhe, ammoniaci, oppoponacu, sagapeni, castorei. ana. ʒ. j.* *mellis costi in succo cydoniorum & expumati. lb. j. ʒ. iij.* thereof are ministrd *colocynthis*, *scammony*, blacke *hellebore* and *euphorbe*, being brused, must be rubbed with oile of sweet almondes, and then are two daies to be soaked in a muscelage of *tragacanthum* and *gumme arabicke* depromed out of rose water, till they haue drunke vp the muscelage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient composition of *Hiera simplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, sauing *xylobalsan*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compositions do consist of stronger simples, some of *scammony*, as *Electuarium de prunis*, *dyacydonion* & *electuarium in succo rosarum*. Others beside be compounded of *turbith*, as *Diaphenicon*: others be confected of *hermodactylos*, beside the two former, that is, *turbith* & *Scammony*, as *Dyaphenicon* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their composition *Colocynthis*, as the confectiō of *Hamech*: others likewise doe further take to their composition, *Helleborum nigri*, & *Euphorbium*: as *Hiera Colocynthidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diseases, but no vsuall. Hereby then

it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum minus, drawing out the water of drop sicke persons mildelie without agreeuance, may be safely vsed both of children, old folke, infeebled persons, and women with childe, whether they be agrieved with an ague or without an ague. *R. succi rosarum pallidarum. lb. ss. sacchari albi, mellis optimi. ana. ʒ. xv.* Boile them till they cast a fume and become thicke, and then put into them, *succi radicis ebuli. lb. j. prassij sicci, sem. faniculi triti. ana. ʒ. ij. acimorum ebuli & sambuci. ana. ʒ. ij. cinammi. ʒ. vj. maceis, galange. ana. ʒ. iij.* Boile them with a lente fire to the thicknesse of hony. ʒ. ss. thereof is ministred in whay of milke, decoction of barley or of raisons. It will be more effectually by putting thereunto of the iuice of wilde Cucumber, ʒ. ss. of the roote of wilde Cucumber dried and brused. ʒ. vj. or of the iuice of the roote of our flowerdeluce. lb. ss.

Hydragogum maius.

HYdragogum maius of Laur. mightely expelling water. *R. serilactis. lb. ij. sacchari albi, carnis cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum. ana. ʒ. x. manne calabrins. ʒ. v.* Boile them with a lente fire to the thicknesse of hony, when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureolle prepared in vinegar, and oile of sweete almondes. ʒ. ij. it is ministred in the Dose of ʒ. ss. the manner of preparing it is in this wise. *Foliorum Laureole. ʒ. ij.* macerate them foure and twenty houres in vineger of pomegranats or purcelane, boile them softly, straine them, dry them, and brule them, and then put into them of rose water. lb. ss. of the oile of sweete Almonds. ʒ. ss. Boile them againe vntill the water be consumed, and the water mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the consumption.

PLANTIYS.

That there should be nothing wanting in these receipts, in the last place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compositions to expell the water, notwithstanding more stronger simples specially scammoni & euphorbium doe purge, yet the author his meaning was to haue some peculiar receipts extant of such simples as haue a proper and accustomable vertue against such redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues Laureole is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the composition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixture of the simples, how fitly such kind of compositions be applied to the expelling of such water.

Vnguentum latheride.

Vnguentum latheride softneth and prouoketh the body, and draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall persons, asswageth the swelling or distention

stention of the outward parts of the body, betwixt the nauell and the priuites called *Abdomens*, all which redundancy it doeth scoure downeward from the womb, if the nauell and the lower part of the body, and the part about the priuites and the thighs be therewith annointed, and it arrideth all such matter vppward by vomit, if the stomach therewith be madeified. *Rx. Succi lathoridis lb. ss. Succi è fule. ʒ. iij.* In the which dissolue *radici ciclamini. ʒ. ij. scammoni. ʒ. ss. granorum vecini & lathoridis expurgatorum. ana. ʒ. j. ss. Se. feniculi, rute, anethi, baccarum lauri. ana. ʒ. j.* Bruise them al, and macerate the a day in the iuice; after that take *assungie. ʒ. viij.* & cere. *ʒ. iij.* liquefie them, and dissolue all the rest in them by litle and litle, and boile them with a lente fire vntill the consumption of the whole water, and vntill they all become to the temperature of an ointment. If the same matter be boiled in. *ʒ. xv.* of oile, to the consumption of the liquore, the strained oile will retain the same vertue. If either gumme *armoniake*, or waxe, be concorporated with the same ointment to the consistency of an emplaster, that wil cause issue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not so forcibly.

Electuarium diasarum.

Electuarium diasarum doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the stomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall insult, but hauing intermission safely, & with facility to bee vsed both of aged persons & of women with child. *Rx. Syrupi menthe & violarum. ʒ. viij.* Boile them to the thickenesse of hony, after they haue boiled (draw away the fire) insperse in *radici peponis arefacti, Semi. raphani & vrtice* macerated in rose water, dried and powdred. *ana. ʒ. j. radici asari, contrite & creta. ʒ. ij. Cinamomi, semi. feniculi. ana. ʒ. iij.* confect them to a liquide Electuary, and let. *ʒ. iij.* thereof be ministred either out of barley water, mulsa, or whey of milke.

PLANTVS.

The Author seemed much to haue furthered Phisick by these last receipts, especially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Author there was any extant wherewith we might safely purge the humours vppward. Whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is most necessary to the curing of any diseases. Whereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide and consistent: so now let vs referre pils to all kinde of causes and diseases. *Pillule è hiera simplici* bee confected with. *ʒ. j.* of powder tempred *cum melle rosato.*

Pillule stomachica.

Pillule stomachicae, which taken before meate, purge the stomach, help concoction, cary the meate downe, and doe mildly purge. *Rx. Aloes. ʒ. vj. mastiches, rosarum rubrarum. ana. ʒ. ij.* make them coherent with *syrupo rosato*, or *absinthij.*

PLANTVS.

Whereas there be vj. descriptions extant of the pils of the stomach, all (this

onely receipt excepted) doe hurt the stomach, and can not conueniently be vsed before meat, becaule they retaine in their confection *Scammory* and *Turbith*, wherewith the whole body (but especially the stomach) is much agrieued.

Pillula russi.

Pillula russi, which be reamed also *Pillula communes* being often vsed, helpe concoction, and doe not suffer any putrefaction of the meate, do preserve the humours and body from corruption, whereuppon they do much auaille against the pestiferous ague. *R. Aloes optima. ℥. ij. mirrhe electe, croci sinceri. ana. ℥. j.* mixe them with *Aromaucke* wine.

PLANTIVS.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compositions from pilles, which consist of sole *Aloe*, after he addeth other vnto them which consist of *Aloe* and *reubarbe*, and immediatly such as do consist of *Aloe* and *Agarick*, then such as be confected of *agaricke*, *aloe*, and *reubarbe*. And of those he compoundeth other of *Agaricke*, *reubarbe*, *aloe*, and *senna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pillulas sine quibus*, in the which beside the foure precedent, the vertue and infusion of *Scammory* rather then the substance is contained. In confection whereof he hath withholden a portion of *myrabolan*, for that the portion thereof being retained, there would be some redundancy, especially with other so many astringent simples.

Pillula assaieret.

Pillula assaieret for that they containe more *Aloe*, then *Hiere*, be more effectual in working. *R. Pulueris hierae simplicis. ℥. j. aloes. ℥. iij.* or according to *Valerius Cordus. ℥. ij* To whom I rather encline, *masliches, myrabolanorum, cyriorum. ana. ℥. ℔.* reduce them to a masse with sirupe of *stacados*.

Pillula de Eupatorio.

Pillula de Eupatorio do purge choler mildely, and doe aridde the liuer of stiffness, and corroborat it, and are to be had in more price then the pills which be described to be made of *reubarbe*. *R. Succus Eupatorii, succi absinthij, myrabolanani, citrii. ana. ℥. ij. theubarbari electi. ℥. iij. ℔. masliches. ℥. j. croci. ℥. ℔. aloes. ℥. v. Succus endiuie,* in quantity sufficient to incorporate them.

Pillula mastichina.

Pillula mastichina, for that they containe *Agaricke*, doe more forcibly purge choler and grosse fleume, then they which consist of sole *Aloes*. *R. masliches. ℥. ij. aloes. ℥. iij. agarici trochiscati, pulueris hierae simplicis. ana. ℥. j. ℔.* Incorporate them with *Malmesey*, *Pillula ex tribus* be confected of the same simples by addition of *reubarbari selecti. ℥. ij. cinamomi. ℥. ℔.* and incorporate them with sirupe of *Cichory*.

Pillula imperiales.

Pillula imperiales do mildly and moderately purge out of the intralles all humours, and therewithall comfort and strengthen them, ridde them of obstruction, and helpe the concoction of all parts, seruiceable to nourishment. *R.* Aloes optime. \mathfrak{z} ij. rheubarbari electi. \mathfrak{z} j. β . agarici trochiscati, foliorum fenice mundatorum. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. sinamomi. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Zinziberis. \mathfrak{z} . iij. nucis muschate, caryophyllorum, spice nardi, mastiches. an. \mathfrak{z} . j. moisten it with the sirupe of violets, and bring them into a masse.

Pillula sine quibus esse nolo.

Pillula sine quibus esse nolo, doe draw choler, fleume, and melancholy out of all partes of the body, but especially out of the head, eies and fences, they asswage suffusions of the eies, and preserue sight, they take away paine & noise of the eares. *R.* Aloes optime. \mathfrak{z} . xiiij. myrabolano. cytri. chebularum induratum, heibarbary, mastiches, absinthij, rosarum, violarum, fenice, agarici, cassithe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. scammony. \mathfrak{z} . vj. β . Dissolue the Scammony in the iuice of fennell, as much as will suffice, and straine it through a cloth, and with the same iuice incorporate the fine powders.

Pillula efumaria.

Pillula efumaria doe extract bilious, salt, and sharpe humours, and doe correct what so is vicious or vnseemely in the skinne. *R.* myrabola. cytri. chebula. indica. ana. \mathfrak{z} . v. dyadacridij. \mathfrak{z} . v. aloes. \mathfrak{z} . vij. When all these be brused, imbrue them in the iuice of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a masse.

Pillula Aurea.

Pillula Aurea be more effectually in working then Pillula efumaria, for colocynthis which they containe: they scoure the heade, fences, but especially the eies, and recouer the quicknesse of sight, they expell bilious, and also flegmaticke humours. *R.* aloes, dyadacridij. ana. \mathfrak{z} . v. rosarum rubra. sem. apij. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. β . Sem. anisi & feniculi, mastiches. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . croci, pulpa colocynthidos. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. muscilaginis gummi tragacanche. q. β . and confect thereof a masse.

Pillula de agarico.

Pillula de agarico doe mightily draw choler and slimy humours, from all the partes of the body, but especially from the head and breast, peculiarly standing in stead against distillations and Asthma. *R.* agarici, mastiches. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. radici iridis, prasij. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. turbiti. \mathfrak{z} . v. puluer. hiera picra. \mathfrak{z} . β . pulpa colocynthidis, sarcocolle. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. mirrhe. \mathfrak{z} . j. sapa quas. suff. the rather to reduce them to a consistent substance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pilles of Agaricke, there be orderly disposed all such excellent simples

as auaille to draw out of the body grosse fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre distant, in confection whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pillula cocchia.

Pillula cocchia, doe from all parts of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braune and nerues, whose diseases especially they doe cure. *Rx. Pulue. hiera simp. ℥. x. pulpa colocinthidu. ℥. iij. ꝑ. j. diacacridij. ℥. ij. ℔. turpethi, stacados. ana. ℥. v. and confect a masse of those with sirupe of stacados.*

PLANTIVS.

Pillula cocchia notwithstanding they doe forcibly purge choler and fleume, yet they doe not purge all humours at once, as those pilles which be tearmed *Polycresce*, and commonly *aggregatiua maiores*. The composition whereof differeth nothing from the auncient receipt, sauing for respect of the Dose certaine simples be altered. The confection of those pilles is much more conuenient then *pillularum de octorebin*, or then the pilles of fīue kinds of *myrabolanes*, which notwithstanding containe the same simples. The description therefore of those pilles in this place, seeme vpon good occasion to be omitted, for that they seeme to be contained vnder those, as *Pillula de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pillula de Hermodactilis*.

Pillula ex hermodactilis.

Pillula ex Hermodactilis, doe draw out grosse & scirrhus humors mightily frō the furthest parts, especially from the ioyntes, most agreeable in colde diseases of the braine, nerues, and ioyntes. *Rx. Hermodactilorum, aloes, myrabolano. cytri, turpethi, colocinthidu, bdelliū molū, sagapeni. ana. ℥. vj. Castorei, sarcocolle, opoponacu, semi. rute agrestis & apij. ana. ℥. iij. croci. ℥. i. ℔. Succibrafice quan. suff. to the confection of a masse.*

PLANTIVS.

Pillula ex Hermodactilis doe retainē the ancient composition, and be of them selues more effectually against the inueterate diseases of the ioynts, then those which be tearmed *arthritice*, and more safely to bee vted then those which be called *Falide*, or with the collected *de opoponaco, de sagapeno, or de sarcocolla*, so that it were needelesse to set downe their receipts.

Pillula polycresce.

Pillula polycresce bee very auailable against all diseases of the head, the stomach, the liuer, and other sundry compound diseases of the other intrals, for it draweth out of these partes fleame and both the cholers. *Rx. mirabolano, cytri, rheibarbati. ana. ℥. ℔. succi eupatorij, succi absinthij, mirabolano, chebulorum & indorum,*

Indorum, agarici, colocinthidis, polipodij, ana. ℥.ij. dyadacridij, turpethi, aloës, ana. ℥.vij. Mastiches, rosarum rubrarum, Salis gemmei, epithimi, anisi, Zinziberis. ana. ℥.j. confect them with syrupe of roses: they be ministred from ℥.ij. to ℥.j.

Pillula è lapide Cyaneo.

Pillula è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and phlegme, especiall good against *Melancholia*, sadnesse and madnesse: against the canker: *Elephantiasis* and blacke morphew. *Rx. lapidis cyanei abluti. ℥.vj. Epithimi, polypodij, ana. ℥.vij. diadacridij, hellebori nigri, Salis indi. ana. ℥.ij. ℞. agarici, ℥.viij. Caryophyllorum, anisi, ana. ℥.iij. pulueris hieræ picæ simplicis. ℥.xv.* and confect a masse of them with the iuyce of endiue or succorie.

PLANTIVS.

Pillula è lapide Cyaneo for the blacke hellebore vsed, be more practised then *Pillula inde*, which containe also hellebore: wherfore he hath described those, omitting others, and for that they be more effectually against melancholike diseases then *pillula de lapide armeno*, for that occasion he omitteeth them.

Pillula è Thymelea.

Pillula è Thymelea do mightily draw out of the bodie scirrhus humors, and water of hydropical persons. *Rx. foliorum thymelea exciccatorum & aceto maceratorum ℥.v. myrabolano. flauorum. ℥.℞. myrabolanorum cepulorum. ℥.iij. manne & thamarindorum* dissolued in water of succorie so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *pillula è Thymelea*, and to them is added certaine, aptly confected of *Efusa*, and which are verie effectually to draw out water. I suppose he omitted aswell *Pillulas lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and vnnecessarie heape of simples, and for that *Pillula sine quibus* be effectually enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pillula ex Esuta.

Pillula ex *Esuta* do purge from the wombe the drop sicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely when they be free from agues. *Rx. Corticis radici, esuta minoru* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of purslaine ℥.ij. grana recini purged and brused xj. myrabolanorum cyrinorum. ℥.j. ℞. camedrios, chamepiteos, Spice nardi, cinamomi, ana. ℥.ij. bruse them all finely and incorporate them in ℥.j. of tragacanth dissolued in rosewater, and so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of ℥.ij.

Pillula è Cynoglossa.

Pillula è Cynoglossa were not prouided to purge, but to stay distillations;

whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or else where. R. mirrhe. ʒ. vi. thuris masculi. ʒ. v. opij, hyoscyami semi. radieis cynoglossi aride. ana. ʒ. ʒ. croci, castorei. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. and confect a masse thereof with distilled rose water. They be ministred from. ʒ. j. to ʒ. ʒ.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Castoreum* added *Pillulis* è cynoglossò, which with saffron hath a singular vertue to correct the malignity of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt hath bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pillule astrologie.

Pillule astrologie hauing great power to deuide and scour, are very auailable against *Epilepsia*, *paralysis*, *asthma*, and veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer and reines; *Nephritis*, suppressing of the floures, it expelleth the childe and seconds, they be more meete in winter, and for moist natures when the bodies be purged. R. Radieis astrologie rotunde ʒ. j. radieis gentiane, mirrhe electe. ana. ʒ. iij. aloes, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. Zinzibers. ʒ. i. when they be all exquisitely powned, put in new oile of sweete almondes. It is ministred in Dose. ʒ. j. ʒ. and the broth in which they be dilayed is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pillule astrologie be last of all, commodiously added to the rest, and bee excellently described, because they haue great opening vertue. They may bee made in such forme that they may bee drunke, but because they bee very bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the fourme of *Catapetium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as bee made in a solide forme, by taking whereof the principall partes of the body be comforted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadness, it taketh away quawling and overcasting of the hart. R. foliorum roris marini. ʒ. ʒ. rosarum, violarum, glicyrrhize. ana. ʒ. iij. cariofillorum, spice nardi, nucis muschate, galange, cinamomi, Zinzibers, maceris, ligni aloes, cardomomi, anisi, sem. anethi. ana. ʒ. ij. Sacchari albi aqua salvia vel betonice soluti. ʒ. j. ʒ. make thereof an Electuary in tables.

Electuarium pleres archonticon.

Electuarium pleres archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the senses, recover the decayed memory, and is very commodious.

inodious for such as haue the falling euill, and difficulty of breathing, it comforteth such as bee sadde, or annoied with *melancholia*, or disturbed with idleness of the braine, it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sickness. R. *Cinamomi, cariophyllorum, ligni aloes, galange, spica nardi, nucis muscata, Zinziberis, spodiij, scegantbi, cyperi, rosarum, violarum.* ana. ℥. j. folij aut maceris, *glycyrrhizę, mastiches, stircis, calamintheę, sampsuci, balsamice, oymi, cardamomi, macropiperis, myrtillorum, corticum mali cytri.* ana. ℥. ℔. & Gr. vj. *margaritarum splendorum, been albi & rubri, coralli, serici combusti.* ana. Gr. xvij. *moschi* Gr. vj. *Caphura.* Gr. iiij. *sacchari albi aqua melissę soluti.* x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

That Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principally: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions, according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at those which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very comodious in all distempures of the lungs, and breast, and is good for the *peripneumonia* and plurisie, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. R. *Gummi tragacanthi albisimi.* ℥. j. *Gummi arab.* ℥. v. *amili.* ℥. ij. *glycyrrhizę, sem. papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido, maio, corticis liberorum.* ana. ℥. j. *Caphura.* Gr. v. *penidiorum.* ℥. j. ℔. *Sacchari albisimi aqua violarum soluti.* ℔. j. Make thereof an Electuary in *Tesseras*.

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diseases, and hath the vertue of another composition termed *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occasion omitted.

Diaireos simplex.

Diaireos simplex doth by a milde attenuation arid the breast and lungs of all distempures, and maketh more easie vntering of spittle, meete for hote diseases increasing, and such cold diseases as be not extreme. R. *Radici iridis florentini.* ℥. j. *Pulueris Electuarij diatragacanthi frigidi, sacchari candi.* ana. ℥. ℔. *Sacchari albis, hyssopi aqua soluti.* ℥. viij. Compound thereof a solide Electuary.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum.

Electuarium diaireos compositum, auaieth much in hote diseases beginning to bracke, and in inueterate cold diseases, as the cough, *Asthma*, and hoarsenesse. R. *radici iridis.* ℥. ℔. *pulegii, hyssopi, glycyrrhizę.* ana. ℥. iiij. *tragacantha, amigdalorum amararum, pinearum, cinamomi, Zinziberis, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. *seminij, altheę, fenigraci.* ana. ℥. ij. *sacchari albis.* aqua iussit aginis soluti. ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound electuarie of *diatreos* is here placed in steed of *diatragacanthum calidum* and *diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *caricu*, *passulu*, *palmlu* & *styraco*, which were vnmeete for this composition; ordaine *seminu lini*, *althee* & *fennugreci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempures of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

Diacalaminthes doth attenuate rebellious & inueterate distempures of the breast and lounge, and the grosse and viscous humours in these parts. It doth secure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine, prouoketh the floures, vrine & sweat. *R.* *calaminthes montana*, *pulegii*, *petroselinu*, *seselios*, *origani*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *seminu apii*, *cymarum*, *thymi*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *leuistici*, *pipiris*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Sacchari albissimi*, *aqua violarum aut rosarum soluti*. \mathfrak{lb} . ij. β . make an Electuarie.

PLANTIVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthes*, *origanum* seemeth verie aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated Galens composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in louage and in pepper: for the Author taketh of louage halfe so much, and of pepper the sixt part of so much as Galen did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of Galene in the fourth booke *de tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasant either in tast or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with fixe or eight times so much sugar. In this composition truly which is verie hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a doses of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand of these which be termed *diakysopos* and *diaprasus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnneccessarie, least the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum aswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth & comforteth the heart, and preserveth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from quawling and lwooning, and lastly abandoneeth sorow. *R.* *quatuor semino. frigido. maio. mundatorum*, *seminu portulace* & *papaueris albi*, *seminu endiuie*, *oxalidis* & *citrui*, *trijum santalorum*, *ligni aloes*, *Zinziberis*, *rosarum rubrarum*, *florum nymphae*, *buglossi*, *violarum*, *baccarum mirti*, *ossis de corde cerui*, *eboru*, *doronici Komani*, *cinnamonu*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *coralli albi* & *rubri*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *margaritarum splendorum*. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *ambaris*, *caphure*. ana. gr. vj. *moschi*. gr. ij. *Sacchari albi*, *aqua buglossi vel rosarum soluti*. \mathfrak{lb} . ij.

PLAN.

PLANTIVS.

Therather that this Electuary *Diamargariton* might become more excellent and effectual, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the feedes of endiue and sorrell, *cytrij ebur*, or *e corde cerui*, *doronicum roma.* and *cinthomum*: all which be apparently good for the heart. There be diuerse Phisitions which haue put into this Electuary, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de gemmis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description therof, this Electuary containeth, except a fewe hote Aromates and many colde simples, the rather to make a more safe vse therof.

Electuarium de gemmis.

Electuarium *de gemmis*, doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrefaction, doeth release the affected of quauing, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadness. *R.* *Margaritarum splendorum*. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *saphiri*, *hyacinthij*, *Sardij*, that is, *cornuele*, *granatorum*, *smaragdi*. ana. \mathfrak{d} . ij. & *Gr. v.* *zedoarie*, *doronicij*, *corticum cytrij mali*, *maceris*, *seecymi cariophyllati*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *corallij rubri*, *succini*, *eboru*. ana. \mathfrak{d} . ij. β . *Beez albi*, *beez rubri*, *cariot*, *hyllorum*, *Zinziberis*, *piperis longi*, *spice indice*, *folij croci*, *cardamomi maioris*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . *trochischorum diarrhodon*, *ligni aloes*. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . *cinamomi galange*. ana. \mathfrak{d} . ij. *Gr. v.* *foliorum auri*, *foliorum argenti*. ana. \mathfrak{d} . j. *ambre*. \mathfrak{z} . j. *moschi*. *Gr. xv.* *sacchari albi aqua rosarum soluti*. \mathfrak{z} . xxx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium de gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they bee not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stones. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuarie, some part of the Aromates, especially *Beez album* & *rubrum*, *cardomomi maioris*, *piper longum* & *felium* which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium diambre.

Electuarium *diambre*, comforteth and fortifieth the hart, the braine, and the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of alimentes, but also of cold humours, and it driueth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception. *R.* *cinamomi*, *doronici Ro.* *cariophyllorum*, *maceris*, *nucis muschata*, *folij galange*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. *spice nardi*, *cardamomi maioris* & *minoris*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. *Zinziberis*. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . *santalij citrini*, *ligni aloes*, *piperis longi*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. *ambaris*. \mathfrak{z} . j. *moschi*. \mathfrak{z} . β . euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with. \mathfrak{lb} j. of sugar dissolued in rose water.

Gg iij

PLANTIVS.

Diambras seemeth to consist of all kinde of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *diacyminum* and *dianisum*, *diacinamomum*, *diacyniber*, *diatrion* pipercon, *diaciloaloes*, *diamargariton calidum*, *diamoscu dulce*, & *diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hoate consisting of hoate simples no whit repressed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambra*, which may supply the want of the rest, least the student in Physicke should bee overcharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hoate, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *cardomomum* and the long pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *rosarum rubra*. ℞. iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hoate natures, when the weather is hoate and in other hoate seasons, in agues and hoate diseases, and the excessive heate also of these simples hath bene occasion, that the vse thereof hath bene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion pipercon* Galeni, and *Diacalamintes*. The Author thereof perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commaunded, that the powders should bee tempered in twelue times so much sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Puluis cordiacus, doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *Radicum tormentille*, *dictamnii*, *tunicie* & *scabiose*, se. *acetose endiuie*, *coriandri preparati*, se. *citrij*, *rute*, *cardui benedicti*. ana. ℞. j. *trium santalorum*, been albi, been rubri, *doronici Ro. ligni aloes*, *Xedoarie*, *cinamomi*, *cardamomi*, *maceris*, *croci*, *rosarum rubra*. *florum buglossi vtriusque*, *florum nimpheae*. ana. ℞. ij. *rasura eboris*, *spodij*, that is, *eboris rsi*, *ossis e corde cerui*, *corallij albi*, *corallij rubri*, *succini*, *margaritarum splendida-rum*, *smaragdi*, *hyacinthi*, *granati*. ana. ℞. j. *sericis crudi torrefacti*, *boli armeni*, *terra lemnice*. ana. ℞. ss. *caphura*, *moschi*, *ambaris*. ana. gra. vj. reduce them to powder and make thereof tables, with eight times so much sugar dissolved in rose water.

Aromaticum rosarum maius.

Aromaticum rosarum maius, comforteth the stomach with a moderate heat, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrales, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth winde, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recovery of a sickness. ℞. *rosarum rubra*. ℞. xv. *glicirrhizae rase*. ℞. vij. *ligni aloes*, *santal citrini*. an. ℞. iij. *cinamomi electi*, *maceris*, *cariorhillorum*. ana. ℞. ij. ss. *gummi arabi*, *tragacanthae*. ana. ℞. ij. ℞. ij. *nucis muschate*, *cardamomi*, *galange*. ana. ℞. j. *spice nardi*, *ambrae*. ana. ℞. ij. *moschi*. ℞. j. and make tables with eight times so much sugar.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *aromaticum rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomach and midriff, & yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, aswageth paine, and dispatcheth winde. *Rx.* rosarum rubrarum. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . santali albi & rubri, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, eboris \mathfrak{v} ssi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. mastiches, spice nardi, cardamomi, succi, glycirrhizæ, croci, xyloaloes, caryophyllorum, gallie muschate, anisi, feniculi, semi, ocymi, acimorum berberis, sem. scariola, protulace & papaueri albi, quatuor semi, frigido, maiorum, rheubarbari electi, cinamomi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. margaritarum, ossis e cordecervi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Caphura. gr. vij. moschi, gr. iiii. make thereof tables with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuary of Diarrhodon, the Author hath subtracted *asarum*, for that it doeth overcome the stomacke, notwithstanding it bee powned lightly: and sugar candy likewise for that it hath no more efficacy or vertue then white sugar. The Electuary of *Diagalange*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the crudity of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessive heate; in place whereof if neede so require may bee substituted *Diambras* or *Diacalammbes*.

Electuarium diatrion santalon.

Electuarium diatrion santalon, correcteth the hoate intempeure of the liuer, and arriddeth it of theremnants of obstructing matter, cureth the jaundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomach. *Rx.* trium santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, rosarum rubra. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. rheubarbari electi, eboris \mathfrak{v} ssi, succi glycirrhizæ, semi, portulacæ, ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. gummi arabici, tragacanthæ, quatuor semi, frigido, maio, mundatorum, semi, inubi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . caphura. \mathfrak{z} . j. and eight times so much white sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amilum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion santalon*, as vnnecessary, neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affectes, and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuary *Diatrion santalorum*.

Diacrocni.

Diacrocni which is also commonly tearmed *Diacucurma*, dissolueth inueterat affectes of the liuer and splene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the dropsie. *Rx.* croci, asari, petroselini, macedoni. dauci, anisi, semi, apij, ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . rheubarbari, meu, spice nardi, ana. \mathfrak{z} . vj. costi, mirihe, cassia lignee, scananili, carpopalsami,

Gg iiii

radicis rubei, succi absinthij, succi eupatorii aresacti, olei balsami. ana. ʒ. ij. calami aromatici, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. scordij, scolopendrij, succi glycyrrhizæ. ana. ʒ. ij. and ten times so much white sugar dissolved in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare simples and hard to bee commed by, as *Cassia lignea*, *carpobalsamum*, and *opobalsamum*, which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall bee as effectuell to the purpose, wherefore it is inserted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuell then *diacrocu*, against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and spleen, against an euill habite, and the beginning of a drop sicke. R. Lacce preparata, rheubarbari. ana. ʒ. ij. spice indice, mastiches, scirpium scananthi, absinthij roma, succi eupatorii, mesue, sabine, amigdalæ. amararum, costi, myrrhe, rubee, sem. opij, ammens, feniculi & anisi, asari, aristolochie longe, aristolochie rotunde, gentiane, croci, cinamomi, hyssopi, cassie lignee, summitatum scananthij, bdellij. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. piperis, Zinziberni. ana. ʒ. j. sacchari albi twelue times so much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium dialacca maior. plures archonticon, and the exhilarating *Electuarie*, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be most fitte for such affectes as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating *Electuary* is falsely ascribed vnto *Galen*, it driueth away sadnesse, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirites, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preferueth the receiuer from hoarenesse of haïres. R. Florum ocymi cariophyllati, croci, Zedoarie, xilobalsami, aut ligni aloes, cariophyllorum, corticum citrij mali, galange, maceris, nucis muschate, sty. acis, calaminthe. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. anisi, scobis eboris, thimi, epithimi. ana. ʒ. j. caplure, moschi, ambaris, margaritarum splendorum, ossis e corde cerui. ana. ʒ. ʒ. foliorum auri & argenti. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of white sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium diaspermaton.

Electuarium diaspermaton refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, and the conduites of the vrine and seede, doth mildly purge them from all corruption of humours. R. Quatuor sem. frigido maio. & mino. sem. asparagi, impinelle, ocimi, & petroselinij, granorum haticacabi. ana. ʒ. ij. milij solis, succi glycyrrhizæ. ana. ʒ. ij. cinamomi, maceris. ana. ʒ. ij. sacchari albi eight times so much, dissolved in the water of marish mallow.

Electuarium

Electuarium lithon thropticon.

Electuarium lithon thropticon, that is, lithon thropticon, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauell of the kidneys and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneys, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by litle and litle. *Rx.* Spice nardi, Zinziberis, cinamomi, melampiperis, cardomomi, cariophyllorum, maceris. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . costi, glycyrrhize, cyperi, tragacanthæ, chamedrios. ana. \mathfrak{d} . ij. sem. apij, ammeos, asparagi, ocimi, rutte, cyrii mali, saxifragi, pimpinelle, cardui dauci, feniculi, rusci, petrosilini, macedoni bardana & seselios, asari. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. lapidis spongie, lapidis lincus, lapidis cancri, & lapidis iudaici. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . sanguinis hircini preparati. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white sugar, dissolved in water of Berony, but when extremity of paine forceth, and the vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo cretico*, from \mathfrak{d} . ij. to \mathfrak{z} . j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium diaspermaton we haue read, described for many and sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auail much against the heate of the kidneys, the scalding of the vrine, and other affectes to which it is assigned. These simples bee withdrawn and expuncted out of that Electuary, which they terme *Lithon dridhon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure, and other astringing be added in their stead which doe hinder the breaking of the stone, and the displaying of the sand: sundry seedes and many stones, and the prepared blood of the Goat is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomata* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heat be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum, doth mightily prouoke the flours, and all purgations of the wombe. *Rx.* Pulueris electuarij diacalaminthes simplicis, \mathfrak{z} . β . foliorum prasij, samapuci, melissophylli, artemisie, sabine aridorum. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. cyperi, sem. rutæ & rubie, maceris, cinamomi. an. \mathfrak{d} . ij. and twelue times so much of white sugar, dissolved in the water of Feuerfew or Pillitory of the wall.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuary of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries; for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of moist Antidotaries.



Antidotus analeptica recovereth all the powers of the body infeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the quawling and swowning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of blood, or by any excessive euacuation, it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth, nourisheth, strengtheneth, and comforteth. *Rx* rosarum rubrarum, *glicirrhizæ*. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. gr. v. gummi arabici & tragacanthæ. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. & \mathfrak{d} . ij. Santali albi & rubri. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. & \mathfrak{d} . j. succi *glicirrhizæ*, amyli, sem. papaveris albi, protubæ, lactucæ & seriolæ. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iii. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, sem. cydoniorum, sem. malvæ, sem. bomberis, sem. violarum, strobilorum, pistaciorum recentium, amigdalorum dulcium, pulpe sebesten. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. cariophyllorum, spody, cinamomi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. croci. Gr. v. penidiorum. \mathfrak{z} . β . when they be all powned, temper them with sirupe of violets.

PLANTIUS.

In the antidotary analepticke, which they tearme *resumptivum*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Berberies, *pistacia*, be put in the receipt.

Antidotus diasaterion.

Antidotus diasaterion, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to Venerie, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular help and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis and spermaticke vessels, whereby it auaieth much for procreation of children. *Rx* radicis saterij recentis & solide, radicis *passinacæ* satine, radicis eringij, nuclei indici, strobilorum, pistaciorum. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, anisi, sem. erucæ, lingue auis quæ semen est fraxini. ana. \mathfrak{z} . v. cinamomi, candarum scincorum, sem. bulbi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . moschi. Gr. v. mellis optimi despumati. \mathfrak{lb} . iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *nux indica*, strobili and *pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely powned.

PLANTIUS.

There be three compositions set downe of *diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheateh the heart, and driueth away sorrow comming without occasion, it

it restraineth and bridleth melancholia and mania, and recouereth the rauished spirites and powers of the body. *Rx.* succi malorum fragrantium, aqua rosarum, ana. ℥. ij. In quibus macera horu. xxiiij. serici stamini crudi. ℥. j. Let it boile easily and then streine it, and in the streined liquor, boile granorum infectoriorum. ℥. ij. the decoction then will become red, in the which dissolue sacchari albi. ℥. j. ℥. Boile them then againe till the thicknesse of hony, in the end put in ambra crude contuse. ℥. ℥. and when it is liquified or melted, sprinckle in these powders, ligni aloes crudi, cinamomi. an. ℥. vj. lapidis cyanei loti & preparati. ℥. j. ℥. margaritarum non perforatarum. ℥. ij. soliorum auri purissimi. ℥. i. moschi. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è cocco baphico, tearmed *confectio alkermer*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they tearme it *Karmesino*, for that such kinde of silke vsually is not died without Gaule, Alume, and Arsenicke, which is also together venomous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis lauri.

Antidotus è baccis lauri, doth mightily dissipate winde through heat and tenuity, and is especiall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small. *Rx.* foliorum ruse. ℥. x. ammeos, cumini, nigelle, lebistici seminis, origani, carui, amigdalorum amatarum, piperis longi, mentastri, dauci, acori, baccarum lauri, castorei, ana. ℥. ij. sagapeni. ℥. ℥. opoponacis. ℥. iij. mellis optimi expumati. ℥. j. ℥.

Philonium.

Philonium ministred with *Opium* after fixe monethes, doeth take away vehemement and gricuous paines, either in the great guttes or in the kidneis, or in splea, prouoketh sleepe, staieth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of blood. *Rx.* croci. ℥. v. pirothri, euphorby, spica wardi, mirrha, castorei, ana. ℥. i. piperis albi, biosciami. ana. ℥. xx. opij. ℥. x. mellis optimi expumati. ℥. ij. the Dose hereof is from. ℥. j. to ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approued both by authority of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to lay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in mirrhe and castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to corre& *Opium*. If the manner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they tearme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may bee ministred in a double Dose, namely from ℥. ii. to ℥. j.

Antidotus tearmed requies.

Antidotus tearmed *Requies* without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, allwageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. *R. rosarum, violarum. ana. ʒ. iij. corticum radicum mandragora, seminis hyoscyami albi, & papaueris albi, seminis seriole, lactuce, portulacæ & psilly, nucis muschate, cinamomi electi. ana. ʒ. i. ʒ. trium santalorum, spodiij, tragacanthæ. ana. ʒ. ij. mellis optimi expumati triplum.*

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus tearmed *requies*, hath lesse *opium* then anie kinde of *philonium* or of *opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightly through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold, notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *opium*, truly it doth not a litle auayle to asswage the burning heate of agues and dortage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *symptomata* doe proceed of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessarie, as both the antidotarie *diabolianum* and *athanassa*, and *masa enea*, *requies cum opio*, *trifera magna*, and *Esilie magna*, of what author focuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *philonium* described by this author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall partes, or to expell poyson and many other fundrie diseases, *triphera magna*, *Esilie magna*, *curea alexandrina* and *Athanassa*, *theriace* and *mithridatum* may therefore stand in their steed. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is verie dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace Diatesaron.

Theriace *Diatesaron* is excellent good against Epilepsie, conuulsion, palsey, cruditie of the stomach, ill habite, dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auayleth much against venime receiued, against the byting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. *R. radices gentiane, baccarum lauri, mirrhæ, aristolochie rotundæ. ana. ʒ. ij. and when they be verie seriously powned, receiue and mixe with mellis optimi expumati. lb. ij.*

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

Theriace *Andromachi senioris* preuayleth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia*, *Asthma hæmoptois*, aggrievance in the stomach, jaundies, dropsie, paines of the kidneyes, cholicke, gowt, melancholicke and lunatick men: and lastly the leprosie, it expelleth the floures & a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomach, and the

the whole bodie, and preferueth it from a pestilent contagion. *℞. trochiscorum scilliticorum*. ℥.vj. *trochiscorum theriacorum*, *magma hædyroï*, *piperis longi*, *opij ana.* ℥.iiij. *rosarum rubrarum*, *seminis napi syluestri*, *scordij*, *opobalsani*, *cinamomi*, *Agarici ana.* ℥.ij. *℞. mirrhe*, *costi*, *croci*, *cassie lignee*, *nardi indici*, *scananthi*, *thuri masculi*, *piperis albi*, *nigri*, *dielamni*, *marrubij*, *rheubarbarij*, *stachadis*, *seminis petroselinis macedo*, *calamites*, *terebinthine*, *Zinziberis*, *radicu pentaphylli ana.* ℥.vj. *polij montani*, *chamapiteos*, *styracis calamite*, *mei*, *amomi*, *nardi celtice*, *sigilli lemmij*, *phupontici*, *thymedrios*, *foliorum malabatri aut macis*, *chalcidis tostæ* (which may be commodiously pretermitted) *radicis gentiane*, *anisi*, *succi hypocistidis*, *carpobalsami*, *gummi Arabici splendidi*, *seminis feniculi*, *cardomomi minoris*, *seselios*, *aracie*, *phalaspis*, *seminis hyperici*, *ammonios ana.* ℥.℞. *castorei*, *aristolochie longæ*, *sentenij*, *seminis dauci*, *bituminis Iudaici*, *opoponacis*, *centaurij minoris*, *Galbani ana.* ℥.ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum*, *id est*. ℔.xiiij. ℥.iiij. *Vini optimi odorati* so much as shall suffice to dissolve the liquors and iuyces. The greatest dose is. ℞.iiij. or. ℥.℞. for. ℞.j. of the powder, or ℞.iiij. of the composition containe gra. j. of opium.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the composition of triacle set fourth by Andromachus senior, in an Elegiacall verse, for that neither the number nor the weight of simples can in verse be easily changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of simples, and peradventure more conuenient: to the which also they added sothernwood & gladine, and altered the doses of certaine simples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted so certaine. Wherefore without all controuersie we are to insist to this description only. Whereas the Author doth admonish vs of *chalcitide* *id est*, *viz* vitrioll not to be put in this composition, therein imitating Valerius Cordus, that seemeth verie conuenient, for whereas that medicine, especially being burnt, is maruellous causticke, *escharoticum*, and hurtfull to the intrayles, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaille for any externall disease, there is no cause why with so great inconuenience and vnpleasauntnesse of tast, it should be admitted into this composition. For if it be (as some men thinke) therefore added to make the composition blacke, it ought not for colour sake, by taste and operation so much annoy the bodie. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, lesse sharpe and hote, and will become more pleasant to the receiuer.

Mitridatum.

Mitridatum doth highest resemble the power of triacle, and is vsed agins the same diseases with a great deale more facilitie & lesse extremitie of heate, according vnto the description of *Andromachus* allowed of *Galen*, and other auncient Physicians. *℞. myrrhe*, *nardi ana.* ℥.j. *℞. croci*, *Cinamomi*, *scordij*, *Zinziberis ana.* ℥.vij. *℞. opij*. ℥.iiij. *graines*. xxv. *styracis*, *Seselios*, *abrosami*, *libanolidis ana.* ℥.x. *Castoreij*. ℥.vj. *℞. scananthi*, *polij*, *costi*, *piperis longi*, *seminis dauci*, *scananthi*, *Galbani*, *terebinthine ana.* ℥.vj. *℞. piperis albi*, *℥.v.* *℞. petroselinis*, *seminis nardi celtice*, *seminis feniculi*, *folij Indi aut maceris*, *gentiane rosarum siccarum*, *mei ashamantici ana.* ℥.iiij. *cassie lignee*, *℥.v.* *℞. Thuri* ℥.vj. *℞. j.*

succi hypocistidis. ʒ. vj. gr. xv. acori aut calami aromatici, phs. pontici, sagapeni, fructus balsami, hyperici, iridis, acaciae, gummi, cardamomi, pelicini, that is, ana. ʒ. ij. terra lemnia, lumborum scinci, cytheos, opoponacis. ana. ʒ. vj. chlaspij. ʒ. vj. ʒ. ij. anisi, hisopi, chamepiteos. ana. ʒ. iij. opobalsami, aristolochia rotunda, marrubij. ana. ʒ. j. in glis optimi expumati. lb. vii. ss.

PLANTIVE.

There bee foure sundry and very diuerse compositions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (and that the greatest) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepsus*, described by *Nicolaus Praepositus*, and vsed of all Apothecaries euery where, which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuell against maligne and pestilent agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lenteries, and many other diseases, and whatsoeuer first Author or inuention it had, it is now euery where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an auncient Greeke Author, practised of *Anicema*, and set out in the Apothecarie Booke of *Nicolaus Praepositus*, which as it is found to bee both in composition and in vse, more facile then the other: so in vertue it is no whit inferior to the same, but rather more excellent and effectuell against all maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Aetius* & other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* auncient Physicians. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose Doses doe differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applied to the same vse, yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious compounded of ʒ. 2. simples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen*, is to bee esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectuell against the diseases tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physicians, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci vipera.

Trochisci vipera, which vsed in the composition of the great Triacle, the flesh of chosen and prepared vipers is boyled in pure water, with greene dill and salt from the bones, then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by little and little, with like weight of crummes of wheaten breade dried, pouring in in the meane time (if neede so require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a little opobalsami aut succidanai, whereof *Trochisces* be made the weight of ʒ. j. and bee diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci

Trochisci scillitici.

Trochisci scillitici be referred to the same composition of Triacle. *R. Medulle scille assate. lb. j. farina erui. ʒ. viij.* and being well bruised they be tempered into Trochisces, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochisci hedricoi.

Trochisci hedricoi be likewise applied to the composition of Triacle. *R. mari aut balsamite, amaraci, asari, aspalathi calami odorati aut galange, phis, pontici, cylobalsami, opobalsami, aut succidancorum, cinamomi, costi. ana. ʒ. iij. mirrhe, folij, nardi, indice, croci, cassie. ana. ʒ. vj. amomi. ʒ. xij. mastiches. ʒ. j.* so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of Trochisces.

Trochisci cypheos.

Trochisci cypheos be requisite to the composition of Mithridate. *R. pulpe uarum passerum, cerebinthina cocte, mirrhe, scenanthi. ana. ʒ. j. lb. calami aromatici. ʒ. ix. cinamomi. ʒ. lb. bdelly, anici, that is, blatte byxanthij, spice nardi, cassie lignee, cyperi, arcenthidum, that is, baccarum iuniperi. ana. ʒ. iij. aspalathi. ʒ. ij. lb. croci. ʒ. j. mellis expumati & vini optimi. ana. so much as is sufficient to the tempering of Trochisces.*

PLANTIVS, in Trochiscos.

There is no alteration made of the Trochisces which bee commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auailable to the great composition, least that in the alteration of them there should be somewhat changed in the greater composition which be by vse approved.

Trochisci e capparibus.

Trochisci e capparibus doth take away the hardnesse of the splene, grosse melancholy, and dissipateth winde. *R. corticum radicum capparis, semi. agri. ana. ʒ. vj. amoniaci. ʒ. lb. semi. nigelle, calamite, succi eupatori, amigdalorum amararum, foliorum ruta, aristolochie rotunde, sem. nasturtij. ana. ʒ. ij. cyperi, scolopendrij, that is, ceterachi. ana. ʒ. j.* receiue and temper the powders in ammoniacum dissolved in vineger and make thereof Trochisces.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci e capparibus bee very wisely described, and yet notwithstanding, if you adde vnto them *Gummi lacce seu caucami & rubei tinctorum. ana. ʒ. j.* they shall become more effectuell, neither be other Trochisces of *Lacca* to bee admitted for this purpose, for that these of Capars be sufficient enough against obstructions, and inueterate diseases of the splene.

Trochischi de Eupatorio.

Trochischi de Eupatorio do dissolue the obstructions and tumours of the liuer especially, & doth cure daylie agues arising therof, the iaundies, and beginning of drop sic. R. manne electe, succi Eupatorii. ana. ℥. j. rosarum. ℥. ss. spodi. ℥. iij. ss. spice nardi indica. ℥. iij. rheibarbani, asari, anisi. ana. ℥. ij. ss. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of agrimonic and Manne are to made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochischi ex Eupatorio, be substituted also in the stead of Trochiskes of reubarbe and wormwood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochischi Alkakengi seu Halycacabi.

Trochischi Alkakengi seu halycacabi, do mitigat the exulceratiōs of the kidnies & bladder, difficultie of vrine arising of those parts, and pissing of bloud. R. Baccarum halycacabi. ℥. iij. sem. cytrulli, melonum & cucurbitæ mundatorum, ana. ℥. iij. ss. boli armeni, gummi Arabi, thuris, sanguinis draconis, papaueris albi, amigdalorum amararum, succi glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, amili, strobilorum, ana. ℥. vj. semi. apii, succini, terra lemnia, sem. hyoscyami, opii. ana. ℥. ij. and with the iuyce of winter cherries, make Trochiskes of these simples. There be other Trochiskes without opium compounded like vnto these.

Trochischi è Myrrha.

Trochischi è myrrha, do mightily bring downe the flowres, and do cure the diseases arising of their suppressiō, & lastly do expell the secōds or a dead childe. R. Myrrhe. ℥. iij. lupinorum. ℥. v. foliorum rute, mentastri, pulegii, cumini, rubee, asse fetida, sagapeni, opoponacis. ana. ℥. ij. and of these be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of mugwort.

Trochischi è terra Lemnia.

Trochischi è terra Lemnia do stay coursing and outrageous humors, especially being thinnē, do restraine the excessiue flux of the bellie inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they doe suppress profusion of bloud, issuing either out of the nose, or wombe, or hemerhoides, or any other part.

R. sanguinis draconis, gummi Arab. Assali, spodi, acacie, hypocistidos, lapidis hematite, balaustiorum, boli armeni, terra lemnia, c. rallii rubri, succini. ana. ℥. ij. margaritarum, tragacanthæ, papaueris nigri. ana. ℥. j. ss. seminis portulacæ tostii, cornu ceruisti, thuris, nucum cupressi, croci. ana. ℥. ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of distilled water of plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochischi è ramich be subtracted of the Trochiskes of terra lemnia, for that they

they comprehend the greatest parte of them. These Trochiskes è terra lemnia comprehend great store of astringing and cooling simples, that therefore other astringing compositions be not requisite. And sith this receipt is of all other most effectuall and least dangerous, all the other be suppressed, as trochisci ramich, trochisci Diarrhodon, trochisci oxyacantha, trochisci è succino seu carabe, & trochisci è spodio, for that the composition of all those is nothing apt nor necessarie. The Trochisches of Diarrhodon which do consist of roses, Spodion, redde and white saunders, of saffron and Camphire may supplie the place of these, especially if they seeme to be vnpleasant in taste.

Trochisci è Caphura.

Trochisci è Caphura do assuage the heate of burning agues, the seruencie of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intempere of the intrailles, and whatsoeuer thirst ariseth thereof. *Rx.* Rosarum rubrarum. \mathfrak{z} . β . Spodij, Glycyrrhine. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, croci, Spice nardi, indica. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. santali citrini. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . Ligni aloes, cardamomi, amyli, caphure. ana. \mathfrak{d} . ij. sacchari albiss. manne electe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. muscilaginis, psilij, depromed out of rosewater, as much as sufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochisci Gallie Moschate.

Trochisci Gallie Moschate do maruellously corroborate the hart, the braine, and the other intrailles, and doe giue a good smell to the mouth and the rest of the bodie. *Rx.* Ligni aloes cru di. \mathfrak{z} . v. ambre. \mathfrak{z} . iij. moschi, \mathfrak{z} . j. muscilaginis tragacanthæ, made in rose water, so much as sufficeth for trochiskes.

Trochisci aliptæ Moschate.

Trochisci aliptæ moschate haue the same effect, either inwardly receiued, or by suffumigation, and further arideth the bodie of difficultie of breathing. *Rx.* Ladani purissimi. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Syracis calaminthe. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . Syracis rubre. \mathfrak{z} . j. ligni aloe. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ambre, \mathfrak{z} . j. caphure. \mathfrak{z} . β . moschi, \mathfrak{d} . β . and distilled rose water, as much as need requireth.

Trochisci Bechichi albi.

Trochisci Bechichi albi, which be also termed *Pillule albe*, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do assuage hoarsnesse and continuall cough. *Rx.* Sacchari albissimi \mathfrak{lb} . j. sacchari candi, penidiorum. \mathfrak{z} . iij. radice iridis florentini. \mathfrak{z} . ij. amyli \mathfrak{z} . j. β . the muscilage of tragacanth made in rose water, so much as sufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Narcotici.

Trochisci Narcotici being safely applied, do assuage the paine of the head & teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish Erysipelas

and inflammations, and being dissolued in other medicines do mitigate the paine of all the externall parts. *Rx.* Gummi arabici & tragacanthæ, amyli, ana. ʒ.ß. ceruse lotie aqua rosarum, ʒ. vj. syraxis calaminte, mirthe, castorij, opij Sapa soluti, ana. ʒ. iij. croci. ʒ.ß. and when they be all brused they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of fleewort taken out of rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought in to the order of Trochiskes in this last place, *Narcotics trochiscos* against extreame torments: the composition whereof is verie apt, and the vse verie necessarie, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

*De Ecligmatis & Conditis.**Ecligma è pineis nucleis.*

Ecligma è Pineis nucleis do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the breast and lungs, verie conuenient and commodious against *Asthma*, difficultie of breathing & inueterate coughes. *Rx.* Nucleorum pineorum recentium. ʒ. 30. pulpe palmularum. ʒ. xxxv. amigdalarum dulcium & amararum, abellanarum assatarum, tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, amyli, capilli veneris, iridis florentini. ana. ʒ. iij. pulpe passularum, butyri recentis, sacchari albißimi. ana. ʒ. iij. mellis albi expumati. lb. iij. fiat *Ecligma*. A wholesome and approued *Ecligma* more effectually then the former against the same diseases. *Rx.* Cinamomi, Hyssopi, glycyrrhizæ. ana. ʒ.ß. Reripha, & mixaria. ana. xxx. numero: Puarum passarum purgatarum, ficuum aridarum, palmularum pinguium. ana. ʒ. ij. fenugraci ʒ. v. capilli veneris. M. j. sem. anisi, feniculi & lini, radices iridis, foliorum calamintæ. ana. ʒ.ß. boile them all in lb. iij. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the streined iuyce with lb. ij. fenidiorum to the thicknesse of hony, and then put in pinearum expurgatarum. ʒ. v. amigdalarum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, amyli. ana. ʒ. iij. iridis. ʒ. ij.

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è scylla auaieth against the same diseases. *Rx.* Succu seu mucoris scyllæ & mellis optimi expumati, ana. lb. j. boile the to the consistence of an ecligme.

Ecligma ad asthma.

Ecligma ad asthma is an *Ecligma* which of all other before propounded is most effectually against *asthma*. *Rx.* Scyllæ assata ʒ.ß. radices iridis, hyssopi, feniculi, myrrhe, croci. ana. ʒ.ß. with sufficient quantitie of hony let the compound *Ecligma* of *Scylla* be confect.

Many simples be condited with sugar, that they may the longer continue with

with their full vertue, whereof some be whole, some be brused: such as be whole be boyled in thrice so much sugar vntill the whole moisture consumed, there remaineth the perfect consistencie of a syrupe, as for example: *Acorns* is condited against the cold diseases of the braines and nerues, and to recover their strength.

Zinziber is condited against the cruditie of the stomach and slimie steame in the lounge.

The roote of Buglosse is condited against the palpitation of the heart and quaulming.

Peaches, fragrant apples, the rinde of the citrine be condited against *Cardalgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and peares, be condited to strengthen & corroborate the stomach.

Wallnuttes, *mirabolani*, *emblici* & *Cepuli*, and nutmegs being condited, do further the concoction of the stomach, do get an appetite and encrease strength.

Cheries and the slippes of endiue, purslane and lettuce condited, do refrigerate, assuage thirst, and procure appetite.

Berberies and Ceruises being condited, do alay thirst and the seruencie of choler, and restraine fluxe of the wombe.

Saterion and *Eringium* condited, do encrease the seed, and stirre vp a desire to carnalitie, and further conception.

Conseruæ.

BUT such as cannot well be boyled, let them be brused and mixed with twice so much sugar, and so be set in the sunne and conserued, and retaine the name of compounded sugar, as *Iosacchar*, *Rhodacchar*. But of all other kindes of compound sugar, these ought especially to be in a readinesse. Sugar of rosemarie, of the flowres of sage, of the flowres of Betonie, and of *stæhadus*, of the flowres of Piony, for that they be especiall good against the colde diseases of the braine and nerues, to comfort and strengthen them against the Epilepsie and Apoplexie.

The sugar of the flowres of flowredeluce, of maidenhaire, and of the roote of *Enula*, doth mildly purge the breast, and ease the lungs.

The sugar of Comferie doth stay spitting of blood.

The sugar of violets, and the flowres of Buglosse doth refrigerate and chere the heart.

Sugar of roses strengtheneth the stomach, stayeth distillations and restraineth eruption of blood.

Sugar of the flowres of Cichorie cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obstructions thereof.

Further, there be sundrie medicinable iuyces referred to vse, whereof some be simple and pure, others mixed with sugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thicknesse of *sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *robua*, that is, *sapales*. These iuyces being strained, be permitted to settle vntill they waxe cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thicknesse of hony, and then is set in the sunne, and so is kept. If sugar be therewith to be mingled, it must be in weight halfe so much as the iuyce is.

Succus e nucibus.

Succus e nucibus, termed *Dyacaryon*, auaieth against sharpe distillations and angina, and hath of the iuyce of young wallnuts .℞. iij. mellis optimi .℞. ij. and be boiled to the thicknesse of honic.

Succus e moris.

Succus e Moris termed *Dyamoron*, is good against the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and sharpe distillations. ℞. *Succi mororum domesticorum* .℞. ℞. *Succi mororum rubri*, mellis optimi expurati .ana. .℞. j. *sapa* .℥. iij. boile them to the consistencie of hony.

The iuyce of wilde plumbes be boyled vntill they become thicke, and then they be used in stead of *Acacia*.

Of Medicines applyed outwardlie, and first of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum.

Oleum Rosarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the stomach, it doth strengthen, thicken, and stay fluxes. ℞. *Gummarum rosarum rubrarum recentium* bereft of the prickles, and brused, *succi rosarum* .ana. .℞. j. macerate them in .℞. v. of *Oleum Omphacinum* which is without salt, in a vessell of glasse closely shut, then set them seuen daies in the sun, after boile them three houres in a double vessell, and the leaues being strained and cast away, put in new, & change them twise or thrise: in fine the leaues being againe strained and cast away, set it in the sun, and boile it in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed. If you want *oleum omphacinum* without salt, the common oile must be often times stirred and washed in the iuyce of fowre grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, easeth the pleuriticke, and asswageth the diseases of the lungs and breast: it is made of common oile being old, or of oile of almonds being new and vsauorie, or which at the least is washed with cold water, then fresh purple violets be put into the oile in a vessell well couered, and be set to sun vntill ten daies, and euerie third day the violets be changed, and in the end drie violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphae.

Oleum Nymphae doth more refrigerate, and doth especially asswage the heate of the

of the kidneys, bladder, and head; mitigateth madnesse, procureth sleepe: it is made as oile of violets, of the white flowres of water lillies macerated in laued oile, but it is set in the sunne twenty daies: in the which space the flowres be chaunged ibrice.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the same effectes that Oleum Nymphaeae doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaseth paine of the head, madnesse, and procureth sleepe. The flowres, leaues, and heads of white poppie being brused, be macerated in laued oile, and it is made as oleum Nymphaeae, yet it may be mildly in a double vessell: there be which do presse out the oile of the seeds of poppie, as out of almonds.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of poppie, both by maceration and exprossion, and is as effectuell as oile of poppie for all the repeated purposes.

Oleum Mandragorae simplex.

Oleum Mandragorae simplex doth more apparently refrigerate, asswageth paine proceeding of inflammation & procureth sleep, it is confected of the apples of mandrag brused & macerated in oile, & easily boiled as oleum Nymphaeae.

Oleum Mandragorae compositum.

Oleum Mandragorae compositum, doth of all other most effectually refrigerate, and doth asswage the paines comming of inflammation, and other aggrievances whatsoever: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frenesie, and put to the nose, forthwith it procureth sleepe.
R. Olet. ℥ ij. ꝑ. succi pomorum mandragorae. ʒ. iij. succi hyoscyami albi. ʒ. ij. succi capitula papaueris albi. ʒ. iij. succi violarum, succi cicuta tenerime. ana. ʒ. j. Opii. Syraci, calaminthe. ana. ʒ. β. all which must be mixed together, and stand in the sunne ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed: in the end the oyle must be strained and set vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum refrigerateth, assingeth, is verie good for the stomach, intrails and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it restraineth vomite, laske and sweate. *R.* Cydoniorum cum cortice & semine tusorum, succi Cydoniorum. ana. ℥ β. mingle them in a vessell of glasse, and powre in of Oleum omphacinum. ℥ β. set them in the sunne fiftene dayes, then boil. them foure houres in a double vessell, and the quince pearce being strained, other fresh are likewise to be incocted the second time, and also the third: time vntill the humour be wholly consumed. In fine presse out the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum myrtinum.

Oleum myrtinum refrigerateth, astringeth and comforteth, but properly the heart, stomacke, braine and nerues, it is made as *Milium* of the berries & leaues of Myrtle, by adding the iuice also when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Mastichinum.

Oleum mastichinum, doth by astringtion corroborate the braine, sinewes, stomach and liuer, very commendious against Lientery, vomit, and crudity. *Rx.* mastiches. \mathfrak{z} . iij. aqua rosarum. \mathfrak{z} . iij. olei omphacini vel rosacei. \mathfrak{lb} . j. Boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the water. Wine in stead of rose water is put in, when as the wearinesse or the vnlustinesse of the sinewes is to bee asswaged.

Oleum menthae.

Oleum menthae doth by annointing corroborate the stomach & other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is conected in this wise. The leaues of fowen Mintes brused with the iuice be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, set in the sunne, boiled, and oftentimes chaunged as hath beene shewed in the oile of roses.

Oleum Absinthij.

Oleum Absinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doeth further concoction, procure appetite, open obstructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of wormewood bee bruised and macerated in *Oleo omphacino*, and it is absolved as oile of Mint.

Oleum chamemelinum.

Oleum chamemelinum, doth with an easie obstruction corroborate the sinews and membranes, and doth excellently assuage paine. *Rx.* Foliorum chamemeli recentium & tusorum. \mathfrak{lb} . j. infuse and macerate them in sweete mature oile, and let them stand in the sunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and straining and casting away the leaues, reserve the oile.

Oleum liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum asswageth the paine of the breast, stomacke, wombe, kidnyes, bladder, and sinewes, and doth ease and concoct them. *Rx.* Florum Liliorum alborum integrorum, casting onely away the yellow filaments. \mathfrak{lb} . j. macerate them in sweete and mature oile, and set them in the sunne twenty daies. There is also another compound oile made hereof more effectually to all the purposes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiveth mastiches, calami aromatici, costi, olei pirethri, carpopalsami. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. cariophilorum & cinamomi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . \mathfrak{ss} . croci. \mathfrak{z} . iij. Bruse them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a little, and being taken from the fire, powre in of sweete oile. \mathfrak{lb} . ij. of the leaues of lillies. \mathfrak{z} . viij. set them forty daies in the sunne, then straine out the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum

Oleum leucolentei.

Oleum Leuci lentei, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and iointes. *Rx.* Florum leucoti. ℥. j. macerated in ℥. j. of sweete oile, set in the sunne tenne daies, changing the floures thrise, and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto if you thinke good. ℥. ii. of the dry floures.

Oleum lasminum.

Oleum lasminum worketh the same effect which Leuco did, but more forcible. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oile of Lillies was of the flowres of lasmine.

Oleum anethinum.

Oleum anethinum doth moderately calefie and digest, asswageth pain of the head, and ache of the sinewes, procureth sleepe, it is made of the leaues of dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantiry of sweete oile, and set in the sunne one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oile being strained from the leaues is reserued.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated partes, especially the lungs and kidneis, it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hesticke feuer, and bee consumed: it is made in this wise, Sweete Almondes being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is powred vpon them a little rosewater, after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bagge, they are pressed in a presse vntill the oile issue out.

Oleum lumbricorum.

Oleum lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heat, and assuage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, and haue paine in the ioynts. *Rx.* Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & preparatorum. ℥. ℥. vini albi. ℥. ij. olei dulcis. ℥. ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine, and the washing of the wormes, then straine the oile and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Iridium.

Oleum Iridii doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth pain of the liuer, wombe, & ioints, it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. *Rx.* radicum iridis tinctorum. ℥. ℥. florum integrorum. ℥. j. decocti, or if

you wish to haue it work more effectually, take of the iuyce of another floure. deluce .℔b. j. *Olei dulcis*. ℔b. ij. ℔. boile them in a double vessell till the water euaporate : and straining the rootes and leaues preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth winde more forcibly then dill, it auaieth against the cholicke, passley, crampe, and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. *Rx. foliorum rutæ modici succorum, succi eiusdem*. ana. ℔b. ℔. macerate them three dayes in .℔b. iij. of sweete oile : boyle them in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed, and then straining the rew, change it 3. or 4. times : in fine reserue the oile expressed.

Oleum Amigdalorum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalorum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doeth dissipate winde, especially the noise of the eares, and openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other inrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifyeth hardnesse but especially of the sinewes, it is confected of bitter almonds dried and purged, brused and calefied in hore boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oile come out.

Oleum Capparibus.

Oleum Capparibus by extenuation and deterfion doth dissolue euerie hardnesse and obstruction, but especially of the spleene, it asswageth the aggrauances, and caleteth euerie disease of the same. *Rx. Corticis radicis tamarisci, foliorum tamarisci, sem. agui, scolopendrii seu asplenii, Cyperi*. ana. ʒ. ij. *aceti, vini optimi*. ana. ʒ. ij. *Olei maturi*. ℔b. j. boyle them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger : then straine the oile and store it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doeth calefie, attenuate, digest and strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. *Rx. Spice nardi*. ʒ. iij. *vini optimi, aquæ rosaceæ*. an. ʒ. ij. ℔. *Olei dulcis*. ℔b. j. ℔. boile them three houres in a double vessell with no verie quicke fire vntill the wine and the water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

Oleum Nardinum compositum. *Rx. Spice nardi*. ʒ. iij. *sampuchi*. ʒ. ij. *Xilotoes, Enule, folii aut maceris, Calami aromatici aut galange, foliorum lauri, Cyperi, scennanthi, cardamomi*. ana. ʒ. j. ℔. these being brused powre into them *vini, aquæ rosaceæ*. ana. ℔b. j. *Olei dulcis*. ℔b. v. macerate them foure and twenue houres, and then boyle them in a double vessell fixe houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum laurinum.

Oleum laurinum is hote and extenuating, doeth dissipate the winde of the stomach, the cholicke, and dissolueth cold diseases of the head, in trailes, wombe, kidneyes and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be brused and boyled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth about the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together and stored vp for oyle.

Oleum vulpinum.

Oleum vulpinum attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaileth against the goute and all paines of the ioynts at all times of the sicknesse. Boyle a foxe vncafed, and vnboyled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water, and when it is boyled to the halfe, put in *Sala. ℥ iij. olei veteris puri. ℔. iij. thymi, anethi, origani. ana. ℔. β.* Boile them till one ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oyle.

Oleum Scorpionibus.

Oleum Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loynes, it is thought to breake and disturbe the stone of the kidneyes, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the peritoneum, or injected into the bladder. *Rx. radicis aristolochie rotunde, gentiane, cyperi, corticum radicum capparis. ana. ℥ j.* Bruse them al & macerate them in *℔. j. β.* of oyle of bitter almonds, and set them to sunne twentie dayes: then boyle them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the sunne againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oyle and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthina.

Oleum Terebinthina is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doeth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues & ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. *Rx. Terebinthina lucida. ℔. iij.* put it in a cucurbite of glasse, and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oyle, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum recinum.

Oleum recinum, which they call *Oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and aridderth the bodie of *Psora*, *Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clyster, it bringeth out wormes & water: it is made thus. *Rx.* The seedes of the greater spurge being brused, oyle is pressed out of them in such force and maner as out of almonds.

Oleum balaninum.

Oleum balaninum doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doeth washe away the speckles, pimpels, spotted, and blacke scarres, proueketh the belly, and procureth vomire; it is made of *Balanum miretsca*, which the Arabians call *Been*, and it is bruised, calcsied, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almondes.

Oleum e castoreo.

Oleum e castoreo auaieth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. *Rx. castorij in aqua vite soluti. ℥. j. olei. ℔. j.* Boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum euphorbij simplex.

Oleum euphorbij simplex worketh the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nose thrills, it bringeth downe steame. *Rx. Euphorbij. ℥. β. leucoij lentei, vini oderiferi. an. ℥. v.* Boile them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de lateribus.

Oleum de lateribus which is also termed the Philosophers oile, doth calcifie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolute and dissipate colde humours, and easeth the Crampe, epilepsie, palsey, the gout, and all cold affects of the iointes and nerues; the making thereof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile stone to litle peeces, burne those in hot coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguiſhe them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntill they bee replenished with oile, after take them out of the oile, and bruse them into fine powder, and put the powder in a cucurbit of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oile of stones, is extreme hoate and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting, it consumeth cold water whatsoeuer in any part of the body, it dissolueth the Epilepsie, palsey, crampe, paine of the sinewes and iointes, of the spleene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affects of the womb. This oile commeth not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

PLANTVS IN OLEA.

The Author imitating the vsuall and auncient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they bee outwardlie applied; hee made choise and hath sette downe the moste effectuall oiles against all kinde of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were

were of little vertue, or seemed vnnecessarie: for he accounteth *Oleum Nimpheae citrine* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other, and *Oleum populeum*, for that vnguentum *populeum* is of greater vertue: and he omitteeth likewise the oile of the other mandrag, *Oleum costium*, *oleum de piperibus*, and *Oleum maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facilitie and yet haue a greater power to calcifie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

Vnguentum *Galeni refrigerans* is effectually against *phlegmones*, *Erysipelata* and tetteres, and against euerie hote intempure. *R.* *Cera alba* ℥. viij. *Olei rosarum* ℥. j. and when they be molten in a double vessel, powre them into another, and by powring cold water by little and little, and now and then changing are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of houselecke or of morrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not exulcerated, or elsé vineger affused, if the skinne continue hot and not exulcerated.

PLANTVS, in Vnguenta.

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating oynment according to the vsual description hath neither the iuyce of nightshade, nor houselecke, yet by adfection of them it becometh effectually against the affectes which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum Rosarum.

Vnguentum *Rosarum* is applyed vnto the same affectes, but truely it is not of such efficacy. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines greace purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water, then like weight of redde roses brused must be mingled therewith, and so must stand seuen daies to putrifie; then melt the greace with a lent fire and straine it: and againe macerating so much of brused roses seuen dayes, infusing together halfe of the iuyce of roses, and oile of almondes sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vpp.

Vnguentum Populeum.

Vnguentum *populeum* asswageth *phlegmones*, burning of agues, feruent heat of the head & kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. *R.* *Germinarum populi recentium* ℥. j. macerated in ℥. iij. of fresh swines greace prepared vntill all the simples w^{ch} in order do followe may in summer be come by. *R.* *Foliorum papaveris rubri*, *foliorum mandragoræ*, *foliorum hyosciami*, *cymarum ruti*, *tenuerrimarum solani*, *lacluce*, *semperviuu*, *maioris & minoris bardane*, *violæ*, *ymbilici*, *venere*, *ana* ℥. iij. bruse them and mixe them with the greace and the buds of the

poplar, and after ten dayes infuse lb. j. of rosewater. Boyle them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if neede so require, boyle it againe vntill it come to the temperment of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

V*nguentum album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth assuage inflammation and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbies and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. *Rx. cerusa. ℥. iij. lythargiri. ℥. ij.* lay them in rosewater a good space, then cast away the rosewater, and put them in a mortar, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much rose oyle as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a little white vineger, and *℥. j. β. camphire.*

PLANTIVS.

This kinde of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de lythargira*, *vnguentum nutritum*, *vnguentum de cerusa crudum*, & *vnguentum de cerusa coctum*, which is tearmed also *Emplastrum de cerusa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum astringens.

V*nguentum astringens*, the astringing ointment bringeth together the open parts of the bodie, doth compact the conduites and poares, doth intercept and drive backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the anus, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of blood. *Rx. galle immatura, mucum cupressi, baccarum myrti, balaustiorum, mollis corii corticum glandium, acacia, rhois, mastiches, ana. ℥. j.* Bruse them all exquisitely, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vnripe medlers & sorborum immaturorum. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with lb. j. of oyle of roses often laued in allume water, and *℥. iij. of white waxe.*

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is verie forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento comiisse* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum diacalypteos.

V*nguentum diacalypteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begunne, and doth resolute such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers & dysepulorica. *Rx. adipis suille r centis sine sale & fibris. lb. ij. olei veteris, lythargii creti & triiti. ana. lb. iij. coctidos leuigate. ℥. iij.* The greace and the oyle be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitrioll must be then cast vpon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palme aut saltum*

saltem miris, serbi or mespilini, and when it is come to the thicknesse of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) must be put in by little and little as it is in boyling. Then boyle it againe vntill it staine not the fingers, & become to the consistencie of an emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum diacalciteos (according to this description of Galen) is to be vsed instead of those foure which Mesues hath described, two vnder the title of *vnguentum diaphenicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum diapompholygos.

Vnguentum diapompholygos refrigerateth, astringeth, and restrineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a scarre. *R.* Olei rosacei ℥. x. succi solatri. ℥. xiiij. bulliant ad succi consumptionem. Adde cere albe. ℥. v. ceruse lotae. ℥. ij. plumbi vsti & loti, pompholygis, thuris. ana. ℥. j. coquantur in vnguenti formam.

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans.

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans, the red drying ointment worketh the same effect. *R.* Olei rosarum. lb. j. cere albe. ℥. v. liquatis insperge lapidis calaminarij, terre lemnie exquisitae tritorum. ana. ℥. iiij. Lythargiri, ceruse. ana. ℥. iij. caphura. ℥. j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum dialtheos.

Vnguentum dialtheos is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. *R.* altheae radicum recentium & contusarum. lb. ij. seminis lini & fenugraci contusorum. ana. lb. j. macerentur in aqua. lb. viij. deinde leuiter coquantur, & exprimatur muscilago de hac. lb. ij. & olei. lb. iiij. bulliant dum muscilago sit absumpta: tum adde cere. lb. ss. resine. lb. ss. terebinthine. ℥. ij. percoquantur in vnguenti crassitiem.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum dialtheos simplex is here described, for that the cōpound through Colophonium, Galbanum and Gummi bedere, was too filthie, and there were other receipts extant of a more dissoluing vertue.

Vnguentum resumptium.

Vnguentum resumptium dictum, hath great power mildly to mollifie without anie manifest heate, and therefore may be safely applied to such as haue Asthma or Hecticam feb. em, a consumption, Pleurisie, or an ague. *R.* seminis lini, altheae & fenugraci, gummi Arabici, tragacanthae. ana. ℥. ij. macerentur & bulliant in lb. ss. aquae rosarum. Straine out the muscilage, and therein dissolve adipis suilli, gallinae, anseris & anatis. ana. ℥. ij. aspi. ℥. ss. olei violarum, chamemeli &

amigdalorum dulcium. ana. ℥. ij. medulla vituli, butiri recentis, cera alba. ana. lib. ℔. coquantur in vnguentum.

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *resumptivum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, assuage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, & *vnguentum philagrij*, neither anie other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, & to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippa.

Vnguentum Agrippa doth not only mollifie, but also mightely attenuate and deuide and dissipate *adematia corporis*, cureth inueterate affectes of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneyes, and by annointing prouoketh the bellie, and thereby helpeth the dropic-sicke. *R. radicia brionia. lb. ij. radicum cucumeris agrestis. lb. j. scylla. lb. ℔. radices ireos recentis. ℥. iij. radicum filicis & ebuli, tribuli marini. ana. ℥. ij. tunc omnia recentia macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non rancidi. lib. iij. parum deinde feruescant, & in expresso olei cera citrina. ℥. xv. liquescent in vnguento consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the oymntment of Agrippa all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boyled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boyling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place verie wisely commaund, that no especiall effectuell cataplasm should be confected to mollifie scirrhus and hard matters of these rootes bruised, and crude with greace and waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

Vnguentum Aregon, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightely extenuate and digest, and is verie commodious against cold affects of the bodie, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lounge, ioynts and great guts. *R. rosmarini, maior ana, radicus iari, serpilli, rute, radicu cucumeris agrestis. ana. ℥. iij. ℔. foliorum lauri, saluie, sabine, publicae maioris & minoris, radices brionia. ana. ℥. iij. laureole. ℥. ix. foliorum cucumeris, agrestis & nopita. ana. lb. ℔. omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tunc macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi. lb. vj. affusa aqua vite lb. j. deinde coquantur dum contabescant & abstracta sit aqua, oleum percolatur in quo cera. ℥. xvj. liquantur & adipis vsini, olei laurini. ana. ℥. iij. olei moschelini. ℥. ℔. petrolei. ℥. j. butyri. ℥. iij. agitando hi putres insperguntur mastiches, olibani. ana. ℥. vii. pirethri, euphorbij, Zinziberis, piperis. ana. ℥. j. omnia vnguanti forma coeant.*

Vnguentum

Vnguentum mercurium magnum.

Vnguentum mercurium magnum is especially good against colde affectes of the braine, sinewes and iointes, against quivering, conuulsion, palsey, and the goute, and is effectuell to mollifie hard tumours especially of the splene. *Rx.* cere alba. ℥. j. olei. ℥. iij. rosmarini, foliorum lauri. ana. ℥. iij. tamarisci. ℥. iij. ruta. ℥. iij. β. ebali, sauiæ, balsamita, that is, mentha aquatica, ocymi, saline, solij, calamithes, artemisæ, helleny, betonice, acanthæ, quæ est arsa branchina, asparagule, quæ est aparina anemones quæ herba venti dicitur, pimpinellæ, agrimonij, absinthij, storui minoris, qui est herba paralis, costi herbe hortensis, quæ herba dicitur sanctæ Mariæ, cimmarum sampuci, semperuiui minoris quod Crassula appellatur, millefolij, semperuiui maioris, chamedrios, plantaginis seu quinque nerui, centauri minoris, fragrarie, quinque folij, retrahit, id est, herbe iudaice. ana. ℥. ij. ℥. ij. radice alibæ, cumini, mirrhe. ana. ℥. j. β. senugreci. ℥. vj. butyri. ℥. v. semi. vrticæ, violarum et papaueris rubri, menta asperi, seu mente agrestis, mente satine, oxylapati, polytrichi, cardiobataui, id est, cardui benedicti, periclementi, id est, caprifolij, seu matris syluæ, maratri, herba moschate, quæ est prima geranii species, trifolij acetosi, quod alebrya dicitur, scolopendrii, quod est ceterach, crispule, id est bupthelini, caphorate herbe, id est abrotani, siracii, medulle cervine. ana. ℥. ij. adipis vrsini, adipis gallinacei, mastiches. ana. ℥. β. thuri. ℥. ij. olei nardini. ℥. j. The herbes must be gathered in the moneth of May, and being fresh and greene, must be bruised and macerated seuen daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eight day they must be boiled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oyle must be powred in, then they must bee againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted and the wine whollie consumed. After straine and presse out the oyle, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, styrax, butirum, adipis, mastiche, thus, oleum nardinum et cera, and when they are dissolved with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

PLANTIVS.

Of vnguentum Mercurium there be three descriptions described in other authors truly not verie necessarie against the cold affects of the sinewes & other parts, such that vnguentum Aregon tofore described is effectuell enough against them: but whosoever desireth to haue this vnguentum Mercurium, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Mirepsus* and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus which the auncient Physitions tearmed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is verie commodious against increasing Phlegmons. *Rx.* resina, picis, cere. ana. ℥. β. and oile as much as sufficeth.

Vnguentum basilicum magnum.

V*Nguentum Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers. *Rx. cera alba, resina, seni vaccini, picis, terebinthine, olibani, mirrha, ana. ʒ. j. olei quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these ointments, namely *vnguento basilico, aureo, Apostolorum, Aegyptiaco & emulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine & depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the pouldred affects of the skinnē) then of *ceruse*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine maner of putting in the oringes or citrines, whose pulpe & iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinnē, yea rather much more better then the rinde.

Vnguentum aureum.

V*Nguentum aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate & safely cure them. *Rx. cere citrine. lb. ʒ. thuris, mastiches, ana. ʒ. j. olei non rancidi. lb. ij. ʒ. terebinthine. ʒ. ij. resina, colophoni. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. croci. ʒ. j.* the waxe is melted in oyle, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to them.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

V*Nguentum Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, & in steed thereof restoreth new. *Rx. terebinthine, cera alba, ammoniaci, ana. ʒ. xiiij. opoponacis, floriseris, ana. ʒ. ij. aristolochie rotunde, thuris masculi, bdellij. ana. ʒ. vj. mirrhe, galbani, ana. ʒ. iiij. l. thargiri. ʒ. ix. olei si estas fuerit. lb. ij. ʒ. lyems. lb. iij. bdellium, ammoniacum, opoponax and Galbanum macerated in vineger, and dissolved with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and waxe, and boyled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.*

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

V*Nguentum Aegyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, in veterate and fistulous vlcers doth exciccate and cate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. *Rx. eruginis. ʒ. j. mellis optimi. ʒ. xiiij. aceti fortis. ʒ. vij.* all these be boyled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

V*Nguentum ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is marvellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist, and also against other thiness of the skinnē. *Rx. radici enula ex aceto cocta, iuse & creta lb. j. axungia p. ceri*

porci, olei. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. cere noua. \mathfrak{z} . j. argenti viui extincti, terebinthina lota. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. salu vulgaris bene trite. \mathfrak{z} . β . the waxe and the grease be liquified in oyle, and to them is added Enula, and after quicke siluer and salt, and last turpentine. It shalbe with more safene vsed, if in steed of quicke siluer, of the iuyce of sumitric and lymons. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. be put in, and both of them must be had leuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

Vnguentum Citrinum, or more truly Citreum, doth repress pimple shooting out of the skinne, especially in the face, either by meane of choler or of salt sicame, and doth exterge speckles, tetters, blewnesse, fihkie scarres, and rednesse of the eyes. R. Boraci. \mathfrak{z} . ij. Carbone. \mathfrak{z} . j. Corallij albi. \mathfrak{z} . β . Amant, id est, aluminu plumosi, umbilici marini seu belirici, tragacantha, amyli. crystalli, euthali, dentali, eluri albi, niri. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ceruse ex radice dracumij facta. \mathfrak{z} . j. ceruse vulgaris. \mathfrak{z} . vj. adriis suis recentis, salu expertis & puri. \mathfrak{lb} . β . semi. caprini. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . adipsi gallinacci. \mathfrak{z} . j. Liquifie the fattes in a double vessell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two oranges cut in small peeces, straine the fat, and then iniekt thereto all the other simples finely brused, and temper them with a splatter. Last of all let the borax & camphire finely brused be strewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, store it to your vse.

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, spleene and externall partes, and likewise dissolueth and by little and little dissipateth anie scirrhus matter, if it be applied in the beginning. R. Mucilaginum seminis fenugreci, seminis lini, radicis althee. ana. \mathfrak{lb} . j. olei veteris puri. \mathfrak{lb} . iij. lychargi purgati atque triti. \mathfrak{lb} . j. β . The lytarge must be dissolved in a mortar with oyle by little and little, vntill they be exquisitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them still with a splatter vntill they become thicke. After put in to them leasurably the muscilaiges depromed, and boyle them to the substance of an emplaster, and if neede so require, that it should be more forcible in working, for euery pound of simples put in \mathfrak{z} . j. of the roote of floured luce powned.

Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.

Emplastrum Diachylon magnum is more effectuell for all and euerie the affects before repeated, for that it consisteth of more mollifying and digesting simples. R. Lychargi puri triti & creti. \mathfrak{lb} . j. olei irini, chamemulini & anellini. ana. \mathfrak{z} . viij. muscilaginum seminis lini, fenugreci, ficum pinguium & ruarum passarum, succi iridis & sille, espi. cathiocke. ana. \mathfrak{z} . xij. β . terebinthina. \mathfrak{z} . iij. resina pini, ceracirine. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. reduce them all to an emplaster in like order as hath bene described in the simple.

OF EMPLAISTERS. Lib. 8.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus doth also mightely mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an absesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scou-
reth the quittance and arture. *R.* Mucilaginum seminis lini. libea, fenugraci, mediani, corticis vlm. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. β . cleorum chamemili, liliorum & anethi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. ammoniaci, galbani, opoponacis, sagapeni. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . croci. \mathfrak{z} . ij. terobinthine. \mathfrak{z} . ij. cera nona. \mathfrak{z} . xx. make an emplaister in order before prescribed.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRA.

The auncient Physitions haue described many mollifying emplaisters, and foure of these they intitled vnder the name of *Diachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this emplaister of the muscages it worketh more forcibly against all the foresaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*, wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Meliloto.

Emplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is verie conuenient in hard tumours of the stomacke, breast, and spleene, and the outretching hypocondria. *R.* Meliloti. \mathfrak{z} . vj. foliorum chamemili, seminis fenugraci, radicis althea, baccarum lauri, absinthij, sampsuci. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iij. cardamomi, ciperi, irinos, spica nardi, ammeos, cassie lignee, seminis. pji, anisi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . ammoniaci. \mathfrak{z} . x. styraci, bdellij, ana. \mathfrak{z} . v. terobinthine. \mathfrak{z} . j. β . ficus pingues. xij. sem. vrsini, resinae. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. β . cera. \mathfrak{z} . vj. olei maiorani & nardini, so much as sufficeth, make thereof an emplaister, liquefie the goates suet, the rosin and the waxe in oyle, and put into them ficus pingues tritas & cretas, then ammoniacum and bdellium dissolued in vineger, and lastly the powders of the other simples searced.

PLANTIVS.

Emplastrum è meliloto, è baccis lauri, ceroneum, and oxiroceum seeme to be sufficient against all affectes and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessarie, namely, neither *emplastrum è sinapi*, nor *varia emplastra è fermento*, nor *emplastrum ex alijs*, nor the emplaister which is imputed to *Arifarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder and other partes, especially taking their originall of anie cold cause or of winde. *R.* Thuru, mastiches, myrrhe, ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. baccarum lauri. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ciperi, cassi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . mellis colati so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous emplaister for the dropsie if the dese of Ciperus be \mathfrak{z} . j. β . and lib. β . of dried goates doung be put thereto.

Emplastrum

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

Emplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardnesse of the spleene, doth releaseth the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold. R. picis navalis colati, cere. ana. ℥. ij. ℥. iij. sagapeni. ℥. ij. ammoniaci, terebinthine, colophonij, croci. ana. ℥. j. ℥. ii. aloes, eburi, mirrhe. ana. ℥. j. poponacis, styracis, galbani, mastiches, aluminis, fenugreci, styracis rubri, bdellij. ana. ℥. iiij. lybargiri. ℥. j. ℞. & the emplaster must be made in this wise; Sagapenum ammoniacum, opoponax, galbanum, & pix must be liquefied in wine and strained, then put too the colophinam colatam, deinde styracem, mastichon, thus, mirrhim, bdellism, crita cretaque. Forthwith iniekt turpentine, allume, lytharge, and fenugreece. The emplaster which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands, by addition of the powder of aloes and saffron, alwayes anointing your hands with oyle of laurell, and thereof concinnate magdalee.

Emplastrum Oxiroceum.

Emplastrum Oxiroceum doth mollifie and dissipate also euerie kind of hardnesse, doth assuage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. R. Cere, picis navalis, croci, colophonie ana. ℥. iij. terebinthine, ammoniaci, galbani, mirrhe, eburi, mastiches. ana. ℥. j. ℥. iij. galbanum and ammoniacum must be liquefied and strained in vineger, then the pitch must be strained and put thereto: after that the waxe, forthwith colophonia and the turpentine, a liute while after the masticke and the mirrhe. The emplaster being decocted must be put in cold water, and being strained out, must be wrought with powder of saffron, anointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutineth and incarnateth, and also cicatrizeth. R. Succorum apii, plantaginis & betonice, cere, picis, resine, terebinthina. ana. ℞. ℞. Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easily to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto terebinthina.

Emplastrum gratia Dei.

Emplastrum gratia Dei consisteth almost of the same simples, and serueth to the same vse. R. Terebinthina. ℞. ℞. resine. ℞. j. cere alba. ℥. iij. mastiches. ℥. j. betonice, borbene, pimpinelle recentium. ana. M. j. Bruise the herbes, & boyle them in white wine till they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the waxe, rosin and masticke to an apt consistencie of an emplaster, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the turpentine.

Emplastrum diuinum.

Emplastrum diuinum is farre better against maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quicure and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and

bringeth them to an ascarre. R. Galbani, mirrhe. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. \mathfrak{z} . ij. ammoniaci. \mathfrak{z} . iij. \mathfrak{z} . iij. opoponaci, mastiches, aristolochie longa, eruginis. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. lythargiri, olei com. munis. ana. lb. β . cera noua. \mathfrak{z} . viij. thuris. \mathfrak{z} . j. \mathfrak{z} . j. bdellij. \mathfrak{z} . ij. magnesi. \mathfrak{z} . iij. The lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vntill it become thicke. Then the waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquefied is taken off the fire, and forthwith be injected galbanum, ammoniacum, opoponax and bdellium dissolued in vineger and wine, boyled and strained after the powder mirrhe, mastiches, thuris, aristolochie rotunde & magnetis is sprinkled in: in fine, puluis eruginis, least that if it should be boyled anie long space the emplaister become red.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRUM DIVINVM.

These emplaisters de Ianna, gratia Dei, & Diuinu which be described against wounds and vlcers, be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnneccessarie in this place to repeat anie other. For emplastrum Oribasij duplex & emplastrum Apuleij be all comprehended vnder this Diuine emplaister, all which serue for the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacie.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

Emplastrum ad Herniam. R. Gallarum, nucum cupressi \mathfrak{ss} ij, balaustiorum, acacia, seminis plantaginis, seminis psyllij, seminis nasturtij, cupularum mel. indurum, fabarum torrefactarum, aristolochie longa & rotunde, mistillorum. ana. \mathfrak{z} . β . Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of roses, then torrefie and drie them.

Aliud.

Emplastrum aliud ad Herniam. R. confida maioris et minoris, caude equine, casti, solispendij, radicis ofimidis regalis & floris. ana. \mathfrak{z} . j. thuris, mirrhe, alci, mastiches, mummie. ana. \mathfrak{z} . ij. b. li armene loze in aceto, l. r. d. caluminari preparati, lytharg. r. an. sm. diuini dyacendi. ana. \mathfrak{z} . iii. p. m. naualis. lb. i. j. rebimline, \mathfrak{z} . vj. or as much as sufficeth to make an emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

There be omitted here also other emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomacke, kidneyes and wombe, which be not in vse, and in steed whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessitie, to that this number of emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough both to store the Apothecaries shop, and to cure the chiefe kindes of diseases, causes and symptoms, neither was it necessary to fülle this Medicamentarie booke with vnusuell and vnneccessarie compositions, which can not but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auale to their peculiar effects (because they be seldome put in vse) be described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and partes in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERAL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPAL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLUME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. Of paine in the head.	1	30. A Treatise of the worthines of the eyes.	
2. Of headach caused of heate.	2	49. 50.	
3. Of headach caused of cold.	5	31. Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	51. 52
4. Of headach caused of drinesse and moistnesse.	6	32. Of the three kindes of Cataracts vncurable.	53
5. Of headach caused of blood.	7	33. Of diseases which chaunce to the eyes, by blood, choler, steame and melancholy, and their cures.	53
6. Of headach caused of choler.	8. 9	Ead. The making of an excellent water called a Collirium.	Eadem
7. Of headach caused of steame.	10	34. Of Pannicles.	54. 55
8. Of headach caused of windinesse.	11	35. Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	57
9. Of headach caused of the stomack.	12. 13	36. Of the infirmities of the eye caused of melancholie.	58. 59
10. Of headach caused of drunkennes.	13. 14	37. Of diseases happening to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staves or stones.	60
11. Of headach caused of seauers.	14. 15	38. Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chaunce into the eyes.	61.
12. Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15	39. Of paine in the eares.	62
13. Of headach called the Migraine.	17	40. Of sound or noise in the eares.	63
14. Of giddinesse in the head called Vertigo	18. 19.	41. Of deafnesse and slow hearing.	64
15. Of the Frenesie.	21	42. Of Impostumes breeding in the eares.	65.
16. Of the Lethargie.	24. 25.	43. Of vlcers in the nose.	66
17. Of the losse of memorie.	26. 27	44. Of bleeding at the nose.	66. 67
18. Of dead sleepe called Carus or Subeth.	29	45. Of distillation, reume, and boarcenesse.	68.
19. Of congelation or taking.	29	46. Of paine in the teeth.	70
20. Of profound sleepe called Sopor or Coma	30. 31.	47. Of teeth that be blacke and loose.	71
21. Of the losse both of mouing and sense, called Apoplexie.	31. 32	48. Of vlcers in the mouth.	71
22. Of the Palsey in halfe the bodie.	33. 34	49. Of a stinking mouth.	72
23. Of the Palsey in one member only.	38. 39		
24. Of the falling sicknesse.	40. 41		
25. Of the Crampe.	42. 43		
26. Of the Mare.	43		
27. Of Madnesse.	44. 45		
28. Of Melancholie.	45. 46		
29. Against trembling and shaking, called Tremor.	48. 49		

THE TABLE.

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. A gainst inflammation of the Colic mella.	74	10. Of spitting of blood.	87.88
2. Of a loose Colic mella.	75	11. Of spitting of matter.	90
3. Of inflammation of the tonsils.	76	12. Of the Ptisis.	91.92
4. Of malignant ulcers of the tonsils.	77	13. Of panting of the heart.	93
5. Of the Squinancie.	78	14. Of Swallowing.	95.96
6. Of the Cough.	80	15. Of lacke of milke.	98
7. Of the Asthma.	82	16. Of abundance of milke.	99
8. Of the Pleurisie.	83.84	17. Of milke that is curdled in the breasts of women.	100
9. Of the Inflammation of the lungs.	85.86	18. Of inflammation of the paps in women.	101.

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. O f weaknesse of the stomacke.	101.102	29. Of obstructions of the spleene.	151
2. Of yellow and vomiting.	104	30. Of the Iauindies.	eadem
3. Of immoderate thirst.	105	31. Of the euill state of the bodie.	154
4. Of paine in the stomacke.	106	32. Of the Dropisie.	155
5. Of inflammation of the stomacke.	107	33. Of the dropisie Anasarca.	157
6. Of a horring of meate.	108	34. Of the dropisie Ascitis.	159
7. Of a doglike appetite.	110	35. Of the dropisie Tympanites.	ead.
8. Of great famine.	112	36. Of the reines that send forth bloudie urine.	160
9. Of euill digestion.	113	37. Of inflammation of the reines.	161
10. Of windinesse of the stomacke.	115	38. Of the stone in the reines.	163
11. Of yelking or hicket.	117	39. Of vnmeasurable pissing.	167
12. Of Choler.	119	40. Against vlcers of the reines.	168
13. Of the fluxe Diarrhea.	120.121	41. Of the stone in the bladder.	170
14. Of the fluxe Lienteria.	123	42. Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curdled in it.	ead.
15. Of the fluxe Disenteria.	125	43. Of inflammation of the bladder.	173
16. Of Tenasmus.	127	44. Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	173
17. Of the Cholick.	129	45. Of the Strangurie.	175
18. Of Iliaca passio.	132	46. Of difficultie of pissing.	176
19. Of wormes.	134	47. Of stopping of the vrine.	177
20. Of the Hemorrhides.	137	48. Of exulceration of the priuie members.	178.
21. Of the falling out of the twell.	139	49. Of the continuall standing of the yerd.	179.
22. Of cleftes of the fundamont.	140	50. Of shedding of sperme or seeds.	180
23. Of the weaknesse of the liuer.	ead.	51. Of losse of carnall copulation.	182
24. Of the obstructions of the liuer.	143		
25. Of inflammation of the liuer.	144		
26. Of distempere of the spleene.	147		
27. Of the inflammation of the spleene.	149		
28. Of hardnesse of the spleene.	150		

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
52. Against bursting or ruptures.	183	60. Of windiness in the wombe.	193
53. Of stopping of Menstrua.	185	61. Of exulceration of the wombe.	199
54. Of flowing of menstrua.	189	62. Of straightnesse of the matrix.	200
55. Of women's fluxe.	190	63. To take away barrennesse.	201
56. Of strangling of the wombe.	191	64. Of sore trauell in child-birth.	204
57. Of falling out of the wombe.	194	65. Of the Scatica.	205
58. Of the Mole in the matrix.	195	66. Of the Goutte in the feete and ioyntes.	210.
59. Of inflammation of the wombe.	198		

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. A Exposition of Feauers.	215	7. Of a pure intermitting Tertian.	232
A table of Feauers.	219	8. Against a Bastardly Tertian.	236
2. Of one day Feauer.	220	9. Of a Quartaine Feauer.	238
3. Of a Diarie lasting moe dayes.	224	10. Of a Quotidian Feauer.	241
4. Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.	226	11. Of a Feauer Eclache.	242
5. Against continuall Feauers.	228	12. Of a Hemetrick Feauer.	245
6. Of a burning Feauer.	230	13. Of the Pestilence.	246

The Table of the fifth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. What swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apoplema.	255	judgements thereof. 269. Four kinds or times of tumours besides nature.	270
2. Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature. 257. From whence the difference of tumours above nature. 258. of hot humours, ead. of cold humours. ead. Tumores complicati, one will seemeth to haue affinitie with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humors. 259. What tumours do associate Phlegmon, eadem. of Erysipelatous tumours. ead. of Testudo and Talpa. 260. of Scirrhus tumours & Cancer. ead. of Leprosia. 261. Four kinds of Impetigo. ead. of white pustules. 265		Signes of putrefaction. 271. What abscessions may easily be digested. 273	
3. Of the causes of tumours above nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie. 265		5. The common order of curing of tumours. ead. Four things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members. 274	
4. Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing, together with the		The finding out of the causes; the beginning of the cure of tumours above nature. 275. The common ingendring of euerie Phlegmone, ead. Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies. 276.	
		6. Of Abscessions generally. 278. The best order of curing is declared three wayes. 279.	
		7. Of a vne Phlegmone; and of other tumours ingendred of bloud. 282. Downe differences of tumors caused of bloud & ead	
		8. Of the causes, signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone. 283	

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
9. The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie.	284.	20. Of Oedema and other cold, stegmaticke, and flatuosis tumours.	317
10. Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre.	285	21. Of the cure of Oedema caused of a stegmaticke humour flowing into some member.	319
11. Of the cure of a Carbuncle.	294	22. Of Tumours above nature, which the Latins call Inflationes, but they are commonly called windie Apostemes.	323
12. Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.	297	23. Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum apostema, that is, a waterish Aposteme.	327
13. Of the cure of Gangrena.	299	24. Of the diseases called Glandula, Nodi, and Struma, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrecentia.	330
14. Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of cholera.	302	25. Of hard and scirrhus tumours, engendered of Melancholie.	346
15. Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas.	304	26. Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancër Apostematofus.	354.
16. Of the cure of Erysipelas.	305		
17. Of tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrrurgians, cholericke pusles.	309		
18. Of the evils called Formica, and of other differences of Verruce.	314		
19. The indgements and cure of Verruce.	315.		

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. Of the diverse names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning.	361	14. What quantitie of the decoction is to be taken at once.	eadem
2. Of the signes thereof.	362	15. How many dayes this decoction is to be received.	373
3. Of the causes of the breaking out of Pusules.	364	16. Of the time of giving this decoction, and things to be observed therein.	ead.
4. Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.	366	17. Of things to be eschued of him that receiveth this decoction.	ead.
5. Of Fumigations.	ead.	18. Of things to be corrected, or symptomes to be oppugned in this cure.	374
6. Of spurgings of Morbus Gallicus.	367	19. Of Excrements.	375
7. Of the preparation of humours.	ead.	20. Of Diet to be observed in this cure.	376
8. Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.	368	21. Of the roote of China.	ead.
9. What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose.	eadem.	22. Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China.	377
10. Of the decoction of Guaiacum.	369	23. Of the election of China.	ead.
11. Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood.	370	24. Of another manner of making the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the bark.	
12. Of the Time convenient to give this decoction.	372		
13. Of the Place where this decoction is to			

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
barke.	eadem.	benigne and harmelesse.	ead.
25. Of other faculties or vertues which this Sassa hath.	379	30. Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
26. Of Suffumigations which some practitioners use.	ead.	31. Of the Cure by anointing with quicksilver.	382
27. Of the manner of perfuming the whole bodie.	380	32. To correct the Symptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.	383.
28. Of the Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.	381	33. Of the diuerse compositions of ointments which be used in this way of curing.	384
29. Of Suffumigations made of a matter		34. Of Precipitation given by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. Of Suppositaries.	386	16. Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.	ead.
2. Of making Nodulus.	387	17. Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.	ead.
3. Of making Pessaries.	ead.		408.
4. Of Clusters or Enema.	388	18. Of Epithema or Fetus.	409
5. Of making Sirupes.	390	19. Of making Sacculus.	410
6. Of making Iuleps.	394	20. Of making Scutum.	ead.
7. Of Dola sue Potio.	ead.	21. Of making a Cataplasme.	411
8. Of making Bolus.	399	22. Of making Emplastrea.	412
9. Of making Pilles.	400	23. Of making vnguenta.	413
10. Of making Apozema.	ead.	24. Of making a Liniment.	414
11. Of making Mists.	401	25. Of making Frontale.	ead.
12. Of making Powders.	402	26. Of making Cucusa and Semicucusa.	415
13. Of Electuaries and Conserues, of Lozenges and Manys Christ.	ead.	27. Of making Suffitus.	416
14. Of making Conditum & Conserua.	405	28. Of making Collirium.	ead.
15. Of making Pasta Regia or Mezopape.	407.	29. Of making Nasale, or Eribinum.	ead.
		30. Of making Apophlegmatismus.	417
		31. Of making Distillations restorative.	ead.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
Of Syrupes.		Syrupus e radicibus.	ead.
Syrupus Acidus simplex.	421	Syrupus Adiantum.	429
Syrupus e Succo limorum.	423	Syrupus e Stechade.	ead.
Oxysaccharum simplex.	424	Syrupus e saccharum siccarum.	430
Oxymel simplex.	ead.	Syrupus Nymphaeae.	ead.
Oxymel scellitum.	ead.	Syrupus de Papauere.	431
Syrupus e Cichorio.	426	Diaodon.	ead.
Syrupus Lini domestici.	427	Syrupus Violarum.	432
Syrupus Bizantinus.	ead.	Syrupus Zithorum.	433
Syrupus Scolopendriae.	428	Syrupus de Hyssopo.	ead.

THE TABLE.

Syrupus de Præssio.	434	Pillule Polycroste.	ead.
Syrupus Symplicis.	ead.	Pillule de lapide Cyaneo.	449
Syrupus è succo Engloff.	435	Pillule de Thymelæa.	ead.
Syrupus è cortice Citri.	ead.	Pillule ex Esula.	ead.
Syrupus Melissophyllis.	ead.	Pillule è Cynogloss.	ead.
Syrupus è Menta.	ead.	Pillule Astrologie.	450
Syrupus Absynthij.	436	Pillule percolymnitana.	p. 51. lib. i.
Cydoniorum miba, that is, the iuyce deco- cted to thickness.	ead.	Of drie Antidotaries.	
Syrupus Martini.	ead.		
Syrupus Fumariæ.	437	D ianthon.	450
Syrupus è malis odorif. is.	ead.	Electuarium plures archonticum.	ead.
Syrupus Altheæ.	ead.	Diarragacanthum frigidum.	451
Syrupus Raphani.	ead.	Diaireos simplex.	ead.
Syrupus Artemisise.	438	Electuarium Diaireos compositum.	ead.

Of Purging receipts.

E lectuarium è Prunis.	438	Pulsus Cordiacus.	454
Catholicum simplex.	439	Aromaticum rosarum maius.	ead.
Catholicum maius.	440	Electuarium Diarrhodon abbasii.	455
Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.	ead.	Electuarium Diatrios santalæ.	ead.
Electuarium è succo rosarum.	441	Diacroc.	eadem
Diacydonion.	ead.	Dialacca maior.	466
Electuarium Diacroc.	ead.	Electuarium echilarans.	ead.
Diaphenicon.	ead.	Electuarium Diaspermaton.	ead.
Benedicta.	442	Electuarium diatrios dominicæ.	457
Confectio Hamæcis.	ead.	Electuarium diacalamint bes compositum.	ead.
Hiera simplex.	443	D iaolibanum solominitanum.	p. 52. lib. i.
Hiera Diacolocynthidos.	ead.	Of moist Antidotaries.	
Hydragogum minus.	444		
Hydragogum maius.	ead.	A ntidotus Analeptice.	458
Ynguentum Latheride.	ead.	Antidotus Diasaterion.	ead.
Electuarium Diasarum.	445	Antidotus è cocco Baphico, sen grano inse- florio.	ead.
Pillule Stomachicæ.	ead.	Antidotus è bacis Lauri.	459
Pillule Ruffi.	446	Philonium.	ead.
Pillule Assaieret.	ead.	Antidotus tearmed Requies.	460
Pillule de Eupatorio.	ead.	Theriace Diatesaron.	ead.
Pillule Mastichine.	ead.	Theriace Andromachi senioris.	ead.
Pillule Imperiales.	447	Mutridatum.	461
Pillule sine quibus esse uol.	ead.		
Pillule è Fumaria.	ead.		
Pillule Auræ.	ead.	D e Trochiscis seu Pastillis.	
Pillule de Agarico.	ead.		
Pillule Cocchie.	448	T rochisci è Piperis.	462
Pillule ex Hermodactilis.	ead.	Trochisci Scillitici.	463

pulvis benadictus.
pulvis Nabetus.

pag. 54. lib. i.
p. 56. l. i.

Trochisci

THE TABLE.

<i>Trochisci Cytherei.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum Nardinum compositum.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Capparibus.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum Laurinum.</i>	473
<i>Trochisci de Eupatorio.</i>	464	<i>Oleum Vulpinum.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Allakengi seu Halycabii.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum e Scorpionibus.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Myrrha.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum Terebinthine.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci de Terra Lemnia.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum Recinum.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci de Capbura.</i>	465	<i>Oleum Balauinum.</i>	474
<i>Trochisci Gallie muschata.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum e Castoreo.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Alipte muschata.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum Euphorbij simplex.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Bechici albi.</i>	ead.	<i>Oleum de lateribus.</i>	ead.
<i>Trochisci Nigrotici.</i>	ead.	<i>Petroleum.</i>	ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

E cligma e pinea micibus.	466	<i>Unguentum Galeni refrigerans.</i>	479
<i>Ecligma e Scylla.</i>	ead.	<i>Unguentum Rosarum.</i>	ead.
<i>Ecligma ad Asthma.</i>	ead.	<i>Unguentum Populeum.</i>	ead.
<i>Certaine Conditis.</i>	467	<i>Unguentum album.</i>	476
<i>Of Conserues.</i>	ead.	<i>Unguentum astringens.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Diacalitecs.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Diatomiholgor.</i>	477
		<i>Unguentum rubrum exsiccat.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Dialtheos.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Resumprimum.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Agrippa.</i>	478
		<i>Unguentum Aregon.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Merciatum magnum.</i>	479
		<i>Unguentum Basilicum minus.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Basilicum magnum.</i>	480
		<i>Unguentum Aureum.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Apostolorum.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Aegyptiacum.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum ex Enula.</i>	ead.
		<i>Unguentum Chirinum.</i>	481

O leum Rosarum.	468		
<i>Oleum Violarum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Nykthe.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Papaueri.</i>	469		
<i>Oleum Hrosciami albi.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Mandragore simplex.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Mandragore compositum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Melinum quod e Cydoniorum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Mirtinum.</i>	470		
<i>Oleum Mastichinum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Menthe.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Absinthij.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Chamamelinum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Lillorum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Leucoij Lentei.</i>	471		
<i>Oleum Iasminum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Anetinum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Amigdalorum dulcium.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Lumbricorum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Irinum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Rutaceum.</i>	472		
<i>Oleum Amigdalorum amararum.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum e Capparibus.</i>	ead.		
<i>Oleum Nardum.</i>	ead.		

Of Emplaisters.

E mplastrum Diachylon simplex.	481
<i>Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum musculogini.</i>	482
<i>Emplastrum e M. lito.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum e bacca lauri.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum Ceroneum.</i>	483
<i>Emplastrum Oxicroceum.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum de Ianna.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum Gratia Dei.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum Ovinum.</i>	ead.
<i>Emplastrum ad Herniam.</i>	484
<i>Aliud ad Herniam.</i>	ead.

FINIS.

inguentu Alaopstrem, fol 99.
inguentu subtile. fol 99.

180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000

